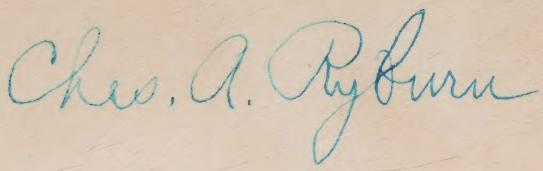
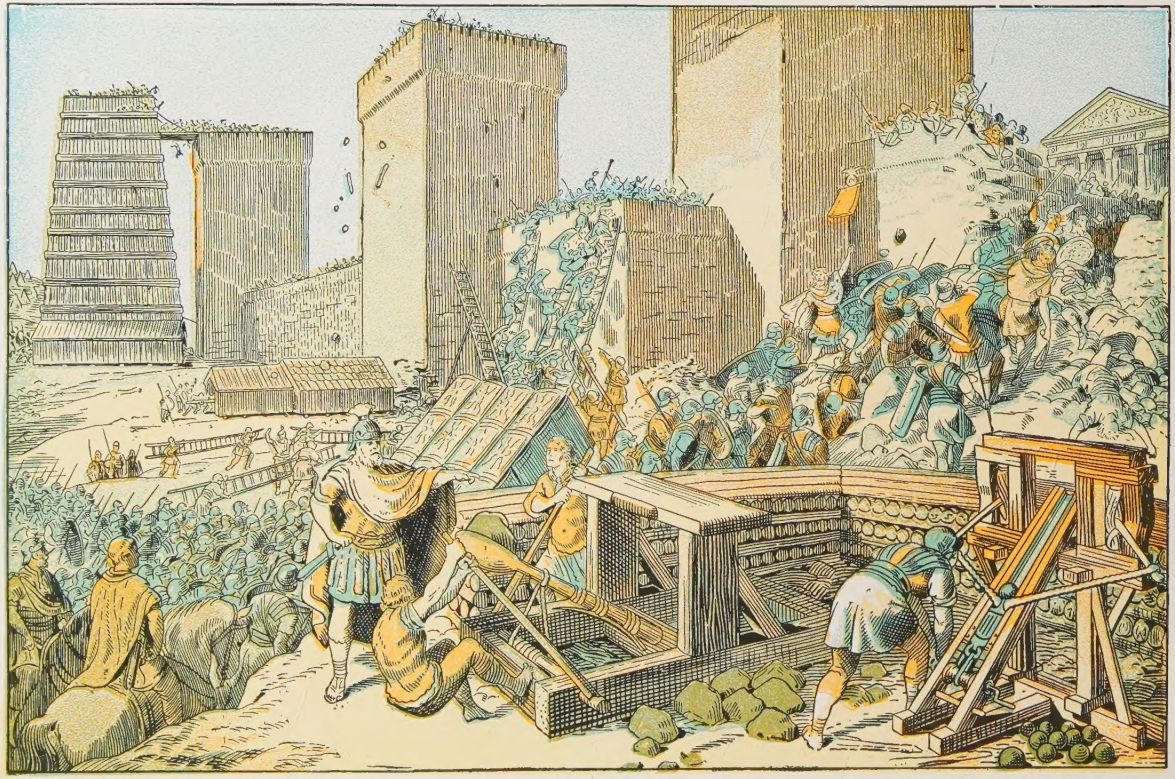
SECOND LATIN

SCUDDER



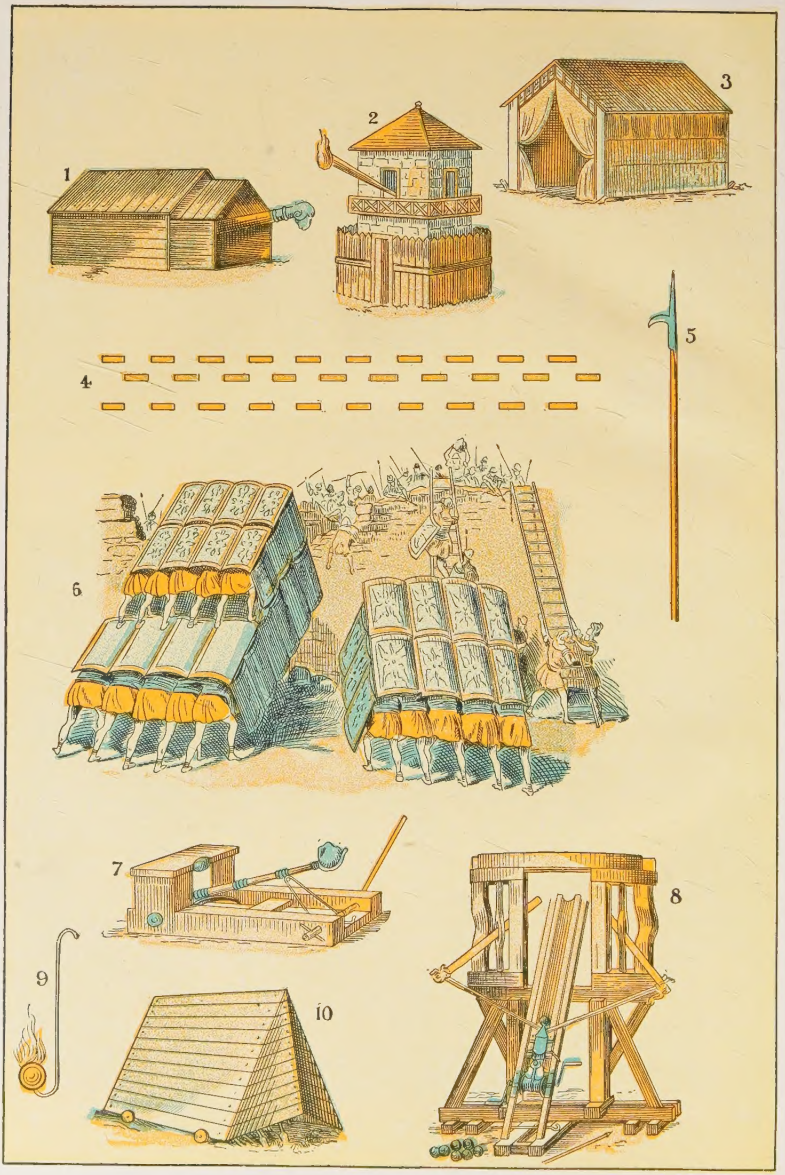
Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/bwb_Y0-BNE-524



Attack on a Besieged City.

1. Imperator. 2. Legatus. 3. Centurio. 4. Lictor. 5. Signiferi. 6. Bucinator. 7. Tubicen. 8. Vexillum. 9. Aquila.



1. Testudo arietaria. 2. Fire-signal Tower. 3. Tabernaculum.
4. Order of Battle. 5. Falx Muralis. 6 Testudo. 7. Onager. 8. Ballista.
9. Glans fusili ex Argilla. 10. Testudo fossaria.

1. Slinger. 2. Light-armed Soldier. 3. Soldier of the Legion. 4. Sarcinae. 5. Cavalry.

ALLYN AND BACON'S JUNIOR LATIN SERIES
FOLLOWING THE RECOMMENDATIONS OF
THE CLASSICAL INVESTIGATION

The François-Scudder Latin Course

BOOK TWO

SECOND LATIN

BY

JARED W. SCUDDER

THE ALBANY ACADEMY, ALBANY, NEW YORK

ALLYN AND BACON

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1927
BY ALLYN AND BACON

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

The changes that are recommended in the Report of the Classical Investigation necessitate a readjustment of the Latin for each year of the high school course. This is especially true of the second year on account of the postponement of the reading of Caesar until the fourth semester. The third semester is to be devoted (*a*) to the mastery of certain specified grammatical forms and principles of syntax, and (*b*) to the extensive reading of easy Latin, which in subject matter shall provide a distinctively Roman atmosphere.

Second Latin is intended to meet these recommendations of the Report. The plan of the book in outline is as follows:

First Half Year. — 1. *Ten First Year Rapid Review Lessons.* These, of course, may be omitted. But most Latin teachers have learned by sad experience that even well-drilled pupils forget much during the summer months, and that it pays to begin with a quick review of the First Year work.

2. *Thirteen Lessons for the Intensive Study of the forms and syntax* required in the first half year. The Latin Readings deal with the most important features of Roman life.

3. *The Story of Rome,* adapted from the histories of Eutropius and Livy, and covering the period from the founding of Rome to the Civil War between Sulla and Marius.

4. *Life of Caesar,* from the *Viri Romae* (greatly simplified).

As a rule the Latin Readings for the first half year are followed by simple exercises in English derivation, Latin Composition, and Latin questions. Proper stress is laid upon *Word Formation* by a special paragraph in each lesson.

Second Half Year. — 1. *Characterization of Caesar; Organization and Working of Caesar's Army.*

2. *Intensive Study of the forms and syntax* required for this semester, in connection with the reading of (simplified)

selections from the Helvetian campaign and the war with Ariovistus. Latin Composition Exercises on these chapters are found on pp. 431–436. Questions on the subject matter are included in order to emphasize Caesar's writings as *history*. A summary of all omitted portions is given.

3. *Selections from Books II–VII of the Gallic War*, specially edited for sight reading. Difficult passages are simplified, but there is little change in the original text beyond Book III.

4. *The Battle of Pharsalus* from Caesar's Civil War, one of the most interesting bits of descriptive military history extant.

5. *The Argonauts*, an optional reading in place of the *Viri Romae* Life of Caesar.

6. *Brief Latin Grammar.*

7. *Selected Second Year Word List*, arranged for the purpose of drilling pupils with the Latin and English on different pages.

8. *Complete Vocabularies and Index.*

The book is abundantly illustrated — particularly so with reference to Roman life — and the Maps and Battle Plans should do much to make Caesar's campaigns clear and definite.

Every effort has been put forth to produce a book that shall be orderly in its grammatical development, accurate in its depiction of Roman life, and unified in its presentation of Roman history.

The work of the first year in Latin is unquestionably "all-important." But the second year is the more critical of the two, as failure to pass not only deprives the pupil of the fruits of his labors for both years, but decisively prevents any further pursuit of the language. In clear recognition of this situation the Classical Investigators have given of their best thought and effort to the solution of the problem. It is hoped that this book, by conforming to their recommendations, will enable both teacher and pupil to achieve success in the Latin of the second year.

J. W. S.

CONTENTS

PAGE

List of Illustrations ix

List of Maps and Plans xiii

Introduction

Review Exercises and First Year Word List . . . xv

Important Events in Roman History xxv

LESSON

I. Fourth Declension, — U Stems 1

Reading Lesson. — **Rōma** 2

Sight Translation. — **Forum Rōmānum** . . 4

II. Fifth Declension 8

Reading Lesson. — **Domus Rōmāna** . . . 9

Sight Translation. — **Domus Rōmāna** — *Concluded* 10

III. Irregular Pronominal and Numeral Adjectives 14

Reading Lesson. — **Supellex Domūs Rōmānae** . 15

Sight Translation. — **Supellex Domūs Rōmānae** . 18

IV. The Infinitive; Complementary Infinitive; Review of Infinitive in Simple Indirect Discourse 20

Reading Lesson. — **Līberī Rōmānī** 23

Sight Translation. — **Līberī Rōmānī** — *Concluded* . 24

V. Participles; Ablative Absolute; Gerund . . 30

Reading Lesson. — **Nūptiae Rōmānae** . . . 34

Sight Translation. — **Nūptiae Rōmānae** — *Concluded* 35

VI. Comparison of Irregular Adjectives; Ablative of Specification 38

Reading Lesson. — **Vestis Rōmāna** . . . 39

Sight Translation. — **Vestis Rōmāna** — *Concluded* . 41

LESSON PAGE

VII. Review 45
Sight Translation. — **Servī** 46

VIII. Moods; Subjunctive of **Sum**; Independent Volitive Subjunctive; Place to Which without a Preposition 49
Reading Lesson. — **Triumphus Rōmānus** . . 51
Sight Translation. — **Triumphus Rōmānus** — *Concluded* 54

IX. Active Subjunctive. Purpose Clauses . . 58
Reading Lesson. — **Cēna Rōmāna** . . . 61
Sight Translation. —**Cēna Rōmāna** — *Concluded* . 63

X. Clauses of Result with **Ut** or **Ut Nōn** . . 67
Reading Lesson. — **Thermae** 69
Sight Translation. — **Thermae** — *Concluded* . . 71

XI. Passive Subjunctive of All Conjugations; Indirect Question; Sequence of Tenses . . 75
Reading Lesson. — **Religiō Rōmāna** . . . 79
Sight Translation. — **Religiō Rōmāna** — *Concluded* 84

XII. Subjunctive in a **Cum** Circumstantial Clause . 88
Reading Lesson. — **Sacerdōtēs Rōmānī** . . 89
Sight Translation. — **Virginēs Vestālēs; Ōrācula** . 93

XIII. Review 97
Sight Translation. — **Lūdī Circēnsēs** . . . 98

The Story of Rome

The Seven Kings 104
The Early Republic 132
The War with Pyrrhus 154
The First Punic War 163
The Second Punic War 172
The Later Republic 200

Life of Julius Caesar (*Virī Rōmae*) 210

PAGE

THE GALLIC WAR
Julius Caesar 247
Caesar's Army 250
The Gauls 256
Book I 260
Book II 298
Book III 313
Book IV 320
Book V 336
Book VI 364
Book VII 377

THE CIVIL WAR 399

THE ARGONAUTS 413

LATIN COMPOSITION EXERCISES 431

BRIEF LATIN GRAMMAR
Forms 439
Syntax 471

SECOND YEAR WORD LIST 491

BOOKS FOR READING AND REFERENCE 505

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 509

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 618

INDEX 633

ILLUSTRATIONS

Colored Plates: I, Attack on a Besieged City; II, Officers, Standard Bearers, and Musicians; III, Military Devices; IV, Roman Soldiers, Infantry and Cavalry . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

Via Angusta 2
A View of Modern Rome 3
Parva Taberna 4
View of the Forum from the East 5
Beware the Dog! 9
The House of the Vettii at Pompeii 11
The Home of a Wealthy Roman 12
Cross-Section of a Roman House in Pompeii 13
Roman Furniture 16
A Glass Cup Overlaid with Silver 16
A Roman Meal 17
Roman Hanging Lamps 17
An Elaborate Candelabrum 18
A Roman Boy at Play 23
Roman Woman Spinning 23
Roman School Life 25
Double Tablets with Silver Rings and Style 26
Roman Writing Materials 26
Tablet and Stilus 27
Manuscripts 27
A Roman Priest 34
Burning Incense to the Household Gods 35
Roman Household Gods 36
Tunic and Toga 39
Roman Costumes 40
Roman Maiden 41
A Matron 42
A Roman Barber Shop 42
Terra Cotta Figure of a Barber 43

PAGE
A Roman Razor 43
Roman Shoes 43
Dress of a Poor Boy 44
The German Princess Thusnelda in the Triumph of Germanicus 52
The Roman Forum 53
The Triumph of Caesar 55
Romans at Table 61
A Roman Baker 61
A Jar in Its Stand 62
Selling Bread in Rome 63
A Modest Meal for Three 64
A Summer Dining Room 66
Roman Baths — Restored 68
Romans at the Baths 69
The Tepidarium 71
The Caldarium and the Frigidarium of a Roman Bath . . 72
Jupiter 80
Juno 81
A Roman Temple 83
Wall-Painting of a Shrine 84
A Roman Altar 85
Augustus as Pontifex Maximus 89
Priests Sacrificing 90
A Ceremony of the Vestal Virgins 92
The Site of the Atrium Vestae, or House of the Vestals . . 92
A Vestal Virgin 93
Head of a Vestal Virgin 94
Dress of a Vestal 95
A Restoration of the Circus Maximus 99
A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus 99
A Charioteer 100
A Gladiatorial Combat in the Colosseum 101
The Colosseum 101
The Temple of Saturn in the Forum 104
Aeneas, Anchises, and Ascanius 105
The Alban Lake 107

PAGE
The Tiber River 110
The Capitoline Wolf 111
Neptune 113
The Tarpeian Rock 114
The Forum Restored 115
Mars, God of War 117
The Oath of the Horatii 121
Ruins of Ostia 124
Entrance to the Prison 125
The Cloaca Maxima 126
An Old View of the Forum 128
Roman Temples 130
The Forum Restored 133
The Site of Tusculum 136
Bridge over the Anio 138
The Forum 141
Rōmānus Togātus 144
The Forum Restored 145
The Capitoline Hill 148
A Greek Temple 155
Pyrrhus 159
Gibraltar 163
Roman Amphitheatre at Syracuse 165
A Roman Trireme 166
Roman Ruins in Africa 169
Part of a Roman Fleet 170
A Roman Bridge in Spain 173
A View of the Alps 175
Roman Ruins at Syracuse 180
Publius Cornelius Scipio 185
Cato 191
Excavations at Carthage 192
The Site of Corinth 195
Gravestones among the Ruins of Carthage 198
Marius 201
Sulla 205
Mithridates 206

PAGE
Caesar 211
The Colosseum Seen through the Arch of Titus . . . 216
Euripides 217
"Games" in the Colosseum 219
Pompey 221
Caesar's Works at Alesia 224
Mark Antony 235
The Death of Caesar 237
Caesar 245
A View of the Jura 262
Mill-Race Gorge 267
Lake Geneva 271
The Arar, now called the Saône 276
Scene of the Battle with the Helvetians 281
A View of the Rhine 289
The Rhine near Bingen 295
Scene near the Site of the Battle with the Nervii . . . 307
A Typical Bit of Venetan Coast 314
The English Coast Opposite Gaul 323
Scene in a Roman Camp 343
The Lorelei Rock on the Rhine 372
Horns of a Moose 374
The Site of Gergovia 378
Vercingetorix and His Warriors 382
The Hill of Alesia 388
A Coin of Vercingetorix 392
Pompey 399
Apollo Temple at Delphi 415
Hercules 417
The Harpy Seizes Phineus' Food 420

MAPS AND PLANS

	PAGE
Rome	*facing* 2
Ancient Italy (*colored*)	*after* 102
The Roman Empire (*colored*)	*after* 162
Caesar's Triple Line of Battle	255
Gallia (*colored*)	*after* 260
Caesar's Line of Works along the Rhone (*colored*)	*facing* 270
The Battle with the Helvetians (*colored*)	*facing* 283
The Battle with Ariovistus (*colored*)	*facing* 291
The Battle at the Sambre (*colored*)	*facing* 301
The Siege of Alesia (*colored*)	*facing* 384
The Battle of Pharsalus (*colored*)	*facing* 399

INTRODUCTION

RAPID REVIEW OF FIRST YEAR LATIN

Lesson I

Forms. — First and Second Declension Nouns and Adjectives (**1–2; 9**).[1] Active Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations (**23–24**).

Syntax. — Subject Nominative (**52**). Accusative of Direct Object (**69**). Agreement of the Verb (**49**). Agreement of the Adjective (**39**).

Verb Drill. — Vocāverās, timēbam, pugnāmus, respondistis, nāvigābit, vident, cōnfīrmābimus, mōverātis, occupō, sustinēbat, monuistī, parāvērunt.

He will seize, you (pl.) are warning, we have prepared, they were prohibiting, you (s.) had fought, we shall see, he was calling, they have, I do think, you (pl.) are afraid, we did advise.

Word List

aequus	exspectō	parō	respondeō
agricola	factum	parvus	servō
amīcitia	fīnitimus	poena	servus
amīcus	habeō	populus	signum
arma	laudō	prohibeō	socius
barbarus	longus	puer	spectō
bellum	moneō	pugnō	timeō
bonus	moveō	pulcher	timidus
cōnfīrmō	nāvigō	putō	vērus
cōnsilium	nōn	rēgīna	videō
deus	noster	reliquus	vir
ēgregius	occupō	removeō	vocō

[1] Black numbers in parenthesis refer to sections of the Grammar, pages 439–489.

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Ēgregiī virī factum pulchrum laudāvērunt. 2. Bona cōnsilia amīcitiam vēram cōnfīrmant. 3. Pulchram rēgīnam puerī parvī spectābant. 4. Gallī longum bellum nōn timuerant. 5. Agricolam amīcum barbarī servī monēbunt.

(*b*) 1. The timid slaves did not reply. 2. The gods will prepare a just punishment. 3. The little boy was awaiting a signal. 4. Farmers had removed the remaining arms. 5. Our allies fear the neighboring peoples.

Lesson II

Forms. — Third Declension Nouns (**4**). Gender Rules (**4**, 4, *a–c*).

Syntax. — Genitive of Possession (**56**). Dative of Indirect Object (**60**).

Case Drill. — Gen. pl. of victōria, populus, oppidum, mīles, caput, nāvis, mare. Acc. sing. of fuga, equus, signum, rēx, flūmen, mōns. Dat. and Abl. pl. of agricola, socius, factum, iūdex, tempus, cīvis. Gen. sing. of rēgīna, servus, ager, puer, vir, rēgnum, homō, celeritās, turris. Acc. pl. of poena, fīlius, castra, eques, fīnis, legiō, pars. Dat. and Abl. sing. of silva, lēgātus, bellum, cōnsul, nōmen, hostis, genus.

Word List

ager	decimus	imperātor	oppidum
altitūdō	dō	iūdex	pars
amplus	eques	lēgātus	paucī
auxilium ; auxilia	equus	legiō	praemium
caput	fīlius	magnitūdō	praesidium
castra	fīnis ; fīnēs	magnus	rēgnum
celeritās	flūmen	mare	rēx
centuriō	fuga	mīles	silva
cīvis	genus	mōns	tempus
commoveō	homō	nāvis	turris
cōnsul	hostis	nōmen	victōria
cōpia ; cōpiae	iam	nūntiō	virtūs

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Imperātor paucīs mīlitibus ampla praemia dabit. 2. Magna altitūdō turrium decimae legiōnis mīlitēs nōn prohibēbat. 3. Iam deī cīvibus victōriam ēgregiam nūntiāverant. 4. Cōnsulis equitēs cōpiās hostium nōn timent. 5. Lēgātī celeritās sociōrum castra servāvit.

(*b*) 1. A few citizens were praising the great courage of the judge. 2. The consul's allies had given aid to the soldiers of the garrison. 3. The king's forces will alarm the timid citizens of the town. 4. The general's lieutenants do not fear the enemy's cavalry. 5. The centurion's slaves reported the size of the camp to the enemy.

Lesson III

Forms. — Active Indicative of Third and Fourth Conjugations (**25–26**).

Syntax. — Prepositions with Ablative (**90**). Apposition (**38**).

Verb Drill. — Agēbant, gerētis, vidētis, habēbitis, mittitis, audītis, vocātis, discessimus, scrīpserat, impediēbās, pōnam, vīcerant, pellit, trāxistī.

We had hoped, he is coming, you (pl.) replied, I was inquiring, they will know, they are remaining, they will yield, they say, I shall lead, you (s.) have arrived.

Word List

ā or ab	expellō	māter	pōnō
agō	fāma	mittō	quaerō
audiō	gerō	multus	sciō
cēdō	impediō	-ne	scrībō
certus	īnsula	nōnne	spērō
cum	labōrō	novus	supplicium
cūr	lātus	num	suus
dē	līberī	nunc	timor
dīcō	līberō	patria	trahō
discēdō	lingua	pellō	tuus
dūcō	longē	perveniō	veniō
ex or ē	maneō	petō	vincō

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Expellunt-ne Gallī legiōnēs Rōmānās ex suā patriā? 2. Caesar Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, dē deōrum suppliciō monuerat. 3. Num nostrī mīlitēs barbarārum gentium cōpiīs cēdent? 4. Cūr rēx ab Pompeiō, imperātōre Rōmānō, auxilium petēbat? 5. Nōnne Horātī virtūs magnō timōre cīvēs līberāvit?

(*b*) 1. Will not the German general lead his forces out of the enemy's territory? 2. Why do you not depart from the island now with your children? 3. The lieutenants had pitched camp not far from a wide river. 4. Did the Romans wage many wars with the neighboring tribes? 5. The Gauls were not awaiting auxiliary-forces from the German king, Ariovistus, were they?

Lesson IV

Forms. — Indicative of **sum** (**30**). Declension of **ego, tū,** and **suī** (**16–17**).

Syntax. — Predicate Nominative (**53**). Ablative of Place Where (**91**).

Verb Drill. — Fuērunt, es, erimus, erāmus, fuerāmus, fuistī, estis, erit.

We are, they had been, I shall be, you (s.) were, you (pl.) have been.

Word List

amō	dubitō	nōscō	septem
animus	ego	nūntius	sex
beneficium	fortiter	pecūnia	suī
committō	fortūna	perīculum	sum
cōnsulō	frāter	pōns	terra
conveniō	imperō	potestās	trādō
crēber	in	quattuor	tū
currō	locus	relinquō	tum
dēbeō	lūx	sacer	ubi
dēdō	maximus	secundus	urbs
dēfendō	mūniō	sedeō	via
dīligentia	nātūra	sentiō	vōs

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Erās-ne in oppidō ubi nūntius pervēnit? 2. Rōma est maxima urbs Ītaliae. 3. Ubi erant hostium nāvēs longae? 4. Nōnne imperātōris equitēs fortiter sē dēfendent? 5. Rēgis fīliī fuerant magnō in perīculō.

(*b*) 1. The Rhine is a long river in Germany. 2. The men had been the soldiers of Sulla. 3. Were the Gauls allies of the Romans? 4. You will not give yourselves up to the consul, will you? 5. At-that-time there were (only) a few citizens in the sacred place.

Lesson V

Forms. — Third Declension Adjectives (**10, 13**). Pronouns, **hic, ille, ipse** (**18, 19**).

Syntax. — Accusative of Place to Which (**74**). Ablative of Place from Which (**76**). Ablative of Time (**88**).

Case Drill. — In fīnitimās urbēs, singulārī virtūte, ācriōre proeliō, haec itinera facilia, deōrum immortālium, hōrum fortiōrum virōrum, cōpiīs pedestribus, ipsīus aequī iūdicis.

At this very time, an experienced soldier, toward those high towers, out of the deep sea, for this difficult undertaking, of the remaining cavalry.

Word List

ac or atque	et	inimīcus	pedester
ācer	etiam	inīquus	perītus
ad	expugnō	īnstruō	prīnceps
aestās	facilis	interim	proelium
altus	fīniō	ipse	prōvideō
annus	fortis	iter	-que
cōgō	gēns	medius	singulāris
collis	gravis	negōtium	tardus
cōnsistō	hic	novem	tertius
decem	hiems	octō	ūnus
difficilis	ille	omnis	vertō
duo	immortālis	ōrdō	vigilia

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Imperātor ex omnibus hīs gentibus nāvēs coēgit. 2. Ūnā aestāte hic cōnsul duo gravia bella

fīnīverat. 3. Illī fortī mīlitī centuriō ipse auxilium dabit. 4. Hōc ipsō tempore lēgātus ad Siciliam nāvigābat. 5. Scīpiō et Hannibal erant imperātōrēs, hic Carthāginiēnsis, ille Rōmānus.

(*b*) 1. The cavalry will depart from the camp in the third watch. 2. This journey is easy, that difficult. 3. The consul drove out the enemy's forces in the third year of the war. 4. Many citizens were fearing the plans of this man. 5. Meanwhile the lieutenants had led the legions upon a neighboring hill.

Lesson VI

Forms. — Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations (**23–24**).

Syntax. — Ablative of Agent (**78**). Ablative of Means (**79**).

Verb Drill. — Vocābuntur, vīsī erāmus, amāris, appellātum est, parābāminī, docētur, exspectāta erat, līberābere, monēbar, iussī sunt.

You (pl.) were being encouraged, he had been aroused, I am prohibited, they have been freed, you (s.) will be saved, we are held, it was pointed out, she had been called.

Word List

appellō	incendō	octāvus	sextus
bene	incitō	officium	similis
celer	integer	ōrātiō	statim
cōnservō	iubeō	ostendō	sūmō
cōnsuētūdō	levis	portō	tēlum
contineō	memoria	premō	temptō
dēmōnstrō	mīlitāris	pūblicus	teneō
doceō	moenia	quattuordecim	tredecim
duodecim	mōnstrō	quīndecim	ūndecim
frūmentum	multitūdō	sēdecim	vīta
graviter	nam	septendecim	vōx
impedīmentum	nōnus	servitūs	vulnerō

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Hoc oppidum praesidī virtūte cōnservātum est. 2. Mīlitēs ab lēgātō in castrīs continentur. 3. Moenia urbis ā cīvibus cōnfīrmābantur. 4. Ille fortis cen-

turiō tēlō graviter vulnerātus erat. 5. Cōnsulis līberī ab aequō iūdice monēbuntur.

(*b*) 1. Much grain was being carried to the camp by horses. 2. These large islands had been seized by the commander. 3. The camp will be moved at once by the soldiers. 4. The march of the king's forces was stopped by a wide river. 5. Are not the brave deeds of Marius remembered by the Romans?

Lesson VII

Forms. — Active and Passive Infinitive Present of Four Conjugations (**23–26**). Infinitive Present of **sum** (**30**).

Syntax. — Accusative Subject of Infinitive (**71**). Accusative of Duration or Extent (**72**).

Verb Drill. — Parārī, gesserās, esse, legere, mittēmus, venīre, dūxī, dūcī, iubēbiminī, pugnāre, vocātus est, vidērī, impedīre.

To depart, they were being sustained, to labor, we had been freed, to be expelled, it was attacked, to be found, I shall ascertain, to have, you (s.) are selected.

Word List

absum	corpus	lībertās	quīntus
ācriter	dēcernō	magnoperc	quō modo
caedō	dēligō	meus	satis
calamitās	dexter	mīlle	sine
centum	dignitās	necessārius	sinister
cernō	duodēvīgintī	nōtus	statuō
certē	enim	nox	sustineō
classis	exīstimō	obsideō	tālis
claudō	honor	oppugnō	trīgintā
coepī	intellegō	pēs	ūndēvīgintī
cognōscō	inveniō	porta	vāstō
commūnis	labor	quīnque	vīgintī

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Centuriō nūntiāvit turrim esse trīgintā pedēs altam. 2. Iam imperātor oppidum obsidēre dēcrēverat. 3. Lēgātus exīstimat hostēs nōn longē ab illō flūmine abesse. 4. In hōc proeliō mīlitēs quīnque hōrās ācriter pugnābant. 5. Caesar oppidī portās nocte claudī iussit.

(*b*) 1. The consul knows that the citizens are greatly alarmed. 2. This little town was besieged for five years. 3. The general learned that the enemy were devastating the fields of the allies. 4. The walls of the city were twenty feet high. 5. The messenger said that the Gauls were departing from Roman territory.

Lesson VIII

Forms. — **Is** and **īdem** (**18**). **Quī** (**20**) and **quis** (**21**).

Syntax. — Agreement of Relative Pronoun (**42**). Prepositions with Accusative (**73**).

Pronoun Drill. — Eī hominī, eī hominēs, cuius rēgnī, ea causa, post ea bella, haec fuga, per haec loca, quae lēx, quae virtūtēs, quae oppida, ipsī sē laudant.

Of which legions, across that river, by the same names, on-account-of these laws, of the same age, with this condition, for which business, what soldier, of the same states, among which nations.

Word List

adsum	cōnstituō	is	propter
aetās	dīligēns	iūdicium	puella
āmittō	dīmittō	iūs	quī
ante	diū	lēx	quis
appropinquō	facile	līber	quō (*adv.*)
apud	glōria	modus	ratiō
ascendō	grātia	numquam	redūcō
aut . . . aut	īdem	ob	sī
brevis	imperium	obtineō	terreō
causa	indīcō	per	trādūcō
cīvitās	inter	post	trāns
condiciō	iniūria	propinquus	vōx

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Ampla praemia eīs mīlitibus dabuntur, quī fortiter pugnāvērunt. 2. Puer / Puella / Praesidium } sē dēfendet; cīvēs

sē dēfendunt. 3. Cōnsul per eāsdem silvās suās cōpiās redūx-
erat. 4. { Mīles / Rēgīna / Urbs } sua iūra āmīsit; sociī sua iūra āmīsērunt.
5. Propter quās iniūriās Gallī bellum indīcere cōnstituērunt?

(*b*) 1. The Romans had never waged a war with the Germans before this time. 2. You, to whom this command was given, are brave soldiers. 3. These are the same men who were dismissed after that battle. 4. The lieutenant will not lead his forces across that broad river, will he? 5. Who says that the enemy are approaching (toward) the city?

Lesson IX

Forms. — Active and Passive Imperative Present of the Regular Conjugations (**23–26**). Imperative Present of **sum** (**30**). Regular Comparison of Adjectives (**12,** *a*).

Syntax. — Vocative Case (**54**). Ablative of Cause (**81**). Ablative of Separation (**75**).

Verb Drill. — Scrībite, pōnet, tenet, es fortis, dīc, dūc, audē, audī, respondēte, mitte, mittī, mīsī.

Conquer (pl.), be warned (s.), to warn, you will call, depart (s.), they have driven, come (pl.), I was thinking, be (pl.) fair.

Word List

addūcō	fēmina	nātiō	properō
audāx	ferē	neque (nec)	prōvincia
audeō	fīlia	nōbilis	quam
autem	inopia	nōs	quidem
clārus	īra	numerus	regō
crūdēlis	laus	opīniō	salūs
cupiditās	legō	pār	sed
dignus	malus	parātus	spatium
dīvidō	mēns	perterritus	unde
dolor	miser	possum	vehō
dux	mors	posteā	verbum
exerceō	multum	prō	vērō

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Caesar Galliam omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā dēfendere dēcrēvit. 2. Germānī erant fortiōrēs quam Gallī, sed fortissimī mīlitēs erant Rōmānī. 3. Omnēs virī laudis cupiditāte addūcuntur. 4. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx erat dux nōbilissimus. 5. Līberā nōs, Ō aeque iūdex, hōc crūdēlī suppliciō.

(*b*) 1. The Aedui have been more friendly than the Belgae. 2. The soldiers of the legion are panic-stricken by the death of these brave centurions. 3. Labienus was a very skillful general. 4. Hasten, men, and seek safety by flight. 5. The river Rhone divides the Roman province from the Helvetians.

Lesson X

Forms. — **-iō** verbs (**27**). Perfect Passive Participle (**23–27**). Comparison of Adverbs (**14**).

Syntax. — Ablative of Accompaniment (**83**). Ablative of Manner (**82**).

Verb Drill. — Incipe, capientur, capiuntur, cupere, iaciēbātis, factum erat, accipiminī, cōnfectus, rapiēmur, interfecta est, impedīs, suscipis.

They were throwing, I am rescued, you (pl.) will be received, to be desired, accept (pl.), you (s.) have begun, having been seized, it is finished.

Word List

accipiō	cupidus	incrēdibilis	quārtus
amplius	cupiō	interficiō	quod
aqua	cūra	iungō	rapiō
auctōritās	dēleō	multō	recipiō
capiō	difficultās	nē . . . quidem	septimus
celeriter	ēiciō	pater	summus
circum	ēripiō	pāx	superō
clāmor	faciō	perficiō	suscipiō
colō	fugiō	praemittō	trēs
cōnficiō	hōra	praesum	vester
coniciō	iaciō	prīmus	vīs
contendō	incipiō	pugna	vulnus

Exercises. — (*a*) 1. Imperātor lēgātum cum tribus legiōnibus ad hostium castra contendere iussit. 2. Hostēs proeliō superātī celeriter ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt. 3. Mīlitēs summā difficultāte per hās silvās iter faciunt. 4. Caesar hōrā quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus ad Britanniam pervēnit. 5. Gallī incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen cucurrērunt.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers are receiving the new general with loud shouts. 2. Roused by these words, the enemy fought with the utmost bravery. 3. Led by the influence of Orgetorix, the Helvetians determined to depart with all their forces. 4. The seventh legion will be sent ahead with the cavalry. 5. The Roman legions fought fiercely with the enemy's forces.

IMPORTANT EVENTS IN ROMAN HISTORY TO WHICH REFERENCE IS MADE IN THIS BOOK

Legendary (*Traditional Dates*)

DATE B.C.		PAGE
753	Founding of Rome	109–112
753–510	The Seven Kings	109–131

The Republic

First Period. — *Conquest of Italy*

509	Establishment of the Republic	132–134
494	Secession of the Plebs	138–139
493	First Plebeian Tribunes	139
451–449	The Decemvirs and the Laws of the Twelve Tables	144–145
390	Capture of Rome by the Gauls	148–149
343–290	Three Samnite Wars	152–153
287	Plebeians finally win Equal Rights with Patricians	139
280–275	War with Pyrrhus	156–161

DATE B.C.		PAGE
	Second Period. — *Expansion beyond Italy*	
264–241	First Punic War. — Carthage loses Sicily	163–170
218–201	Second Punic War. — Hannibal and Scipio	172–186
200–197	War with Philip V of Macedon	187
192–189	War with Antiochus the Great of Syria	188
171–168	War with Perseus of Macedon	190
149–146	Third Punic War. — Scipio destroys Carthage	191–194
146	Mummius destroys Corinth	194–196
133–44	**Third Period.** — *The Decadent Republic*	200–245
112–106	War with Jugurtha, King of Numidia	201–202
102–101	Marius defeats the Cimbri and Teutones	203–204
90–88	War with the Italian Allies	205–206
88–84	Sulla's First War with Mithridates	206–209
88–86	Civil War between Sulla and Marius	206–209
82–79	Sulla rules as Dictator at Rome	209
	Life of Julius Caesar	
100	Birth	210
83–82	Marries Cornelia and defies Sulla	210–212
80–78	First Military Service in Asia	213
75	Studies Oratory at Rhodes	213–214
68	Quaestor in Spain	215–218
65	Curule Aedile	218–219
62	Praetor	247
60	Forms First Triumvirate with Pompey and Crassus	220–221
59	Consul	220–222
58–50	Proconsul. — Conquest of Gaul and Britain	223–227, 250–298
49–48	Civil War with Pompey	227–230
48, Aug. 9	Defeats Pompey at Battle of Pharsalus	229–230, 399–412
47	Conquers Ptolemy, King of Egypt	230
47	Defeats Pharnaces, King of Pontus, at Zela	230

DATE B.C.		PAGE
46	Defeats Metellus Scipio and Juba at Thapsus	230
45	Defeats the Sons of Pompey at Munda	231
45–44	Rules as Dictator at Rome . . .	231–234
44, March 15	Assassinated	235–238
27 B.C.–476 A.D.	The Roman Empire	210; 249

SECOND LATIN

LESSON I

FOURTH DECLENSION, — *U* STEMS

Rōma, urbs aeterna. — Rome, the eternal city.

— TIBULLUS

1. The Fourth Declension. — In the Fourth Declension the Nominative Singular ends in **–us** or **–ū**. The stem ends in **–u**.

exercitus, m., *army* **cornū**, n., *horn* **domus**, f., *house*

STEM: exercitu– cornu– domu–

	CASE ENDINGS M.	N.	SINGULAR		
Nom.	**–us**	**–ū**	exercitus	cornū	domus
Gen.	**–ūs**	**–ūs**	exercitūs	cornūs	domūs (domī)
Dat.	**–uī**	**–ū**	exercituī	cornū	domuī, domō
Acc.	**–um**	**–ū**	exercitum	cornū	domum
Abl.	**–ū**	**–ū**	exercitū	cornū	domō, domū
			PLURAL		
Nom.	**–ūs**	**–ua**	exercitūs	cornua	domūs
Gen.	**–uum**	**–uum**	exercituum	cornuum	domuum, **–ōrum**
Dat.	**–ibus**	**–ibus**	exercitibus	cornibus	domibus
Acc.	**–ūs**	**–ua**	exercitūs	cornua	domōs, domūs
Abl.	**–ibus**	**–ibus**	exercitibus	cornibus	domibus

(*a*) Observe that **domus** has several forms of the Second Declension, and that the Second Declension form is preferred to the Fourth in the *Ablative Singular* and *Accusative Plural*. **Domī** is generally Locative in the sense of *at home*.

2. Gender Rule. — Most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in **-us** are Masculine; those ending in **-ū** are Neuter.

Exceptions: **Manus** and **domus** are Feminine.

Form Drill. — *Decline:* **exercitus magnus, dextrum cornū, domus Rōmāna.**

Reading Lesson. — Rōma

Rōma, apud Tiberim posita, aberat circiter sēdecim mīlia passuum ab portū Ōstiā ad flūminis exitum. Condita est urbs in monte Palātīnō, sed brevī tempore Rōmānī propinquōs collēs occupāverant. Dēnique Servius Tullius septem collēs moenibus circumdedit, quam ob rem Rōma est appellāta *urbs septicollis*.

Ex pontibus, quī Tiberim iungēbant, clārissimus erat Pōns Sublicius, in quō Horātius fortissimē Porsenae manūs impetum sustinuit.

Antīquae Rōmae viae erant angustae et tortuōsae, domūs erant miserae. At temporibus Imperī Rōmānī aspectus

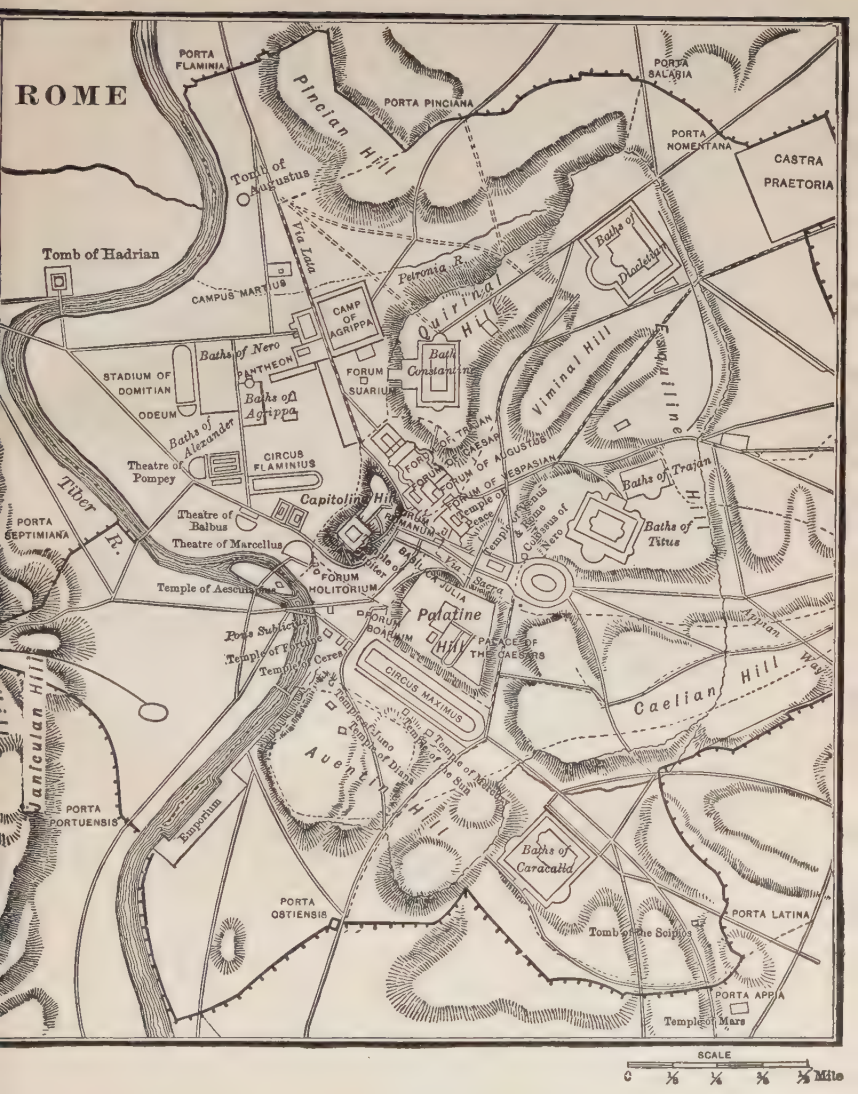
---

5. septem collēs: The famous "seven hills" of Rome could hardly be called lofty, as they were only from 120 to 160 feet above the level of the Tiber. Five of them, — the Palatine, Capitoline, Aventine, Esquiline, and Caelian, — were called **montēs,** while the Quirinal and Viminal were mere **collēs.**

Via Angusta.

8. Pōns Sublicius: Read "Horatius at the Bridge" in Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome.*

10. viae: Many streets were dark as well as narrow, and unwary pedestrians were in danger of being deluged with the refuse that was cast out by careless housewives.


ROME
PORTA FLAMINIA
Pincian Hill
PORTA PINCIANA
PORTA SALARIA
PORTA NOMENTANA
CASTRA PRAETORIA
Tomb of Augustus
Via Lata
Tomb of Hadrian
CAMPUS MARTIUS
Petronia R.
Baths of Diocletian
CAMP OF AGRIPPA
Quirinal Hill
Baths of Nero
PANTHEON
STADIUM OF DOMITIAN
ODEUM
Baths of Agrippa
FORUM SUARIUM
Bath Constantine
Viminal Hill
Esquiline Hill
Baths of Alexander
CIRCUS FLAMINIUS
Theatre of Pompey
FORUM OF TRAJAN
FORUM OF CAESAR
FORUM OF AUGUSTUS
FORUM OF VESPASIAN
Baths of Trajan
Tiber R.
Capitoline Hill
Temple of Peace
Temple of Venus & Rome
Colossus of Nero
Baths of Titus
PORTA SEPTIMIANA
Theatre of Balbus
Theatre of Marcellus
FORUM ROMANUM
Temple of Jupiter
BASILICA JULIA
Via Sacra
Temple of Aesculapius
FORUM HOLITORIUM
Palatine Hill
Appian Way
Pons Sublicius
FORUM BOARIUM
PALACE OF THE CAESARS
Temple of Fortune
Temple of Ceres
CIRCUS MAXIMUS
Caelian Hill
Janiculan Hill
Temple of Juno
Temple of Diana
Temple of the Sun
Temple of Mars
Aventine Hill
PORTA PORTUENSIS
Emporium
Baths of Caracalla
PORTA OSTIENSIS
PORTA LATINA
Tomb of the Scipios
PORTA APPIA
Temple of Mars
SCALE
0 1/8 1/4 3/8 1/2 Mile

urbis mūtātus est. Nunc domūs Imperātōrum tōtum montem Palātīnum tegēbant. Erant circiter duo mīlia domuum amplissimārum. Plūrimī cīvēs autem habitābant in ingentibus tēctīs, quae *īnsulae* appellāta sunt. Tum ubīque vidēbantur templa, amphitheatra, circī, thermae, porticūs. Sīc Rōma magnifica facta est.

A View of Modern Rome.

This picture was taken from the Vatican, the palace of the Pope. In the foreground is St. Peter's Square; in the distance are the Alban Mountains In the middle ground the Tiber winds through the city in a sweeping curve The Seven Hills are not distinguishable, partly because of the high modern buildings.

---

15. īnsulae, an appropriate name for huge apartment houses occupying an entire block, in which scores of families were huddled in cramped quarters.

16. porticūs: Long colonnaded walks, affording shelter from sun or rain. Some housed a gallery of paintings or sculpture. They often extended through gardens made beautiful with fountains, waterfalls and shady groves.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

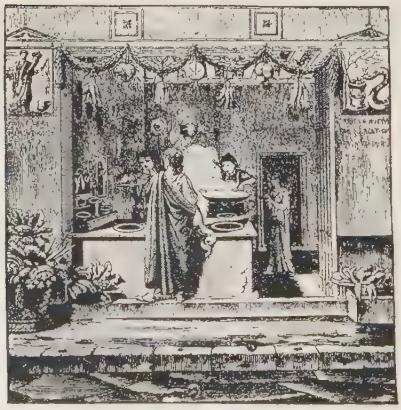
portū, exitum, propinquōs, pontibus, tortuōsae, aspectus, īnsulae, thermae, porticūs.

(*b*) Translate:

1. Fierce attacks had been made by the enemy's cavalry on the right wing. 2. The wall around Rome was seven miles long. 3. When the Pile Bridge was cut down, Horatius leaped into the river and swam across to his comrades. 4. This city is adorned with beautiful colonnades. 5. The grateful general will build a magnificent temple, which he will consecrate to Apollo.

Sight Translation. — **Forum Rōmānum**

Forum Rōmānum erat inter Capitōlium et Palātium. Prīmō undique erant parvae tabernae. Posteā autem clārī cōnsulēs imperātōrēsque basilicās et templa in Forō



Parva Taberna.

1. Capitōlium, -ī, n., *the Capitoline*, the hill on which the Capitol stood. **Palātium, -ī,** n., *the Palatine hill.*

2. undi-que, adv., [**unde,** *whence*], *on all sides.* **taberna, -ae,** f., *shop.*

4. basilica, -ae, f., a double-colonnaded hall, used both as a money exchange and a court of justice. Later, Roman basilicas often served as Christian places of worship, and many of our churches are still built on the basilica plan.

aedificāvērunt. In basilicīs erant argentāriae; hīc etiam praetōrēs iūs reddēbant.

In Cūriā Hostīliā et in Templō Concordiae senātus conveniēbat. In Rōstrīs Cicerō et aliī ōrātōrēs ad populum ōrātiōnēs habēbant. Undique erant altae columnae et deōrum simulācra et clārōrum virōrum statuae.

View of the Forum from the East.

At the left is the Palatine Hill and in the right background, the Capitoline. The foundations of the Temple of Concord still stand at the foot of the Capitoline. The rostra is beside the arch in the right middle ground. Part of the Via Sacra can be seen in the middle foreground.

---

5. argentāria, –ae, f., [**argentum,** *silver*], *bank.* **hīc,** adv., *here.* **praetor,** –ōris, m., *judge.* **red-dō,** –ere, –didī, –ditus, *render, administer.*

7. cūria, –ae, f., *senate house;* in Rome the senate *usually* met in the **Cūria Hostīlia** (built by king Tullus Hostīlius), but sometimes in the *Temple of Concord.*

8. rōstrum, –ī, n., *beak, ship's beak;* pl., the Rōstra, a speakers' platform adorned with beaks of ships. **alius,** –a, –ud, gen., **alīus,** *other.*

10. simulācrum, –ī, n., *image, statue.*

Togātī Rōmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hīc multa comitia habēbant. Hinc Viā Sacrā cōnsul exercitum Rōmānum ad bellum ēdūcēbat. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs victōrēs, praedā onustae, in Forum incēdēbant magnīs clāmōribus populī.

Nunc vērō Forum est dēsertus locus. Tamen ruīnae ipsae nōbīs antīquae Rōmae glōriae memoriam referunt.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

emperor, column, palace, senate, oration, consul, concord, tavern, convene, orator, jury, statue, render.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quam ob rem Rōma est appellāta urbs septicollis? 2. Quid ōlim accidit in Ponte Subliciō? 3. Quālēs erant viae antīquae Rōmae? 4. Ubi erat domus Imperātōris? 5. Quālia tēcta erant īnsulae? 6. Ubi erant argentāriae? 7. Quō conveniēbat senātus? 8. Quī sōlī togam gerēbant? 9. Quā viā victōrēs legiōnēs in Forum incēdēbant? 10. Quālis locus nunc est Forum Rōmānum?

3. Latin Derivation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* Many nouns of the Fourth Declension are formed by adding to verb roots or stems the suffix **–tus** or **–sus.** Such nouns denote *the action* expressed by the verb or *the results of the action. E.g.* from **canere,** *to sing* is

---

11. **togātus, –a, –um,** [**toga**], *togaed, wearing the toga,* a flowing garment of woolen cloth, the distinctive dress of Roman citizens in public.

12. **comitia, –ōrum,** n., *elections.* **hinc,** adv., [**hīc**], *from this place, hence.* **Via Sacra,** the principal street in Rome.

14. **praeda, –ae,** f., *booty.* **onustus, –a, –um,** [**onus,** *burden*], *laden.* **in-cēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus,** *march, advance.*

17. **re-ferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus,** *bring back.*

formed **can-tus, –ūs,** *singing,* and from **currō,** *run* is formed **cur-sus, –ūs,** *running.* These generally have the same form as the Perfect Passive participle. Why?

Form similar nouns from **adveniō, sentiō, exerceō, videō, cadō, moveō.** Check the resulting words and their meaning by referring to the Vocabulary. Note the interesting derivation of **versus,** *verse.*

(*a*) *English derivatives.* The following Fourth Declension nouns have been taken without change into the English language: **apparatus, census, consensus, impetus, prospectus, status.**

LESSON II

FIFTH DECLENSION

Bonā fidē. — In good faith.

4. The Fifth Declension. — The Nominative Singular of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in **–ēs**, the Genitive in **–eī**. The stem ends in **–ē**.

		diēs, m. and f., *day.*	**rēs**, f., *thing, affair.*
	STEM:	diē–	rē–
		SINGULAR	
CASE	ENDINGS		
Nom.	**–ēs**	diēs	rēs
Gen.	**–ĕī**	diēī	reī
Dat.	**–ĕī**	diēī	reī
Acc.	**–em**	diem	rem
Abl.	**–ē**	diē	rē
		PLURAL	
Nom.	**–ēs**	diēs	rēs
Gen.	**–ērum**	diērum	rērum
Dat.	**–ēbus**	diēbus	rēbus
Acc.	**–ēs**	diēs	rēs
Abl.	**–ēbus**	diēbus	rēbus

(*a*) **Only diēs** and **rēs** have all the cases in the Plural. Most nouns of this declension are declined in the Singular only, but a few have also the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

(*b*) Contrary to the rule that a vowel before another vowel is short, the vowel **–e** is long before **–ī** in the Genitive and Dative Singular, except when a consonant precedes **–e,** as in **reī, fideī,** and **speī.**

5. Gender Rule. — Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except **diēs,** which is usually Masculine in the Singular, and always in the Plural.

(*a*) Form Drill. — *Decline:* **diēs brevis; rēs pūblica.**

Reading Lesson. — Domus Rōmāna

Vestibulum erat vacuus locus ante domum Rōmānam. Aditus ā viā erat per medium vestibulum. Iānua ipsa erat lignea, at postēs saepe erant ē marmore. In līmine plērumque erat verbum "Salvē" in pavīmentō tessellātō. Post iānuam erat cella, ubi iānitor noctēs et diēs introitum custōdiēbat.

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvidēbātur. Eārum prīma pars est appellāta *ātrium.* In mediō ātrī tēctō, lūcis et āeris

---

Title: Domus Rōmāna: Roman houses, of course, were of all descriptions, ranging from wretched hovels to palatial residences. The house here described is that of a well-to-do citizen.

1. Vestibulum: Note that this was altogether unlike the vestibule in a modern house. It was an unfenced court in front of the house, through which a paved walk ran from the street to the door. The space on each side of the walk was sometimes adorned with flowers and statuary.

2. Iānua . . . marmore: Aside from the door and doorposts, the exterior was exceedingly plain. If there were any windows at all, they were mere slits in the wall.

Beware the Dog!

5. cella: In this hall-way a dog was sometimes kept chained. A famous mosaic, found in a Pompeian house, represents a fierce dog with the warning words, **Cavē canem,** beneath it.

causā, apertum spatium relictum est, per quod pluvia in *impluvium* dēscendit.

Supellex erat exigua. Erant autem nōn nūllae statuae, atque parietēs pictūrīs pulchrārum rērum ōrnābantur. In ātriō dominus amīcīs et clientibus aditum dabat.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

pavement, relict, January, post, appellation, vacant, interior, client, divide, vestibule, tessellated, picture, lucid, marble, aërial, janitor.

(*b*) Translate:

1. The consul's house is guarded by a slave day and night. 2. The Romans adorned their houses with many beautiful things. 3. The enemy's line was routed on the right wing. 4. Our soldiers will place all hope of safety in bravery. 5. On the following day Caesar led his forces out of the camp.

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Domus Rōmāna** — *Concluded*

Locus proximus ātriō appellātus est *tablīnum*. Hīc tabulae familiārēs condēbantur; hīc quoque dominus pecūniam servābat atque suum opus faciēbat.

Faucēs ab ātriō ad *peristȳlum*, tertiam partem domūs dūcēbant. In mediō peristȳlō pulcher hortus et fōns columnīs marmoreīs inclūdēbantur. Ubi vēla prō tablīnō reducta

---

10. impluvium: An open cistern in the floor of the atrium, into which the rain fell through the opening in the roof.

1. tabula, –ae, f., *record;* pl., *papers.*

2. quoque, post-positive adv., *also, too.*

4. faucēs, –ium, f., *narrow passage.*

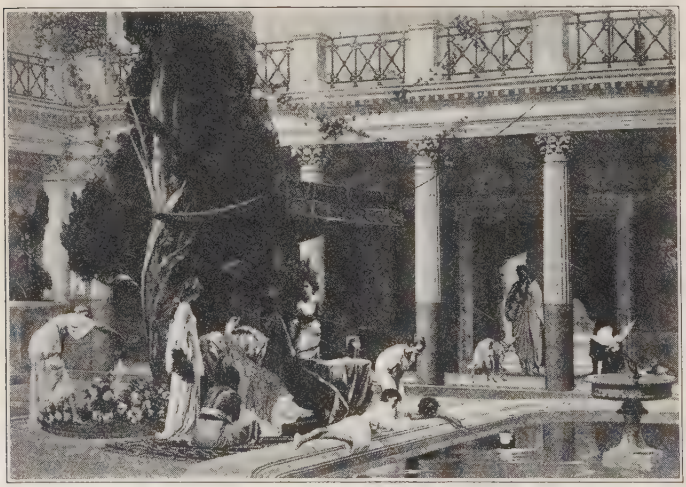
6. vēlum, –ī, n., *curtain.*

THE HOUSE OF THE VETTII AT POMPEII.

Above, the atrium with its impluvium; below, the peristyle.

sunt, tōta domus, — ātrium, deinde tablīnum, mox pulchrum peristȳlum, — ūnum in cōnspectum vēnit.

Peristȳlō adiacēbant trīclīnia, culīna, bibliothēca, cubicula, et cellae omnis generis. Superior domus servīs et lībertīs attribūta est.



THE HOME OF A WEALTHY ROMAN.

This shows the court with the impluvium, beside which the children are playing.

---

8. peristȳlō: dative of indirect object with a verb compounded with **ad** (62). References in parenthesis are to the grammar, 439–489.

9. trīclīnium, –ī, n., *dining room.* **culīna, –ae,** f., *kitchen.* **bibliothēca, –ae,** f., *library.* **cubiculum, –ī,** n., *bed-room.* These were so small that there was room for little more than the bed. There were day bed-rooms, **diurna cubicula,** for the midday siesta, and night bed-rooms, **nocturna cubicula,** the latter on the west side of the peristyle in order to catch the rays of the morning sun.

10. cella, –ae, f., *store-room.* **superior domus:** an upper story. For a cross-section of the way an upper story looked, see the cut on the opposite page. **lībertus, –ī,** m., *freedman.*

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

proximus, familiārēs, pecūniam, fōns, marmoreīs, inclūdēbantur, vēla, reducta, cōnspectum, adiacḗbant, culīna, cellae, generis, superior, attribūta.

Cross-Section of a Roman House in Pompeii.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi erat vestibulum domūs Rōmānae? 2. Quid plērumque erat in līmine? 3. Quō modo domus custōdiēbātur? 4. In quot partēs interior domus dīvidēbātur? 5. Quid prīma pars appellāta est? 6. Quō modo lūx āerque in ātrium penetrāre poterant? 7. Cui erat tablīnum ūsuī? 8. Quid erat in peristȳlō? 9. Ubi vēla prō tablīnō reducta sunt, quae partēs domūs vidērī poterant? 10. Quibus superior domus attribūta est?

6. English Derivatives. — Nouns of the Fifth Declension that have been taken unchanged into English are **rabiēs, seriēs,** and **speciēs;** also **requiem,** Acc. Sing., and **speciē,** Abl. Sing. Define these nouns, and note especially the difference in meaning between English *species* and *specie*, words that are often confused by even educated persons. The abbreviation M. is for **merīdiēs,** *midday*. What is the full form of A.M. and P.M.?

LESSON III

IRREGULAR PRONOMINAL AND NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

Ē plūribus ūnum. — One out of many. — Motto of the United States

7. Nine Irregular Pronominal Adjectives. — The following nine adjectives (often used as pronouns) have the pronoun form **-īus** in the Genitive Singular and **-ī** in the Dative Singular for all genders. They are regular in the Plural.

alius, *another*	**ūnus,** *one*	**alter,** *the other*
sōlus, *alone*	**ūllus,** *any*	**uter,** *which?* (of two)
tōtus, *whole*	**nūllus,** *none*	**neuter,** *neither*

(*a*) **Alius** and **ūnus** are declined in the Singular as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Gen.		alīus			ūnīus	
Dat.		aliī			ūnī	
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

NOTE. — **Alius** is the only one of these adjectives that has **-ud** in the Neuter. **Alter** has **alterīus** in the Genitive.

8. Irregular Numeral Adjectives. — The cardinal numerals from **quattuor** to **centum** are indeclinable. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus.**

The declension of **ūnus** has been given above. **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

	duo, *two*			**trēs**, *three*	
	M.	F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	

(*a*) **Mīlle** in the Singular is generally an adjective; but the Plural **mīlia** is a Neuter noun, and is followed by the *Genitive of the Whole*, as: **mīlle hominēs,** *a thousand men*, but **duo mīlia hominum,** *two thousand men*, (lit., *two thousands of men*).

(*b*) Form Drill. — *Decline:* **nōmen aliud; rēgīna sōla; neuter centuriō** (in Sing. only).

(*c*) Commit to memory the Nine Irregular Adjectives in this lesson.

Reading Lesson. — Supellex Domūs Rōmānae

Et in ātriō domūs Rōmānae et in peristȳlō, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, exigua erat supellex. In trīclīniō autem semper erat mēnsa, aut quadra aut orbis. Hārum mēnsārum multae erant pulcherrimae et magnī pretī. Plīnius Maior dē duābus mēnsīs scrīpsit, quārum pretium alterius fuit deciēs centēna mīlia sēstertium, alterius paulō minus. Convīvae

4. Plīnius Maior, *Pliny the Elder*, Roman historian and scientist, who lost his life in too closely observing the eruption of Vesuvius, which destroyed Pompeii, 79 A.D.

6. sēstertius, -ī, m., (Gen. Pl., **sēstertium**), *sesterce*, a small silver coin worth about five cents. How much did the table cost in dollars? The most expensive table tops were made from the African citrus tree,

circum mēnsam in sellīs nōn cōnsīdēbant. Sed ex tribus mēnsae lateribus erant lectī, in quibus novem convīvae accumbēbant, trēs in quōque lectō.

ROMAN FURNITURE.

10 Lignea aut aēnea erat lectī sponda, in quam torus et cervīcal et vestēs strāgulae impositae sunt. Lectus cubiculāris erat altior quam lectus trīclīniāris et scamnō ascendēbātur.

A GLASS CUP OVERLAID WITH SILVER.

---

which furnished a single board from three to four feet wide. Like the maple it took a high polish, which brought out its beautiful grain and markings.

9. quōque, abl. of **quisque.** How may it be distinguished from the adverb?

11. vestēs strāgulae: In wealthy houses the bed frames were highly artistic and the coverings were beautifully embroidered, but they could hardly be called comfortable beds. **cubiculāris:** The suffix **–āris** means *belonging to.*

A Roman Meal.

This shows the arrangement of the couches about the table.

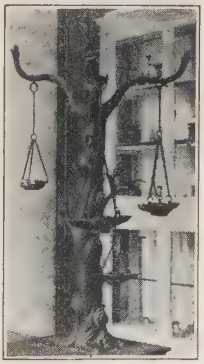
EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

scrīpsimus, quadra, orbis, pretium, mīlia, convīvae, circum, lateribus, novem, impositae, recumbēbant.

(*b*) Translate:

1. The price of this table is one hundred thousand sesterces. 2. To you alone will I tell the whole story (**rēs**). 3. A thousand soldiers were led to another hill. 4. The one town was ten miles away from them, the other a little less. 5. The cavalry of all (**tōtus**) Gaul assembled in one place.



Roman Hanging Lamps.

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Supellex Domūs Rōmānae**

Varia erant genera sellārum in domibus Rōmānīs. Maximē ūsitāta erat dūra sella quattuor rēctīs pedibus. Sed cathēdra, in quā fēminae plērumque sedēbant, erat simillima nostrīs sellīs. Omnium sellārum īnsignissima erat eburnea **sella curūlis** curvīs pedibus, in quā sōlī magistrātūs maiōrēs sedēbant.

Pulchrae sunt lucernae Rōmānae, quārum multa exempla adhūc exstant. Aliae fictilēs, aliae erant aēneae, sed saepe summā arte perfectae. Lucernae aut in mēnsās aut in alta candelābra impōnēbantur, aut etiam laqueāribus dē-pendēbant. Nōn autemclāram lūcem praebēbant.

AN ELABORATE CANDELABRUM.

---

2. ūsitātus, –a, –um, *used, common, ordinary.* **rēctus, –a, –um,** [part. of **regō**], *straight.*

3. cathēdra, –ae, f., a chair without arms, but with a curved back. Its later use by professors and bishops gave rise to the expression **ex cathēdrā,** *i.e.*, an authoritative statement.

4. īn-signis, –e, [**signum**], *distinguished.* **eburneus, –a, –um,** [**ebur,** *ivory*], *ivory.* **curūlis, –e,** *curule.*

7. lucerna, –ae, f., [**luceō,** *shine*], *lamp.* Roman lamps were vessels of various shapes containing oil, into which one or more wicks were inserted through holes in the top. There was no glass of any kind to protect the lighted wick.

8. ad-hūc, [**hūc,** *hither*], *hitherto, still.* **fictilis, –e,** *of clay.* **aēneus, –a, –um,** [**aēs,** *bronze*], *bronze.*

10. candelābrum, –ī, n., *lamp-stand.* **laqueāria, –ium,** n., *paneled ceilings.*

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

ivory, example, summit, various, used, depend, cathedral, magistrate, extant, perfected, durable, major, candelabrum, similar, art, nostrum, rect-angle.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Erat-ne multa supellex in domibus Rōmānīs? 2. Quālis mēnsa erat in trīclīniō? 3. Quae erant ex tribus mēnsae lateribus? 4. Quot convīvae in quōque lectō accumbēbant? 5. Erant-ne lectī Rōmānī commodī? 6. Quālis sella erat cathēdra? 7. Quī sōlī in sellā curūlī sedēbant? 8. Quālēs lucernās habēbant Rōmānī? 9. Praebēbant-ne clāram lūcem?

9. Word Formation. — *Compound Words.* Many English compound words are formed by attaching one word to another, as *bed-room, lamp-stand.* In the course of time, if these compounds prove to be useful, they unite into a single word and the hyphen disappears. Such words are *seaside, sunshine, bootblack.*

In Latin, too, compound words are similarly formed, as **aquae-ductus,** *aqueduct;* **armi-ger,** *armor-bearer.* Can you think of any others?

LESSON IV

THE INFINITIVE; COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE; REVIEW OF INFINITIVE IN SIMPLE INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Facere quam dīcere. — To act rather than to talk.
— SALLUST

10. The Infinitive. — The Infinitive is a form of the verb that has neither person nor number. It occurs in both the Active and Passive Voices, but has only three tenses, viz., the Present, Perfect, and Future. The sign of the Infinitive in English is *to*. Following are endings of the Latin Infinitive with their English equivalents:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	**-re,** *to*	**-rī** (3d Conj. **-ī**), *to be*
Perf.	**-isse,** *to have*	**-us esse,** *to have been*
Fut.	**-ūrus esse,** *to be about to*	**-um īrī,** *to be about to be* (This is very rare.)

(*a*) Each ending must be attached to its proper stem: the *Present*, Active and Passive, to the *present* stem; the *Perfect Active* to the *perfect active* stem; the *Perfect Passive*, and the *Future*, Active and Passive, to the *participial* stem. Thus the Infinitive of **amō** is formed as follows:

	Active	Passive
Pres.	amā–**re,** *to love*	amā–**rī,** *to be loved*
Perf.	amāv–**isse,** *to have loved*	amāt–**us** (–**a,** –**um**) **esse,** *to have been loved*
Fut.	amāt–**ūrus** (–**a,** –**um**) **esse,** *to be about to love*	amāt–**um īrī,** *to be about to be loved*

Note. — As **amātūrus** and **amātus** are participles, *i.e.* verbal *adjectives*, they must be made to agree with the Subject of the Infinitive in Gender, Number, and Case.

(*b*) Compare the Infinitive of the Four Regular Conjugations and of the Irregular verb **sum:**

Active

Pres.	amā–**re**	monē–**re**	rege–**re**	audī–**re**	es–**se**
Perf.	amāv–**isse**	monu–**isse**	rēx–**isse**	audīv–**isse**	fu–**isse**
Fut.	amāt–**ūrus esse**	monit–**ūrus esse**	rēct–**ūrus esse**	audīt–**ūrus esse**	fut–**ūrus esse**

Passive

Pres.	amā–**rī**	monē–**rī**	reg–**ī**	audī–**rī**
Perf.	amāt–**us esse**	monit–**us esse**	rēct–**us esse**	audīt–**us esse**
Fut.	amāt–**um īrī**	monit–**um īrī**	rēct–**um īrī**	audīt–**um īrī**

Note. — (*a*) Notice that in the Passive of the *Third* Conjugation the Present tense is formed — not by adding **–rī** to the stem — but by attaching **-ī** directly to the *verb-root.*

(*b*) Observe also the irregularity in the Present Infinitive of **sum.**

11. Complementary Infinitive. — Cupit *dīcere.* *He desires* to speak.

Here the Infinitive ***dīcere*** *completes* the meaning of **cupit.** Hence it is called the *Complementary Infinitive.*

12. Simple Indirect Discourse. — Verbs of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, and *perceiving*, are generally followed by the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

Nūntiāvit *equitēs pulsōs esse.* *He reported* **that the cavalry had been routed** (lit., **the cavalry to have been routed**).

TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE

Dīcit	***mīlitēs venīre.***	*He* **says** *that the soldiers* **are** *coming.*
Dīxit		*He* **said** *that the soldiers* **were** *coming.*
Dīcit	***mīlitēs vēnisse.***	*He* **says** *that the soldiers* **have** *come.*
Dīxit		*He* **said** *that the soldiers* **had** *come.*
Dīcit	***mīlitēs ventūrōs***	*He* **says** *that the soldiers* **will** *come.*
Dīxit	***esse***	*He* **said** *that the soldiers* **would** *come.*

(*a*) Observe that the tense changes in the English when the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a *past* tense, while the tense of the Latin Infinitive remains the same.

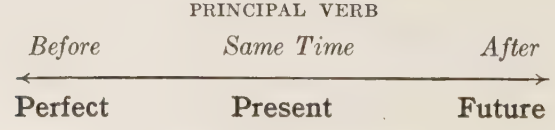
(*b*) The tense of the Latin Infinitive depends on the time of the principal verb. If the Infinitive denotes

1. The *same* time as the principal verb, it will be in the *Present* tense.

2. Time *before* that of the principal verb, it will be in the *Perfect* tense.

3. Time *after* that of the principal verb, it will be in the *Future* tense.

4. The following diagram will help to fix the relation between the *time* of the Principal verb and the *tense* of the Infinitive.



(*a*) Form Drill. — *Translate:* iussisse, mūnīrī, parātūrus esse, pulsōs esse, vincere, imperāvisse, mōtūrum esse, agī, doctus esse.

To lead, to have been placed, to be about to see, to be heard, to have written, to be warned, to be about to come, to wound, to be closed.

Reading Lesson. — Līberī Rōmānī

Līberī Rōmānī prīmā aetāte ā mātre suā ēducābantur. Ab eā discēbant patriam dīligere, deōs colere, vērum dīcere, et maximē semper pārēre. Rōmānī enim exīstimābant oboedientiam esse summam virtūtem.

A Roman Boy at Play.

Māter quidem erat cōnstāns comes puellārum. At puerī quam prīmum patrī commendātī sunt, ā quō discēbant equitāre et nāre et in armīs exercērī. Sīc validī fortēsque factī sunt.

Puer, ubi erat circiter septem annōs nātus, cum paedagōgō in lūdum litterārium ībat. Lūdus in apertā pergulā docēbātur, ubi discipulī māne —

Roman Woman Spinning.

7. puellārum: Girls as well as boys attended the elementary schools mentioned below, but they were not urged on to complete the course. Their place was rather at home with their mothers, learning to spin and weave and fit themselves for household duties when they married.

14. paedagōgō: A slave who accompanied the boy to and from school, and had general charge of him during the day. He was not however a tutor, as the English derivative *pedagogue* would imply.

15. in apertā pergulā: Similar verandah schools opening directly on the street are still common in the Orient. The teacher recites a line, and the pupils immediately repeat it at the top of their voices. Far from being disturbed by street noises, they them-

hieme quidem ante lūcem — convenīre cōnsuērunt. Magister erat sevērissimus atque ferulā puerōs saepe verberābat. Horātius dīxit suum magistrum Orbilium esse *plāgōsum.*

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

severe, educate, in-valid, ferule, constant, obedience, culture, maternal, primer, comity, re-verberate, disciple, verity, pergola.

(*b*) Translate:

1. The lieutenants had determined to break camp before dawn. 2. Horace said that Orbilius often flogged the pupils with a rod. 3. The legions are preparing to make an attack upon the enemy. 4. The general ordered the ambassadors to be led through the camp. 5. The messenger said that the enemy had already been defeated.

Sight Translation. — **Līberī Rōmānī** — *Concluded*

In lūdīs litterāriīs discipulī legere et scrībere et vel digitīs vel abacō ratiōnēs computāre discēbant. Prīmum stilō in

---

selves can be heard a block away! Likewise in ancient Rome — as we learn from certain Roman poets — people living near the schools often complained of the loss of their early morning nap.

16. ante lūcem: For an hour or two at this season the children studied by the dim light of smoky lamps, which they brought with them to the school. **cōnsuērunt** for **cōnsuēvērunt,** from **cōnsuēscō.** Perfects in **-āvī, -ēvī,** and **-īvī** often drop the **-ve** or **-vi** before endings beginning with **r** or **s.**

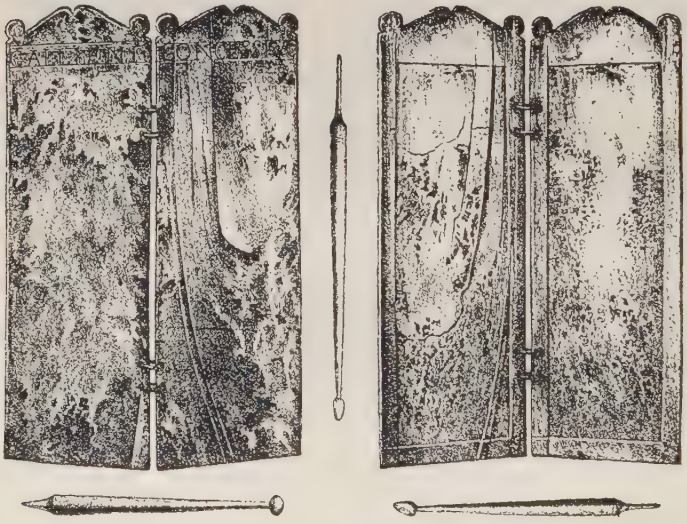
1. vel, conj., *or;* **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or.* **digitus, -ī,** m., *finger.*

2. abacus, -ī, m., *the abacus,* a wooden frame containing wires strung with sliding balls. The lower part is for units, the upper part for tens. It is still used in China, and may be seen in any Chinese laundry in an American city. **ratiō, -ōnis,** f., *reckoning, account, sum.* **stilus, -ī,** m., *the style,* a pencil-shaped instrument made of iron, bronze, bone,

ROMAN SCHOOL LIFE.

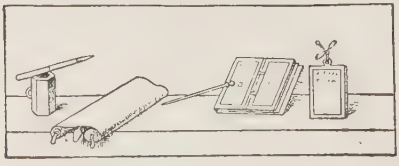
Above: Instruction. Below: Discipline.

cērātā tabulā, deinde calamō in papȳrō scrībēbant. Multa praecepta ēdiscere cōnsuērunt, et maximē *Lēgem Duodecim Tabulārum.*



Double Tablets with Silver Rings and Style.

or ivory. Its pointed end was used to trace letters in wax-covered tablets. The other end, which was blunt, round or flat, could be used to erase what was written.



Roman Writing Materials.

Inkstand, pen, manuscript roll, stilus, and tablets.

3. cērātus, –a, –um, [**cēra,** *wax*], *waxed.* **calamus, –ī,** m., *a reed pen* with split point. **papȳrus, –ī,** m. and f., *papyrus,* paper made out of the pith of the papyrus reed, which grew along the Nile in Egypt. A thick ink (**ātrāmentum**), made of soot and gum, was used.

4. praeceptum, –ī, n., [**prae** + **capiō** for **capiō,** *instruct*], *maxims, wise sayings.* **ē-discō, –ere, –didicī,** —, *learn by heart, commit to memory.* **Lēx Duodecim Tabulārum,** *the Twelve Tables of the Law,* the first code of Roman law.

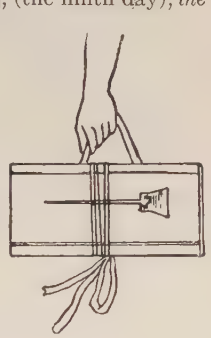
Circiter merīdiem discipulī ā magistrō dīmissī sunt, sed post prandium in lūdum rediērunt. Nundinīs et festīs diēbus et aestāte fēriās agēbant.

Ex lūdō litterāriō puerī in grammaticī lūdum prōcēdēbant, ubi litterīs Graecīs et Latīnīs studēbant. Hinc adulēscentēs, quōrum patrēs erant dīvitēs, in rhētōris scholam ībant. Dēnique paucī vel Athēnās vel Rhodum vel ad Asiam sē

7. prandium, –ī, n., *lunch, mid-day meal.* **red-eō, –īre, –iī, –itus,** *go back, return.* **nundinae, –ārum,** f., [**novem** + **diēs**], (the ninth day), *the market day,* on which country people came into the city to buy and sell.

8. fēriae, –ārum, f., *holidays.*

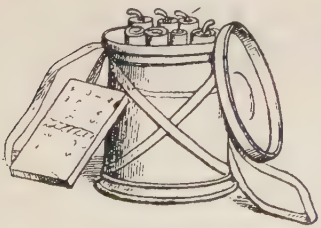
9. grammaticus, –ī, m., *a grammarian,* a teacher of the Greek language and literature, especially Homer. With the development of Latin literature the works of such Roman poets as Vergil and Horace were also studied in these "grammar schools."



TABLET AND STILUS. Tied up to be carried to school.

10. litterīs: See Vocab. **studeō, –ēre, –uī,** —, be *eager, apply one's self to;* note that this verb governs the *dative* (61). **adulēscēns, –entis,** m., [**olēscō,** *grow*], *young man,* a term applied to "young men" from the 17th to the 40th year of their age.

11. dīves, –itis, *rich.* **rhētor, –ōris,** m., *a rhetorician,* teacher of rhetoric or oratory. In these Schools of Rhetoric, Greek and Latin *prose* authors were studied. Cicero's orations became a part of the course even during his lifetime. The main object was to fit students to write their own speeches.



MANUSCRIPTS.

12. Athēnae, –ārum, f., *Athens* in Greece, preëminently the city of culture in ancient times. **Rhodus, –ī,** f., *Rhodes,* a city in the island of Rhodes south of Asia Minor. Note that no preposition, **ad** or **in,** is used to denote Limit of Motion in the case of *Towns and Small Islands,* like Athens and Rhodes (74). **Asia, -ae,** f., *Asia,* not — as now — the continent, but *Asia Minor.*

contulērunt, atque ibi clārissimīs magistrīs rhētōricīs operam dedērunt.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

digitīs, computāre, cērātā, papȳrō, praecepta, dīmissī, adulēscentēs, dīvitēs, scholam, rhētōricīs.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid līberī Rōmānī ā mātre discēbant? 2. Quae est summa virtūs? 3. Quid puerī ā patre discēbant? 4. Quis cum puerō ad lūdum ībat? 5. Quālēs virī erant magistrī? 6. Quid discipulī in lūdō litterāriō discēbant? 7. Quō modo scrībēbant? 8. Manēbant-ne in lūdō tōtum diem? 9. Quibus litterīs puerī in grammaticī lūdō studēbant? 10. Ībant-ne multī adulēscentēs in rhētōris scholam?

13. Word Formation. — *Suffixes.* In English, words are often formed by adding certain endings to nouns, adjectives, and verbs; as *friend–ship, great–ness, lead–er.* Such endings are called *suffixes,* (from **sub,** *close to* + **fīgere,** *to fix*). They have various meanings. Thus, in the three words given above, the suffix *–ship* denotes *the state* or *condition, –ness* denotes *the quality,* and *–er* denotes *the agent* or *doer.*

(*a*) *Nouns derived from Verbs.* Many words were formed in precisely the same way in Latin. For example, the Latin suffix **–or,** attached to the *participial*

---

13. cōn-ferō, –ferre, –tulī, col-lātus, *bear;* **sē cōnferre,** *betake one's self, go.* **clārissimīs magistrīs:** One of the most celebrated rhetoricians was **Apollōnius Molō** of Rhodes, under whom Julius Caesar studied. **opera, –ae,** f., [**opus**], *attention.*

stem of a verb, denotes *the agent* or *doer* of the action. Hence from the verb **canere,** *to sing,* is formed **cant-or,** *a singer.*

In like manner form nouns of agency from the verbs **imperāre** and **scrībere.** Explain the formation of the English derivatives *orator, monitor, victor.*

LESSON V

PARTICIPLES; ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE; GERUND

Vigilandō, agundō, bene cōnsulundō, prōspera omnia cēdunt. — *Vigilance, action, wise counsels, — these insure success.*

— SALLUST

14. Participles. — A participle is a *verbal adjective;* as a *verb* it may be followed by an object; as an *adjective* it must agree with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

PRESENT AND FUTURE PARTICIPLES OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

NAME	VERB-STEM	ENDING	MEANING
PRESENT	Present	**–ns**, gen., **–ntis**	*–ing*
FUTURE	Participial	**–ūrus, –a, –um**	*about to*

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

PERFECT	Participial	**–us, –a, –um**	*having been*

FIRST CONJUGATION

PRESENT	amā–**ns**, ama–**ntis**, *loving*
FUTURE	amāt–**ūrus, –a, –um**, *about to love*
PERFECT	amāt–**us, –a, –um**, *having been loved*

	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
PRESENT	monē–**ns**	regē–**ns**	audiē–**ns**
FUTURE	monit–**ūrus**	rēct–**ūrus**	audīt–**ūrus**
PERFECT	monit–**us**	rēct–**us**	audīt–**us**

(*a*) Which of the principal parts of a verb is the Perfect Passive Participle?

(*b*) Notice that **-e** is added to the present stem in the *Fourth* conjugation.

(*c*) Observe that these three participles bear the same relation to the *time* of the Principal Verb as do the three tenses of the Infinitive, the *Present Participle* being used to denote the *same* time as the Principal Verb, the *Perfect*, time *before*, and the *Future*, time *after*. (See § 12, *a–b*.)

15. The Ablative Absolute. — The different uses of the Ablative Absolute are illustrated by the following examples:

1. ***Signō datō*, mīlitēs impetum fēcērunt.**

{ *The signal having been given,* / *When the signal was given,* / *At the signal,* } *the soldiers charged.* (Time)

2. ***Bellō cōnfectō*, in Ītaliam contendit.**

{ *The war having been finished,* / *When the war was finished,* / *Having finished the war,* } *he hastened into Italy.* (Time)

3. **Ā castrīs, *tē īnsciente*, discessit.**

{ *You not knowing,* / *Without your knowledge,* } *he departed from camp.* (Circumstances)

4. ***Caesare duce*, nihil timēmus.**

{ *Caesar (being) our leader,* / *With Caesar as leader,* } *we fear nothing.* (Cause)

5. ***Ventō secundō*, classis redībit.**

{ *The wind (being) favorable,* / *If the wind is favorable,* } *the fleet will return.* (Condition)

Notice that in the first two examples there is a noun (in the third, a pronoun) in the Ablative, and a participle agreeing with it, and that they define the *time* or *circumstances* of the action expressed in the main clause of the sentence. Notice also that they are *grammatically independent* of the rest of the sentence. Hence this construction is called the **Ablative Absolute.**

16. Rule for the Ablative Absolute. — A noun or pronoun in the Ablative with a participle, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, may be used to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action.

(*a*) Observe that in the fourth example a *noun*, and in the fifth an *adjective* is used instead of a participle. In both cases *being* is supplied in English. (The Latin **sum** has no Present Participle corresponding to *being*.)

(*b*) Observe that the literal translation of the Ablative Absolute is apt to be awkward. A smoother translation is obtained by using the Active participle with a direct object, or a clause introduced by a suitable conjunction, or two coördinate clauses.

Caution. — In translating English into Latin, do not imagine that *all* participles will have the Ablative Absolute construction. For example, if a participle belongs to the subject of a verb in the Indicative mood, it will of course be in the Nominative case, as: *Caesar*, **influenced** *by their entreaties, undertook the war.* **Caesar, *adductus* eōrum precibus, bellum suscēpit.**

17. Use of the Present Participle. — In Latin the Present Participle can only be used when it denotes the *same time* as the principal verb, as:

Vīdī eum *rīdentem.* *I saw him* **laughing.**

When therefore the Present Participle is used *loosely* in English to denote time *before* that of the principal

verb, a Perfect Participle or a clause must be substituted, as:

Ascertaining these facts, *they departed.* ***Hīs rēbus cognitīs*, discessērunt.**

18. The Gerund is a *verbal noun* of the Second Declension, used only in the Singular. It lacks the Nominative case, which is supplied by the Infinitive. It is formed by adding **–ndī, –ndō, –ndum, –ndō** to the present stem. (In the *Fourth* conjugation **–e** is added to the stem.)

THE GERUND

	Conj. I	Conj. II	Conj. III	Conj. IV
Gen.	ama–**ndī,** *of loving*	mone–**ndī**	rege–**ndī**	audie–**ndī**
Dat.	ama–**ndō,** *for loving*	mone–**ndō**	rege–**ndō**	audie–**ndō**
Acc.	ama–**ndum,** *loving*	mone–**ndum**	rege–**ndum**	audie–**ndum**
Abl.	ama–**ndō,** *by loving*	mone–**ndō**	rege–**ndō**	audie–**ndō**

19. Uses of the Gerund. — The gerund may take a direct object, but as a rule it does so only in the Genitive, or the Ablative (without a preposition). Following are examples of its use:

Gen. **Spēs *capiendī* urbem.** *Hope* **of taking** *the city.*

Dat. **Aqua ūtilis *bibendō.*** *Water useful* **for drinking.**

Acc. **Nāvēs inūtilēs *ad nāvigandum.*** *Ships useless* **for sailing.**

Abl. ***In metendō* occupātī sunt.** *They were occupied* **in reaping.**

DRILL. — Form and translate the three participles and the gerund of **portō, doceō, scrībō,** and **mūniō.** *Translate:* ductus, mōtūrus, veniēns, laudātus, discendō; hindering, of replying, about to free, having been defended.

READING LESSON. — Nūptiae Rōmānae

Diē nūptiārum spōnsa *tunicā rēctā* et *flammeō* indūta est. Ēius coma, cuspide hastae in sex crīnēs dīvīsa, vittīs nexa est.

A ROMAN PRIEST.

Ubi convīvae in spōnsae domum māne convēnērunt, optimīs auspiciīs nūntiātīs, caerimōniae peraguntur. Prīmum *prōnuba* spōnsam ad spōnsum dūcit, atque, decem testibus praesentibus, eōrum dextrās iungit. Deinde spōnsa sollemnia verba, "*Quandō tū Gaius, ego Gaia,*" dīcit. Dēnique Pontifex Iovī farreum lībum fert et Iūnōnī aliīsque deīs precēs adhibet.

Quibus rītibus factīs, omnēs convīvae ad novōs marītōs "fēlīciter" dīcendī causā congregant. Inde ūsque ad noctem epulīs accumbunt.

2. coma . . . dīvīsa: Perhaps going back to the ancient marriage by *capture.*

4. optimīs auspiciīs nūntiātīs: The auspices were taken before sunrise on the wedding day by haruspices, who consulted the entrails of a sheep they sacrificed.

6. prō-nuba, -ae, f., *bridesmaid,* who must be a married woman.

10. "Quandō tū Gaius, ego Gaia: lit., "*since you are Gaius, I am Gaia.*" The Romans used the names *Gaius* and *Gaia* to typify *husband* and *wife.* Hence the recital of this ancient formula indicated that the bride consented to become the wife of the bridegroom.

12. Iūnōnī aliīsque deīs: To Juno as the goddess of marriage, and to other deities of the country and its fruits.

17. epulīs, Dat. of Ind. Obj. with a verb compounded with **ad** (62).

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

nūptiae, spōnsa, tunicā, rēctā, indūta, nexa, auspiciīs, caerimōniae, testibus, praesentibus, dextrās, sollemnia, Pontifex, rītibus, marītōs, fēlīciter, congregant.

(*b*) Translate:

1. He said that the guests had assembled at the bridegroom's house. 2. Drawing their swords, they made an attack upon the enemy. 3. Abandoning the hope of conquering, the Germans departed. 4. Alarmed by these rumors, the Gauls begged-for peace. 5. Under the guidance of the gods, the Romans will be victorious.

BURNING INCENSE TO THE HOUSEHOLD GODS.

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Nūptiae Rōmānae** — *Concluded*

Ubi nox vēnit, nūpta speciē vīs dē mātris complexū āvulsa ad marītī domum dēdūcitur. Tībīcinēs et servī facēs ferentēs agmen praecēdunt. Post novōs marītōs veniunt convīvae, quibus mox magna turba plēbis sē iungit. Omnēs carmina canunt et "Talassiō" clāmitant. Nunc marītus 5

---

1. **com-plexus, –ūs,** m., [**plectō,** *twine*], *embrace.*

2. **ā-vellō, –ere, –vellī, –vulsus,** *tear away.* **tībī-cen, –inis,** m., [**tībia,** *flute* + **canō**], *flute-player.* **fax, facis,** f., *torch.*

3. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *bear.* **agmen, –inis,** n., [**agō**], *line, column, procession.*

4. **turba, –ae,** f., *crowd.*

5. **Talassiō!** Wedding salutation, going back to the time of Romulus; perhaps the name of a god of marriage. **clāmitō, –āre,** [**clāmō**], *keep shouting.*

puerīs nucēs spargit, quō significat sē nōn iam puerum esse.

Ubi ad marītī domum vēnērunt, nūpta postēs oleō unguit vittīsque ōrnat. Deinde nūpta malum ōmen āvertendī causā trāns līmen trāns-fertur. In ātriō marītus suam uxōrem *aquā et īgne* accipit, — vidēlicet quod illae duae rēs ad vīvendum maximē necessāriae sunt.

ROMAN HOUSEHOLD GODS.

Posterō diē erant *repōtia* apud marītum, quō tempore prīmum nūpta *Laribus et Penātibus* marītī sacrificāvit.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

precede, oil, potation, complex, plebeian, omen, con-vulsion, viz., sparse, sacrifice, dis-turb, violence, avert, novel, unguent, transfer, necessary.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō modo spōnsa Rōmāna diē nūptiārum indūta est? 2. Quō modo coma spōnsae dīvīsa est? 3. Quot testibus praesentibus, caerimōniae peraguntur? 4. Quae sollemnia

---

6. nux, nucis, f., *nut;* Roman boys played games with nuts, just as we do with marbles. **spargō, –ere, sparsī, sparsus,** *scatter.*

10. līmen, –inis, n., *threshold.*

11. uxor, –ōris, f., *wife.* **vidē-licet,** adv., [**vidēre licet,** *one may see*], *evidently.*

13. re-pōtia, –ōrum, n., [**pōtō,** *drink*], *return banquet.*

15. Larēs, –um, m., *Lares,* deified spirits of ancestors, protecting the home. **Penātēs, –ium,** m., *Penates,* guardian gods of the family.

verba ā spōnsā dīcuntur? 5. Quid, rītibus cōnfectīs, faciunt convīvae? 6. Ubi nox vēnit, quō nūpta dēdūcitur? 7. Cūr marītus puerīs nucēs spargit? 8. Ubi ad marītī domum vēnērunt, quid facit nūpta? 9. Quō modo marītus in ātriō nūptam accipit? 10. Quī erant Larēs et Penātēs?

20. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* In the last lesson we learned that the Latin suffix **–or,** attached to the *participial* stem of a verb, denotes *the agent* or *doer of the action.* When, however, the suffix **–or** is attached to the *verb-root,* it denotes *a condition* or *state of being* or *activity;* as **am–or,** *love.*

Form such Latin nouns from **errāre,** *to err,* **ardēre,** *to burn,* **dolēre,** *to grieve,* **furere,** *to rage.* Explain the formation of the English derivatives *clamor, terror, valor.*

LESSON VI

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES; ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

In maximā fortūnā minima licentia est. — *The higher your fortune, the less your freedom.*

— SALLUST

21. Irregular Comparison. — In English the most commonly used adjectives are the most irregular in comparison, as: *good, better, best; bad, worse, worst.* The same thing is true in Latin. Of the most irregularly compared Latin adjectives, the following five are very important:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, –a, –um *good*	**melior, melius** *better*	**optimus, –a, –um** *best*
malus, –a, –um *bad*	**peior, peius** *worse*	**pessimus, –a, –um** *worst*
magnus, –a, –um *great*	**maior, maius** *greater*	**maximus, –a, –um** *greatest*
parvus, –a, –um *small*	**minor, minus** *smaller*	**minimus, –a, –um** *smallest*
multus, –a, –um *much*	——, **plūs** *more*	**plūrimus, –a, –um** *most*
multī, –ae, –a *many*	**plūrēs, plūra** *more*	**plūrimī, –ae, –a** *most*

Plūs in the Singular is a Neuter noun. In the Plural **plūrēs, plūra** is an adjective. Note the difference between

its declension and the regular declension of comparatives (13).

22. The Ablative of Specification without a preposition is used to denote that in respect to which anything is or is done.

***Virtūte* praecēdunt.** *They excel* **in courage.**
Rēx *nōmine* erat. *He was king* **in name.**
***Numerō* ad duodecim.** *About twelve* **in number.**

(*a*) Notice that a noun in the Ablative without a preposition may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to *specify in what respect* anything *is* or *is done*.

Grammatical Drill. — *Translate:* Plūrimī, ab meliōre virō, maiōrī partī, minimus nātū, numerō plūrēs, peius accidit, optimī cīvēs, maximā tempestāte, minōrēs deī, plūs pecūniae.

With the greatest quickness, ten in number, the worst evils, by more nations, the best auspices, with less trouble, better in all respects.

Reading Lesson. — Vestis Rōmāna

Apud Rōmānōs vestīmenta virīlia erant numerō tria, — *subligaculum, tunica, toga.* Subligaculum erat lintea vestis, sed tunica et toga ex lānā albā factae sunt.

Tunica brevēs manicās habēbat atque ab umerīs ad genua pendēbat. Eam vestem Rōmānī omnium aetātum et domī et in opere suō gerere cōnsuērunt. Equitēs *tunicam angustī clāvī* sed senātōrēs *tunicam lātī clāvī* gerēbant.

Tunic and Toga.

7. in opere suō: In order to allow greater freedom while working, the tunic was often shortened by the use of a belt or girdle around the waist.

8. tunicam angustī clāvī: The tunic of the *equitēs* probably had *two*

ROMAN COSTUMES.

Toga erat longa et fūsa vestis, quae ūsque ad pedēs pendēbat. Ea quidem erat vestis propria cīvibus Rōmānīs. In forō, in viīs, in templīs et iūdiciīs, in omnibus locīs pūblicīs cīvis Rōmānus semper togātus appārēbat. Hinc Vergilius Rōmānōs *gentem togātam* appellāvit. 15

Roman Maiden.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

civic, virile, ap-propriate, vesture, appear, pendent, number, vestment.

(*b*) Translate:

1. Very many togaed citizens had already appeared in the Forum. 2. The father of these boys determined to send them to a larger city. 3. The best soldiers will be presented with the greatest rewards. 4. He says that the Germans surpass the Gauls both in number and courage. 5. Ascertaining these facts the lieutenant general recalled the legions to the smaller camp.

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Vestis Rōmāna** — *Concluded*

Toga praetexta, purpureō limbō circumdata, ā senātōribus et magistrātibus et puerīs gerēbātur. Puer, ubi erat circiter

---

narrow purple stripes running down from the shoulders both behind and in front, while that of the *senators* had *one broad* purple stripe running down the middle. We know that these classes were distinguished by *narrow* and *broad* stripes, but there is some uncertainty as to their number.

13. in omnibus locīs pūblicīs: Even in the house the Roman gentleman wore the toga *on formal occasions*, such as when he received his clients in their morning call upon him.

1. prae-textus, –a, –um, [**texō,** *weave*], *bordered.* **limbus, –ī,** m., *border.* **circum-dō, –dare, –dedī, –datus,** *surround, border.*

A Matron.

septendecim annōs nātus, togā praetextā dēpositā, togam virīlem sūmpsit. Tum ille ā patre amīcīsque plūrimīs per Forum ad Capitōlium dēdūcitur, ubi sacrificium in templō Līberī agitur. Deinde ille, nōn iam puer, erat iuvenis.

Vestis propria mātrōnīs Rōmānīs erat *stola*, quae ūsque ad pedēs pendēbat, sed aliīs rēbus erat similis tunicae virīlī. Ubi autem mātrōna foras exiit, *pallam* sūmpsit.

Hominum capillus tōnsus est. Fēmi-

7. Līber, –ī, m., [libō], *Liber*, an ancient Italian god of fruits, identified with Bacchus, the Greek god of wine.

12. palla, –ae, f., *the palla*, a Roman lady's outer garment, corresponding to the toga for men.

14. capillus, –ī, m., *hair.* **tondeō, –ēre, totondī, tōnsus,** *cut, clip short.* Barber shops were plentiful and were much frequented by gossiping common people. Children's hair was allowed to grow long.

A Roman Barber Shop.

nae autem modō īnsignis-15 simō comam longam compōnere cōnsuērunt. Foris omnēs capite dētēctō ībant.

Plērumque Rōmānī domī soleās gerēbant. Ubi autem 20 foras exiērunt, calceōs induēbant.

Terra Cotta Figure of a Barber.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

purpureō, limbō, dēpositā, sūmpsit, iuvenis, mātrōnīs, stola, capillus, tōnsus, compōnere, dētēctō, soleās.

A Roman Razor.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quae tria vestīmenta Rōmānī gerēbant? 2. Ubi tunica gerēbātur? 3. Ubi cīvis Rōmānus semper togātus appārēbat? 4. Nōnne servī et aliēnī togam gerēbant? 5. Quis togam praetextam gerēbat? 6. Quae caerimōniae perāctae sunt, ubi puer togam virīlem sūmpsit? 7. Quālis vestis erat stola? 8. Ubi mātrōna Rōmāna pallam gessit? 9. Num coma

---

15. īn-signis, –e, [**signum**], *remarkable, striking.* The art of hair-dressing was highly developed, and the *coiffeur* of Roman ladies was much more remarkable than that of our time.

16. com-pōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, *arrange.*

18. dē-tegō, –ere, –tēxī, –tēctus, *uncover, expose.*

20. solea, –ae, f., *sandal.*

21. calceus, –ī, m., a leather *shoe,* fastened with laces or straps.

Roman Shoes.

DRESS OF A POOR BOY.

mātrōnae tōnsa est? 10. Erant-ne calceī Rōmānī similēs nostrīs?

23. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* The suffix **–iō,** attached to verb-roots and participial stems, denotes *the action* expressed by the verb or *the result* or *state of the action.* Thus from **legere,** *to collect,* is formed the noun **leg-iō,** *a collecting* (of soldiers), *legion;* from **sess-us,** the participle of **sedēre,** *to sit,* we have **sess-iō,** *a sitting, session.*

Form and define Latin nouns from **mittere,** *to send,* **obsidēre,** *to besiege,* **contendere,** *to contend,* **ōrāre,** *to speak.* Explain the formation of the English derivatives *action, region, munition, station, vocation.*

LESSON VII

REVIEW

Veritās vōs līberābit. — The truth shall set you free.
— Motto of Johns Hopkins University

Form Review

1. *Decline:* **exercitus fortis; cornū; domus; rēs alia; diēs.** 2. Give the gender rules for the Fourth and Fifth Declensions with exceptions. 3. *Decline:* **alter; ūllus; duo; trēs; mīlia.** 4. Distinguish between the use of **mīlle** in the Singular and Plural. 5. Name the nine Irregular Adjectives. In what does their irregularity consist? 6. Give the endings of the Latin Infinitive with their English equivalents, naming the tenses. 7. Give the Active and Passive Infinitive of **doceō** and **mittō.** 8. Give the Infinitive of **sum.** 9. Give the names, endings, and meanings of the three participles you have studied. 10. From what stem is each formed? 11. Form the participles and gerund of **dūcō** and **mūniō.** 12. Compare in Latin and English the five irregularly compared adjectives that you have learned.

Syntax Review

1. How does the Infinitive differ from other moods? 2. What is meant by the Complementary Infinitive? 3. State the rule for Indirect Discourse. 4. On what does the tense of the Infinitive depend? 5. When will it be Present? Perfect? Future? 6. What is a participle? 7. State the rule for the Ablative Absolute. 8. What may be used

instead of the participle? 9. Is there an Ablative Absolute in the sentence: *The Gauls having been conquered sent hostages to Caesar.* Why? 10. When only may the Present Participle be used in Latin? Give an example of its use. 11. What is a gerund? 12. State the rule for the Ablative of Specification, and give an example of it.

Review of Word Formation

1. What is a suffix? 2. What suffix is often used to form nouns of the Fourth Declension? 3. What do such nouns denote? 4. Form similar nouns from **adveniō, exerceō,** and **videō.** 5. Mention three nouns each of the Fourth and Fifth Declension that have been adopted without change in the English language. 6. What Latin words are used to form the following compound words: **agricola, negōtium, beneficium, duodēvīgintī.** 7. Explain the formation of the following words: **timor, statiō, ōrātor, error, mūnītiō, imperātor, clāmor, scrīptor, legiō.** 8. Explain the formation of the English derivatives: *monitor, contention, ardor, valor, vocation.*

Sight Translation. — Servī

Prīmō Rōmānī paucōs servōs habēbant, quod operam suam quisque facere volēbat. At Imperī Rōmānī temporibus plūrimī erant servī. Aliī bellō captī erant, aliī aut ex gentibus externīs aut ex prōvinciīs Rōmānīs dēportātī erant. Cotīdiē servī in auctiōne vēndēbantur.

---

2. volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing.*

4. prōvincia, -ae, f., *province,* territory outside of Italy, which had been conquered by the Romans and was under their government. The provinces of the Empire embraced all Europe west of the Rhine and south of the Danube, and besides, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt, and most of the northern coast of Africa. **cotī-diē,** adv., [**quot,** *how many* + **diēs**], *every day, daily.*

5. vēn-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, [**vēnum,** *sale* + **dō**], *sell.* Slaves of great value were often sold privately, but ordinary slaves were sold at

Erant duo genera familiārum, quārum altera *familia urbāna*, altera *familia rūstica* appellābātur. Familia urbāna in domō urbānā exercēbātur, ubi servō cuique suum proprium mūnus datum est. Servī ā dominō līberātī factī sunt **lībertī.**

Familiae rūsticae autem labōrandī causā in magnīs praediīs continēbantur. Eōrum servōrum rēs erat pessima. Interdiū catēnātī in agrīs labōrābant, nocte in ergastulīs claudēbantur.

---

public auctions. They were stripped and placed upon a stone block or platform for inspection. Prices varied from $100 for a common laborer to several thousand dollars for educated and accomplished slaves. M. Scaurus is said to have paid $28,000 for a slave of high literary attainments!

6. familia, –ae, f., *household slaves.*

7. rūsticus, –a, –um, [**rūs,** *country*], *rustic, country.*

9. mūnus, –eris, n., *service, duty.* A certain number of slaves was appointed for each department of the household. Thus the **cubiculāriī** attended to the bedrooms, the **trīclīniāriī** to the dining-rooms, the **culīnāriī** to the kitchen, etc, etc. In a home of great wealth the *familia* would number several hundred slaves. **lībertus, –ī,** m., [**līber**], *freedman.* Sometimes the master would grant freedom to a slave for long and faithful service or for an unusually brave deed, — let us say in saving the life of some member of the family. Then again slaves, who were trusted to buy provisions, clothing, etc. for the household or even to carry on some business for their master, were allowed a small commission, with the promise that when these savings (**pecūlium**) amounted to a certain sum they would be set free. Many of these freedmen acquired great wealth and power. Several actually rose to the highest position in the government service under the Emperors.

10. prae-dium, –ī, n., *farm, estate.*

11. con-tineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus, [**teneō**], *hold, keep.* **rēs,** *lot, condition.* **inter-diū,** adv., [**diēs**], *during the day.*

12. catēnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, [**catēna,** *chain*], *chain together.* **ergastulum, –ī,** n., *dungeon;* pl., *barracks,* partly underground, filthy prisons. As for escaping, that was well-nigh impossible. Moreover, if a runaway slave was caught, he was brought back in chains and scourged, was branded on the forehead with the letter F for **fugītīvus,** and was sent to work in the quarries for the rest of his life. There is still preserved in Rome an iron collar, once worn by a **fugītīvus,** which has the following inscription upon it: **Fūgī. Tenē mē. Cum revocā-**

Semper virgīs vel flagellō verberābantur, atque etiam, nefāriō scelere susceptō, crucī suffīxī sunt.

Ita paulātim Rōmānī, mūtātīs mōribus, in omnibus operae generibus servōs exercēre cōnsuērunt. Multī scrīptōrēs exīstimant id maximē antīquās virtūtēs perdidisse atque Imperī Rōmānī exitium mātūrāvisse.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

proper, external, perdition, family, continent, deport, liberty, crucify, vender, nefarious, captive, rustic, servile, urban, flagellation, auction, province, mutation, clause, mature.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr prīmō Rōmānī paucōs servōs habēbant? 2. Unde servī ad urbem Rōmam dēportātī sunt? 3. Ubi habitābat familia urbāna? 4. Quī erant lībertī? 5. Ubi labōrābat familia rūstica? 6. Quō modo malī servī pūniēbantur? 7. Quās virtūtēs Rōmānī propter servōrum multitūdinem āmīsērunt?

---

veris mē d(ominō) m(eō), accipis solidum. *I have run away. Catch me. When you take me back to my master, you will receive a solidus* (gold coin worth about $3.00).

13. virga, –ae, f., *rod.* **flagellum, –ī,** n., *whip, scourge,* made of cords with numerous knots, in which bits of bone or metal hooks were sometimes inserted to tear the flesh. **nefārius, –a, –um,** [**nefas,** *sin, crime*], *infamous.*

14. scelus, –eris, n., *crime.* **crux, crucis,** f., *cross.* **suf-fīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus,** [**sub**], *fasten, affix.*

15. paulātim, adv., [**paulus**], *little by little.* **mōs, mōris,** m., *habit, custom.*

17. per-dō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *destroy, ruin.*

18. ex-itium, –ī, n., [eō], *destruction.* **mātūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus,** *hasten.*

LESSON VIII

MOODS; SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM;* INDEPENDENT VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE; PLACE TO WHICH WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

Gaudeāmus igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus. — Let us then be merry, while we are young.

— University Song of the Middle Ages

---

24. Moods. — A *mood* represents a person's *state of mind* in expressing action or being. The Indicative Mood is used in expressing *a fact*, as: **I have studied** *the lesson.* The Imperative Mood is used in expressing *a command*, as: **Study** *the lesson.* The Latin Subjunctive Mood, which we are to study now, is used in expressing action or being as *an idea*, — e.g. as *a desire* or *wish, a purpose*, or *a possibility*, — as: **Let us study** *the lesson.*

Note. — In English the true Subjunctive is now but little used, as compared with its use in Latin or the modern languages we study in school. That is partly because we prefer to use auxiliary verbs such as *let, may, should*, etc. in independent sentences, and partly because we have gradually lost the more subtle ideas of expression that were contained in the old English Subjunctive in dependent clauses. Nowadays we seldom hear such sentences as: *If it* **be** *wrong, we must not do it.* The tendency is to substitute the Indicative for the Subjunctive. Indeed we should have long since lost the valuable *idea of unreality* in sentences like, *If it* **were** *wrong, I would not do it*, if it were not for the particular emphasis that has been laid upon it of late by teachers of English in our schools. Perhaps the tendency to substitute the Indicative for the Sub-

junctive is due to the fact that Anglo-Saxons are naturally more positive and less subtle in the expression of their ideas than are the peoples of other nations.

25. The Latin Subjunctive. — The Latin Subjunctive has four tenses, viz., the Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. It is variously translated, sometimes by the auxiliary verbs *let*, *may*, *might*, etc., but more often by the proper tense of the Indicative Mood. *Particular attention must therefore be paid to the translation of the different uses of the Subjunctive, as they appear, one by one, in this and the following lessons.*

SUBJUNCTIVE OF **SUM**

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
s–i–m	**s–ī–mus**	**es–se–m**	**es–sē–mus**
s–ī–s	**s–ī–tis**	**es–sē–s**	**es–sē–tis**
s–i–t	**s–i–nt**	**es–se–t**	**es–se–nt**

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fu–eri–m	**fu–erī–mus**	**fu–isse–m**	**fu–issē–mus**
fu–erī–s	**fu–erī–tis**	**fu–issē–s**	**fu–issē–tis**
fu–eri–t	**fu–eri–nt**	**fu–isse–t**	**fu–isse–nt**

(*a*) The Subjunctive has two principal uses:

I. It may be used *independently.*

II. It may be used in *dependent* clauses.

26. The Independent Volitive Subjunctive represents an idea as *willed.*

1. **Fortēs *sīmus*.** **Let us be** *brave.*
2. ***Nē* ignāvī *sīnt*.** **Let them** *not* **be** *cowards.*

(*a*) Observe that these are *independent* sentences. The Subjunctive represents, not a fact, but *an idea*, — something

that is *willed* or *wished.* It is called the **Volitive** Subjunctive, a word derived from **volō,** *to will* or *wish.* In this use of the Subjunctive, only the *Present Tense* is used.

(*b*) Note that the negative is **nē,** as in example 2.

27. Place to Which without a Preposition. — *Place to which* is expressed by the *Accusative with* **ad** *or* **in.** But names of towns, small islands, **domus** and **rūs** omit the preposition.

Ībō	***in* Ītaliam.**	*I shall go*	*to Italy.*
	***ad* flūmen.**		*to the river.*
Ībō	**Rōmam.**	*I shall go*	*to Rome.*
	Dēlum.		*to Delos.*
	domum.		*home.*
	rūs.		*to the country.*

Grammatical Drill. — *Translate:* erāmus, fuistī, sit, erunt, sumus, sīmus, fuerātis. *Translate:* I shall have been, you (pl.) are, he will be, let them be, we had been, you (sing.) have been. In what mood, tense, person, and number are: fuissēs, est, essēmus, fueritis, fuerītis, fuī, sīs? *Translate:* Veniet ad Galliam, Massiliam, Rhodum, in Asiam, domum, rūs. *Translate:* We went to Athens, to Greece, to Aegina, home, to the country.

Reading Lesson. — **Triumphus Rōmānus**

Gaius. Heus! Heus! Ubi es, Mārce?

Mārcus. Hīc adsum. Quid est?

G. Nōnne scīs Caesarem, quī modo ab Āfricā Rōmam rediit, hodiē triumphat? Iam multitūdō per viās sē con-

4. **triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** [**triumphus**], *celebrate a triumph.* This was in 46 B.C. after Caesar's victory over the Pompeians at Thapsus. It was a *fourfold* triumph in honor of his conquest of Gaul, Pontus, Egypt, and Numidia.

gregat, templa patent, ārae fūmant. Nōnne vīs pompam spectāre?

M. Certē. At quid nōs parvulī in tantā multitūdine vidēre possumus?

The German Princess Thusnelda in the Triumph of Germanicus.

G. Immo vērō, stantēs in summō gradū templī Castoris omnēs rēs vidēre possumus. Venī mēcum. Nē tardī sīmus. Sī percurrēmus, mox ad templum perveniēmus.

* * * * * * * * *

G. (*in summō templī gradū*). Ecce! Pompa iam Viā Sacrā appropinquat.

---

5. vīs, 2*nd* Sing. Pres. Indic. of the irregular verb **volō,** *wish.*

9. templī Castoris: On the south side of the Forum a temple was erected to the twin gods, Castor and Pollux, for leading the Romans to victory in the battle of Lake Regillus, 484 B.C. It was rebuilt by the Emperor Augustus. Three beautiful Corinthian columns — still standing — mark the site.

12. Viā Sacrā: This was the principal street in Rome. It can be clearly traced even now. Passing through the Arch of Titus it runs alongside the temple of Castor and the Basilica Julia to the Capitol.

M. Quī prīmī incēdunt?

G. Illī sunt magistrātūs et senātōrēs. Deinde veniunt cornicinēs. Post illōs multī captīvī dūcuntur.

M. Quis est ille superbus vir?

G. Ille est Vercingetorīx, summus dux Gallōrum. Trīstis est sors nōbilissimōrum captīvōrum! Nūper rēgēs, rēgīnae, prīncipēs, nunc sunt servī catēnīs vinctī! Quōrum aliquī, dum imperātor Capitōlium ascendit, dēductī in carcerem immolābuntur.

THE ROMAN FORUM.

At the left are the three columns of the Temple of Castor, where the boys stood. From the right foreground through the center runs the Via Sacra.

---

18. Vercingetorīx was a Gallic chieftain of great ability and of rare personal magnetism, who succeeded in uniting the whole of Gaul against Caesar in the dangerous rebellion of 52 B.C. Decisively defeated and compelled to surrender at Alesia, he was kept a prisoner until Caesar celebrated this triumph. He was among the captives that were sacrificed to the gods on this occasion.

M. Cōnspicis-ne nōnnūllōs mīlitēs ferentēs titulōs?

G. Cōnspiciō. In ūnō titulō īnscrībuntur ea tria verba, **Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.**

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

fūmant, pompam, spectāre, certē, gradū, tardī, superbus, sors, dēductī, carcerem, immolābuntur, titulōs, īnscrībuntur.

(*b*) Translate:

1. Let us not be so foolish. 2. Several of the young men had returned from Greece to Rome. 3. They said that the slaves had escaped from Italy to Gaul. 4. Let the feast be magnificent. 5. Have not the boys returned home?

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Triumphus Rōmānus** — *Concluded*

M. Audīs-ne clāmōrēs multitūdinis? Clāmitant, "Caesar adest! Caesar adest!"

G. Imperātor ipse adest, quod lictōrēs vidēre possum. Nunc dēmum eum cōnspiciō. Aureō currū vehitur, alterā manū lauream, alterā scēptrum tenēns. Est indūtus togā

---

24. cōnspiciō: To answer "Yes" the Romans most often repeated the verb or the most emphatic word of the preceding question.

25. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī: This was the brief dispatch that Caesar sent to Rome to announce his victory — after a five days' campaign — over Pharnaces, king of Pontus, in 47 B.C.

3. lictor, –ōris, m., *lictor,* an attendant who carried the **fascēs** before a Roman magistrate as a symbol of honor and authority. See p. 221, 8, N. The number of lictors to which a magistrate was entitled depended on his rank. The praetor urbanus had two; the consul, twelve; the dictator, twenty-four. As Caesar had been dictator *twice,* he was accorded the honor of having *forty-eight* lictors in this triumph!

4. dēmum, adv., *at last.* **aureus, –a, –um,** [**aurum**], *golden.* **currus, –ūs,** m., [**currō**], *chariot.* **vehō, –ere, vexī, vectus,** *carry;* pass., *ride.*

5. laurea, –ae, f., *laurel wreath*

pictā et tunicā palmātā. Servus stāns in currū post eum auream corōnam suprā eius caput tenet.

M. Nunc Caesaris lēgātī et tribūnī et equitēs ōrnātissimī praetervehuntur.

THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR.

G. Ecce! Peditēs ferentēs praedam, — aurum, argentum, signa, armaque. Clāmitant, "Iō triumphe! Iō triumphe!" Ille est fīnis triumphī. Nōnne erat spectāculum splendidum?

---

6. pictus, –a, –um, [pingō, *paint*], *colored;* **toga picta,** a purple toga adorned with golden stars. **palmātus, –a, –um,** [palma, *palm*], embroidered with palm branches as a symbol of victory; **tunica palmāta,** a purple tunic embroidered with golden palms.

8. ōrnātus, –a, –um, [ōrnō], *splendidly equipped.*

9. praeter-vehuntur: praeter, prep. with Acc., *by, past;* see **vehō** above.

10. pedes, –itis, m., [pēs], *foot-soldier;* pl., *infantry.* **praeda, –ae,** f., *booty, plunder.* **argentum, –ī,** n., *silver.*

11. Iō! interj. *hurrah!* **triumphe!** is also a part of the exclamation.

M. Sānē. Quid autem imperātor in Capitōliō faciet?

G. Ille, captīvīs immolātīs, in templō Iovis sacra faciet. Deinde in Forum dēscendet atque suīs fīdīs commīlitōnibus ampla praemia distribuet. Dēnique, epulīs in templō cōnfectīs, ā plūrimīs cīvibus comitātus domum redībit.

M. Quam celeriter tempus fūgit! Eāmus domum statim. Equidem putō nostrōs patrēs nōs animadversūrōs esse, quod iniussū abiimus.

G. Minimē! Ipsī quondam erant puerī! Valē.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

sceptre, descend, aureole, fugitive, coronation, vehicle, premium, distribute, palm, multitude, laureate, splendid, ornate, finish.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō Gaius et Mārcus pompam videndī causā currere cōnstituērunt? 2. Ubi est templum Castoris? 3. Quā viā pompa appropinquābat? 4. Quī in pompā prīmī incēdēbant? 5. Quis erat Vercingetorīx? 6. Quid erat eius fātum? 7. Quae tria verba in ūnō titulō īnscrīpta sunt?

---

14. sānē, adv., [**sānus**], *surely; Yes, indeed!*

16. fīdus, –a, –um, [**fīdō**], *faithful.* **com-mīlitō, –ōnis,** m., [**mīles**], *fellow-soldier;* in addressing his soldiers Caesar always used the word **commīlitōnēs.**

18. comitātus, –a, –um, [**comitō** from **comes**], *accompanied.* **redībit,** Fut. of irreg. verb **red-eō.**

19. eāmus, Pres. Subj. of irreg. verb **eō,** *let us go.*

20. e-quidem, adv., *truly, indeed; for my part.* **anim-ad-vertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus,** [**animus**], *(turn one's mind to), attend to, punish.*

21. in-iussus, –ūs, m., [**iubeō**], (only the Abl. in use), *without orders, of our own accord.* **ab-eō, –īre, –īvī** or **–iī, —,** *go away, go off.*

22. minimē, adv., [sup. of **parum**], *by no means, not at all.* **quondam,** adv., *once, formerly.* **valē,** [Imperative of **valeō**], *farewell, good-by.*

8. Quis erat imperātor? 9. Quid peditēs clāmitābant? 10. Quid fēcit Caesar in Capitōliō? 11. Putās-ne puerōs ā patribus animadversōs esse?

28. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* Besides **–iō** and **–tus,** the suffix **–ūra,** attached to participial stems, also denotes *the action* expressed by the verb or *the result* or *state of the action.* Thus from **pingere,** *to paint,* the noun **pīct–ūra,** *painting,* PICTURE, is formed.

Form and define Latin nouns from **sepelīre,** *to bury,* and **tondēre,** *to cut.* Explain the formation of the English words *scripture, stature,* and *culture.*

LESSON IX

ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. PURPOSE CLAUSES

Oportet ēsse ut vīvās, nōn vīvere ut edās. — *You should eat to live, not live to eat.* — CORNIFICIUS

ACTIVE VOICE — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

	Conj. I	Conj. II	Conj. III	Conj. IV
Present Tense	am–**e**–m	mone–**a**–m	reg–**a**–m	audi–**a**–m
	am–**ē**–s	mone–**ā**–s	reg–**ā**–s	audi–**ā**–s
	am–**e**–t	mone–**a**–t	reg–**a**–t	audi–**a**–t
	am–**ē**–mus	mone–**ā**–mus	reg–**ā**–mus	audi–**ā**–mus
	am–**ē**–tis	mone–**ā**–tis	reg–**ā**–tis	audi–**ā**–tis
	am–**e**–nt	mone–**a**–nt	reg–**a**–nt	audi–**a**–nt
Imperfect Tense	amā–**re**–m	monē–**re**–m	rege–**re**–m	audī–**re**–m
	amā–**rē**–s	monē–**rē**–s	rege–**rē**–s	audī–**rē**–s
	amā–**re**–t	monē–**re**–t	rege–**re**–t	audī–**re**–t
	amā–**rē**–mus	monē–**rē**–mus	rege–**rē**–mus	audī–**rē**–mus
	amā–**rē**–tis	monē–**rē**–tis	rege–**rē**–tis	audī–**rē**–tis
	amā–**re**–nt	monē–**re**–nt	rege–**re**–nt	audī–**re**–nt
Perfect Tense	amāv–**eri**–m	monu–**eri**–m	rēx–**eri**–m	audīv–**eri**–m
	amāv–**erī**–s	monu–**erī**–s	rēx–**erī**–s	audīv–**erī**–s
	amāv–**eri**–t	monu–**eri**–t	rēx–**eri**–t	audīv–**eri**–t
	amāv–**erī**–mus	monu–**erī**–mus	rēx–**erī**–mus	audīv–**erī**–mus
	amāv–**erī**–tis	monu–**erī**–tis	rēx–**erī**–tis	audīv–**erī**–tis
	amāv–**eri**–nt	monu–**eri**–nt	rēx–**eri**–nt	audīv–**eri**–nt
Pluperfect Tense	amāv–**isse**–m	monu–**isse**–m	rēx–**isse**–m	audīv–**isse**–m
	amāv–**issē**–s	monu–**issē**–s	rēx–**issē**–s	audīv–**issē**–s
	amāv–**isse**–t	monu–**isse**–t	rēx–**isse**–t	audīv–**isse**–t
	amāv–**issē**–mus	monu–**issē**–mus	rēx–**issē**–mus	audīv–**issē**–mus
	amāv–**issē**–tis	monu–**issē**–tis	rēx–**issē**–tis	audīv–**issē**–tis
	amāv–**isse**–nt	monu–**isse**–nt	rēx–**isse**–nt	audīv–**isse**–nt

(*a*) Observe that the *tense signs* of the Active Subjunctive in all four conjugations are as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
-a- (Conj. I **-e-**)	**-re-**	**-eri-**	**-isse-**

(*b*) Notice that the only tense in which the *tense sign varies* is *the present*. Here the First Conjugation is — in a sense — forced to use some other vowel than **-a-**, in order to avoid confusion with the present Indicative.

(*c*) What tense in the Indicative has the same tense sign as the perfect Subjunctive? Note the differences in ending of the 1st Sing., and in the quantity of the **i**.

(*d*) Inflect the Active Subjunctive of **portō, habeō, dīcō, veniō.**

29. The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses. — In the preceding lesson we studied the Volitive Subjunctive in an independent sentence. There are several other uses of the Subjunctive in independent sentences, but they do not occur very often and may well be omitted for the present.

In *dependent clauses*, however, there are many different uses of the Subjunctive and they occur very frequently. We shall proceed, therefore, to take up the study of some of the more common uses of the dependent Subjunctive in this and the following lessons.

30. Clauses of Purpose. — Purpose clauses introduced by **ut** (negative **nē**) take the Subjunctive.

1. **Veniunt *ut* pācem *faciant*.**

They are coming { **that they may make** *peace*. / **in order to make** *peace*. / **to make** *peace*. }

2. **Abiit, *nē* id *accideret.***

He went away { **that this might not** *happen.* / **lest this should** *happen.* / **in order that this might not** *happen.* }

(*a*) Observe that the dependent clauses introduced by **ut** and **nē** express *purpose*, and that the verb is in the Subjunctive Mood.

(*b*) Observe that the tense of the Subjunctive in both Latin and English depends upon the tense of the main verb. If the main verb expresses *present* or *future* time, the purpose clause will have the *present* Subjunctive (English *may*); if the main verb expresses *past* time, the purpose clause will have the *imperfect* Subjunctive (English *might* or *should*).

(*c*) Notice that *in English* the Infinitive is often the simple and natural mode of expressing purpose. Compare the three ways of translating ***ut* pācem *faciant*** in example 1. In Latin, however, the Infinitive is *not* used to express purpose (except *in poetry*).

Grammatical Drill. — Separate the following forms so as to show the *stem*, *tense sign*, and *personal ending*, and indicate the mood and tense:

peterēmus, doceās, fīnīvissent, superāveritis, superāverītis, gerit, gerat, geret, docet, pugnet.

Translate:

Imperātor portās { claudit / claudet / clauserit } nē cīvēs ex urbe discēdant.

Lēgātus { veniēbat / vēnit / vēnerat } ut auxilium peteret.

Account for mood and tense of discēdant and peteret.

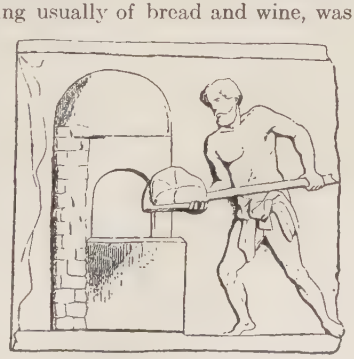
Reading Lesson. — Cēna Rōmāna

Antīquissimīs temporibus Rōmānōrum cibus ūniversus erat puls; deinde ad cēnam olera addita sunt, mox exigua carō.

Romans at Table.

Sed posteā terrā marīque omnia exquīrēbantur, ut Rōmānī edendī causā piscēs, carnem, avēs habērent. Nōs autem, sūmptuōsīs convīviīs praetermissīs, ad cēnam moderātam animum advertāmus.

Title: Like ourselves, the Romans had three meals. In the country the breakfast (*ientāculum*), consisting usually of bread and wine, was eaten immediately after rising, the dinner (*cēna*) about midday, and a supper (*vesperna*) at the close of the day's work. In the city, however, it became the fashion to have luncheon (*prandium*) at about eleven o'clock, and postpone the *cēna* until about three in the afternoon. The *prandium* was a light meal, consisting of cold meats, salads, bread, cheese, fruits, nuts, and olives.



A Roman Baker.

3. terrā marīque omnia exquīrēbantur: They obtained peacock from Samos, tunny fish from Chalcedon, oysters from Tarentum, nuts from Thasos, dates from Egypt, etc., etc.

Nōna ferē hōra est atque ad Cornēlī domum octō convīvae properant, nē sērius perveniant. Ubi omnēs in ātrium convēnērunt, Cornēlius eōs in trīclīnium dūcit. Ibi, ut est cōnsuētūdō, sunt trēs lectī et pulchra mēnsa. In eā mēnsā est salīnum argenteum.

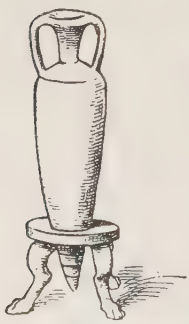
Prīmum, silentiō factō, deī rīte invocantur. Deinde omnēs in lectīs accumbunt, — Cornēlius hospes in lectō īmō. Tum eōrum soleae removentur, atque aqua et mappae circumferuntur ut manūs lavent.

---

7. Nōna ferē hōra: The time between the rising and the setting of the sun was divided into twelve hours, each hour of course being longer in summer than in winter.

9. ut: Note carefully the different meanings of **ut;** when followed by the *Indicative* it means *as* or *when,* but with the *Subjunctive* it means *that* (in *purpose* clauses *in order that*).

11. salīnum argenteum: Even the poor prided themselves on having a silver salt-cellar. It was held sacred, because the offering to the Lares in the course of the dinner was salted. (See **mola salsa** in the Sight Translation below).



A Jar in its Stand.

13. in lectīs accumbunt: How many couches were there, and how many guests could each couch accommodate? See Lesson III. The guests reclined on their left elbows, supported by a cushion or bolster. This enabled them to eat with their right hands. Spoons were used for soups, etc., but there were no knives or forks. The couch opposite the open side of the table was called *lectus medius,* that on the right side, *lectus summus,* that on the left, *lectus īmus.* The *lectus medius* was the couch of honor, the highest place on each couch being to the right. The most distinguished guest, however, was assigned to the seat on the left in the *lectus medius,* thus bringing him next to the host, who as a matter of courtesy occupied a place on the *lectus īmus.*

The table might be placed so close to the couches that the guests could help themselves, or back far enough to enable slaves to pass between and serve the food. As the guests did not have separate plates, only the dishes to be served and the salt-cellar were put on the table.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

Antīquissimīs, ūniversus, puls, carō, marī, exquīrēbantur, edendī, avēs, moderātam, advertāmus, hōra, salīnum, silentiō, invocantur, hospes, removentur, mappa, lavent.

Selling Bread in Rome.

(*b*) Translate:

1. Let us depart from the city, in order that we may not fall into the enemies' hands. 2. The general said that he would not devastate the fields of Italy. 3. The Gauls are coming to attack Rome. 4. The troops were hurrying for-fear-that they would arrive too late. 5. This stranger had come to Athens, to expel the tyrant.

Sight Translation. — **Cēna Rōmāna** — *Concluded*

Prīmum servī asparagum, ostreās, et ōva īnferunt. (Rōmānī prīncipiō cēnae tālia edēbant, ut appetītum excītārent. Itaque ea pars cēnae *gustus* appellāta est.)

---

1. **ōvum, –ī,** n., *egg.* **īn-ferō, –ferre, –tulī, il-lātus,** *bring in.*

2. **prīncipium, –ī,** n., [**prīmus** + **capiō**], *beginning.*

3. **gustus, –ūs,** m., *appetizer.* Another name for it was **prō-mulsis,** [**prō,** *before* + **mulsum,** a drink made of four measures of wine to one of honey]. The Romans had no sugar, honey being used instead. (And instead of butter they used olive oil.)

Mox, aquā et mappīs iterum circumlātīs, incipit cēna ipsa, in quā tria fercula dīversīs generibus carnis et olerum appōnuntur. Nunc etiam pōcula Falernī dīlūtī īnferuntur.

A Modest Meal for Three.

Deinde est brevis intermissiō, dum molā salsā et vīnō Laribus supplicātur. Dēnique *secunda mēnsa*, vidēlicet dulcia et

---

4. iterum, adv., *again.*

5. ferculum, –ī, n., [**ferō** + suffix **–culum** = *means*], *dish, course.* **appōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus,** [**ad**], *set before, serve.*

6. pōculum, –ī, n., *cup, goblet.* **Falernum,** (sc. **vīnum**), **–ī,** n., *Falernian wine,* a famous wine of the Falernian district in the north of Campania. **dīlūtus, –a, –um,** [**luō,** *wash*], *diluted, weakened;* wine was always drunk mixed with water, and generally with more water than the wine. To drink unmixed wine was considered barbarous.

7. mola salsa, –ae, f., *salted meal.* (Cf. *unleavened bread.*)

8. supplicō, –āre, [**sub** + **plicō,** *fold*], (bend down), *pray humbly;* used impersonally. **secunda mēnsa,** *dessert.* **dulcis, –e,** *sweet;* **dulcia,** "*sweets,*" *sweet cakes.*

māla, appōnitur. Ita tōta cēna — " ab ōvō ūsque ad māla " — complētur.

Tum, cēnā perfectā comissātiō incipit. In mediā mēnsā pōnitur ingēns crātēra, in quā iussū *rēgis bibendī* vīnum aquā dīluitur. Dum vīnum bibitur, scurrae et saltātrīcēs indūcuntur ut convīvās dēlectent. Postrēmō servī iussī soleās īnferunt atque omnēs Cornēlium " Valē " iubent et domum discēdunt.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

diverse, oval, infer, dilute, appetite, iterate, salted, complete, asparagus, bibulous, principle, intermission, dulcet, incipient, crater, gusto, delight, induct, oysters, excite, wine, supplicate, scurrilous.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō modo Rōmānī diem dīvidēbant? 2. Quotā hōrā plērumque cēnāre coepērunt? 3. Quota hōra nunc est? 4. Quālis supellex erat in trīclīniō? 5. In quās partēs cēna dīvidēbātur? 6. Quō modo Rōmānī cēnam incipere cōn-

---

9. mālum, –ī, n., *apple, fruit.* **"ab ōvō ūsque ad māla,"** a proverbial expression meaning, *"from beginning to end,"* or, as we sometimes say, *"from soup to nuts."*

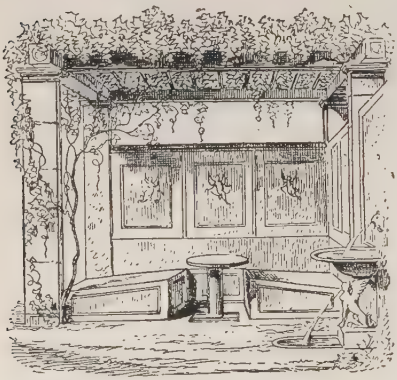
11. com-issā-tiō, –ōnis, f., [**edō**], *drinking;* at this time the head of each guest was anointed with perfume, and crowned with a wreath of roses.

12. crātēra, –ae, f., [also **crātēr, –is**], *mixing bowl.* **iussus, –ūs,** m., [**iubeō**], (used only in Abl. Sing.), *according to the direction.* The **rēx bibendī** was selected by throwing dice, and he directed the proportions of wine and water that were to be mixed in the **crātēra.** Up to this time in the dinner each guest had been at liberty to mix his wine to suit his own taste.

13. scurra, –ae, m., *buffoon, jester.* **saltā-trīx, –īcis,** f., [**saltō,** *dance* + fem. suffix **–trīx** = *agent*], *dancing girls.*

14. dē-lectō, –āre, *amuse.* **postrēmō,** adv., [Abl. of **postrēmus**], *at last, finally.*

suērunt? 7. Cōnsīdēbant-ne circum mēnsam in sellīs? 8. Quid prīmum edēbant ut appetītum excītārent? 9. Quot fercula erant in cēnā ipsā? 10. Quī post cēnam inductī sunt, ut convīvās dēlectārent? 11. Quid erat signum discēdere domum?



A Summer Dining Room.

31. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* The suffixes **–ulum, –bulum, –culum,** added to verb stems, denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action. As examples take two words that you have just met in the Sight Translation of this lesson. **Ferculum** from **ferre,** *to carry = the means of carrying;* therefore when used with regard to carrying *food,* it signifies *a dish.* **Pō-culum** from the verb root **po–,** *to drink = the instrument of drinking,* therefore a cup.

Explain the formation of **cingulum,** *girdle,* and **vocābulum,** *name, word;* also of the English words *vinculum* and *vehicle.*

LESSON X

CLAUSES OF RESULT WITH *UT* OR *UT NŌN*

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō. — A sound mind in a sound body.
— JUVENAL

32. Clauses of Result. — Clauses of Result introduced by **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) take the Subjunctive.

1. **Tanta erat caedēs *ut* perpaucī *effugerent*.**
   So great was the slaughter **that** *very few* **escaped.**
2. **Erat adeō tardus *ut nōn effugeret*.**
   He was so slow **that he did not escape.**

(*a*) Observe that the dependent clauses introduced by **ut** express *result*, and that their verbs are in the Subjunctive Mood.

(*b*) Notice that the negative in Result clauses is **nōn.** (What is the negative in Purpose clauses?)

(*c*) The main clause often contains such a word as **tantus, tam, ita, adeō,** etc. Notice that the verb in the Result clause, though Subjunctive, is translated by the Indicative.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL. — Separate the following forms so as to show the *stem*, *tense sign*, and *personal ending*, and indicate the mood and tense: capiant, capiunt, capient, parent, pārent, cūrāvissem, scīrēmus, sēderīs.

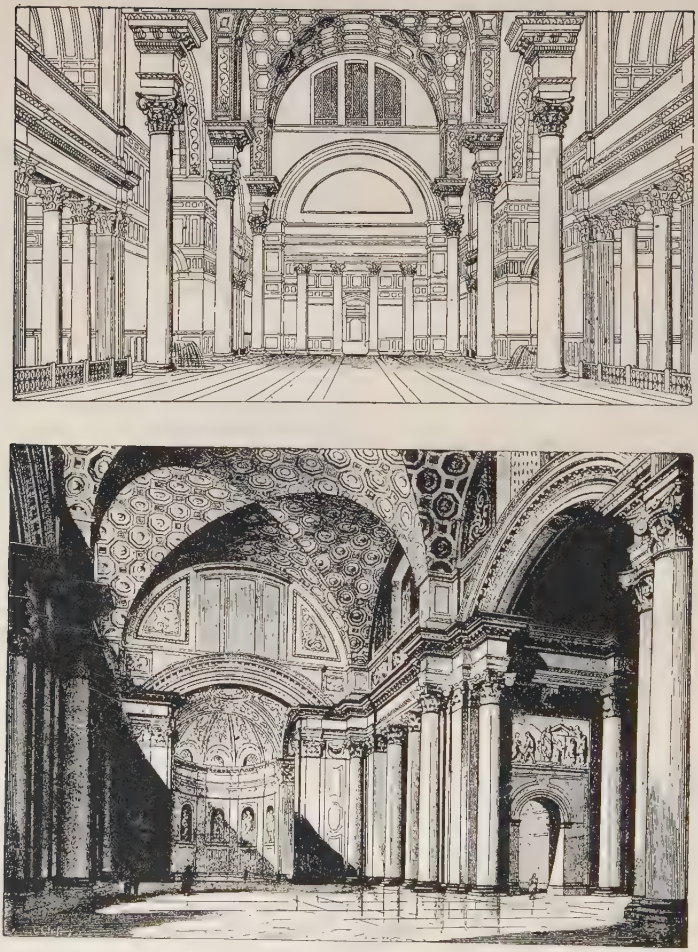
Translate:

Est tam grātus / Properat } ut mox veniat.

Nāvem cōnscendit / Tam perterritus erat } ut fugeret.

Hostēs erant tam multī, ut Mārcus nōn effugeret.

Lēgātus cōnsilium cēpit, nē Mārcus effugeret.



ROMAN BATHS — RESTORED.

The upper picture shows how the hall of the Baths of Diocletian probably looked originally.

The lower picture shows the same hall today, as it has been built over into the church of St. Mary of the Angels.

Reading Lesson. — Thermae

In Ītaliā sōl est tam calidus ut plūrimī post prandium paulisper dormiant. Item ōlim omnibus in locīs Ītaliae post

Romans at the Baths.

merīdiem tabernae duās ferē hōrās claudēbantur atque plērīque recēdēbant ut conquiēscerent.

Post merīdiātiōnem iuvenēs in Campō Mārtiō vel in palaes- 5

Title: One of the most important things in the life of the Romans was the daily bath, which with other habits of luxury they quickly adopted after their conquest of the luxurious Greeks.

5. The **Campus Mārtius** was a grassy plain (**Campus**) in Rome, dedicated to Mars (**Mārtius**), which lay between the Tiber and the Capitoline and Quirinal hills. Here young Romans ran, jumped, rode, wrestled, boxed, threw the discus, and played ball. The **palaestrae** were training schools for the regular instruction of youth in gymnastics. Such **palaestrae** were always to be found in the larger **thermae** as well as in some of the smaller bathing establishments called **balneae**.

trīs membra exercēbant, senēs et puerī folle lūdēbant. Octāvā hōrā sonat aes thermārum sescentārum, quae erant tantae ut omnibus patērent. Balneāticum autem erat omnīnō quadrāns ūnus. Nēmō igitur erat tam pauper ut tantulum pendere nōn posset.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

sōl, calidus, prandium, dormiant, locīs, recēdēbant, quiēscerent, membra, octāvā, sonat, omnibus, pauper, pendere.

(*b*) Translate:

1. The danger was so great that the citizens abandoned the town. 2. The general had closed the gates that the citizens might not abandon the town. 3. Caesar will lead his legions across the river in order to devastate the enemy's country. 4. The young men were hastening to the palaestra to exercise their limbs. 5. The shouts of the multitude were so great that the children were not able to rest.

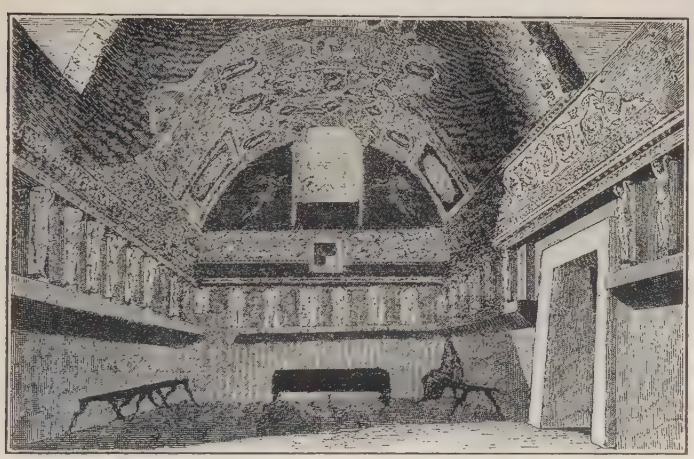
---

6. follis, –is, m., a large leather ball inflated with air, which was struck with the hand or arm. Besides this the Romans chiefly used a small hard ball stuffed with feathers, called the **pila.** From our knowledge of basketball and baseball we can imagine the various kinds of games that were played.

7. ses-centī, *six hundred*, was used by the Romans, much as we use *hundreds* or *thousands*, to denote a very large number. In 33 B.C. there were at least 170 public baths in Rome. When Constantine was emperor (320–337 A.D.), the number had increased to 856! The **thermae** constructed by the later emperors were of enormous size. The still existing ruins of the largest, the Baths of Diocletian (Emp. 284–305 A.D.), cover an area of fifty acres, and could accommodate 3200 bathers at one time! Besides the baths, they contained a palaestra, a library, a museum, colonnades, and **exedrae** (semi-circular recesses, where philosophers lectured and poets recited their poems).

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Thermae** — *Concluded*

Prīmum is quī lavat, quadrante pēnsā, in *apodytērium* in-it. Hīc servī exspectant, ut lavantium vestīmenta accipiant et



THE TEPIDARIUM.

cūrent. Deinde in *tepidārium* trāns-it, ubi paulisper sedet. Āēr ibi est tam calidus, ut mox sūdāre incipiat.

Inde in *caldārium* pergit, ubi in extrēmā parte est *alveus* 5 aquā calidā plēnus. Hic est tantus ut nōn-nūllī eōdem tem-

---

1. is quī lavat = *the bather.* How is it translated literally? **apodytērium, -ī,** n., *undressing room.* **in-it,** Indic. Pres. 3rd Sing. of the irreg. verb **in-eō,** *go in, enter.*

3. tepidārium, -ī, n., [**tepidus,** *warm* + suff. **-ārium** denoting *place*], *warm bathing room.*

4. sūdō, -āre, *perspire.*

5. cald-ārium, -ī, n., [**calidus**], *hot bathing room.* Under the *caldārium* was the furnace, which supplied the hot water that was needed. The hot air also from the furnace, circulating under the floor and through the walls of the *caldārium* and *tepidārium*, kept them warm. **per-gō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus,** [**regō**], *go on, proceed.* **alveus, -ī,** m., *bathing tank.*

pore lavāre possint. Iūxtā caldārium est *frīgidārium*, ubi vel in piscīnam sē mergit vel iubet servum super corpus aquam frīgidam fundere. Dēnique in *ūnctōrium* in-it, ubi servus strigile corpus dēstringit et mantēlibus tergit, atque, nē dominus perfrīgēscat, oleō vel unguentō eum unguit.

Tum dēmum vestītus in lectō conquiēscit vel in bibliothēcā

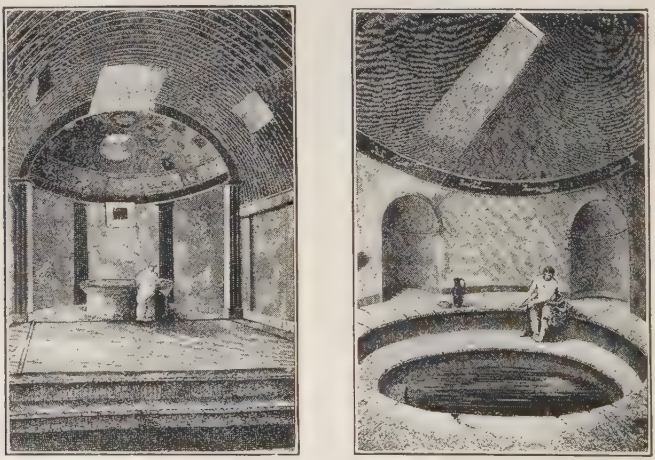
---

7. iūxtā, prep. with Acc., *close to*. **frīgid-ārium, –ī,** n., [**frīgidus**], *cold room*.

8. piscīna, –ae, f., [**piscis,** *fish*], *pool*. **mergō, –ere, mersī, mersus,** *dip, sink, plunge*.

9. fundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, *pour*. **ūnct-ōrium, –ī,** n., [**unguō,** *anoint*], *anointing room*.

10. strigilis, –is, f., [**stringō,** *graze*], *strigil*, an instrument made of bone, bronze, iron, or silver, to scrape the flesh. **dē-stringō, –ere, –strīnxī, –strictus,** *scrape*. **mantēle, –is,** n., [**manus** + **tēla,** *cloth*], *towel*. **tergō, –ere, tersī, tersus,** *rub*.



The Caldarium and the Frigidarium of a Roman Bath.

11. perfrīgēscō, –ere, –frixī, —, [incep. of **frigeō,** *be cold*], *catch cold*. **unguō, –ere, ūnxī, ūnctus,** *anoint*.

12. vestiō, –īre, –īvī or **–iī, –ītus,** [**vestis**], *clothe*. In order to dress, the bather would return to the *apodytērium*. The bathers, of course,

legit vel cum amīcīs per porticūs spatiātur dum sit tempus ad cēnam domum discēdere.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

sedentary, frigid, expect, temporal, mantle, pension, air, lave, extreme, juxta-position, accept, sweat, merge.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid Rōmānī post merīdiātiōnem facere cōnsuērunt? 2. Quotā hōrā sonuit aes thermārum? 3. Patēbant-ne thermae pauperibus? 4. Quantum valuit balneāticum? 5. Ubi lavantēs exuēbant? 6. Quō cōnsiliō inībant in tepidārium? 7. Quālis aqua erat in caldāriō? 8. Quid faciēbant lavantēs in frīgidāriō? 9. Quō cōnsiliō inībant in ūnctōrium? 10. Quid faciēbant lavantēs postquam vestītī sunt?

33. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* The suffixes **–ārium** and **–ōrium,** attached to nouns and verb stems, denote *place.* Thus from **sēmen,** *seed,* the noun **sēmin-ārium,** *seed-plot, nursery,* was formed. In the course of time this was applied to *seeds of learning,* and **sēmināriu**m came to mean a *seminary.* From **dē-stringere,** *to scrape,* the noun **dēstrictārium,** *scraping room,* was formed. (This was still another room that was added to the ordinary number in the large *thermae.*)

---

did not invariably take their bath in the order that has been given, but followed their own tastes in the matter.

13. spatior, –ārī, –ātus, [spatium], *take a walk, promenade.* This is a Deponent verb, Passive in form but Active in meaning. We shall meet many Deponent verbs later on. Translate it, *takes a walk.* **dum sit: dum** meaning *until* takes the Subjunctive to denote *anticipation,* as it does here.

Find four such nouns in the Sight Reading above. (In three of these nouns the suffix is attached to *an adjective,* but obviously there is *a noun* to be supplied with each adjective. What is it?)

Explain the derivation of the English words *aviary, aquarium, library, conservatory, auditorium.*

Caution. — The suffix **-ārium** must be carefully distinguished from the suffix **-ārius,** which we shall study later. (See page 158.)

LESSON XI

PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS; INDIRECT QUESTION; SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Nil sine nūmine. — Nothing without divine guidance.
— The Motto of Colorado

34. PASSIVE VOICE — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Conj. I	Conj. II	Conj. III	Conj. IV
am–**e**–r	mone–**a**–r	reg–**a**–r	audi–**a**–r
am–**ē**–ris	mone–**ā**–ris	reg–**ā**–ris	audi–**ā**–ris
or –re	*or* –re	*or* –re	*or* –re
am–**ē**–tur	mone–**ā**–tur	reg–**ā**–tur	audi–**ā**–tur
am–**ē**–mur	mone–**ā**–mur	reg–**ā**–mur	audi–**ā**–mur
am–**ē**–minī	mone–**ā**–minī	reg–**ā**–minī	audi–**ā**–minī
am–**e**–ntur	mone–**a**–ntur	reg–**a**–ntur	audi–**a**–ntur

IMPERFECT TENSE

amā–**re**–r	monē–**re**–r	rege–**re**–r	audī–**re**–r
amā–**rē**–ris	monē–**rē**–ris	rege–**rē**–ris	audī–**rē**–ris
or –re	*or* –re	*or* –re	*or* –re
amā–**rē**–tur	monē–**rē**–tur	rege–**rē**–tur	audī–**rē**–tur
amā–**rē**–mur	monē–**rē**–mur	rege–**rē**–mur	audī–**rē**–mur
amā–**rē**–minī	monē–**rē**–minī	rege–**rē**–minī	audī–**rē**–minī
amā–**re**–ntur	monē–**re**–ntur	rege–**re**–ntur	audī–**re**–ntur

PERFECT TENSE

amātus	**sim**	amātī	**sīmus**
monitus	**sīs**	monitī	**sītis**
rēctus	**sit**	rēctī	**sint**
audītus		audītī	

PLUPERFECT TENSE

amātus	**essem**	amātī	**essēmus**
monitus	**essēs**	monitī	**essētis**
rēctus	**esset**	rēctī	**essent**
audītus		audītī	

(*a*) Notice that in all four conjugations the *tense signs* of the *Present* and *Imperfect Subjunctive* in the Passive voice are the same as in the Active.

(*b*) The Passive *Perfect* Subjunctive consists of the Perfect Passive Participle and the *Present* Subjunctive of **sum,** while the *Pluperfect* consists of the same Participle and the *Imperfect* Subjunctive of **sum.** In these two tenses the participle must agree with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

35. Indirect Question. — Indirect Questions take the Subjunctive.

	Direct Question	Indirect Question
1.	**Ubi est?**	**Sciō *ubi sit*.**
	Where is he?	*I know* **where he is.**
2.	**Quid agunt?**	**Sēnsit *quid agerent*.**
	What are they doing?	*He perceived* **what they were doing.**

(*a*) Observe that an Indirect Question is really a Direct Question made dependent on a verb. It is of course always *introduced* by an *interrogative word.*

(*b*) Note that *in Latin* the verb in the Indirect Question is in the *Subjunctive.* In what mood is it *in English?* What changes do you notice in the English of the Indirect Question as compared with the Direct?

Caution. — Indirect questions for the most part depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, knowing,* or *perceiving.* Great care must therefore be taken to distinguish them from *Indirect Discourse.* Compare the following sentences:

1. **Sciō quis veniat.** *I know who is coming.*
2. **Sciō eum venīre.** *I know that he is coming.*

Both sentences begin with a verb of *knowing.* But the dependent clause in sentence 1 is *introduced* by an *interrogative word* and its verb is in the *Subjunctive,* which stamps it as an Indirect Question. In sentence 2 the dependent clause, *he is coming,* is a *statement,* forming an example of Indirect Discourse, which in Latin requires the *Infinitive* with its *subject* in the *Accusative.*

36. Sequence of Tenses. — You have probably noticed that in English the tense of the verb in a dependent clause will vary in accordance with the tense of the verb in the principal clause. Take for example the sentence: I *say* that the man *is* sensible. If you change *say* to *said,* you will want to change *is* to *was,* so as to read, I *said* that the man *was* sensible. This tendency of one tense to *follow* another is called the *Sequence of Tenses.* (*Sequence* is derived from the Latin verb **sequor,** *I follow.*)

In studying this sequence, let us first divide the tenses of the Indicative into two groups. Let us place in one group the three tenses referring to the *present* and the *future,* naming them *Principal* tenses, and in the other group the three tenses referring to the *past,*

calling them *Historical* tenses. Thus divided, the two groups will be as follows:

Principal	Historical
Present	**Imperfect**
Future	**Perfect**
Future Perfect	**Pluperfect**

Study the following:

Principal Tenses

Present	**Videō**	quid	***faciat.***
Future	**Vidēbō**		***fēcerit.***
Fut. Perf.	**Vīderō**		
I see		what	**he is doing.** (*Incomplete*)
I shall see			**he has done.** (*Completed*)
I shall have seen			

Historical Tenses

Imperfect	**Vidēbam**	quid	***faceret.***
Perfect	**Vīdī**		***fēcisset.***
Pluperfect	**Vīderam**		
I saw		what	**he was doing.** (*Incomplete*)
I saw			**he had done.** (*Completed*)
I had seen			

(*a*) Observe that each one of the *Principal* tenses in the main clause may be followed by the Subjunctive *Present* or *Perfect*, — the *Present* to express an *incomplete* action, the *Perfect*, a *completed* action.

(*b*) On the other hand, each one of the *Historical* tenses in the main clause may be followed by the Subjunctive *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*, — the *Imperfect* to express an *incomplete* action, the *Pluperfect*, a *completed* action.

(*c*) Notice that the *Perfect Subjunctive* is a *Principal* tense.

37. Rule for Sequence of Tenses. — If the tense of the main verb is *Present*, *Future*, or *Future Perfect*, it will be followed by the *Subjunctive Present* or *Perfect*, — the *Present* for *incomplete*, the *Perfect* for *completed* action. But if the tense of the main verb is *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, or *Pluperfect*, it will be followed by the *Subjunctive Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*, — the *Imperfect* for *incomplete*, the *Pluperfect* for *completed* action.

Thus we see that *Principal tenses follow Principal, and Historical tenses follow Historical.*

TABLE FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

		Dependent Verb in the Subjunctive	
	Main Verb	*Incomplete Action*	*Completed Action*
Principal Tenses	Present Future Future Perfect	Present	Perfect
Historical Tenses	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

Grammatical Drill. — Separate the following forms, so as to show the *stem*, *tense sign*, and *personal ending*, and indicate the mood and tense: vocentur, docentur, dīcentur, dīcantur, dīcuntur, vidērēris, impediāmur, peterēminī, vincar, pellerētur. In what mood and tense are: victus esset, dictī sint? *Translate:* Ostendit unde vēnisset et quis esset. Ostendet unde vēnerit et quis sit. Account for the mood and tense of each Subjunctive in the preceding sentences.

Reading Lesson. — **Religiō Rōmāna**

Dē Graecōrum deīs Homērus multās rēs exposuit, — quālēs essent, ubi habitārent, quō modo mortālibus appārērent. Ille dīxit eōs esse mortālibus similēs, sed maiōrēs et pulchriōrēs et sapientiōrēs.

JUPITER.

The Romans considered Jupiter the father of gods and men, corresponding to the Greek god, Zeus.

Longē aliī erant deī antīquōrum Ītalōrum. Hī enim nātūrae nūmina colēbant, quōrum tūtēlae cotīdiē sē suōsque agrōs et gregēs commendābant. Iuppiter erat pater deōrum hominumque, quī ē caelō fulmina ēmittēbat ut impiōs perterrēret. Iūnō erat rēgīna caelī. Vesta erat dea focī, Mars, deus bellī, Cerēs, dea frūgum, Pales, dea pāstōrum. Praetereā erant innumerābilia nūmina īnferiōra, quae assiduē hominēs cūrābant. Hīs Rōmānī, urbe conditā, multōs Sabīnōs et Etruscōs deōs addidērunt.

Juno.

5. antīquōrum Ītalōrum: The Italic peoples were the early inhabitants of Central Italy. Among them were the Latins, ancestors of the Romans, from whom the Romans naturally inherited their religious system.

6. nātūrae nūmina. In sharp contrast with the *definite* ideas of the Greeks about their deities, the early Italians had only the *vaguest* conception of their gods as abstract powers of nature. They were shadowy spirits, which protected men and exercised an influence upon every action and event of life.

17. quae assiduē hominēs cūrābant: For example, there was one spirit that prompted the baby's first cry, another that taught the child to speak; one that showed him how to eat, and another how to drink; one that left the house with him, another that accompanied him on his way; one that guided him home, and another that led him into the house again. There were more than forty spirits that were concerned solely with children's actions.

In praying for a good harvest, a farmer not only begged the favor of Ceres, but had to be very careful to invoke a dozen different spirits to aid him in as many different processes of farming, such as plowing,

Rōmānī autem semper quaerēbant, nōn quae esset nātūra deōrum, sed quae officia eīs ab hominibus dēbērentur, atque quō modo eōrum benevolentia obtinērētur. Oportēbat hominem, quī deum invocābat, rīte precēs adhibēre et sacra facere. Quibus scrupulōsē cōnfectīs, ille crēdēbat deum respōnsūrum esse.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

exposuit, habitārent, mortālibus, sapientiōrēs, tūtēlae, gregēs, caelō, fulmina, ēmittēbat, impiōs, focī, frūgum, pāstōrum, innumerābilia, īnferiōra, assiduē, addidērunt, quaerēbant, dēbērentur, benevolentia, scrupulōsē, crēdēbat, respōnsūrum.

(*b*) Translate:

1. Let us inquire where they live and how they came to Rome. 2. The legions were led out of the city that the citizens might not be terrified. 3. The confusion was so great, that the general's orders were not heard. 4. The consul replied that the enemy had not been conquered. 5. The messenger pointed out where the enemy had been conquered.

---

furrowing, harrowing, weeding, reaping, etc., etc. The same thing was true of all the other occupations of life.

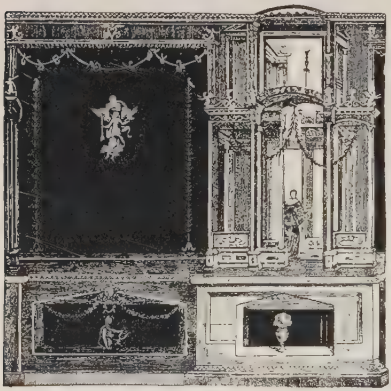
25. Quibus scrupulōsē cōnfectīs: In other words, if the Roman did his part by punctiliously observing the minute rules laid down for prayer and sacrifice, the gods would do their part in fulfilling his requests. It was in the nature of a bargain between the two parties. In all this there was no suggestion of pure and noble living by the help of the gods. But it did tend to develop a sense of obligation and obedience, and to that extent fitted the Roman to do his duty by the family and the state.

A Roman Temple.

Authorities differ about this building. It used to be called the Temple of Vesta because that was known to have been round. But the real Temple of Vesta was in the Forum, near the House of the Vestals.

Sight Translation. — **Religiō Rōmāna** — *Concluded*

Paulātim Rōmānī deōrum simulācra in speciēs hominum effingere coepērunt. In domuum focīs imāginēs Larum et Penātium impōnēbant. Mox templa aedificābant, in quibus magna simulācra vidēbantur. Posteā, adductī auctōritāte Graecōrum sacerdōtum, plūrimōs deōs Graecōs assūmpsērunt.



Wall-Painting of a Shrine.

1. speciēs, –ēī, f., [–speciō, *look*], *shape, form.*

2. ef-fingō, –ere, –fīnxī, –fictus, [ex], *fashion, form.* **In domuum focīs . . . impōnēbant:** This was done more especially by the poor. In the houses of the rich a special place, called the *Larārium,* was reserved for the worship of these household gods. The *Larēs* were the deified spirits of ancestors, which, so the Romans believed, hovered about the home to protect it and the household from harm. The worship of their ancestors did much to preserve the purity of family life among the Romans, just as it has done in the case of the Chinese, in whose religion it still plays an important part. The *Penātēs* were gods of the *storeroom* (**penus**), whose aid was invoked to provide abundant stores for the family.

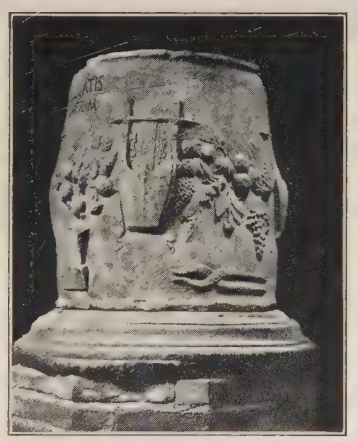
4. templa aedificābant: At first the temples were small, consisting of a single room (**cella**) for the god's statue, with a small court in front. In building larger temples, as they did later on, they increased the size of the courts, but in most instances retained the original plan of having a small inner room for the image of the god. Roman temples were not used, as our churches are, for purposes of prayer and priestly instruction. The sacrifices and banquets, in which the people took part, were held in the temple courts.

10. as-sūmō, –ere, –sūmpsī, –sūmptus, [ad], *take to, adopt.* The Romans now identified many of their own gods with Greek deities which they resembled. In so doing they often lost the original idea of their god. For example Venus, the Italian goddess of gardens and of spring, was

Tum dēmum omnibus in locīs erant templa magnifica et innumerābilia simulācra.

Aspice quō rītū Rōmānī deīs sacrificāre cōnsuērint. Māne in flūmine lavantur. Deinde albīs togīs indūtī et corōnātī ante āram cōnsistunt. Silentiō factō, tībīcen tībiīs canit. Dum cēterī capite vēlātō stant, sacrificāns precēs dictātās, verbum prō verbō, reddit.

Nunc ad āram dūcitur victima īnfulīs vittīsque



A Roman Altar.

identified with the Greek Aphrodite, and became the goddess of love. Thus under Greek influence the Roman religion was completely transformed, although the Romans still held to their own rites and ceremonies.

13. a-spiciō, –ere, –spēxī, –spectus, [**ad** + **–speciō,** *look*], *look, behold, see.* **cōnsuērint** = **cōnsuēverint. in flūmine,** *i.e.* in running water, an act of purification.

14. corōnō, –āre, [**corōna**], *wreath, garland.*

15. Silentiō factō: A solemn stillness was a marked feature of the ceremony.

16. tībia, –ae, f., *pipe;* the piper usually played on two pipes at the same time.

17. cēterus, –a, –um, *the other;* pl., *the rest.* **capite vēlātō:** This too was characteristic of the ceremony.

18. sacrificāns, (participle used as a noun), *the person offering the sacrifice.*

20. red-dō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, (give back), *recite.* The prayer was read by a priest, after whom the worshiper recited it **verbum prō verbō.** If a single mistake was made, the entire prayer had to be repeated.

22. victima, –ae, f., *animal for sacrifice, victim, e.g.* a heifer, a goat, or a lamb. **īnfula, –ae,** f., (woolen) *band,* a lock of wool dyed red and white, and tied with *ribbons,* **vittae.**

ōrnāta, cuius capitī mola salsa et vīnum īnsperguntur. Deinde popa malleō victimam discutit et cultrō iugulat. Sanguis in āram īnfunditur. Exta flammīs combūruntur. Postrēmō vesperī viscera tosta omnibus praesentibus appōnuntur, atque sacrificium epulīs in deī honōrem fīnītur.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

dictate, combustion, edifice, victim, honor, authority, jugular, image, assume, mallet, album, sacerdotal, sanguinary, impose, vespers, infusion, magnificent, toast, verbatim.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quālēs erant deī Graecōrum? 2. Quālēs deōs colēbant antīquī Ītalī? 3. Quis erat Iuppiter? Iūnō? Vesta? Mārs? Cerēs? 4. Quot deōs et nūmina Rōmānī colēbant? 5. Quō modo Rōmānī deōrum benevolentiam obtinēre poterant? 6. Erant-ne multa simulācra in quōque templō Rōmānō? 7. Quō modo Rōmānī sacrificium parābant? 8. Quō modo Rōmānī deō victimam sacrificāre cōnsuērunt? 9. Erat-ne religiō Rōmāna similis religiōnī nostrae?

---

23. capitī: Notice the *dative* with **īn-sperguntur,** a verb compounded with **in** (62). **īn-spergō, –ere, –spersī, –spersus,** [**spargō**], *sprinkle upon.*

24. popa, –ae, m., *the priest's assistant.* **malleus, –ī,** m., *mallet.* **discutiō, –ere, –cussī, –cussus,** [**quatiō,** *beat*], *strike down.* **culter, –trī,** m., *knife.* **iugulō, –āre,** *cut the throat.*

25. Sanguis, –inis, m., *blood.* **īn-fundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus,** *pour on.* **exta, –ōrum,** n., *entrails, i.e.,* the liver, gall, lungs, and heart. These were carefully inspected by the **harūspicēs** (see following lesson), to see if they were normal. Any defect or misplacement of them was a bad omen. **comburō, –ere, –bussī, –būstus,** [**burō,** *burn*], *burn up.*

26. vesperī, adv., [**vesper**], *in the evening.* **viscus, –eris,** n., (often pl., **viscera**), *the flesh.* **torreō, –ēre, –uī, tostus,** *roast.*

27. in deī honōrem: In ancient times the god himself was supposed to take part in the feast with the worshipers, but the belief gradually disappeared.

38. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* The suffixes **–men** and **–ium** attached to verb roots or stems denote the *means* or *result of the action* or *the action in process.* Thus from **ag–** the root of **agere,** *to lead,* is formed **ag-men,** (that which is led), *marching column, army on the march.* From **nuere,** *to nod,* we get **nū-men,** *a nodding,* an action which (particularly with the gods) indicated their *will.* Hence *the divine will,* which — becoming more definite — came to denote *the deity itself.* Likewise from **studēre,** *to be eager,* is formed **stud-ium,** *zeal,* STUDY. From **ōd-isse,** *to hate,* we get **od-ium,** *hatred,* ODIUM.

Explain the formation of **flūmen** and **certāmen**; of **incendium** and **sacrificium**; define their meaning. From what Latin words do *office* and *benefice* come?

LESSON XII

SUBJUNCTIVE IN A *CUM* CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSE

Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. — As a rule men readily believe what they wish to.

— Julius Caesar

39. *Cum* Circumstantial Clauses. — *In narration,* **cum,** meaning *when,* is used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which the action took place.

1. ***Cum* in fugā *traherētur*, in ipsum Caesarem incidit.**
   While he was being dragged along *in flight, he happened upon Caesar himself.*

2. ***Cum pervēnisset*, ea cognōvit.**
   When he had arrived, *he ascertained these facts.*

(*a*) Observe that, *in narrating past events,* a dependent clause introduced by **cum,** meaning *when,* with the Subjunctive is used *to describe the situation or circumstances,* under which the action took place.

(*b*) The tense of the Subjunctive follows the rule for Sequence of Tenses.

Note. — If the **cum** clause is used, not to describe the circumstances, but merely *to denote the point of time* at which the action occurred, the verb is in the Indicative, as: ***Cum* Caesar *vēnit*, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī. At the time when Caesar came,** *the Haedui were leaders of one faction.* This construction, however, occurs but rarely.

Grammatical Drill. — Write a synopsis — 3rd plural — of the Active and Passive Indicative and Subjunctive of **vincō.**

Translate: vīsus erat, vidētis, vidēbiminī, vidēbam, vidēre, videāmus, vīsus esse, vīdistī, vīsūrus, vidēmur, vidēns, vīdisse, vīsus, vidērī.

Reading Lesson. — Sacerdōtēs Rōmānī

Apud Rōmānōs erant sacerdōtum duo genera, quōrum ūnum prae-erat caerimōniīs et sacrīs, alterum singulīs deīs sacra faciēbat.

Ex illō genere erant *pontificēs* et *augurēs*. Pontificēs erant numerō quīndecim, quōrum prīnceps erat Pontifex Maximus. Augurēs vel ex

Augustus as Pontifex Maximus.

Title: Roman priests did not form a separate class of men, who devoted themselves to the concerns of religion. For the most part they were citizens engaged in business or professional life, who were elected to the honor of a priesthood by the people, just as they might be elected to any other state office. No particular fitness was required. It was merely their duty to direct or perform the ceremonies exactly as prescribed by tradition.

2. caerimōniīs et sacrīs: Note the Dative case following a verb compounded with **prae** (62).

4. pontificēs: The fifteen pontifices constituted the highest "college" of priests. They were invested with complete control of matters pertaining to religion.

7. Pontifex Maximus: An illuminating example of the type of man that the Romans selected for high priest was Julius Caesar, who held this office, while he was conquering the Gauls. **Pontifex Maximus** was adopted as a title of the highest priestly office by the early Christian church, and it is still retained by the Pope.

8. Augurēs: Next in importance to the pontifices were the augurs. They wore a purple striped mantle called the *trabea*, and carried the

caelō vel ex avibus auspicābantur. Omnēs magistrātūs Rō-
10 mānī auspicia habēbant, sed tempore bellī *auspicia bellica*

---

lituus, a knotless staff curved at the top. Their special duty was to take the *auspices*. This had to be done before any official act in peace or war could be undertaken. It was also indispensable to most private ceremonies. Thus the influence of the augurs became very great.

Priests Sacrificing.

9. auspicābantur, a deponent verb; translate as if Active. In taking the auspices the procedure was as follows: The augur seated himself facing south in some consecrated spot, and with his *lituus* marked out the quarter of the heavens which he was to observe. There he watched for some sign from heaven (*e.g.* lightning or thunder), or noted the number or flight or call of certain birds, such as eagles, vultures, ravens, or owls, which were regarded as messengers from Jove. Signs appearing on the augur's left were favorable, those on the right, unfavorable. (See note to **in monte Palātīnō**, page 111.)

10. auspicia bellica: For convenience *sacred chickens* were carried along in the army or on the general's ship. When the auspices were to be taken, the cage in which the chickens were kept was opened and some

ab imperātōre sōlō cōnsulēbantur. Quondam Bellō Punicō Prīmō, cum pullī nōn pāscerentur, imperātor eōs in aquam mergī iussit, ut biberent! Cum autem nāvāle proelium commissum esset, classis Rōmāna scīlicet dēvicta est.

Harūspicēs erant, nōn Rōmānī, sed Etruscī, quī victimārum exta īnspiciēbant, ut nūntiārent num auspicia essent optima.

Singulīs deīs sacerdōtēs appellātī sunt *flāminēs*. T. Līvius sīc scrīpsit. "Nūma flāminem Iovī adsiduum sacerdōtem creāvit. Huic duōs flāminēs adiēcit, Mārtī ūnum, alterum Quirīnō." Praeter eōs erant duodecim flāminēs aliīs deīs.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

singulīs, pontificēs, augurēs, bellica, cōnsulēbantur, pullī, pāscerentur, mergī, nāvāle, īnspiciō, creāvit, adiēcit.

---

food was scattered in front of it. If the chickens would not come out or beat their wings or fluttered away, it was regarded as an unfavorable sign.

12. pāscerentur is another deponent verb, like **auspicābantūr** in line 9. **imperātor:** This incident is told of Publius Claudius, who commanded the Roman fleet in the battle off Drepanum, 249 B.C.

16. exta: The most important of the vital organs was considered to be the liver. The Etruscans actually mapped it out in the most intricate manner, and declared that they could reveal the future by its markings.

18. flāminēs: The *flamen* wore a *toga praetexta* and a cone-shaped white hat. Unlike other Roman priests he was not permitted to hold any state office. It was his duty to perform daily sacrifices to his special god. It was a burdensome office with many restrictions. **Titus Līvius,** Livy, was a Roman historian of the first century A.D.

19. Nūma Pompilius, the mythical second king of Rome, was the reputed founder of most of the religious institutions of the Romans. **adsiduum,** *ever-busy,* characterizes the *unceasing* attention to daily sacrifice that was particularly demanded of the **flāmen Diālis,** *the flamen of Jove.*

ABOVE: A CEREMONY OF THE VESTAL VIRGINS.
BELOW: THE SITE OF THE ATRIUM VESTAE, OR HOUSE OF THE VESTALS.

(*b*) Translate:

1. The river was so wide and deep that the soldiers were not able to go across. 2. When he had said this, the messenger departed from the camp. 3. Caesar learned that the enemy were coming to make an attack. 4. The consul will tell the citizens what the augur has reported. 5. This centurion was killed, while he was fighting in the first battle line.

SIGHT TRANSLATION. — **Virginēs Vestālēs; Ōrācula**

Virginēs Vestālēs erant Vestae sacerdōtēs, quae candidās vestēs gerēbant et in Ātriō Vestae habitābant. Eārum officia erant in Aede Vestae īgnem semper servāre, deae sacri-

A VESTAL VIRGIN.

1. Virginēs Vestālēs: The six Roman Vestals formed a unique sisterhood. They were appointed before they were ten years old, and served for thirty years, — ten in learning, ten in performing, and ten in teaching the duties. At the end of that time they were permitted to retire, but they rarely availed themselves of this privilege. **candidus, -a, -um,** [candeō, *shine*], *white.*

2. Ātrium Vestae, the home of the Vestals, in the S. E. corner of the Forum, close to the small round temple of the goddess, **Aedēs Vestae.** Near by was the **Rēgia,** the official residence of the Pontifex Maximus, who appointed the Vestals and exercised authority over them.

3. īgnem semper servāre: To get the true significance of this duty of the Vestals we must go back

ficāre, dē sacrō fonte aquam recentem portāre, et ter in annō molam salsam facere. Sī quae virgō īgnem sacrum exstinguī sīvit, ea ab ipsō Pontifice Maximō virgīs verberāta est. Sī quae fuit impudīca, ea vīva in Campō Scelerātō dēfossa est. Virginēs Vestālēs autem semper praecipuō honōre habēbantur. Multa erant loca in quibus deī hominis ōre suam voluntā-

---

to the most ancient times, when in every settlement it was *necessary to keep one fire always burning*, from which a flame might be procured to start any hearth fire that had been carelessly allowed to go out. No fire, no dinner! The realization of this naturally gave rise to a veneration for fire, and that in turn to the conception of the goddess of the hearth. When finally the small settlement grew into a tribe, the *hearth-fire* became the symbol of *the life and welfare of the state*, and therefore must be kept burning forever.

Head of a Vestal Virgin.

5. aquam recentem portāre: Water, as well as fire, is a necessity of life, and the sight of a Vestal carrying water was suggestive of the time when water did not run into the houses through pipes, but had to be fetched from a spring. **ter,** adv., *three times, i.e.* for three annual festivals, one of which was called the *Vestālia.*

6. Sī quae, *if any.* After **sī, nisi, nē** and **num, quis** means *any.*

7. sinō, –ere, sīvī, situs, *allow, permit.*

8. im-pudīcus, –a, –um, [**pudet,** *it shames*], *unchaste.* **scelerātus, –a, –um,** [**scelus,** *crime*], *desecrated;* **Campus Scelerātus** was a place near one of the gates in the city wall. **dē-fodiō, –ere, –fōdī, –fossus,** [**dē,** *down* + **fodiō,** *dig*], *bury.*

9. prae-cipuus, –a, –um, [**capiō**], *particular, special.* In public the Vestals were attended by a lictor, and the highest magistrates lowered their *fasces* before them; they were given a seat of honor at the public games; their persons were sacred; lastly, they were given the distinction of a burial in the Forum.

10. ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.* Note that **homō** means *human being*, and may refer to either man or woman. **voluntās, –ātis,** f., [**volō,** *wish*], *will.*

tem ē-nūntiāvērunt. Eōrum ōrāculōrum celeberrimum erat Delphicum, quod Apollinī sacrum erat.

Cum Croesus, opulentissimus rēx Asiae, dē bellō cum Persīs ōrāculum cōnsuleret, Pȳthia respondit *eum imperium magnum ēversūrum esse.* Itaque ille putāvit sē Cȳrum, rēgem Persārum, victūrum esse. Cum autem in hostium fīnēs cōpiās duxisset, ipse ā Cȳrō victus est. Sīc vērō Pȳthiae respōnsō imperium ēvertit, sed ēheu! ēvertit suum!

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

ignite, celebrated, oracle, vivacious, recent, voluntary, candid, opulent, virgin, oral, extinguish.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quī caerimōniīs et sacrīs Rōmānīs prae-erant? 2. Quō modo augurēs auspicābantur? 3. Quō modo harūspicēs

---

11. celeber, –bris, –bre, (sup., **celeberrimus**), *famous.*

12. Delphicus, –a, –um, *Delphic, of Delphi,* a small city on Mt. Parnassus in northern Greece. In the side of the mountain there was a deep cave, from which gas poured forth. The priestess, **Pȳthia,** seated in a golden tripod, inhaled the fumes of gas, and the words she then uttered were declared by the priests to be a prophetic response coming from Apollo himself. Many foreign kings came with rich gifts to consult the oracle, and a magnificent temple was erected in honor of the god.

Dress of a Vestal.

13. Croesus was king of Lydia, a province of Asia Minor, in the sixth century B.C.

15. ē-verto, –ere, –vertī, –versus, *over-turn, destroy.*

18. ēheu, interj., *alas!*

deōrum voluntātem nūntiābant? 4. Quid erat officium flāminum? 5. Quae erant officia Virginum Vestālium? 6. Sī quae virgō īgnem sacrum exstinguī sīvit, quō modo pūnīta est? 7. Cui ōrāculum Delphicum erat sacrum? 8. Cum Croesus ōrāculum cōnsuleret, quid respondit Pȳthia? 9. Quid deinde accidit? 10. Erat-ne Pȳthiae respōnsum vērum?

40. Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* The suffix **-mentum** attached to verb stems denotes the *means* or *result of the action.* **ōrnā-mentum = means of** *adorning,* ORNAMENT. **frag** (root of **frangere,** *to break*) **-mentum** = *result of breaking,* FRAGMENT.

Give the derivation and meaning of *impediment, document, complement, pigment, monument.*

LESSON XIII

REVIEW

Palma nōn sine pulvere. — No palm of victory without dust.

Form Review

1. Decline **magistrātus** and **rēs.** 2. Name the Nine Irregular Adjectives. 3. Decline **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs.** 4. Write the Active and Passive Infinitive and the Participles of **sentiō** with their meanings. 5. Compare **bonus, malus, magnus, parvus,** and **multus.** 6. Give the *tense endings* of the Active Subjunctive in the regular conjugations. 7. Write a 2nd Plural synopsis of the Active and Passive Subjunctive of **pōnō.** 8. Write a 3rd Singular synopsis of the Active and Passive Subjunctive of **portō.** 9. Write the Subjunctive of **sum.**

Syntax Review

1. Give an example of the Ablative of Specification. 2. Give an example of the Complementary Infinitive. 3. State the rule for Indirect Discourse. 4. How do the tenses of the Infinitive depend upon the time of the principal verb? 5. How does a Participle differ from an ordinary Adjective? 6. State the rule for the Ablative Absolute. 7. What is a Gerund? 8. How does the Latin Subjunctive express action or being as compared with the Indicative or Imperative? 9. What are the two principal uses of the Subjunctive? 10. Give an example of the Independent

Volitive Subjunctive. 11. State the rule for *Place to which.* 12. When is the preposition omitted? 13. State the rule for the Subjunctive of Purpose. 14. **Translate:** *They decided to make peace. They came to make peace.* 15. Give an example of a negative clause of Purpose. 16. State the rule for the Subjunctive of Result. 17. Give an example of a negative clause of Result. 18. Give an example of an Indirect Question. 19. How do you distinguish an Indirect Question from Indirect Discourse? 20. State the rule for the Sequence of Tenses. 21. State the rule for **cum** Circumstantial clauses.

Review of Word Formation

1. What do the following Latin suffixes denote: *–men, –ulum, –or, –mentum, –ūra, –ōrium, –tus, –bulum, –ium, –iō, –ārium, –culum?* 2. Give examples of Latin nouns that are formed with *each* of the preceding suffixes. 3. Give, wherever possible, an English derivative from these Latin nouns.

Sight Translation. — Lūdī Circēnsēs

Circus Maximus in urbe Rōmā erat tria stadia longus et ūnum stadium lātus. Undique erant sedīlia, quōrum in prīmīs Senātōrēs et Equitēs et Virginēs Vestālēs sedēbant; cētera sedīlia cīvibus Rōmānīs grātuīta erant.

In alterā extrēmā parte erant *carcerēs*, ex quibus quadrīgae

---

Title: **circēnsis, –e,** adj., *of the circus.*

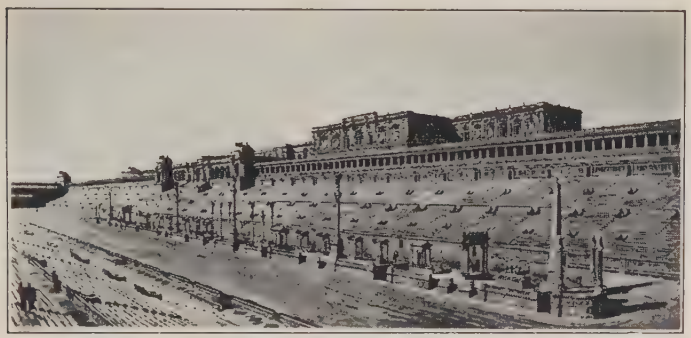
1. Circus Maximus, an oval circus between the Palatine and Aventine hills, with seats for 150,000 spectators. **stadium, –ī,** n., *stade,* a distance of 625 Roman feet or about 607 English feet.

2. sedīle, –is, n., [**sedeō**], *seat.*

4. grātuītus, –a, –um, [**grātia**], (without pay), *free.*

5. carcer, –is, m., *prison, barrier,* here a series of vaulted chambers, within which the chariots waited until — at the signal — the doors were flung open. **quadrīgae, –ārum,** f., [**quattuor** + **iugum,** *team*], *four-horse chariot.*

ēmittēbantur. In mediō cursū erat mūrus humilis duodecim pedēs lātus, *spīna* nōmine, quī statuīs et columnīs ōrnātus



A Restoration of the Circus Maximus.

est. Utrimque in extrēmā parte spīnae erat *mēta*, quam septiēs circum-īre necesse erat.

Diē cōnstitūtā, prīmā lūce multitūdō plēbis ad Circum properābat ut sedīlia occupārent. Multō ante tempus spec-

A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus.

---

6. **cursus, –ūs,** m., [**currō**], *course.* **humilis, –e,** [**humus,** *ground*], *low.*
8. **Utrim-que,** adv., *on both ends.* **mēta, –ae,** f., *goal.*
9. **septiēs,** adv., [**septem**], *seven times.*
10. **Diē cōnstitūtā.** Note that **diēs** is feminine; this is its usual gender, in the Singular, when it denotes *an appointed time.*

tāculī omne sedīle tenēbātur. Tandem sonus tubārum exaudītur et mox magnifica pompa, cōnsule dūcente, arēnam intrat.

Dēnique, omnibus rēbus parātīs, dator ludōrum *mappam* dēmittit et statim ex carceribus quattuor quadrīgae ēmittuntur. Aurīgae stantēs currū vehuntur et colōre vestis facile discernuntur. Iterum atque iterum fervidīs rotīs mētam stringunt. Iam ultimum spatium ad carcerēs dē-currunt. Aurīgae prōnī vōce verbereque equōs concitant. Plausū fremitūque secundō trāns albam līneam volant et victor amplum praemium accipit.

---

12. sonus, –ī, m., *sound.* **tuba, –ae,** f., *trumpet.*

13. intrō, –āre, *enter.*

14. mappa, –ae, f., *white cloth, handkerchief.*

A Charioteer.

16. Aurīga, –ae, m., *charioteer;* usually he was either a slave or a freedman. He wore leather protectors on his head and legs, much as do our football players. He wound the reins around his body, and in his belt he carried a knife, with which to cut the reins or the traces in case of accident. He was encouraged to upset a rival chariot, if possible, in order to furnish added excitement for the spectators. **colōre vestis:** the charioteers wore red, white, blue, or green tunics.

17. dis-cernō, –ere, –crēvī, –crētus, (see apart), *distinguish.* **fervidus, –a, –um,** *glowing.* **rota, –ae,** f., *wheel.*

18. stringō, –ere, strīnxī, strictus, *graze.* **ultimus, –a, –um,** *last.* **dē-currō, –ere, –cucurrī** or **–currī, –cursus,** *run down.*

19. prō-nus, –a, –um, *bending forward.* **verber, –is,** n., *lash, whip.* **con-citō, –āre,** *urge on.* **plausus, –ūs,** m., [**plaudō,** *clap*], *applause.*

20. fremitus, –ūs, m., *shouting.* **secundus, –a, –um,** *favoring.* **alba līnea:** a *white line* drawn across the arena, marking the end of the race course. **volō, –āre,** *fly.* **amplum praemium:** a famous charioteer,

ABOVE: A GLADIATORIAL COMBAT IN THE COLOSSEUM.

The defeated gladiator is pleading for his life - the Roman ladies are holding their "thumbs down" to indicate that they want him killed.

BELOW: THE COLOSSEUM.

This is where the gladiatorial games were held.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

color, rotary, stadium, prone, standing, gratuitous, constitute, humble, facile, stringent, fervid, spine, arena.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quot stadia longus erat Circus Maximus? 2. Quī in prīmīs sedīlibus sedēbant? 3. Unde quadrīgae ēmittēbantur? 4. Quid erat spīna? 5. Quotiēs utramque mētam circumīre necesse erat? 6. Cūr plēbs prīmā lūce ad Circum properābat? 7. Quālēs virī erant aurīgae? 8. Quō modo aurīgae discernuntur? 9. Quandō quadrīgae ex carceribus ēmissī sunt? 10. Erat-ne cursus longus? 11. Quid cursūs fīnem signāvit?

---

in the course of 24 years, is said to have had a record of 4257 races with 1462 victories, for which he received what was equivalent to about $2,000,000!

ANCIENT ITALY
SCALE OF STATUTE MILES
50 0 50 100
8 Longitude East 12 from Greenwich 16
46
42
RHAETIA
NORICUM
THE ALPS
PANNONIA
LIBURNIA
DALMATIA
ADRIATIC SEA
VENETIA
GALLIA CISALPINA
LIGURIA
ETRURIA
PICENUM
CORSICA
ROME
Forum Julii
Aquileia
L. Larius
L. Verbanus
LITTLE ST. BERNARD
Mediolanum
Vercellae
Augusta Taurinorum
Cremona
Mantua
Andes
L. Benacus
Verona
Padua
Athesis R.
Po R.
Placentia
Parma
Mutina
Ravenna
Rubicon R.
Ariminum
Pisaurum
Metaurus R.
Sena Gallica
Ancona
Genua
Gulf of Genua
Nicaea
Luca
Pistoria
Faesulae
Florentia
Pisae
Arnus R.
Volaterrae
Aretium
L. Trasimenus
CAPRARIA
ILVA
Clusium
Camerinum
Asculum
Spoletium
Volsinii
Nursia
Aternus R.
Telamon
IGILIUM
Tarquinii
L. Vadimonis
Sutrium
Veii
Mt. Soracte
Cortinium
Sulmo
Aleria
Caere
Tibur
Gabii
Praeneste
Fucinus
Teanum
Ostia
Tusculum

SARDINIA
Caralis
RHENIAN SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
IONIAN SEA
AFRICA
Utica
CARTHAGE
Tunis
Zama
Clupea
Hadrumetum
Leptis
Thapsus
Drepanum
AEGATES IS.
Mt. Eryx
Eryx
Egesta
Panormus
Thermae
Tauromenium
Mt. Etna
Lilybaeum
Selinus
Agrigentum
Ecnomus
Enna
Leontini
Gela
Camarina
Catana
SYRACUSE
Str. of Messana
Tyndaris
Mylae
Messana
Rhegium
Locri
Epizephryii
STRONGYLE
LIPARA
Cumae
Neapolis
CAPREAE I.
Pompeii
Salernum
Caudium
Venusia
Tarentum
Metapontum
Brundisium
CALABRIA
Heraclea
Sybaris
Thurii
Croton
38
8
12
16

THE STORY OF ROME

This story of Rome from the legendary founding of the city (753 B.C.) to the time of Julius Caesar, is adapted from the Latin of Livy and Eutropius, Roman historians respectively of the first and fourth centuries A.D.

Though authentic Roman history begins about 350 B.C. these legends of the kings and of the early republic are well worth reading. For in them we get glimpses of life and character that give us a fairly accurate picture of the early Romans.

For the most part they were sturdy farmers, industrious and thrifty. They put faith in their gods and obeyed their elders. A stern sense of duty made them law-abiding citizens. They were honest, — men of their word. They formed a united people, trained to suppress individual freedom in the interest of the entire state.

Under the strictest discipline in war they proved themselves brave and daring soldiers, fighting with fierce energy and indomitable spirit. They treated their conquered enemies squarely and ruled them by kindness rather than by fear.

It was these sterling qualities that brought them out at last victorious over all their foes and enabled them to weld the nations dwelling around the Mediterranean into a great and harmonious Empire.

The history of Rome is worthy of study, not only because that nation has furnished us with the basis of our own laws and government, language and literature, but because it abounds in practical lessons, which we would do well to heed at this particular period of our own national development.

The Seven Kings

Early Italian rulers; Trojan Aeneas settles in Latium

Antīquissimīs temporibus Sāturnus in Ītaliam vēnisse dīcitur. Ibi haud procul ā Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque Sāturniam appellāvit. Hic prīmus Ītalōs agrī cultūram docuit.

The Temple of Saturn in the Forum.

1. **Sāturnus, -ī,** m., [**serō,** *plant*], *Saturn*, a mythical king identified by the Romans with Saturn, the father of Jupiter. According to the legend he was expelled from Olympus by Jupiter. He came to Latium in the time of king Janus, by whom he was kindly received and was permitted to form a settlement on the Capitoline hill. At the foot of the hill in the Forum a temple was erected to his honor, of which eight columns are still standing.

Posteā Latīnus in illīs regiōnibus imperāvit. Eō tempore Trōia in Asiā ā Graecīs ēversa est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae fīlius, cum multīs Trōiānīs, quī ex eō bellō superfuērunt, aufūgit, et in Ītaliam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rēx eum benignē recēpit atque eī fīliam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam in coniugis honōrem Lāvīnium appellāvit.

AENEAS, ANCHISES, AND ASCANIUS.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

agrī-cultūram, regiōnibus, imperāvit, re-versa.

---

6. Anchīsēs, –ae, m., *Anchises*, the aged father of Aeneas, a cripple at the time of the fall of Troy. Aeneas lifted his father upon his shoulders, and taking little Ascanius by the hand, bade his wife Creusa follow on behind. Guided by the goddess Venus, the mother of Aeneas, they passed through the streets of the burning city and eluding their enemies, reached a place of safety, — all but Creusa. Aeneas went back into the city and searched long for his wife, but in vain. Anchises accompanied Aeneas on the voyage to Italy, but died on the way in Sicily.

7. super-sum, –esse, –fuī, —, *be over, remain, survive.*

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat Sāturnus? 2. Cūr vēnit Sāturnus in Latium? 3. Quid Ītalōs docuit? 4. Ubi erat Iāniculum? 5. Ubi erat templum Sāturnī? 6. Ā quibus Trōia est ēversa? 7. Quis effūgit et in Ītaliam pervēnit? 8. Cūr Aenēās urbem, quam condidit, Lāvīnium appellāvit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The Greeks came to Troy with a large fleet. 2. When Troy had been overthrown, many Trojans fled and came to Italy. 3. Latinus was king in that district. 4. The Trojans will be received kindly by King Latinus. 5. Lavinium was founded by Aeneas in honor of his wife, Lavinia.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Verbs.* The suffixes **-brum, -crum,** and **-trum,** attached to verb roots or stems, denote *the means* or *place of an action.*

Observe how the following nouns are formed from verbs by the addition of these suffixes:

Verb	Noun
arā-re, *to plow*	**arā-trum,** *a plow* (means)
sepel-īre, *to bury*	**sepul-crum,** *sepulchre* (place)
dē-lu-ere, *to wash away*	**dē-lu-brum,** *shrine* (place)
rōd-ere, *to peck* (pp'l. **rōs-us**)	**rōs-trum,** *beak* (means)
simulā-re, *to make like*	**simulā-crum,** *likeness, image* (means)

The Alban kings

Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, rēgnum accēpit. Hic sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbemque condidit in monte Albānō, eamque Albam Longam appellāvit. Ascaniō successit Silvius, quī post Aenēae mortem ā Lāvīniā genitus erat. Eius posterī omnēs in urbe Albā rēgnāvērunt, dum Rōma condita est.

2. sēdēs, -is, f., [**sedeō**], *seat.*
5. gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, *bring forth;* pass., *be born.*
6. dum, conj., *until.*

Ūnus hōrum rēgum, Rōmulus Silvius, sē maiōrem esse quam Iovem dīcēbat, et, cum tonāret, mīlitēs hastīs clipeōs percutere iussit, dīcēbatque hunc sonum multō clāriōrem

THE ALBAN LAKE.

Across the lake is the probable site of Alba Longa.

esse quam tonitrum. Fulmine ictus in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

Silvius Proca, rēx Albānōrum, duōs fīliōs relīquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Numitōrī, quī erat maior nātū, rēgnum

---

8. tonō, –āre, –uī, —, *thunder.* **hasta, –ae,** f., *spear.* **clipeus, –ī,** m., (round, metal) *shield.*

9. percutiō, –ere, –cussī, –cussus, [**quatiō,** *shake*], *strike.* **sonus, –i,** m., *sound.*

10. tonitrus, –ūs, m., [**tonō**], *thunder.* **fulmen, –inis,** n., *lightning, thunderbolt.* **icō, –ere, īcī, ictus,** *strike.*

13. nātū, *by birth;* **maior nātū,** *elder.*

lēgāvit. Tamen Amūlius, frātre per vim expulsō, rēgnum obtinuit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

percussion, native, succeed, transfer, precipitate, progenitor, legacy, sound, as-tonish.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis post Aenēae mortem rēgnum accēpit? 2. Ubi Ascanius novam urbem condidit? 3. Cūr urbs nova Alba Longa appellāta est? 4. Cuius frāter erat Silvius? 5. Quō modo Rōmulus Silvius ostendit sē esse maiōrem quam Iovem? 6. Quō modo pūnītus est? 7. Cui Silvius Proca rēgnum lēgāvit? 8. Quō modo Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. When Ascanius had received the kingdom, he founded Alba Longa. 2. The soldier will strike his shield with his spear. 3. The messenger said that the king had been hurled into the Alban Lake. 4. Numitor and Amulius were the sons of Silvius Proca. 5. Amulius expelled his brother, in order that he might obtain the throne.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Nouns.* Hitherto we have been studying the formation of nouns derived from *verbs*. Let us now take up the study of nouns that are formed from *nouns* by the addition of certain suffixes.

Diminutives. — The suffix **-lus** (**-la, -lum**), attached to a noun stem, forms *a diminutive, i.e.*, something *small* or *young* of the kind denoted by the noun. In uniting with the noun,

---

14. lēgō, -āre, [lēx], *leave by will, bequeath.* **frātre . . . expulsō:** Although Amulius deprived Numitor of the throne, he let him keep the property his father left him.

-lus assumes one of a variety of forms, such as **-ulus, -olus, -ellus,** or **-culus.** Following are some examples of nouns formed with this suffix:

rēx, *king*	**rēg-ulus,** (little king), *chief*
fīlius, *son*	**fīli-olus,** *little son*
fīlia, *daughter*	**fīli-ola,** *little daughter*
ātrium, *hall*	**ātri-olum,** *small hall*
nāvis, *ship*	**nāvi-cula,** (small boat), *skiff*
adulēscēns, *a youth*	**adulēscent-ulus,** *a very young man*
puera, *girl*	(puer-ula) **pu-ella,** (little girl), *girl*
castrum, *fort*	**cast-ellum,** (little fort), *redoubt*

(*a*) Observe that the diminutive follows the gender of the noun from which it is derived.

(*b*) These diminutives sometimes developed an added idea of *endearment, pity,* or *contempt.* Thus: **fīliola** came to mean *dear daughter* and might even be used for a grown-up daughter; **adulēscentulus** sometimes contemptuously denoted *a mere youth.* **Puella** eventually lost its diminutive sense, and became *girl.*

(*c*) Give the *English diminutive* derived from the diminutive of **grānum,** GRAIN; **globus,** GLOBE; **rēte,** *net.*

Romulus and Remus; founding of Rome

Amūlius, ut rēgnum fīrmissimē possidēret, Numitōris fīlium per īnsidiās interēmit, et fīliam frātris, Rheam Silviam, Vestālem virginem fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdōtibus nōn licet nūbere. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs fīliōs Rōmulum et Remum peperit. Hoc cum Amūlius comperisset, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abicī iussit.

---

1. **pos-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus,** [**prō** + **sedeō**], *hold, possess.*

2. **inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus,** [**emō**], (*take away from among*), *kill.*

4. **licet, -ēre, licuit** and **licitum est,** impers., *it is permitted.* **nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus,** *marry.* **geminus, -a, -um,** *twin.*

5. **pariō, -ere, peperī, partus,** *bear, bring forth.*

Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā rīpam sē effūderat, et cum puerī in vadō essent positī, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō relīquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque nūtrīvit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illīus regiōnis, puerōs abstulit, et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae eōs dedit.

Sīc Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent, et forte comperissent, quis ipsōrum

The Tiber River.

At the right is the Tomb of Hadrian; in the distance stands St. Peter's.

---

7. **forte,** adv., [abl. of **fors,** *chance*], *by chance.* **ultrā,** prep. with acc., *beyond.* **ef-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus,** [**ex**], *pour out, spread.*

8. **re-fluō, -ere,** —, —, *flow back, recede.* **siccum, -ī,** n., *dry ground.*

9. **vāgītus, -ūs,** m., [**vāgiō,** *cry*], *crying.* **lupa, -ae,** f., *she-wolf.* **ac-currō, -ere, -cucurrī** or **-currī, -cursus,** [**ad**], *run to.* **nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus,** *nourish, feed.*

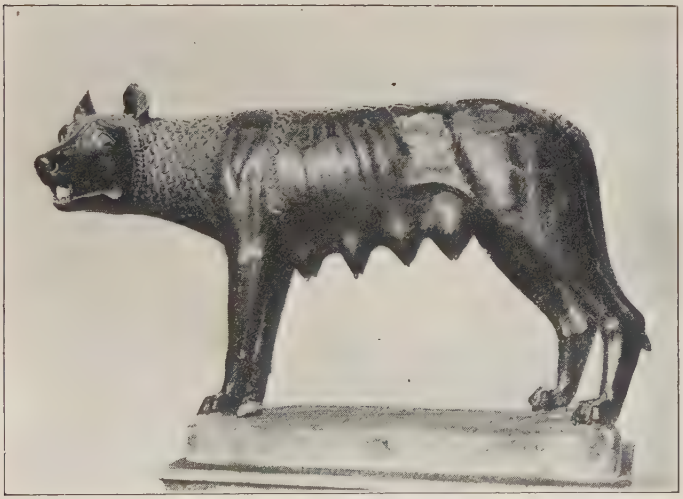
10. **pāstor, -ōris,** m., [**pāscō,** *feed*], *herdsman, shepherd.* **au-ferō, -ferre, abs-tulī, ab-lātus,** [**ab**], *bear away, carry off.*

12. **trāns-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus,** [**agō**], *drive through, pass, spend.*

13. **ad-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus,** *grow up.* **forte comperissent:** In those barbarous days there probably was plenty of "cattle-lifting"

avus, quae māter fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt, et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in 15
monte Palātīnō, quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam vo-

among the herdsmen. Whether or not Romulus and Remus indulged in this exciting diversion we do not know, but this is the story Livy tells: Some robbers enraged by the loss of their plunder attacked the brothers. Romulus escaped, but Remus was captured and haled before Amulius



THE CAPITOLINE WOLF.
This famous statue dates from the fifth century B.C.

on the charge that he had plundered Numitor's flocks. Thereupon Amulius sent him to Numitor for punishment. Numitor was struck by the noble bearing of this shepherd lad, and on learning that he had a twin brother, he almost guessed that they were his grandsons. Meanwhile Faustulus, who had always entertained a secret hope that these boys might turn out to be princes, told Romulus how he had found them and who their grandfather and mother probably were. Then Romulus collected a band of young men, and attacked the palace.

14. avus, –ī, m., *grandfather.*

15. in monte Palātīnō: Both the brothers wished to found the new city where they had been suckled by the she-wolf. But Remus favored

cāvit. Dum urbs moenibus circumdatur, Remus frātrem inrīdēns moenia trānsiluit. Inde Rōmulus īrātus Remum occīdit.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

fīrmissimē, possidēret, īnsidiās, il-licitus, ultrā, effūderat, nūtrīvit, pāstor, trānsēgērunt.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr Amūlius Rheam Silviam Vestālem virginem fēcit? 2. Quis erat pater Rōmulī et Remī? 3. Ubi Amūlius comperit Rheam Silviam fīliōs peperisse, quid fēcit? 4. Quō modo puerī servātī sunt? 5. Inter quōs Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam trānsēgērunt? 6. Quō modo dē suō avō mātreque comperērunt? 7. Ubi novam urbem condidērunt? 8. Cūr Rōmulus frātrem suum occīdit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Amulius found out who was the mother of the boys. 2. The messenger said that he had cast the boys into the Tiber. 3. Romulus and Remus will be left on dry land. 4. Amulius had been killed in order that the kingdom might be restored to Numitor. 5. Rome was founded on the Palatine hill.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Nouns.* The suffix **-ātus,** attached to noun stems, denotes *official position.* Thus,

---

the Aventine hill, while Romulus insisted on the Palatine. They decided to leave it to the gods. Stationing themselves, Remus on the Aventine and Romulus on the Palatine, they watched for the flight of birds. At sunrise Remus saw six vultures, but shortly afterwards Romulus saw *twelve.* The matter was referred to the shepherds, who decided in favor of Romulus. The traditional date of the founding of the city was April 21st, 753 B.C.

18. in-rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at, ridi-cule.* **trān-siliō, -īre, -uī, —,** [**trāns** + **saliō,** *leap*], *leap across* or *over.*

19. oc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ob** + **caedō**], *cut down, kill, slay.*

from **cōnsul** is formed **cōnsul-ātus,** CONSUL-*ship;* from **tribūnus, tribūn-ātus,** TRIBUNE-*ship.*

Form similar nouns from **magister** and **senex,** and define their English derivatives.

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asȳlum patefēcit, ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suīs pulsī accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs de-erant. Itaque fēstum Neptūnī et lūdōs īnstituit. Ad hōs multī ex fīnitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et līberīs vēnērunt. Cum spectāculī tempus vēnisset et omnēs lūdōs spectārent, subitō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrērunt et virginēs rapuērunt.

NEPTUNE.

1. asȳlum, –ī, n., *place of refuge.* **pate-faciō,** –**ere,** –**fēcī,** –**factus,** [**pateō,** *lie open*], *open.*

2. pellō, –**ere, pepulī, pulsus,** *drive.*

3. coniugēs deerant: In order to obtain wives for his citizens, Romulus first tried to establish the *right of marriage* with the neighboring states. But since his citizens were for the most part criminals or "undesirables," he failed to secure that right, and had to resort to the ruse, which is described in what follows.

7. mulier, –**is,** f., *woman.*

12. dis-currō, –**ere,** –**cucurrī** or –**currī,** –**cursus,** *run in different directions.*

Populī illī, quōrum virginēs raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōrēs susceperunt. Cum ad urbem appropinquārent, forte in Tarpeiam virginem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra prō-cūrābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret, eique permīsērunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret. Illa postulāvit

The Tarpeian Rock

14. rapiō, –ere, –uī, –tus, *seize, carry off.*

16. in arce sacra prō-cūrābat: Tarpeia was the daughter of the commander of the citadel. As a Vestal Virgin she attended to the sacrifices. It was while she was on her way to draw water for a sacrifice from a spring at the foot of the hill that the Sabines happened upon her.

17. rogō, –āre, *ask.* mōnstrō, –āre, *show, point out.*

18. mūnus, –eris, n., *gift.* postulō, –āre, *ask, demand.*

ōrnāmenta, quae in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant, ānulōs aureōs et armillās significāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā perductī scūtīs Tarpeiam obruērunt; nam et haec in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant.

Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, quī montem Tarpeium tenēbat, pugnam cōnseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est. In mediā caede mulierēs raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs, hinc coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur et ōrābant, ut

THE FORUM RESTORED.
This view is toward the east.

---

19. **ānulus, –ī,** m., *ring.* **20.** **armilla, –ae,** f., [**armus,** *shoulder*], *bracelet.*

21. **ob-ruō, –ere, –ruī, –rutus,** *overwhelm.* **et,** *also.*

23. **montem Tarpeium:** the southwestern peak of the Capitoline hill. From this cliff, 80 feet high, traitors were hurled to death.

24. **cōn-serō, –ere, –seruī, –sertus,** *join.*

25. **caedēs, –is,** f., [**caedō**], *slaughter.* **hinc . . . hinc,** *on this side . . . on that.*

26. **socer, –ī,** m., *father-in-law.* **com-plector, –ī, –plexus,** [**plectō,** *braid*], *embrace, clasp;* deponent verb. Translate as if *active.* **ōrō, –are,** [ōs], *pray, beg, beseech.*

caedis fīnem facerent. Utrīque hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus īcit, et Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

feast, permit, federal, asylum, arm, pugnacious, significant, discursive, procure, ab-rogate, ex-pulsion.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid fēcit Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret? 2. Quālēs hominēs in urbem accurrērunt? 3. Quid Rōmulus fēcit, ut cīvēs coniugēs obtinērent? 4. Cūr Sabīnī adversus Rōmānōs bellum suscēpērunt? 5. Ubi Sabīnī in Tarpeiam incidērunt? 6. Quid Tarpeia postulāvit? 7. Quid fēcērunt Sabīnī, postquam in arcem perductī sunt? 8. In quō locō Rōmulus pugnam cōnseruit? 9. Quid in mediā caede accidit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Many citizens are being driven out of the neighboring states. 2. The Sabines will ask why the maidens have been carried off. 3. Many children were coming to Rome to see the games. 4. The gift was so great that Tarpeia led the enemy into the citadel. 5. When the women advanced in the midst of the slaughter, both sides made an end of the battle.

---

27. uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que, gen., **utrīus-que,** *each* (of two), *both.*

28. foedus icere, *to strike a treaty,* perhaps because a victim was "struck" in the sacrifice which was performed on such occasions. **Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit:** Thus the Romans and Sabines formed one community under the joint rule of Romulus and Titus Tatius, the Sabine king. After several years, however, Tatius was killed in battle and Romulus reigned alone.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Nouns.* The suffix **-tūs** (gen., **-tūtis**), attached to noun stems, denotes *quality* or *condition.*

vir, *man*	**vir-tūs,** *manliness*
iuvenis, *young man*	**iuven-tūs,** *youth*
senex, *old man*	**senec-tūs,** *old age*
servus, *slave*	**servi-tūs,** *slavery*

Division of citizens; death of Romulus

Posteā cīvitātem dēscrīpsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam eīs dēbitam "patrēs" appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit, eāsque mulierum raptārum nōminibus appellāvit. 5

Annō rēgnī trīcēsimō

MARS, GOD OF WAR.

1. dē-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write down, divide, distribute.* **legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus,** *choose, appoint.*

3. patrēs: This is in explanation of the origin of the term used by speakers in addressing the senate, viz., **patrēs** or **patrēs cōnscrīptī.** Throughout the monarchy the senate acted merely as an advisory council to the king. The noble families from which senators, magistrates and priests could be appointed were called *patrician, i.e.,* they had the rank of the **patrēs. cūria, -ae,** f., *curia.* Each curia was made up of several families, bound together by common religious rites and serving as a unit in war. They were given the names of the Sabine women out of gratitude for their heroic interposition in the battle, which — as we have seen — resulted in the union of the two peoples.

6. trīcēsimus, -a, -um, [**trīgintā**], *thirtieth.*

septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret, repente inter violentissimam tempestātem oculīs hominum subductus est. Hinc aliī eum ā senātōribus interfectum esse, aliī ad deōs sublātum esse exīstimāvērunt.

Numa Pompilius, the lawgiver

Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Deinde Numa Pompilius, quī in urbe Curibus habitābat, rēx creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen cīvitātī prō-fuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima īnstituit, ut populī barbarī et bellicōsī mōrēs mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Ēgeriae, coniugis suae, iussū facere dīcēbat. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsimō tertiō imperī annō.

---

7. lūstrō, –āre, *review.*

8. oculīs, not abl., but *Dative of Separation,* used with verbs of *taking away,* especially compounds of **ab, dē, ex, ad,** and **sub.**

9. ad deōs sublātum esse: This rumor, that he had been carried up to the gods by his father Mars, was confirmed by Iulius Proculus, who claimed that Romulus in majestic form had appeared to him, and commanded him to go and tell the people that Rome was destined to be the greatest city in the world, and that he would be their guardian god Quirinus.

11. inter-rēgnum: Upon the death of a king there was an *interregnum,* during which the senate exercised regal authority, each senator in turn ruling for five days until the election of a new king.

12. Curēs, –ium, f., *Cures,* a Sabine town twenty-five miles northeast of Rome. Numa was so renowned for his justice and piety that he was elected king in spite of being a Sabine, living at some distance from Rome.

13. quidem, adv., *indeed.*

14. prōsum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, —, *benefit.*

15. molliō, –īre, *soften, civilize.*

16. Ēgeria, –ae, f., *Egeria,* a fountain nymph with the gift of prophecy, from whom Numa obtained advice on matters of state.

17. morbus, –ī, m., *disease.* : **quadrāgēsimus, –a, –um,** [quadrāgintā], *fortieth.*

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

dēscrīpsit, ē-lēgit, reverentiam, dēbitam, tempestātem, nūllum, bellicōsī, mollīret, morbō, dēcessit.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr senātōrēs sunt appellātī "patrēs"? 2. In quot cūriās plēbs distribūta est? 3. Quam ob rem cūriae mulierum nōminibus appellātae sunt? 4. Quot annōs rēgnāvit Rōmulus? 5. Quō modo dēcessit? 6. Quis per interrēgnum cīvitātem regēbat? 7. Quis Rōmulō successit? 8. Ubi anteā habitāverat Numa? 9. Erat-ne Numa similis Rōmulō? 10. Quō modo Numa cīvitātī prōfuit? 11. Cuius iussū Numa sē omnia facere dīcēbat? 12. Quot annōs rēgnāvit Numa?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Respect is due to the senators on account of their age. 2. Romulus was killed by Roman senators. 3. Some said he was carried away by a god. 4. A senator asked why Numa, a Sabine, was elected king by the Romans. 5. Numa said that he had been ordered to do these things by the nymph Egeria.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Nouns.* The suffix **-īna,** attached to noun stems, denotes *a vocation* or *the place where it is carried on.*

Noun	Noun
doctor, *teacher*	**doctr-īna,** *teaching*
medicus, *physician*	**medic-īna,** *healing*
discipulus, *pupil*	**discipl-īna,** *instruction*
tōnsor, *barber*	**tōnstr-īna,** *barber's shop*

Give the English derivatives from **doctrīna, medicīna,** and **disciplīna.**

Tullus Hostilius; the Horatii and the Curiatii

Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, cuius avus sē in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnuum virum praestiterat. Rēx creātus Albānīs bellum indīxit. Tum forte in utrōque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs, et aetāte et vīribus parēs. Trēs Horātiī erant Rōmānī; trēs Cūriātiī, Albānī. Inter duōs populōs foedus ictum est eīs lēgibus, ut Horātiī cum Cūriātiīs ferrō dīmicārent atque id certāmen bellum fīnīret.

Duo exercitūs utrimque prō castrīs cōnsīdunt. Inde trigeminī arma capiunt et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Signum datur et ternī iuvenēs micantibus gladiīs concurrunt. Prīmō concursū duo Horātiī exspīrantēs cadunt, quam ob rem Albānī magnō gaudiō conclāmant. Forte tertius Horātius erat integer, sed trēs Cūriātiī vulneribus erant tardī. Itaque Horātius, ut trēs hostēs distraheret, fugam capit. Iam aliquantum spatī aufūgerat ubi re-

---

1. in bellō adversus Sabīnōs: during the reign of Romulus. Tullus Hostilius evidently inherited a taste for war from his grandfather, for he waged incessant war with the neighboring peoples.

2. prae-stō, –āre, –stitī, –stitus, *show.*

3. in-dīcō, –ere, –dīxī, –dictus, *declare.*

4. tri-geminus, –a, –um, [trēs], *three* (born at one birth). **pār, paris,** *equal.*

6. lēx, lēgis, f., *law, condition.*

7. certāmen, –inis, n., [certō, *strive*], *struggle, contest.* **id certāmen bellum fīnīret,** *i.e.*, the two sets of brothers were to fight as *representatives* of the two peoples, and the result of their battle would determine which people should be declared victors in the war. Other instances of such fighting between the champions of two armies occur in the early history of many nations, but it is usually in the form of a duel (between two men). Cf. David and Goliath.

10. ternī, –ae, –a, *three each.* **micāns, –antis,** [micō], *flashing.*

12. gaudium, –ī, n., *joy.*

13. integer, –gra, –grum, *untouched.*

14. distrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, *draw apart.*

15. ali-quantum, –ī, n., [alius], *considerable.*

spiciēns videt ūnum haud procul ab sēsē abesse. In eum magnō impetū redit et eum facile superat. Tum alterum hostem caedit priusquam eī frāter auxilium ferre potest. Super-est tertius; sed ille, cursū et vulnere dēfessus, facile ab Horātiō interficitur. Tum Rōmānī ovantēs Horātium accipiunt et domum dēdūcunt.

Tullus Hostīlius propter Mettī Fūfetī perfidiam Albam

THE OATH OF THE HORATII.

20. ovō, –āre, *rejoice.*

22. Mettius Fufetius was dictator of Alba. After the combat between the Horatii and the Curiatii the Alban army returned home. Presently Tullus became involved in another war and summoned the Alban army to his aid. It came; but in the battle that ensued Mettius Fufetius withheld his army until the Romans came off victorious, and then calmly congratulated Tullus on his well-earned success. For this treacherous act Tullus ordered his body to be torn asunder by four chariots in the presence of both armies. Furthermore, he utterly destroyed Alba Longa and removed the people to Rome.

dī-ruit. Cum trīgintā duōs annōs rēgnāvisset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

distract, par, ovation, medium, ruin, respect, integer, strenuous, arson, expire.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat tertius rēx Rōmae? 2. Quibus prīmum bellum indīxit? 3. Quī erant Horātiī et Cūriātiī? 4. Quāle foedus inter duōs populōs ictum est? 5. Quid prīmō concursū frātrum accidit? 6. Cūr tertius Horātius fugam cēpit? 7. Quō modo trēs hostēs superāvit? 8. Cūr Tullus Albam Longam dīruit? 9. Quot annōs rēgnāvit? 10. Quālis rēx erat Tullus Hostīlius?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The third king was a brave and energetic man. 2. Taking-up their arms, the young men advanced between the two armies. 3. When the signal had been given, the brothers charged with flashing swords. 4. The third Curiatius, who was slow because of his wound, was easily overcome. 5. This battle between the Horatii and the Curiatii ended the struggle.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Adjectives or Nouns.* Having seen how Latin nouns are formed from verbs and nouns, let us now pass on to nouns that are formed from *adjectives*. Here we meet with still another set of suffixes. We shall find,

---

23. dī-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *overthrow, destroy.* **fulmine ictus:** Toward the last Tullus fell sick, and in great alarm proclaimed sacrifices to the gods. But they were not performed with proper ceremony, and Jupiter in anger slew him with a thunderbolt.

24. ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *burn, be destroyed by fire.*

however, that while most nouns with these suffixes are formed from adjectives, some are also formed from other nouns.

The suffix **–ia,** attached to stems of adjectives and nouns, denotes *a quality* or *condition.*

adj., **audāx,** *bold*	**audāc-ia,** *boldness, daring*
adj., **miser,** *wretched*	**miser-ia,** MISERY
noun, **cūstōs,** *a guard*	**cūstōd-ia,** CUSTODY, *guard*

Like the last two examples, many Latin nouns with the suffix **–ia** produce English nouns ending in **–y.** What are the English derivatives of **iniūria** and **industria?** From what Latin words are *family* and *victory* formed?

SPECIAL GRAMMAR STUDY. — **Deponent Verbs.** — You have already met with several Deponent Verbs. As they occur frequently in the text that follows, it would be well to get a complete understanding of them. Therefore, carefully study them, as given in (28), before reading the following Latin story.

Ancus Marcius

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex fīliā nepōs,[1] suscēpit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte[2] et religiōne avō similis, Latīnōs bellō domuit, urbem ampliāvit,[3] et eī nova moenia circumdedit. Carcerem[4] prīmus aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vīcēsimō quārtō annō imperī morbō obiit.[6]

---

1. **nepōs, –ōtis,** m., *grandson.*

2. **aequitās, –ātis,** f., [**aequus**], *justice.*

3. **domō, –āre, –uī, –itus,** *subdue, conquer.* **ampliō, –āre,** [**amplus**], *enlarge.*

4. **carcer, –is,** m., *prison;* the famous *Mamertine prison* on the north side of the Forum. The church now standing above it is called *San Pietro in Carcere,* because St. Peter was confined in the prison by the emperor Nero. **ōstium, –ī,** n., [ōs], *door; mouth.* **Ad Tiberis ōstia:** sixteen miles from Rome. Ostia became a flourishing seaport.

6. **ob-eō, –īre, –iī, –itus,** *die.*

Tarquinius Priscus, a foreigner, secures the throne of Rome

Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit, fīlius Dēmarātī, quī tyrannōs patriae Corinthī fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniīs accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam profectus erat. Dum ad urbem appropinquat, aquila eī pilleum abstulit, et postquam altē

Ruins of Ostia.

---

8. tyrannus, –i, m., "*tyrant.*" At about this time many cities in Greece were under the absolute rule of a man who had seized the government by force. Such rulers, whether they ruled mildly or despotically, were called **tyrannī.**

9. Tarquiniī, –ōrum, m., *Tarquinii*, a city forty-five miles northwest of Rome. Tarquinius, whose name originally was Lucumo, inherited great wealth from his father and married Tanaquil, an Etruscan lady of high rank. Nevertheless he was despised as a foreigner, and finally by the advice of his wife he moved to Rome.

10. ali-quandō, adv., [**alius**], *at one time, once.*

11. aquila, –ae, f., *eagle.* **eī,** *Dative of Separation* with **au-ferō.** See note on **oculīs**, page 118, line 8. **pilleus, –ī,** m., (a cone-shaped felt) *cap.*

ē-volāvit, capitī aptē re-posuit. Hinc Tanaquil coniux, mulier auguriōrum perīta, rēgnum eī portendī intellēxit.

Cum in urbe commorārētur, Ancī rēgis familiāritātem cōnsecūtus est, quī eum fīliōrum suōrum tūtōrem relīquit. Sed is pūpillīs rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, quī " patrēs minōrum gentium " sunt appellātī. Plūra bella fēlīciter gessit, ac multōs agrōs, hostibus adēmptōs, urbis territōriō adiūnxit.

Entrance to the Prison.

12. **ē-volō, -āre,** *fly away* or *up.* **aptē,** adv., [**aptus**], *neatly.*

13. **augurium, -ī,** n., *divination, augury.* **perītus, -a, -um,** *skilled.* **por-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus,** [**prō**], *point out, foretell.*

14. **com-moror, -ārī, -ātus,** *delay.* **familiāritās, -ātis,** f., [**familia**], *intimacy.*

16. **pūpillīs:** what use of the dative? **intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,** *seize* (by the way).

17. **patrēs minōrum gentium:** probably of influential plebeian families, which by this act were raised to the patrician rank.

19. **ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus,** [**emō**], *take* (to oneself), *take away.*

20 Prīmus triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit; Capitōlium incohāvit. Trīcēsimō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī fīliōs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occīsus est.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

aequitāte, ampliāvit, obiit, accēpit, tyrannōs, aptē, reposuit, portendī, pūpillīs, intercēpit, territōriō.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis Tullō Hostīliō successit? 2. Quālis vir erat Ancus Mārcius? 3. Quae in suō imperiō effēcit? 4. Cūr Dēmarātus ē Graeciā excessit? 5. Unde Tarquinius nōmen accēpit? 6. Dum Tarquinius ad urbem Rōmam appropin-

The Cloaca Maxima.

20. triumphāns: See Lesson VIII. **cloācās fēcit:** the sewers that drained the lower parts of the city, of which the largest, the *Cloāca Maxima*, emptying into the Tiber, is still in use. **Capitōlium:** the temple on the Capitoline hill.

21. incohō, -āre, *begin.*

quat, quid accidit? 7. Quō modo Tanaquil id portentum interpretāta est? 8. Quō modo Tarquinius rēgnum obtinuit? 9. Quae opera urbāna incohāvit? 10. Quō modo obiit?

(*c*) Translate:

Two kings, Numa and Ancus, were men of great fairness. 2. Tullus inquired how Tarquin received his name. 3. Tarquin and Tanaquil will set out for the city. 4. Tanaquil knows that Tarquin will be the king of Rome. 5. Tarquin had acquired great glory by these victories.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Adjectives.* In our last lesson we learned that the suffix **–ia,** attached to adjective or noun stems, formed nouns denoting *quality* or *condition,* which yield English words ending in **–y**. This suffix, with the same meaning, is very often attached to adjectives ending in **–ns** (stem **–nt**), forming nouns ending in **–ntia.** Most of these adjectives were originally Present Participles.

The English derivatives from such nouns generally end in **–nce.**

dīligēns, DILIGENT **dīligent-ia,** *diligence*
adulēscēns, *growing* **adulēscent-ia,** *youth,* ADOLESCENCE

Form similar Latin nouns from the adjectives **prūdēns** and **sciēns.** Explain the formation of the English words *sequence* and *intelligence.*

Servius Tullius; the census. Murder of the king

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genitus ex nōbilī fēminā, captīvā tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquinī Prīscī ēducārētur, flamma in eius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil eī summam dignitātem portendī intellēxit, et coniugī persuāsit, ut eum sīcutī līberōs suōs 5

---

2. famula, –ae, f., *female servant.*

5. per-suādeō, –ēre, –suāsī, –suāsus, *convince, persuade.* Observe that it governs the *Dative.* See (**61**). **sīc-utī,** adv., *just as.*

ēducāret. Cum adolēvisset, rēx eī fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit.

Cum Prīscus Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dīcēns, rēgem grave quidem sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convaluisset, Serviō Tulliō oboedīret. Sīc Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsum ōrdi-

AN OLD VIEW OF THE FORUM.

This shows the Forum before there had been much excavating. Notice the row of trees and compare with the pictures on pages 53 and 141.

9. **al-loquor, –ī, –locūtus,** [**ad**], *speak to.*

10. **lētālis, –e,** [**lētum,** *death*], *fatal.*

11. **dum,** conj., *until;* with the subjunctive to denote *anticipation.* **con-valēscō, –ere, –valuī,** —, [**valeō**], *recover.* **ob-oediō, –īre,** [**audiō**], *give ear, obey.* Another verb that governs the *Dative.*

13. **Montēs trēs:** the Caelian, Esquiline, and Viminal hills. These with the Palatine, Capitoline, Aventine, and Quirinal, which had been previously occupied, made up the famous "seven hills" of Rome. The

nāvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit capitum octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant.

Hic rēx interfectus est scelere fīliae Tulliae et Tarquinī Superbī, fīlī eius rēgis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus, cum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in Forum properāvit, et prīma coniugem rēgem salūtāvit. Cum domum redīret, aurīgam super patris corpus in viā iacēns carpentum agere iussit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

dignity, obedient, noble, census, genitive, dejected, loquacious, salute, prodigy, administer, ad-jacent, persuade, ordain, convalescent.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Erat-ne Tanaquil Servī Tullī māter? 2. Cūr Tanaquil rēgī persuāsit ut Servium Tullium sīcutī līberōs suōs ēducāret? 3. Quem Servius Tullius in mātrimōnium dūxit? 4. Quid Tanaquil dē rēgis morte populō dīxit? 5. Quot montēs erant in urbe Rōmā? 6. Quot cīvēs Rōma sub Serviō Tulliō habuit? 7. Quis rēgem interfēcit? 8. Quod scelus dētestābile Tullia fēcit?

---

wall, which Servius Tullius is said to have built around these hills, inclosed an area of about two square miles. By the time of Julius Caesar the city had spread far beyond the Servian wall. Finally in 271 A.D. the Emperor Aurelian built a wall that inclosed five square miles. A large part of this Aurelian wall is still standing. **cēnsus, –ūs,** m., *census,* a registration of the citizens and their property by the censors. **ōrdinō, –āre,** [ōrdō], *arrange, appoint, establish.*

19. properō, –āre, *hasten.*

21. iaceō, –ēre, –uī, —, *lie.* (Often confused with iaciō.) **carpentum, –ī,** n., (two-wheeled, covered) *carriage.*

Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last king; his banishment

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen strēnuus plūrēs fīnitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō aedificāvit.

ROMAN TEMPLES.

The temple of Jupiter is on the Capitoline Hill at the left.

Posteā, dum Ardeam, urbem Latī, oppugnat, imperium perdidit. Nam cum eius fīlius Lucrētiae, nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim fēcisset, haec ipsa

---

1. superbus, –a, –um, [**super,** *over*], *over-bearing.* **mōs, mōris,** m., *custom;* pl., *conduct, character.*

2. plūrēs fīnitimōrum populōrum vīcit: Through these conquests Rome became the head of the thirty cities that formed the Latin League. **Templum Iovis . . . aedificāvit,** *i.e.,* he finished the temple which his father began to build.

4. Ardea, –ae, f., *Ardea,* a town twenty miles south of Rome.

5. per-dō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *lose.* **eius fīlius:** Sextus Tarquinius, who previously had helped the king to capture Gabii.

6. Tarquinius Collātīnus: Sextus' cousin. His father, after the conquest of *Collatia* by Tarquinius Priscus, had been made governor of the town. Hence the family surname *Collatinus.*

sē occīdit in cōnspectū marītī, patris, et amīcōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta est, ut hanc iniūriam ulcīscerentur.

Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque nōn-nūllī in exitium rēgis coniūrāvērunt, populōque persuāsērunt, ut eī portās urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, quī cīvitātem Ardeam cum rēge oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Fūgit igitur cum uxōre et līberīs suīs. Ita in urbe Rōmā rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

mōribus, perdidit, iniūriam, exitium, coniūrāvērunt, clauderet, rēgnātum.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat pater Tarquinī Superbī? 2. Quālis rēx erat Tarquinius Superbus? 3. Gessit-ne multa bella? 4. Quō modo in urbe plēbem exercēbat? 5. Quis erat Lucrētia? 6. Quō modo Lucrētia mortua est? 7. Quī in rēgem coniūrāvērunt? 8. Quid populō persuāsērunt ut faceret? 9. Erat-ne exercitus rēgī fidēlis? 10. Quid fēcit Tarquinius? 11. Quot rēgēs in urbe Rōmā rēgnāvērunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The neighboring peoples had fought fiercely that they might not be conquered by Tarquin. 2. When he was besieging the city, he was abandoned by the army. 3. The father and friends of Lucretia will avenge that wrong.

---

8. ob-testor, –ārī, –ātus, [**testis**], *call as witness, implore.* **ulcīscor, –ī, ultus,** *avenge.*

9. Brūtus: See note on page 132, line 5.

10. ex-itium, –ī, n., [eō], *destruction, death.* **con-iūrō, –āre,** [iūs], *swear together, conspire.*

11. claudō, –ere, clausī, clausus, *shut.*

4. The citizens said that they had not conspired against the king. 5. The king's wife and children are fleeing from the city.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Adjectives.* Nouns denoting *quality* or *condition* are also formed from adjective stems by attaching the suffix **–tia.**

amīcus, *friendly*	**amīci-tia,** *friendship*
laetus, *glad*	**laeti-tia,** *gladness*
malus, *bad*	**mali-tia,** *malice*

Explain the formation of the Latin nouns from which *justice* and *avarice* are derived.

The Early Republic

Rome becomes a republic; the first consuls; war with Tarquinius

Tarquiniō expulsō, duo cōnsulēs prō ūnō rēge creārī coeptī sunt ut, sī ūnus malus esset, alter eum coercēret. Eīs annuum imperium tribūtum est, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īnsolentiōrēs redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō prīmō, expulsīs rēgibus, cōnsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, ācerrimus lībertātis

---

1. duo cōnsulēs: At first the consuls exercised the authority of a king. In the city they ruled alternately for a month; in the army for a day. Each had the right to veto the act of the other. In the course of time much of their power was taken from them by the creation of new magistracies. **creārī coeptī sunt:** with a passive infinitive the passive form of **coepī** is preferred.

2. co-erceō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, [**arceō,** *keep off*], *check, restrain.*

3. tribuō, –ere, –uī, –ūtus, *grant, bestow.* **diūturnitās, –ātis,** f., [**diū**], *long duration.* **potestās, –ātis,** f., [**potis,** *able*], *power.*

4. red-dō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *render.* **annō prīmō:** the traditional date was 509 B.C.

5. L. Iūnius Brūtus, a nephew of the king. He had seen his father and brother slain by order of Tarquin, and in order to avert a similar fate had feigned to be stupid. (Hence his surname **Brūtus,** *dull, stupid.*) But from the time of Lucretia's death he showed himself in his true colors and was the leader in the rebellion against the tyrant.

vindex, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus Lucrētiae. Sed Collātīnō paulō post dignitās sublāta est. Placuerat enim, nē quis ex Tarquiniōrum familiā Rōmae manēret. Ergō cum omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit, et in eius locum Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul factus est. 10

THE FORUM RESTORED.

This view looks northwest, showing the Capitoline Hill and the Temple of Jupiter at the left.

---

6. vindex, –icis, m., *defender.*

7. Collātīnō: what use of the dative? **paulō post:** A conspiracy to restore Tarquin to the throne had been formed at Rome, but it was discovered and all who took part in it were put to death. Among the conspirators were the two sons of Brutus, but the father's stern sense of justice would not allow him to make any effort to save them. This plot caused so much alarm that every member of the Tarquin family was forthwith banished from Rome. **placeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus,** *please;* often used, as here, impersonally, **placet,** *it is resolved.*

8. nē quis, *that no one.* **Rōmae,** locative, *at Rome.* **ergō,** adv., *therefore.*

9. migrāvit: he settled in Lavinium.

10. Valerius Pūblicola was made consul for his valuable services in the rebellion.

Commōvit bellum urbī rēx Tarquinius. In prīmā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arrūns, Tarquinī fīlius, sēsē invicem occīdērunt. Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs discessērunt. Brūtum, quasi commūnem patrem, Rōmānae mātrōnae per annum lūxērunt. Valerius Pūblicola Sp. Lucrētium, Lucrētiae patrem, collēgam sibi fēcit; quī cum morbō exstīnctus esset, Horātium Pulvīllum sibi collēgam sūmpsit. Ita prīmus annus quīnque cōnsulēs habuit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

annual, colleague, vindicator, malice, common, expulsion, render, coerce, patrimony, insolent, com-placent, tribute, migrate.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr erant duo cōnsulēs Rōmae? 2. Quot annōs cōnsul cīvitātem regēbat? 3. Quī fuērunt prīmī cōnsulēs? 4. Cūr Collātīnus ex urbe migrāvit? 5. Quis prō Collātīnō cōnsul factus est? 6. Cūr Brūtus in pugnā mortem petiit? 7. Quot cōnsulēs prīmus annus habuit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. When Tarquin had been expelled, two consuls were elected instead of one king. 2. The one consul is being restrained by the other. 3. The king will remain in the city,

---

11. Commōvit bellum . . . Tarquinius: he secured an army with the aid of the people of Tarquinii and Veii.

12. in-vicem, adv., *in turn;* **sēsē invicem,** *each other.* After the death of his sons Brutus longed to die himself. The opportunity to die nobly defending his country presented itself in this battle. So fierce was the onset of the two warriors that both fell instantly each pierced to the heart by the other's weapon.

13. dis-cēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, *depart;* **victor discēdō,** *come off victorious.*

15. lugeō, –ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *mourn.*

in order that his dignity may not be taken away. 4. The messenger says that Brutus has slain the son of Tarquin. 5. There were five consuls in the first year of the republic.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Adjectives and Nouns.* The suffix **–tās,** attached to adjective and noun stems, forms nouns denoting *quality* or *condition.* The corresponding English suffix is *–ty.*

celer, *swift*	**celeri-tās,** *swiftness,* CELERITY
auctor, *founder,* AUTHOR	**auctōri-tās,** *influence,* AUTHORITY
dignus, *worthy*	**digni-tās,** *worth, position,* DIGNITY
cīvis, *citizen*	**cīvi-tās,** *citizenship, city state, state*

Form similar Latin nouns from the adjectives **līber, cupidus, facilis, nōbilis.** What do the English derivatives from these nouns mean?

War with Porsena, king of the Etruscans

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius Rōmānīs bellum intulit, Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium eī ferente. In illō bellō Horātius Cocles sōlus pontem ligneum dēfendit et hostēs cohibuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō ruptus esset. Tum sē cum armīs in Tiberim coniēcit et ad suōs trānāvit. 5

Dum Porsena urbem obsidet, C. Mūcius Scaevola, iuvenis fortis animī, in hostis castra sē contulit eō cōnsiliō, ut rēgem occīderet. At ibi scrībam rēgis prō ipsō rēge interfēcit.

---

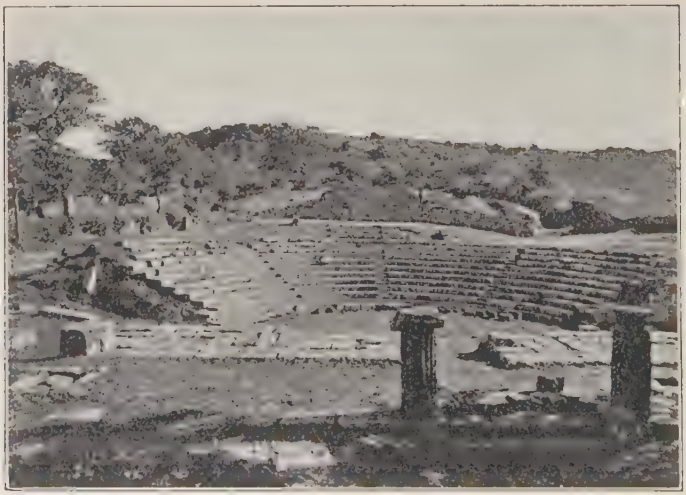
2. Lars Porsena was the king of Etruria, a large and populous country northwest of Rome. The Etruscans were a highly civilized people. Admirable examples of their gold jewelry and painted vases are exhibited in all large museums. Remains of the magnificent mausoleum of Lars Porsena are still to be seen in Chiusi, formerly Clusium, the ancient capital of Etruria.

4. co-hibeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, [**habeō**], *hold, keep back.* **dōnec,** conj., *until;* like **dum,** when it means *until,* it takes the *Subjunctive,* if the action is *anticipated.* **rumpō, –ere, rūpī, ruptus,** *break, destroy.*

5. trā-nō, –āre, [**trāns**], *swim across.*

8. scrība, –ae, m., [**scrībō**], *clerk, official scribe, secretary.*

Tum ā rēgiīs satellitibus comprehēnsus et ad rēgem dēductus, cum Porsena eum ignibus allātīs terrēret, dextram ārae accēnsae imposuit, dōnec flammīs cōnsūmpta esset. Hoc facinus rēx mīrātus iuvenem dīmīsit incolumem. Tum hic quasi beneficium referēns ait, trecentōs aliōs iuvenēs in eum coniūrāvisse. Hāc rē territus Porsena pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit. Tarquinius autem Tusculum sē contulit, ibique prīvātus cum uxōre cōnsenuit.



The Site of Tusculum.

9. **satelles, –itis,** c., *attendant, courtier.*

10. **ac-cendō, –ere, –cendī, –cēnsus,** [**ad**], *kindle, set on fire, light.*

11. **facinus, –oris,** n., [**faciō**], *deed.*

12. **mīror, –ārī, –ātus,** *wonder at, admire.* **qua-si,** [**quā** + **sī**], *as if.*

13. **aiō, ais, ait, aiunt; aiēbam,** defective verb, *say.*

15. **Tarquinius . . . cōnsenuit:** Tarquin made a *third* attempt to recover his throne, this time with the aid of his son-in-law, Octavius Mamilius. **Tusculum, –ī,** n., *Tusculum,* a mountain town about fifteen miles southeast of Rome. By reason of its lofty situation and the beauty of its scenery it eventually became a favorite summer resort for wealthy Romans.

16. **cōn-senēscō, –ere, –senuī,** —, [**senex,** *old*], *grow old.*

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

dēfendit, pro-hibuit, ruptus, scrībam, satellitibus, cōnsūmpta, mīrātus, dīmīsit, beneficium.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quandō Tarquinius iterum Rōmānīs bellum intulit? 2. Quis eī auxilium tulit? 3. Quō modo Horātius Cocles cīvitātem servāvit? 4. Cūr C. Mūcius in Porsenae castra sē contulit? 5. Cūr rēgis scrībam interfēcit? 6. Quid deinde rēx satellitēs facere iussit? 7. Quō modo Mūcius Porsenae ostendit sē esse fortissimum? 8. Cūr Porsena pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit? 9. Ā quō Tarquinius posteā auxilium petiit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Porsena, king of the Etruscans, will bring aid to Tarquin. 2. The wooden bridge is being defended by Horatius Cocles alone. 3. When Mucius had been seized, Porsena ordered the attendants to lead him to the altar. 4. The king wondered why the youth had slain the secretary. 5. The king replied that he would make peace with the Romans.

Word Formation. — *Nouns derived from Adjectives.* Still another suffix, viz. **-tūdō,** attached to adjective stems, forms nouns denoting *quality* or *condition.* The English derivatives end in *-tude.*

Adjective	Noun
altus, *high*	**alti-tūdō,** *height,* altitude
magnus, *great*	**magni-tūdō,** *greatness,* magnitude

Explain the formation of the Latin nouns from which we derive *multitude, fortitude, gratitude, latitude.*

The first secession of the plebs

Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs, populus Rōmae sēditiōnem fēcit, quod tribūtīs et mīlitiā ā senātū exhauriēbātur. Magna pars plēbis urbem relīquit, et in montem

Bridge over the Anio.
Over this bridge passes the road to the Sacred Mount.

1. ex-igō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus, [**agō**], *drive out, expel.* **Rōmae,** locative.

2. sēditiō, –ōnis, f., [**sēd–**, *apart* + **eō**], *rebellion.* **tribūtum, –ī,** n., *stated payment, e.g.,* for rent or taxes. **mīlitia, –ae,** f., [**mīles**], *military service.* The condition of the plebeians at this time was pitiable. By exacting excessive land-rents and requiring constant military service from them, the patricians had reduced them almost to the state of serfs. They were *supposed* to have the rights of citizenship, but they were excluded from the Senate and from every political office. Most of all, they could not even secure common justice through the laws. Their only recourse was to withdraw from Rome and build another city for themselves. **ex-hauriō, –īre, –hausī, –haustus,** (draw out), *exhaust, impoverish.*

3. in montem: the **Mōns Sacer,** four miles northeast of Rome.

trāns Aniēnem amnem sēcessit. Tum patrēs turbātī Menēnium Agrippam mīsērunt ad plēbem, quī eam senātuī conciliāret. Hic eīs inter alia fābulam nārrāvit dē ventre et membrīs humānī corporis; quā populus sīc commōtus est, ut in urbem redīret. Tum prīmum tribūnī plēbis creātī sunt, quī plēbem adversum nōbilitātis superbiam dēfenderent.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

exhaust, sextette, conciliate, tribune, exacting, militia, decimal, secede, tribute, fabulous, sedition.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr plēbs sēditiōnem fēcit? 2. In quem montem plēbs sēcessit? 3. In quem amnem Aniō īnflūxit? 4. Quis

---

4. Aniō, –ēnis, m., *the Anio,* a tributary of the Tiber. **amnis, –is,** m., *river.*

5. quī . . . conciliāret. Observe that a *Relative Pronoun* may introduce a Purpose clause with the Subjunctive.

6. fābulam: The story in brief was this: "Once upon a time the members of the body became dissatisfied because, as it seemed to them, they did all the work, while the belly did none. Finally they ceased to work. But they soon found out that this only served to weaken them." **venter, –tris,** m., *belly.*

8. tribūnus, –ī, m., *tribune;* **tribūnī plēbis,** *tribunes of the people.* At first there were only two tribunes, but their number was gradually increased to ten. They were of course plebeians, and in order to be always accessible, their houses were open day and night, and they were not allowed to be absent from the city for twenty-four hours. Their chief duty was to protect the plebeians. They could fine, imprison, or even put to death any one who interfered with them in the discharge of their duties. Their persons were held sacred. In time they acquired the right to veto the act of any magistrate.

This was the first concession made to the plebeians by the patricians. It marked the beginning of a fierce struggle which raged between the two orders for more than two hundred years. One by one the political offices were thrown open to the plebeians until at last in 287 B.C. they secured full equality with the patricians.

missus est ut plēbem conciliāret? 5. Quō modo plēbī persuāsit ut in urbem redīret? 6. Quot tribūnī plēbis creātī sunt? 7. Quid erat praecipuum officium tribūnī plēbis?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The kings had been driven out of the city only-a-few years. 2. The messenger says that the army will rebel (make rebellion) against its commander. 3. The senator did not understand why the plebeians were leaving the city. 4. Tell us stories about the kings of Rome. 5. The plebeians will be defended against the nobility by tribunes.

Review of Noun Formation

In your study of the formation of *Latin nouns* from *nouns, verbs,* and *adjectives* you have noticed that several different suffixes may have the same general meaning. Let us now in review group suffixes of the same meaning into general rules, which will enable us to tabulate them more thoroughly.

Rule 1. The suffixes **–iō, –tus** or **–sus,** and **–ūra** form nouns denoting *an action* or *the result of an action.*

Rule 2. The suffixes **–ulum, –bulum, –culum; –brum, –crum, –trum; –ium, –men,** and **–mentum** form nouns denoting *the means, instrument,* or *result of an action.*

Rule 3. The suffixes **–lus, –ellus, –olus, –ulus,** and **–culus** form *diminutives.*

Rule 4. The suffixes **–ia, –tia, –tās,** and **–tūdō** form nouns denoting *quality* or *condition.*

Exercises

(*a*) Give examples of Latin nouns that are formed with *each* of the above suffixes. Wherever possible, give an English derivative from these Latin nouns.

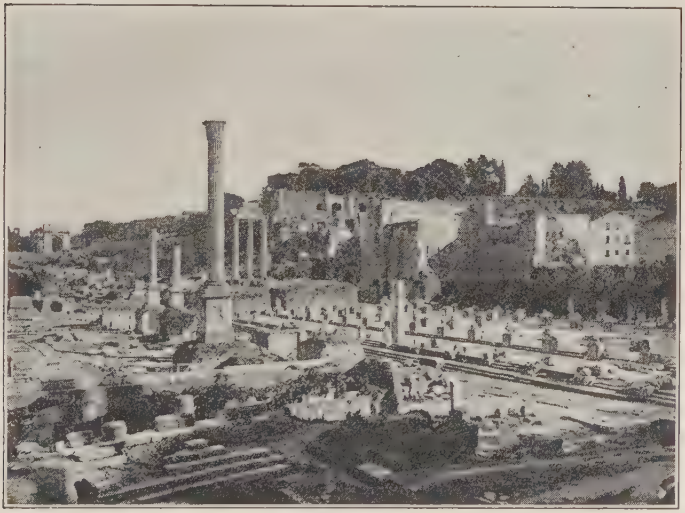
(*b*) Explain the formation of the Latin nouns from which the following English words are derived:

auditorium, monitor, magistrate, aviary, clamor, medicine.

Coriolanus and the Volsci

Octāvō decimō annō post exāctōs rēgēs, C. Mārcius, dictus *Coriolānus* ab urbe Volscōrum *Coriolīs*, quam bellō cēperat,

1. Octāvō decimō annō, *i.e.*, 492 B.C. Rome had lost the territory and prestige she had gained under the Tarquins, and now had to fight for her very existence against the enemies that threatened her on every side. North of the Tiber were the powerful Etruscans. To the east



THE FORUM.

This view looks south toward the Palatine Hill.

were the Sabines and the Aequians, and to the south the Volscians, three fierce tribes of highlanders that were constantly swooping down from the mountains to pillage and plunder the peoples of the plains. It took the Romans fully one hundred years to beat back and finally subdue the foes around them. **C. Mārcius** received his surname for his heroism in the capture of Corioli. He was a haughty patrician who despised the plebs. When a famine arose in Rome and a ship laden with provisions had arrived from Sicily, he opposed the distribution of grain among the plebeians, unless they gave up their right to have tribunes. For this he was exiled from Rome.

2. Coriolī, -ōrum, m., *Corioli*, a Volscian town southeast of Rome.

plēbī invīsus factus est. Quā rē urbe expulsus ad Volscōs, ācerrimōs Rōmānōrum hostēs, contendit, et ab eīs dux exercitūs factus Rōmānōs saepe vīcit. Iam ūsque ad quīntum mīliārium urbis accesserat, nec ūllīs cīvium suōrum lēgātiōnibus flectī poterat, ut patriae parceret. Dēnique Veturia māter et Volumnia uxor ex urbe ad eum vēnērunt; quārum flētū et precibus commōtus est, ut exercitum removēret. Quō factō, ā Volscīs ut prōditor occīsus esse dīcitur.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

quīntum, lēgātiōnibus, flectī, parsus.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Erat-ne C. Mārcius homō plēbēius? 2. Quam ob rem cognōmen Coriolānum accēpit? 3. Cūr plēbī invīsus factus est? 4. Cum urbe expulsus esset, cūr ad Volscōs contendit? 5. Vīcērunt-ne Rōmānōs Volscī, duce Coriolānō? 6. Quī ā Coriolānō petīvērunt ut patriae parceret? 7. Quibus dēnique cessit Coriolānus? 8. Quid mātrī exclāmāvit? 9. Quid eī accidit?

---

3. in-vīsus, –a, –um, [**in** + **videō**, *look askance at*], *hated, hateful.*

5. quīntus, –a, –um, [**quīnque**], *fifth.*

6. mīliārium, –ī, n., [**mīlle**], *milestone.* In later times all the military roads were marked with milestones. In the Forum the emperor Augustus set up a gilded milestone (**mīliārium aureum**), which was regarded as the center of the Roman Empire.

7. flectō, –ere, flexī, flexus, *bend, influence.* **parcō, –ere, pepercī, parsus,** (be sparing to), *spare;* with dat. **Veturia** and **Volumnia** marched to the camp at the head of a procession of noble Roman matrons.

9. flētus, –ūs, m., [**fleō**, *weep*], *weeping.* **commōtus est:** In yielding, Coriolanus exclaimed, "Oh, mother, thou hast saved Rome, but thou hast ruined thy son!"

10. ut, *as.* **prōditor, –ōris,** m., [**prōdō**], *traitor.*

(*c*) Translate:

1. Coriolanus was so hateful to the people that he was driven out of the city. 2. When Coriolanus approached the city, an embassy of citizens came to him. 3. The leader said that the Roman army had frequently been conquered by the enemy. 4. The entreaties of his mother and wife will affect Coriolanus. 5. Banished from the city, they were hastening to Athens.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Verbs.* Now that we are familiar with some of the more important suffixes that were used in forming Latin nouns, let us consider the formation of adjectives.

The suffix **–āx,** attached to verb stems, forms adjectives denoting *tendency*. The English derivatives end in *-acious*.

aud-ēre, *to dare*	**aud-āx,** *daring,* AUDACIOUS
rap-ere, *to seize*	**rap-āx,** *grasping,* RAPACIOUS

Explain the formation of the Latin adjectives from which we derive *tenacious* and *pugnacious*.

Cincinnatus is summoned from his farm to be dictator

Annō quīnquāgēsimō secundō post rēgēs exāctōs, cum exercitus Rōmānus in Algidō monte ab Aequīs obsidērētur, senātuī placuit ut L. Quīnctius Cincinnātus dictātor dīcerētur. Is tum trāns Tiberim agrum quattuor iūgerum manibus suīs colēbat. Ibi, cum arāret, ab lēgātīs inventus est,[5]

2. Algidus, –ī, m., [**algeō,** *be cold*], *Algidus,* a snow-capped mountain seventeen miles southeast of Rome. It formed a part of the Alban Mt. On its forest-covered side the Roman army, led by an incompetent consul, was now held surrounded by the Aequians.

3. Cincinnātus, –ī, m., [**cincinnus,** *curly hair*], *Cincinnatus,* a patrician, who had been consul two years before. **dictātor, –ōris,** m., *dictator,* a chief magistrate with unlimited power, appointed in a great emergency to rule for not more than six months.

4. iūgerum, –ī, (gen. pl., **iūgerum**), n., $\frac{5}{8}$ of an acre.

5. colō, –ere, –uī, cultus, *till, cultivate.*

quī rogāvērunt ut senātūs mandāta audīret. Maximē admīrātus, uxōrem ē tuguriō togam prōferre iubet. Deinde, pulvere ac sūdōre abstersō, togātus ad lēgātōs prōcēdit, quī eum dictātōrem cōnsalūtant.

Proximā nocte Cincinnātus ad Algidum montem exercitum dūcit atque ipse hostem obsidet. Paulisper Aequī ancipitī proeliō pugnant, sed brevī tempore, omnī spē dēpositā, pācem petunt. Eōs Cincinnātus sub iugum mīsit. Sextō decimō diē postquam *togam praetextam* accēpit, dictātūrā sē abdicāvit atque ad agrum suum rediit.

RŌMĀNUS TOGĀTUS

Appius Claudius and Virginia

Annō trecentēsimō et alterō ab urbe conditā decemvirī creātī sunt, quī cīvitātī lēgēs scrīberent. Hī prīmō annō

---

7. tugurium, –ī, n., [**tegō**], *cottage.*

8. pulvis, –eris, m., *dust.* **sūdor, –ōris,** m., *sweat.* **abstergeō, –ēre, –tersī, –tersus,** *wipe off.*

9. cōn-salūtō, –āre, *hail.*

12. an-ceps, –itis, [**an** = **ambo,** *both* + **caput**], *two-headed;* **anceps proelium,** *battle on two fronts.*

13. iugum, –ī, n., [**iungō**], *yoke;* in sending a conquered army under the "yoke," two upright spears were fixed in the ground and a third was laid across them so low that each soldier would have to stoop in order to pass under it.

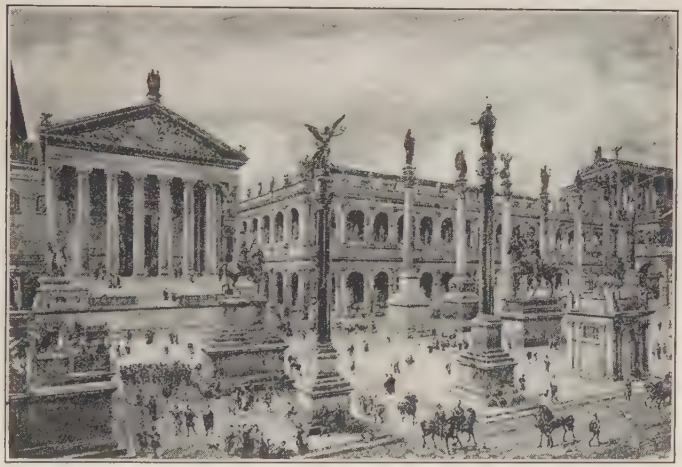
15. prae-textus, –a, –um, [**prae-texō,** *weave in front*], *bordered;* **toga praetexta,** *a purple-bordered toga,* worn only by the higher magistrates and the dictator. **ab-dicō, –āre,** *deny, refuse;* **sē abdicāre,** *resign.*

17. ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city,* often abbreviated to A.U.C.

18. decem-virī, a board of *ten men* with consular power, elected to write the hitherto unwritten laws.

19. prīmō annō: In the first year the decemvirs drew up ten laws; in the second they added two more. These twelve Tables of the Law were engraved and set up in the Forum. The decemvirs were then

bene ēgērunt; secundō autem dominātiōnem exercēre coepērunt. Sed cum ūnus eōrum Appius Claudius virginem ingenuam, Verginiam, Verginī centuriōnis fīliam, corrumpere cōnārētur pater eam occīdit. Tum ad mīlitēs profūgit, eōsque ad sēditiōnem commōvit. Sublāta est decemvirīs potestās, ipsīque omnēs aut morte aut exsiliō pūnītī sunt.



THE FORUM RESTORED.

This is a view looking west to the Basilica Julia with the Temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at the right.

---

expected to resign. But they refused to do so, and acted as though they intended to keep the government in their own hands permanently.

21. in-genuus, –a, –um, [**gignō**], *free-born.*

22. Verginiam, Verginī: The daughter often took the feminine form of the father's name. **cor-rumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus,** *ruin; bribe.*

23. pater eam occīdit: As the case was brought before Appius Claudius himself as judge, Verginius in despair seized a knife from a butcher and plunged it into his daughter's breast.

24. ad sēditiōnem: The plebeians again seceded to the Mons Sacer, and it was not until the decemvirs had resigned and the tribunes had been restored, that they returned to Rome.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

pulverize, century, culture, abdicate, arable, ingenuous, Cincinnati, proffer, domination, mandate, corrupt, admiration, ap-proximate.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi Aequī exercitum Rōmānum obsēdērunt? 2. Quis dictātor dictus est? 3. Ubi lēgātī Cincinnātum invēnērunt? 4. Quid faciēbat? 5. Quid uxōrem facere iussit? 6. Quālem togam dictātor gerēbat? 7. Quid dictātor Aequōs victōs facere coēgit? 8. Quot diēs erat Cincinnātus dictātor? 9. Quid fēcit Cincinnātus postquam dictātūrā sē abdicāvit? 10. Cūr decemvirī creātī sunt? 11. Quō modo decemvirī secundō annō civitātem regēbant? 12. Cūr Verginius fīliam suam occīdit? 13. Quō plēbs sēcessit? 14. Quibus condiciōnibus plēbs ad urbem rediit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The soldiers reported that the Aequi were besieging a Roman city. 2. The senate's envoys found Cincinnatus plowing in the fields. 3. When the enemy had been conquered, Cincinnatus returned to Rome. 4. The citizens will elect ten men to write the laws for the state. 5. The soldiers asked why Verginius had not slain the decemvir.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Verbs.* The suffix **-dus** attached to verb stems, forms adjectives denoting *a state.*

cup-ere, *to desire*	**cupi-dus,** *desirous*
rap-ere, *to hurry*	**rapi-dus,** *swift,* RAPID

Explain the formation of the adjectives from which we derive *timid* and *valid.*

Camillus, Pater patriae

In bellō contrā Vēientānōs M. Fūrius Camillus urbem Falēriōs obsidēbat. In quā obsidiōne cum lūdī litterāriī magister prīncipum fīliōs ex urbe in castra hostium dūxisset, Camillus hoc dōnum nōn accēpit, sed scelestum hominem, manibus post tergum vinctīs, puerīs Falēriōs redūcendum trādidit; virgāsque eīs dedit, quibus prōditōrem in urbem agerent. Hāc tantā animī nōbilitāte commōtī Faliscī urbem Rōmānīs trādidērunt. Ita Rōmam rediit Camillus īnsignis multō meliōre laude quam cum albī equī eum trium-

---

1. Vēientānus, –ī, m., [**Vēiī**], *inhabitant of Veii, a Veientian.* Veii was a very strongly fortified city of Etruria, twelve miles northwest of Rome. The Romans besieged it for ten years, but failed to capture it. Finally in 396 B.C. Camillus, whom Livy calls "the greatest of all generals," was given charge of the siege. He at once set the soldiers digging a tunnel from the camp to the citadel. When at last this work was done, he led his men into the tunnel and made ready to storm the city. It happened that at precisely that moment, a priest sacrificing in the temple of Juno above was overheard telling the king that whoever offered that sacrifice would be the victor. Thereupon the Romans burst out into the temple, and Camillus with his own hands killed the priest and offered the sacrifice. Thus it was that Veii was captured.

2. Falēriī, –ōrum, m., *Falerii,* an Etruscan city 28 miles north of Rome, which Camillus besieged after the capture of Veii.

3. magister: probably a slave owned by one of the leading citizens (**prīncipēs**). A slave taken in war was often far better educated than his master. Livy states that this particular teacher was in the habit of taking his pupils for a walk outside the city. This practice he continued even during the siege.

4. dōnum, –ī, n., [dō], *gift.* **scelestus, –a, –um,** [**scelus**], *infamous.*

5. Falēriōs: Why is the prep. omitted? **redūcendum,** gerundive (fut. pass. part.) of **re-dūcō,** agreeing with **hominem,** *to be led back.*

6. quibus (virgīs) . . . agerent, rel. clause. Why is the Subj. used rather than the Indic.?

7. Faliscī, –ōrum, m., *inhabitants of Falerii, Faliscans.*

8. īn-signis, –e, [**signum**], *distinguished.*

9. cum . . . vexerant: at the time of his triumph after the capture of Veii. Why is the Indic. used here with **cum**?

phantem per urbem vexerant. Nam hostēs iūstitiā fidēque vīcerat.

Camillō autem Rōmānī crīmen intulērunt, quod albīs equīs triumphāvisset, et praedam inīquē dīvīsisset. Ob eam causam damnātus et cīvitāte expulsus est.

Paulō post Gallī Senonēs ad urbem vēnērunt, apud flūmen

12. Camillō, dative. Besides Veii and Falerii, Camillus at this time conquered all of Southern Etruria as far as the Ciminian Forest. **crīmen, -inis,** n., *accusation.* **quod . . . dīvīsisset:** causal clause with

THE CAPITOLINE HILL.

The view across the Forum toward the north shows the columns of the Temple of Castor and Pollux in the foreground.

the subj., because a verb of saying is implied in **crīmen**, *accusation.* **albīs equīs:** by using *white* horses he made himself equal to Jupiter and Apollo.

13. praedam inīquē dīvīsisset. This probably was the *chief reason* for his unpopularity.

14. damnō, -āre, *con-*DEMN.

15. Gallī Senonēs: A powerful people of Central Gaul dwelling

Alliam Rōmānōs vīcērunt, et urbem etiam occupāvērunt. Iam nihil praeter Capitōlium dēfendī potuit. Et iam praesidium famē labōrābant, et in eō erant, ut pācem ā Gallīs aurō emerent, cum Camillus cum manū mīlitum superveniēns hostēs magnō proeliō superāret.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

litterāriī, trādidit, iūstitiā, crīmen, inīquē, famē, labōrābant.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō modo Camillus Vēiōs cēpit? 2. Quam urbem posteā obsēdit? 3. Cūr magister puerōs in Camillī castra dūxit? 4. Quid fēcit Camillus? 5. Cūr Rōmānī suum imperātōrem maximum expulērunt? 6. Ubi habitābant Gallī

---

south of the Marne. Their capital city **Agēdincum** is now called *Sens*, a name derived from *Senonēs*.

16. Allia, –ae, f., *the Allia*, a small river flowing into the Tiber about twelve miles north of Rome. In this battle, 390 B.C., the Romans for the first time met barbarians, who rushed upon them with terrific yells and slashed right and left with enormous broadswords. It was a most disastrous defeat for the Romans.

17. Capitōlium: The Gauls climbed the hill at night and would have captured the citadel, had it not been for the cackling of the sacred geese in the temple of Juno, which awakened the garrison just in time. **praesidium,** *garrison*, is a collective noun and therefore, as here, may take a plural verb.

18. in eō erant, ut . . . emerent, *were on the point of buying.* The ransom of 1000 lbs. of gold was being weighed out in the Forum, when Brennus, the Gallic chieftain, angered by the complaints of the Romans, threw his huge sword upon the scales and cried, "Vae victīs!" "Woe to the conquered!" It was at this very moment that Camillus, who had been recalled from exile, appeared with his army, drove the Gauls out of the city, and overwhelmingly defeated them in a battle which was fought a few miles outside of Rome.

19. super-veniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, *come up, arrive.*

Senonēs? 7. Ubi Gallī Rōmānōs vīcērunt? 8. Quam partem urbis Gallī occupāre nōn potuērunt? 9. Quis Rōmam ex eō perīculō servāvit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The sons of the leading citizens will be led by the teacher to Camillus. 2. Camillus ordered the boys to drive the traitor into the city. 3. It is better to conquer the enemy by justice than to celebrate-a-triumph with white horses. 4. The citizens said that Camillus had divided the booty unfairly. 5. The Romans were conquered by the Gauls in a great battle at the river Allia.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Verbs.* The suffixes **–lis** and **–bilis,** attached to verb stems, form adjectives denoting *ability* or *capability.* The English derivatives end in *–ile* and *–ble.*

fac-ere, *to do*	**faci-lis,** (able to do), *easy,* (FACILE)
amā-re, *to love*	**amā-bilis,** *lovable,* AMIABLE

Explain the formation of the Latin adjectives from which we derive *docile, mobile, terrible, credible.*

Manlius Torquatus and Valerius Corvinus in single combat with Gallic champions

Annō trecentēsimō nōnāgēsimō quārtō post urbem conditam Gallī iterum ad urbem accesserant, et quārtō mīliāriō trāns Aniēnem fluvium cōnsēderant. Contrā eōs missus est T. Quīnctius. Ibi Gallus quīdam eximiā corporis magnitūdine fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen singulāre prōvo-

1. Annō . . . conditam: A.U.C. 753 + 1 = 754 − 394 = 360 B.C. **nōnāgēsimus,** –a, –um, *ninetieth.* **post urbem conditam** = **ab urbe conditā,** 753 B.C.

4. T. Quīnctius Poenus, dictator for this war. **ex-imius,** –a, –um, [**emō,** *take*], *extraordinary.*

5. singulāris, –e, [**singulī,** *one by one*], *single.*

cāvit. T. Mānlius, nōbilissimus iuvenis, prōvocātiōnem accēpit, Gallum occīdit, eumque torque aureō spoliāvit, quō ōrnātus erat. Hinc et ipse et posterī eius *Torquātī* appellātī sunt. Gallī fugam capessīvērunt.

Novō bellō cum Gallīs exortō, annō urbis quadringentēsimō sextō, iterum Gallus prōcessit rōbore atque armīs īnsignis, et prōvocāvit ūnum ex Rōmānīs, ut sēcum armīs dēcerneret. Tum M. Valerius, tribūnus mīlitum, sē obtulit; et, cum prōcessisset armātus, corvus eī suprā dextrum bracchium sēdit. Mox, commissā pugnā, hic corvus ālīs et unguibus Gallī oculōs verberāvit. Ita factum est, ut Gallus facilī negōtiō ā Valeriō interficerētur, quī hinc *Corvīnī* nōmen accēpit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

offer, orient, decree, torque, nominate, provoke, insignia.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quot annīs post prīmam incursiōnem Gallī iterum in Ītaliam vēnērunt? 2. Ubi Gallī cōnsēdērunt? 3. Quis prōvocātiōnem ad certāmen singulāre accēpit? 4. Cūr

---

7. **torquis, –is,** m., [**torqueō,** *twist*], *necklace.* **spoliō, –āre,** *rob, strip, plunder, de-spoil.*

9. **capessō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus,** [*intensive* from **capiō**], (eagerly seize), *take.*

10. **ex-orior, –īrī, –ortus,** *rise.* **annō . . . sextō:** what year B.C. was this? See formula above.

11. **rōbur, –oris,** n., (hard wood, oak), *strength.*

13. **dē-cernō, –ere, –crēvī, –crētus,** (decide by combat), *contend.* **tribūnus mīlitum,** *military tribune,* an army officer *by appointment.* In Caesar's time there were six to each legion.

14. **corvus, –ī,** m., *raven.* **suprā,** prep. with acc., *upon.* **bracchium, –ī,** n., *arm.* **15.** **āla, –ae,** f., *wing.*

16. **unguis, –is,** m., *nail, claw, talon.*

17. **facilis, –e,** *easy;* **facilī negōtiō,** *with little trouble.*

posteā Torquātus appellātus est? 5. Quō annō urbis tertium bellum cum Gallīs exortum est? 6. Quis erat M. Valerius? 7. Cūr nōmen Corvīnī accēpit?

The Samnite wars; battle of the Caudine Forks

Posteā Rōmānī cum Samnītibus bellum gessērunt, ad quod L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris profectus est. Quī cum negōtī cuiusdam causā Rōmam īvisset, praecēpit Q. Fabiō Rulliānō, magistrō equitum, quem apud exercitum relīquit, nē pugnam cum hoste committeret. Sed ille occāsiōnem nactus fēlīcissimē dīmicāvit et Samnītēs dēlēvit. Ob hanc rem ā dictātōre capitis damnātus est. At ille in urbem cōnfūgit, et ingentī favōre mīlitum et populī līberātus est;

---

1. **Samnītēs, –ium,** m., *the Samnites,* a brave and warlike people, inhabiting the mountainous country to the east and south of Latium. With them the Romans fought three wars. The First, 343–341 B.C., was brought to an abrupt end by the "impudent" demands which the allied Latins made on the Romans. Forming an alliance with their recent enemies, the Romans turned on the Latins and brought them to terms within two years, 340–338 B.C. Twelve years later the Samnites, finding that the Romans were encroaching on their territory, declared war against them. This Second Samnite War, 326–304 B.C., is the one referred to in the text.

2. **L. Papīrius Cursor,** a very able general, had a keen sense of humor. On one occasion in order to discipline an inefficient magistrate, Papirius summoned him to his tent. When the culprit entered, the general ordered a lictor to get his ax ready. The magistrate turned pale with fright. But Papirius merely said, "Lictor, that stump is in the way; hew it out," and dismissed the magistrate without further punishment.

3. **eō, īre, īvī** or **iī, itum,** *go.* **prae-cipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus,** [**capiō**], with dat., *direct, order.* **Q. Fabius Rulliānus,** a member of the famous Fabian *gens,* who was chosen consul five times and dictator twice.

4. **magister equitum,** *master of the horse,* second in command to the dictator. In battle he led the cavalry, while the dictator commanded the infantry.

6. **dēleō, –ēre,** (erase), *annihilate.*

7. **capitis damnāre,** *to condemn to death.*

in Papīrium autem tanta sēditiō exorta est, ut paene ipse interficerētur.

Duōbus annīs post, T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōnsulēs bellum adversum Samnītēs gerēbant. Hī ā Pontiō, duce hostium, in īnsidiās inductī sunt. Nam ad Furculās Caudīnās Rōmānōs pellexit in angustiās, unde sēsē expedīre nōn poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Hērennium rogāvit, quid faciendum esse putāret. Ille respondit, aut omnēs occīdendōs esse, ut Rōmānōrum vīrēs frangerentur, aut omnēs dīmittendōs esse, ut beneficiō obligārentur. Pontius utrumque cōnsilium improbāvit, omnēsque sub iugum mīsit. Samnītēs dēnique post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā annōrum superātī sunt.

---

11. Duōbus annīs post, 321 B.C. Is **post** an adv. or a prep.? Why?

13. furc-ula, -ae, f., [**furca,** *fork,*] *a little fork;* **Furculae Caudīnae,** *the Caudine Forks,* a narrow mountain pass near *Caudium* in the heart of Samnium.

14. pelliciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectus, *entice.* **angustiae, -ārum,** f., [**angustus**], *narrows; mountain pass.*

16. faciendus, -a, -um, gerundive (fut. pass. part.) of **faciō.** When used with any part of the verb 'to be' — expressed or understood — the gerundive is translated *necessary to be, ought to be, must be.* So also with **occīdendōs,** line 17, and **dīmittendōs,** line 18.

17. vīrēs, [pl. of **vīs,** *force*], *strength.* **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus,** *break.*

18. obligō, -āre, *bind, lay under obligation.*

19. im-probō, -āre, [**in-** + **probō,** *approve*], *disapprove of.* **omnēsque sub iugum mīsit,** *i.e.,* instead of doing one thing or the other, as his father advised, Pontius sent the army under the yoke, exacting a promise under oath from the commanders that the Romans would give back the conquered territory and make peace. The Senate, however, refused to ratify the agreement and sent the commanders as prisoners to the Samnites. It was a disgraceful affair for the Romans. The war went on with varying success, until in 305 B.C. the Romans won a signal victory at Bovianum.

20. ūn-dē-quīnquāgintā, *forty-nine.* The Third Samnite War, 298–290 B.C., ended with the complete conquest of Samnium. The three wars actually covered a period of *fifty-three* years.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

praecēpit, dēlēvit, paene, Furculās, frangerentur, obligārentur, ap-probāvit.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quot bella Samnītēs cum Rōmānīs gessērunt? 2. Quis erat dictātor in bellō secundō? 3. Quis erat magister equitum? 4. Quid dictātor Fabiō praecēpit nē faceret? 5. Cūr Fabius ā dictātōre capitis damnātus est? 6. Quid ad Furculās Caudīnās accidit? 7. Quid Hērennius fīlium suum monuit? 8. Quid fēcit Pontius?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The army is setting out from the camp for the purpose of fighting with the Gauls. 2. Fabius had fought so successfully that the Samnites were almost annihilated. 3. Papirius asked why the lieutenant had engaged-in battle with the enemy. 4. Pontius said that he would send the whole army under the yoke. 5. The Roman general was not able to extricate his army from the ambush.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns.* The suffixes **-lis,** (**-ālis, -īlis**), attached to noun stems, form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with.*

humus, *ground*	**humi-lis,** *low, lowly,* HUMBLE
rēx, *king*	**rēg-ālis,** REGAL
hostis, *enemy*	**host-īlis,** HOSTILE

Explain the formation of the Latin adjectives from which we derive *civil, mortal, natural, vital, puerile.*

The War with Pyrrhus

Rome, as we have seen, starting with a small settlement on the Palatine hill, grew to be a city of considerable size during the 250 years of the regal period. Yet her prestige — even

under the Tarquins — was merely *local*, and her entire territory did not embrace more than *a few square miles*. During the century after the expulsion of Tarquin the Proud she was torn by internal dissensions, and had to fight desperately to hold her own against the neighboring tribes. Then came the period when with greater harmony at home she began to gain territory rapidly. The first invasion of the Gauls, though it

A Greek Temple.

This is situated at Paestum, south of Naples and is a survival of the Greek influence in southern Italy.

brought disaster enough to Rome, weakened her old enemies, the Aequians and Volscians, still more, and thus enabled her to triumph over them. A little later under the vigorous leadership of Camillus she conquered the Etruscans. In the last fifty years of which we have been reading she subdued the Latins and the Samnites. Thus by 290 B.C. she had become mistress of the Italian peninsula from Etruria to Campania.

Meanwhile Southern Italy had been occupied for many centuries by *Greek* colonists, who had established many flour-

ishing cities, especially along the coast. So completely was this country under Greek control that it was called *Magna Graecia*. It was to this district of Italy that Rome now turned her attention.

War with Pyrrhus, king of Epirus; battle of Heraclea

Dēvictīs Samnītibus, Tarentīnīs bellum indictum est, quia lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcissent. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium poposcērunt. Is mox in Ītaliam vēnit, tumque prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste pugnāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus. Hic, cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit

---

1. Tarentīnī, –ōrum, m., *Tarentines, inhabitants of Tarentum,* the principal Greek city in Southern Italy, situated at the head of the Gulf of Tarentum. It had prospered greatly through its far-reaching commerce and boasted of a large army and navy. **quia,** conj., *because.*

2. fēcissent, Subjunctive, because the reason for declaring war is given by some one *other than the writer.* **quia . . . fēcissent:** Rome and Tarentum had made a treaty, which among other things prohibited Roman ships from entering the Gulf of Tarentum. When therefore ten Roman vessels sailed one day into their harbor, the Tarentines, greatly excited, attacked them and sunk several of the ships. The Roman ambassadors, who were sent to demand restitution, were mocked and ridiculed as they spoke. The climax came when some one bespattered the toga of Postumius, the Roman leader, with mud. Pointing to his soiled garment, Postumius haughtily declared that such an outrage could be wiped out only with blood and withdrew from the assembly. **Pyrrhus, –ī,** m., *Pyrrhus,* king of Epirus, a country northwest of Greece on the eastern shore of the Adriatic Sea. The " heel " of Italy is only about 50 miles distant from Epirus. Pyrrhus, a brilliant general, was ambitious to found an empire like that of Alexander the Great and welcomed this opportunity to invade Italy. He brought over an army of 20,000 infantry and 3000 cavalry, besides archers and slingers, and 20 elephants.

3. auxilium: Notice the *two accusatives,* **Pyrrhum** and **auxilium,** used with **poscō,** a verb of *demanding.* See (**70,** *a*).

6. explōrātor, –ōris, m., *spy, scout.*

eōs per castra dūcī, tumque dīmittī, ut re-nūntiārent Pyrrhō, quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.

Pugnā commissā, Pyrrhus auxiliō elephantōrum vīcit. Nox proeliō fīnem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mīlle octingentōs cēpit, eōsque summō honōre tractāvit. Cum eōs, quī in proeliō interfectī erant, omnēs adversīs vulneribus et trucī vultū etiam mortuōs iacēre vidēret, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur cum hāc vōce, "Ego cum tālibus virīs brevī orbem terrārum subigerem."

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

explorer, orbit, tractable, indict, renounce, ad-jacent, transmarine, truculent.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi erat Magna Graecia? 2. Cūr Rōmānī Tarentīnīs bellum indīxērunt? 3. Ā quō Tarentīnī auxilium petīvērunt? 4. Ubi erat Ēpīrus? 5. Quantum exercitum Pyrrhus in Ītaliam trādūxit? 6. Cūr Laevīnus explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī per castra Rōmāna dūcī iussit? 7. Quō modo Pyrrhus in prīmō proeliō vīcit? 8. Quid post proelium dīxit Pyrrhus?

(*c*) Translate:

1. A great wrong had been done to a Roman ambassador. 2. When the king had come into Italy, he fought a great

---

8. quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, *whoever, whatever.*

9. Pugnā commissā: This battle was fought near Heraclea, 280 B.C.

11. octingentī, –ae, –a, [**octō** + **centum**], *eight hundred.*

12. tractō, –āre, [frequentative from **trahō**], *treat.*

13. adversīs vulneribus, *with wounds in front.* **trux, trucis,** *fierce.* **vultus, –ūs,** m., *expression, look.* **mortuus, –a, –um,** [**morior**], *dead.*

15. tālis, –e, *such.* **brevī,** adv., [**brevis**], *in a short time, soon.* **orbis terrārum,** *the whole world.* **sub-igō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus,** [**agō**], *conquer.* The Subjunctive here has the force of the English *could.*

battle with the consul, Laevinus. 3. The captured scouts were not dismissed, for-fear-that they might report what the Romans were doing. 4. The captives will be treated by the king with the greatest respect. 5. When the scout saw that all had fled, he returned to Rome to report it to the citizens.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns.* The suffixes **–āris** and **–ārius,** attached to noun stems, form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with.* The English derivatives end in *–ar* or *–ary.*

cōnsul, CONSUL	**cōnsul-āris,** CONSULAR
ōrdō, *regular arrangement,* ORDER	**ōrdin-ārius,** *customary,* ORDINARY

Give the derivation and meaning of **familiāris, mīlitāris, legiōnārius, populāris, necessārius, salūtāris.** What English words are derived from them?

The Romans win the admiration of Pyrrhus and Cineas

Posteā Pyrrhus Rōmam perrēxit; omnia ferrō īgneque vāstāvit; Campāniam dēpopulātus est, atque ad Praeneste vēnit mīliāriō ab urbe octāvō decimō. Mox terrōre exercitūs, quī cum cōnsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē captīvīs redimendīs missī honōrificē ab eō receptī sunt; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit. Ūnum ex lēgātīs, Fabricium, sīc admīrātus est, ut eī quārtam partem

---

1. per-gō, –ere, –rēxī, –rēctus, [**regō**], *proceed.*

2. Campānia, -ae, f., [**campus,** *plain*], *Campania,* a rich and fertile district between Latium and Lucania. **dē-populor, –ārī, –ātus,** [**populus**], *lay waste, devastate.* **Praeneste, –is,** n., *Praeneste,* a strongly fortified town east of Rome.

5. red-imō, –ere, –ēmī, –ēmptus, [**emō**], (buy back), *ransom;* **redimendus, –a, –um,** gerundive, *ransoming.* Observe that there are *two distinct uses* of the gerundive: (1) with some part of the verb 'to be' with the idea of *necessity,* three examples of which are found on page 153; (2) as a *verbal adjective* in agreement with a noun, in the sense of *-ing.*

rēgnī suī prōmitteret, sī ad sē trānsīret; sed ā Fabriciō contemptus est.

PYRRHUS.

Cum iam Pyrrhus ingentī Rōmānōrum admīrātiōne tenērētur, lēgātum mīsit Cīneam, praestantissimum virum, quī pācem peteret eā condiciōne, ut Pyrrhus eam partem Ītaliae, quam armīs occupāverat, retinēret. Rōmānī respondērunt, eum cum Rōmānīs pācem habēre nōn posse, nisi ex Ītaliā recessisset. Cīneās cum rediisset, Pyrrhō eum interrogantī, quālis urbs ipsī Rōma vīsa esset, respondit, sē rēgum patriam vīdisse.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

dēpopulātus, redimendīs, reddidit, prōmitteret, contemptus, retinēret, recessisset, quālis.

10. contemnō, –ere, –tempsī, –temptus, *disdain, scorn.* Having tried persuasion and bribery to no purpose, Pyrrhus attempted to frighten Fabricius. As he sat in audience before the king, a curtain was suddenly drawn, and an elephant which had been concealed behind it thrust his trunk over Fabricius's head and trumpeted loudly. But Fabricius could not be intimidated any more than he could be bribed.

15. Cīneās, –ae, m., *Cineas,* a counselor of Pyrrhus, whose eloquence almost persuaded the Senate to accept the terms that were offered.

16. prae-stāns, –stantis, [stō], *excellent, distinguished.*

25. Pyrrhō, dat. with **respondit. quālis . . . esset,** ind. ques., depending on **interrogantī. ipsī,** dative.

26. rēgum patriam, *i.e.,* the citizens of Rome had impressed Cineas as *kingly* in their bearing and conduct.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Per quās partēs Ītaliae Pyrrhus ad Rōmam iter fēcit? 2. Ad quod mīliārium ab urbe vēnit? 3. Cūr in Campāniam sē recēpit? 4. Quō modo lēgātōs Rōmānōs recēpit? 5. Quid Fabriciō prōmīsit, sī ad sē trānsīret? 6. Cūr Cīneās ad senātum Rōmānum missus est? 7. Quā condiciōne cum Rōmānīs pācem facere voluit? 8. Quid Rōmānī respondērunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. After Campania has been ravaged, Pyrrhus will lead his army toward Rome. 2. The consul sent envoys to Pyrrhus, in order to redeem the captives. 3. The king told Fabricius that he would give him a fourth part of the kingdom. 4. Cineas was a most distinguished man, who was sent as an ambassador to the Romans. 5. The consul replies: "You cannot have peace with us, unless you withdraw (fut. perf.) from Italy."

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.* The suffixes **-nus, (-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus)**, attached to stems of nouns, adjectives, or adverbs, form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with.*

frāter, BROTHER **frāter-nus,** *brotherly,* FRATERNAL
urbs, *city* **urb-ānus,** *of the city,* URBAN
alius, *other* **ali-ēnus,** *belonging to another, stranger,* ALIEN
repente, *suddenly* **repent-īnus,** *sudden*

Give the formation and meaning of the adjectives, **oppidānus, marīnus, terrēnus, māternus, dīvīnus, veterānus, externus, cotīdiānus.** Give English derivatives from these, wherever possible.

Battles of Asculum and Beneventum; Pyrrhus withdraws from Italy

Posterō annō cōnsulēs Pūblius Sulpicius et Decius Mūs contrā Pyrrhum missī sunt. Proeliō commissō, rēx vul-

1. **Posterō annō,** 279 B.C. **Decius Mūs, Mūris,** m., [**mūs,** *mouse*], *Decius Mus.* Both his grandfather and father, who bore the same

nerātus est et vīgintī mīlia hostium caesa sunt. Hīc iterum Pyrrhus elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, sed brevī tempore Tarentum sē recipere coāctus est.

Annō interiectō, Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Tum, cum ipse et rēx vīcīna castra habērent, medicus Pyrrhī ad eum nocte vēnit, prōmittēns sē Pyrrhum venēnō occīsūrum esse, sī mūnus sibi darētur. Sed Fabricius hunc vinctum ad dominum redūcī iussit. Tunc rēx, admīrātus illum, dīxisse fertur: "Ille est Fabricius, quī difficilius ab honestāte āvertī potest quam sōl ā suō cursū!"

Inde rēx in Siciliam profectus est, ut ibi Graecīs contrā hostēs auxilium daret. Duōbus annīs post in Ītaliam rediit. Dēnique Pyrrhus, tertiō proeliō fūsus, ā Tarentō recessit, atque, cum in Graeciam rediisset, apud Argos, Peloponnēsī urbem, interfectus est.

---

name, had sacrificed their lives for their country by riding into the thick of the enemy and thus rallying their wavering troops. It is said that this Decius Mus did likewise in the battle of Asculum, to which reference is made in the following lines.

4. Pyrrhus . . . vīcit: After the battle Pyrrhus said: "One more such victory, and we shall be utterly ruined!" Hence a victory won at too great cost is sometimes called a *Pyrrhic victory.*

7. vīcīnus, –a, –um, [**vīcus,** *village*], *neighboring.* **medicus, –ī,** m., [**medeor,** *heal*], *doctor.*

8. venēnum, –ī, n., *poison.*

9. darētur: all *dependent* clauses in Indirect Discourse take the Subjunctive.

11. fertur, [**ferō**], *is said.* **difficilius,** [comp. of adv. **difficulter**], *with greater difficulty.*

15. fundō, –ere, fūdī, fūsus, *rout, defeat with great loss.* The third battle was fought at Beneventum in 275 B.C. The consul Dentatus, who commanded the Romans, took several captured elephants to Rome and exhibited them in his triumphal procession.

16. apud Argos . . . interfectus est: In 272 B.C. Pyrrhus went to Argos to aid one faction in the city against another. Failing in this effort, he was fighting his way out of the city, when from a housetop a woman dropped a heavy tile, by which he was struck and killed. Such was the untimely end of this gallant soldier and noble-minded king.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

vicinity, course, mouse, difficult, interject, con-fusion, re-munerate, vinculum, honesty.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō modo Pyrrhus in proeliō secundō vīcit? 2. Cūr sē recipere coāctus est? 3. Quis ad Fabricium nocte vēnit? 4. Quid Fabriciō prōmīsit? 5. Quid fēcit Fabricius? 6. Quid Pyrrhus dē Fabriciō dīxit? 7. Quis in tertiō proeliō Pyrrhum fūdit? 8. Ubi Pyrrhus interfectus est? 9. Quālis vir erat Pyrrhus?

(*c*) Translate:

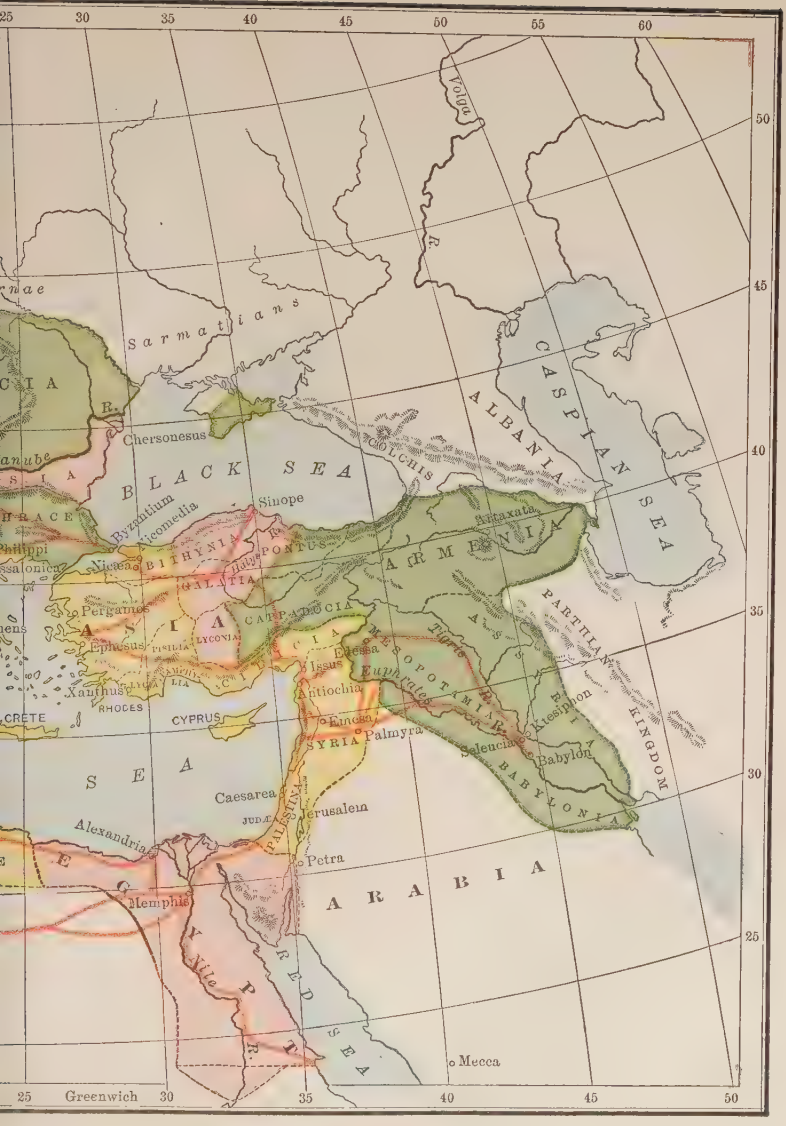
1. So fierce was the battle that thirty thousand soldiers were slain. 2. The doctor said: "I will kill Pyrrhus with poison, if a large present is (shall be) given to me." 3. The doctor will be bound and led back to the king. 4. It was harder to turn Fabricius from honor than the sun from its course. 5. When Pyrrhus had been routed in the third battle, he withdrew from Italy.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns.* The suffixes **-cus** and **-ticus,** attached to noun stems, form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with.*

bellum, *war*	**belli-cus,** *pertaining to war, martial*
populus, PEOPLE	**pūbli-cus** (contr. from **populi-cus**), *pertaining to the people,* PUBLIC
rūs, *country*	**rūs-ticus,** *pertaining to the country, rural,* RUSTIC

Explain the formation of the Latin adjectives from which we derive *civic, Gallic, aquatic, domestic.*

THE ROMAN EMPIRE
At its Greatest Extent
With some Roman Roads
SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500
EXPLANATION
The Roman Empire at the Death of Caesar, 44 B.C.
Additions up to the Death of Augustus, 14 A.D.
Additions up to the Death of Trajan, 117 A.D.
Roman Roads
Longitude West 0 5 10 Longitude 15 East
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
MEDITERRANEAN
MAURETANIA
AFRICA
NUMIDIA
Utica
Carthage
SICILY
Syracuse
Tarraco
BALEARES
SARDINIA
CORSICA
Gades
New Carthage
BOETICA
LUSITANIA
SPAIN
Tolosa
Narbo
Massilia
Arelate
Aginnum
AQUITANIA
Lugdunum
Bituricea
Augustodunum
Augusta Treverorum
Colonia Agrippina (Cologne)
Rhine R.
Moguntiacum
Teutoberg Forest
Elbe R.
Marcomanni
RETIA
NORICUM
PANNONIA
Vindob
Aquileia
Pola
Ravenna
Iadera
Salona
Dyrrhac
Fidenae
ROME
Ostia
Capua
Naples
Puteoli
Herculaneum
Pompeii
Mediolanum (Milan)
CELTICA
GAUL
BELG
BRITAIN
Eboracum
Londinium
WALL OF HADRIAN
HIBERNIA
ILLYRIA
DALMATIA
TARRACENSIS
NARBONENSIS
15 10 5 0 5 10 15
50 45 40 35 30 25


25
30
35
40
45
50
55
60
50
45
40
35
30
25
Volga R.
Sarmatians
CASPIAN SEA
ALBANIA
COLCHIS
ARMENIA
Artaxata
BLACK SEA
Chersonesus
Sinope
Byzantium
Nicomedia
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
Nicæa
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
Pergamus
ASIA
Ephesus
LYCONIA
PISIDIA
PAMPHYLIA
LYCIA
Xanthus
RHODES
CRETE
CYPRUS
Issus
Cilicia
Euphrates R.
Tigris R.
PARTHIAN KINGDOM
Ctesiphon
Seleucia
Babylon
BABYLONIA
Antiochia
Emesa
SYRIA
Palmyra
MESOPOTAMIA
SEA
Caesarea
JUDÆA
Jerusalem
PALESTINE
Alexandria
Petra
ARABIA
Memphis
Nile R.
RED SEA
Mecca
Greenwich

The First Punic War

Phoenicia was a small Asiatic country bordering on the eastern Mediterranean, north of Palestine. Its chief cities, Tyre and Sidon, were famous for their manufacture of glass, amber, tin, and dyes. Aside from this, the Phoenicians were mainly a seafaring people. Their daring sailors not only navigated the Mediterranean, but they

GIBRALTAR.
One of the Pillars of Hercules.

passed through the "Pillars of Hercules" (Straits of Gibraltar) and ventured out on the Atlantic Ocean, going as far north as Britain in quest of tin.

The Mediterranean was dotted with Phoenician colonies. Of these the most notable was Carthage, established on the north coast of Africa (near modern Tunis) about a century before the founding of Rome. Her central situation and excellent harbors gave Carthage command of the entire commerce of the Mediterranean, and this she maintained by her splendid navy.

Between Carthage and Italy lay the large and fertile island of Sicily, which had been colonized by the Greeks. Naturally Carthage desired to add Sicily to her possessions. And so, beginning about 400 B.C., she made strenuous efforts to conquer it, but without

achieving any permanent success. Now when Rome defeated Pyrrhus and conquered Magna Graecia, she had only to cross the narrow Strait of Messina — a distance of two miles — to reach Sicily, and she was just as eager to seize the island as was Carthage. It was perfectly evident, therefore, that these two ambitious nations would soon "lock horns" in war, in order to settle which of them should be supreme.

Let us briefly compare their resources. Carthage was much richer than Rome. She had a fine navy; Rome had practically none. On the other hand, the Carthaginian army was made up of mercenaries who fought for pay, while the Roman army consisted of Roman citizens fighting for their country. Lastly, the allies of Carthage hated her because she treated them tyrannically. Rome treated her allies justly and thus secured their faithful allegiance.

As in the case of the Samnites it took three fierce wars to settle which was the stronger nation. The First Punic War (264–241 B.C.) began when the Romans went to aid some Campanian mercenaries who had seized the Sicilian town of Messina, just across the Strait from the toe of Italy.

The First Punic War; Rome builds a powerful navy; Regulus is captured

Annō quadringentēsimō nōnāgēsimō post urbem conditam Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trāiēcērunt, atque superāvērunt Hierōnem, rēgem Syrācūsārum, et Poenōs, quī multās cīvitātēs in eā īnsulā occupāverant. Quīntō annō huius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī, C. Duīliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōnsulibus, in marī dīmicā-

2. trā-iciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, [**trāns** + **iaciō**], *cross, pass over.*

3. Syrācūsae, –ārum, f., *Syracuse,* largest and richest city in Sicily, situated on the east coast. Its king Hiero submitted to the Romans early in the war and remained faithful to them. Under his wise rule Syracuse was very prosperous. **Poenī, –ōrum,** m., *the Carthaginians.*

4. Quīnto anno, 260 B.C.

5. prīmum, emphasized by its position, *for the first time.*

6. Duīliō et Cornēliō . . . cōnsulibus, abl. abs., supply *being;* freely, *during the consulship of Duilius and Cornelius.* The Romans determined the date of any year by the names of the consuls for that

vērunt. Duīlius Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim mersit, septem mīlia hostium cēpit, tria

year. **in marī dīmicāvērunt:** At the beginning of the war the Romans had only a few *triremes* (vessels with *three* banks of oars), while the Carthaginian navy was well supplied with *quinqueremes* (much larger ships with *five* banks of oars). The Romans soon found that they would have to build a powerful fleet to cope with their enemies. They knew very

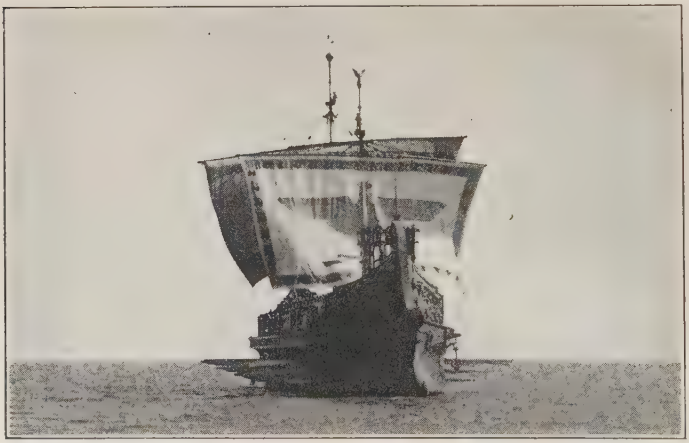
Roman Amphitheatre at Syracuse.

little about ship-building. They had neither oarsmen nor sailors who were experienced in naval battles. But where there is a will, there is a way. Finding a quinquereme stranded on the shore, they used it as a model and built a fleet. They placed benches on the beach and trained men to row. More than that, they invented a *boarding-bridge*, which, as soon as a ship came within grappling distance of an enemy's vessel, could be lowered, thereby enabling the Roman soldiers to cross over to the enemy's decks. Thus equipped, they started out to meet the Carthaginian fleet.

7. Duīlius Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit: This battle was fought off *Mylae*, near the northeastern point of Sicily. The Roman boarding bridges

mīlia occīdit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit. Duīliō concessum est, ut, cum ā cēnā redīret, puerī fūnālia gestantēs et tībīcen eum comitārentur.

Quattuor annīs interiectīs, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Carthāginiēnsēs pugnā nāvālī contrā Ecnomum superātī



A Roman Trireme.
Notice the three banks of oars.

sunt atque sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus perditīs sē recēpērunt; Rōmānī vīgintī duās āmīsērunt. Cum in Āfricam vēnissent, Poenōs in plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt, multitūdinem hominum cēpērunt, septuāgintā quattuor cīvitātēs in fidem accēpērunt. Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt.

---

worked admirably to the complete surprise and discomfiture of the Carthaginians.

10. fūnāle, –is, n., [**fūnis,** *rope*], *torch,* made of plant fiber, twisted like a rope (**fūnis**) and smeared with pitch and wax. **gestō,** –āre, [frequentative of **gerō**], *bear.*

11. comitor, –ārī, –ātus, [**comes**], *accompany.*

13. contrā, *off.* **Ecnomus,** –ī, m., *Ecnomus,* on the south coast of Sicily.

17. in fidem accipere, *receive under one's protection.*

Quam cum M. Atīlius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, dare nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus, Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium petiē- 20
runt ā Lacedaemoniīs. Hī Xanthippum mīsērunt, quī Rōmānum exercitum magnō proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

trāiēcērunt, Syrācūsārum, Poenōs, mersit, grātior, concessum, trānslātum, perditīs.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi erat Carthāgō? 2. Quae īnsula erat inter Carthāginem et Ītaliam? 3. Quī prīmī Siciliam occupāvērunt? 4. Quae duae nātiōnēs posteā Siciliam occupāre volēbant? 5. Quis Rōmānōrum prīmum Carthāginiēnsēs pugnā nāvālī vīcit? 6. Quem honōrem cīvēs eī tribuērunt? 7. Quō posteā bellum trānslātum est? 8. Quis erat dux Rōmānōrum? 9. Quis exercitum Rōmānum vīcit? 10. Quid imperātōrī Rōmānō accidit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Having conquered the king, the consul seized the greater part of the island. 2. The senators declared that these victories were most pleasing to the citizens. 3. The lieutenant will attack the enemy's marching column outside the camp. 4. In order not to be conquered by the Romans,

---

19. nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, [**nē** + **volō**], *be unwilling, not wish.* **nōllet,** Imp. Subj.

21. Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m., *Lacedaemonians,* inhabitants of Lacedaemon or Sparta, the chief city of the Peloponnesus. **Xanthippus** found that the Carthaginian army was superior in cavalry and elephants. Accordingly he offered battle on level ground. The Romans could not withstand the enemy's fierce charges and were utterly routed, leaving 30,000 men dead on the field. This battle was fought in 255 B.C.

the Carthaginians will seek aid from the Greeks. 5. The general had sent six legions to attack the enemy.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns and Verbs.* The suffix **–ius,** attached to noun stems, and the suffix **–īvus,** attached to verb stems, form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with.*

rēx, *king*	**rēg-ius,** *kingly, royal,* REGAL
ē + grex, *herd*	**ēgreg-ius,** *out of the ordinary, remarkable, eminent,* (EGREGIOUS)
capere, *to take*	**capt-īvus,** CAPTIVE
nōmināre, *to name*	**nōmināt-īvus,** NOMINATIVE

Form similar adjectives from the stems of the nouns **pater, ōrātor,** and **senātor;** and from the participial stems of the verbs **fugere, dare,** and **indicāre.**

The self-sacrifice of Regulus; the final battle; terms of peace

Nōn tamen ubīque fortūna Carthāginiēnsibus fāvit. Cum aliquot proeliīs victī essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt, ut Rōmam proficīscerētur, et pācem captīvōrumque permūtātiōnem ā Rōmānīs obtinēret. Ille cum Rōmam vēnisset, inductus in senātum dīxit, sē dēsiisse Rōmānum esse ex illā diē, quā in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset. Tum Rōmānīs suāsit, nē pācem cum Carthāginiēnsibus facerent: illōs enim tot cāsibus frāctōs spem nūllam nisi in pāce habēre; tantī nōn esse, ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter sē ūnum et paucōs,

1. **faveō, –ēre, fāvī, fautūrus,** *favor,* (with dative).

2. **ali-quot,** indecl., *several.*

3. **per-mūtātiō, –ōnis,** f., [**mūtō**], *exchange.*

5. **dē-sinō, –ere, –siī, –situs,** *cease.* **ex illā diē: diēs** is sometimes *fem.,* to denote an *appointed* time.

6. **vēnisset:** Why is this in the Subjunctive? See note to **darētur** on page 161.

7. **suādeō, –ēre, suāsī, suāsus,** *advise, urge,* (with dative). **illōs,** *i.e.,* the Carthaginians.

8. **tantī (pretī) nōn esse,** *that it was not worth while.*

quī ex Rōmānīs captī essent, redderentur. Haec sententia obtinuit. Regressus igitur in Āfricam crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs exstīnctus est.

Tandem, C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōnsulibus, annō bellī Pūnicī vīcēsimō tertiō magnum proelium nāvāle commissum est contrā Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae.

Roman Ruins in Africa.
This scene is at Timgad in Algiers.

In eō proeliō septuāgintā trēs Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum vīgintī quīnque mersae, trīgintā duo mīlia hostium capta, tredecim mīlia occīsa sunt. Statim Carthā-

10. captī essent: Account for the Subjunctive.

11. re-gredior, –ī, –gressus, [**gradior**], *go back, return.*

13. Tandem, *at length:* Nine years had elapsed since the return of Regulus, during which the Romans, undaunted by the loss of two fleets, gradually conquered most of Sicily. During the last six years (247-242 B.C.), a new Carthaginian general, **Hamilcar** (surnamed **Barca,** "Lightning"), skillfully maintained himself in mountain strongholds near the sea, while his fleet ravaged the coasts of Italy and Sicily. At last in 242 B.C. the Romans made a supreme effort and built another fleet, the *fifth* since the beginning of the war!

15. Lilybaeum, –ī, n., *Lilybaeum,* on the west coast of Sicily.

giniēnsēs pācem petiērunt, eīsque pāx tribūta est. Cap-
20 tīvī Rōmānōrum, quī tenēbantur ā Carthāginiēnsibus, red-
ditī sunt. Poenī Siciliā, Sardiniā, et cēterīs īnsulīs, quae
inter Ītaliam Āfricamque iacent, dēcessērunt, omnemque
Hispāniam, quae citrā Ibērum est, Rōmānīs permīsērunt.

Part of a Roman Fleet.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

permutation, promontory, favor, sentence, casualty, aliquot, regression, per-suasion.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr Carthāginiēnsēs Rēgulum Rōmam mīsērunt? 2. Quid Rēgulus senātōribus dīxit? 3. Quid Rēgulus cīvi-

22. **dē-cēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus,** *withdraw.*

23. **citrā,** prep. with acc., *on this side of.* **Ibērus, –ī,** m., *the Iberus,* now *the Ebro.*

bus suāsit? 4. Cūr Rēgulus ad Carthāginiēnsēs rediit? 5. Ubi ultimum proelium bellī commissum est? 6. Quibus condiciōnibus Rōmānī Carthāginī pācem tribuērunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The senate asked why Regulus, a Roman general, had been sent to Rome by the Carthaginians. 2. Regulus said: "I ceased to be a Roman on the day on which I came into the power of the Carthaginians." 3. The enemy have been disheartened by so many disasters that they have no hope except in peace. 4. When the senate had decided not to return the captives, Regulus returned to Carthage. 5. Sicily and Sardinia had been held by the Carthaginians for many years.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns.* The suffix **–tus,** attached to noun stems, forms adjectives, denoting *provided with.*

barba, *beard*	**barbā-tus,** *bearded*
honōs or **honor,** HONOR	**hones-tus,** *honorable,* HONEST

Explain the formation of the adjectives **togātus, stellātus, iūstus,** and **onustus.**

Conflicts with the Gauls; Marcellus wins the ***spolia opīma***

Annō quīngentēsimō ūndētrīcēsimō ingentēs Gallōrum cōpiae Alpēs trānsiērunt. Sed prō Rōmānīs tōta Ītalia cōnsēnsit; trāditumque est octingenta mīlia hominum ad id bellum parāta esse. Rēs prōsperē gesta est apud Clūsium; quadrāgintā mīlia hominum interfecta sunt. Aliquot annīs post, pugnātum est contrā Gallōs in agrō Īnsu-

1. **ūn-dē-trīcēsimus, –a, –um,** [**trīgintā**], *twenty-ninth,* 225 B.C.
2. **prō,** *in support of.*
3. **cōn-sentiō, –īre, –sēnsī, –sēnsus,** *unite.*
4. **Rēs,** *battle.*
6. **Īnsubrēs, –ium,** m., *Insubrians,* Gauls who had settled between the Alps and the river Po. Their chief city was **Mediolānum** (modern *Milan*).

brium, fīnītumque est bellum M. Claudiō Mārcellō, Cn. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsulibus. Tum Mārcellus rēgem Gallōrum, Viridomarum, manū suā occīdit et triumphāns spolia Gallī, stīpitī imposita, umerīs suīs vexit.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

trānsiērunt, cōnsēnsit, trāditum, prōsperē, spolia, imposita, vexit.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi Gallī habitābant? 2. Quōs montēs Gallī trānsiērunt, ubi in Ītaliam vēnērunt? 3. Quantum exercitum Rōmānī coēgērunt? 4. Quot Gallī apud Clūsium interfectī sunt? 5. Quis erat rēx Clūsī tum, cum Tarquinius Superbus Rōmā expulsus est? 6. Quō modo Mārcellus spolia opīma abstulit?

The Second Punic War

At the close of the First Punic War the Carthaginian mercenaries, infuriated at not being paid for their service, made war upon Carthage. After a most sanguinary struggle of four years they were exterminated by Hamilcar. Then he began to plan for revenge upon the hated Romans. Now Spain was rich in silver mines, and her coast cities were already held by Carthage. Hamilcar determined to secure the resources of Spain for his country, and spent nine years in conquering and organizing it into a province. Before completing this task he died, but the work went on under Hasdrubal, his son-in-law. Presently the Romans sensed the danger that threatened them from that quarter and forced Carthage to make a treaty, restricting her to the part of Spain that lay south of the Iberus.

---

7. Mārcellō . . . Scīpiōne cōnsulibus, *i.e.*, 222 B.C.

9. spolia, -ōrum, n., *arms* (stripped from an enemy). If, as in this case, the arms were taken as a result of a *single combat* between the *commanders* of the two armies, they were called **spolia opīma,** *spoils of honor.*

10. stīpes, -itis, m., *stake.*

Meanwhile Hamilcar's sons, Hasdrubal and Hannibal, who were imbued with the same hatred of the Romans as their father, had joined the army in Spain. Hannibal was the younger of the two brothers, but he soon showed that he possessed all the qualities of a good soldier and a great commander. When, therefore, Hasdrubal, Hamilcar's son-in-law, died in 221 B.C., Hannibal was enthusiastically chosen commander-in-chief of the army.

A Roman Bridge in Spain.

Hannibal defeats the Romans in the battles of Ticinus, Trebia, and Lake Trasumenus

Paulō post Pūnicum bellum renovātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quem novem annōs nātum pater Hamilcar ārīs admōverat, ut odium perenne in Rōmānōs iūrāret. Hic agēns annum vīcēsimum septimum

1. **Paulō post,** *i.e.*, 218 B.C. **re-novō, -āre,** [**novus**], *renew.*
2. **nātus,** with words denoting time, *old.*
3. **ad-moveō,** *bring to.* **per-ennis, -e,** [**annus**], *lasting, undying.*
4. **agō,** with words denoting time, *pass, spend;* **agēns annum,** *in the . . . year.*

aetātis Saguntum, Hispāniae cīvitātem, Rōmānīs amīcam, oppugnāre aggressus est. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiavērunt, ut bellō abstinēret. Quī cum lēgātōs admittere nōllet, Rōmānī Carthāginem mīsērunt, ut mandārētur Hannibalī, nē bellum contrā sociōs populī Rōmānī gereret. Dūra respōnsa ā Carthāginiēnsibus reddita sunt. Saguntīnīs intereā famē victīs, Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indīxērunt.

Hannibal, frātre Hasdrubale in Hispāniā relīctō, Pyrēnaeōs et Alpēs trānsiit. Trāditur in Ītaliam octōgintā mīlia peditum, et vīgintī mīlia equitum, septem et trīgintā elephantōs addūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et Gallī Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt. Prīmus eī occurrit P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quī,

---

5. Saguntum, –ī, n., *Saguntum*, a town on the east central coast of Spain.

6. dē-nūntiō, –āre, (officially) *announce, order.*

8. mandārētur, used *impersonally.*

10. Saguntīnīs . . . victīs, after a siege of eight months.

13. Hasdrubale in Hispāniā relīctō: The plan was that in due time Hasdrubal should lead another army into Italy to reinforce Hannibal. **Pyrēnaeī (montēs)**, *the Pyrenees Mts.*, between Spain and France. Hannibal started in the spring of 218 B.C. Beyond the Pyrenees he had to cross the Rhone, a very broad and swift river. The elephants were taken across on huge rafts.

14. Alpēs trānsiit: This was a stupendous undertaking. The Mont Cenis pass, over which Hannibal probably went, is 6893 feet above sea-level. He did not reach the pass until October. On the way up the army was harassed by constant attacks from the mountain tribes. The descent was even more difficult. A fall of snow added to the danger of descending the slippery ice-covered steeps. Thousands of men, horses, and pack-animals were lost on this pass. **Trāditur,** *he is said, i.e.*, to have started out with these forces. The historian Polybius says that Hannibal reached Italy with only 20,000 infantry and 6000 cavalry.

16. Ligurēs, –um, m., *Ligurians*, a people of northwestern Italy south of the Po. Their chief city was **Genua** (modern *Genoa*). Here we see the real reason why Hannibal chose to enter Italy by way of the Alps. He had counted on securing these Gallic tribes as his allies.

proeliō ad Tīcīnum commissō, superātus est, et, vulnere acceptō, in castra rediit. Tum Semprōnius Longus cōnflīxit ad Trebiam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Multī populī sē Hannibalī dēdidērunt. Inde in Etrūriam prōgressus Flāminium cōnsulem ad Trasumēnum lacum superat. Ipse Flāmi-

18. Tīcīnus, –ī, m., *the Ticinus,* a river rising in the Alps and flowing south into the Po. This battle was merely a cavalry skirmish, but the ease with which the Romans were routed showed how superior the Carthaginian horsemen were.

A View of the Alps.

This shows the difficulties Hannibal encountered.

20. Trebia, –ae, m., *the Trebia,* a river flowing northwest into the Po. In the absence of Scipio, who was wounded, Sempronius Longus, the other consul, took command. One wintry December morning Hannibal lured the Romans before they had breakfasted across the icy river and ambushed them. Cold and hungry as they were, the Romans fought long and bravely, but were overwhelmingly defeated.

21. dē-dō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *give up, surrender.* **Inde,** *i.e.,* in the spring of 217 B.C.

22. Flāminius was going north, intending to join forces with his colleague. Hannibal posted his men on the heights above Lake Trasu-

nius interēmptus est; Rōmānōrum vīgintī quīnque mīlia caesa sunt.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

perennial, abstain, adduce, denounce, conjunction, perjure, renovate, com-mand, odium, progress.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat dux Carthāginiēnsium in Bellō Pūnicō Secundō? 2. Quandō odium perenne in Rōmānōs iūrāvit? 3. Quam ob rem Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indīxērunt? 4. Quis in Hispāniā relīctus est? 5. Quōs montēs Hannibal trānsiit? 6. Quī Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt? 7. Quis in prīmō proeliō vulnerātus est? 8. Quō proeliō Hannibal Semprōnium Longum vīcit? 9. Quid ad Lacum Trasumēnum accidit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. In order to renew the war, Hannibal will attack a town in Spain. 2. Ambassadors have come to inquire why a town friendly to the Romans is being besieged. 3. After taking Saguntum, Hannibal advanced into Italy. 4. Scipio rescued his father, who had been wounded while fighting. 5. Hannibal conquered in so many battles that many states surrendered (themselves) to him.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Nouns.* The suffix **-eus,** attached to noun stems, forms adjectives denoting

---

menus. Early in the morning the Romans were marching along the lake shore through a thick mist. Suddenly their vanguard was attacked and driven back, while at the same time the marching column was assailed on the flank by Hannibal's cavalry and Gauls rushing down from the hills. The slaughter that ensued was frightful. **Flāminius interēmptus est:** he died, while bravely trying to rally his men.

made of. The suffix **–ōsus,** attached to noun stems, forms adjectives denoting *full of.*

ferrum, *iron*	**ferr-eus,** *made of iron, iron*
perīculum, *danger*	**perīcul-ōsus,** *dangerous,* PERILOUS

Explain the formation of the adjectives **aureus, argenteus; glōriōsus, verbōsus, cōpiōsus.**

Disastrous battle of Cannae; Hasdrubal defeated in Spain

Quīngentēsimō et duodēquadrāgēsimō annō post urbem conditam L. Aemilius Paulus et P. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur. Quamquam Quīntus Fabius Maximus ambō cōnsulēs monuerat Hannibalem nōn aliter vincī posse quam morā, Varrō tamen morae impatiēns apud vīcum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Apuliā pugnāvit; ambō cōnsulēs victī sunt, atque Paulus interēmptus est. In eā

1. Quīngentēsimō . . . conditam, 216 B.C.

2. Paulus, of the senatorial party, an experienced soldier. **Varrō,** an energetic and successful plebeian with no military experience.

3. Quam-quam, conj., *although.* **Quīntus Fabius Maximus** after the battle of Lake Trasumenus had been made dictator. Realizing that neither he nor any other Roman general of the time could defeat such a military genius as Hannibal in a pitched battle, he instituted *a policy of delay, i.e.,* of watching and harassing the enemy without engaging him in battle. This brought him into great disfavor with the people, who called him **Cunctātor,** "the Delayer." But later they acknowledged that this policy saved Rome.

4. ambō, –ae, –ō, *both.* **nōn aliter . . . quam,** *not otherwise than.*

5. im-patiēns, –entis, [**patior,** *suffer*], *impatient.*

6. Āpulia, –ae, f., *Apulia,* a district extending along the east coast of Lower Italy. **pugnāvit:** The Roman army numbered 80,000 foot soldiers and 6000 horse. Hannibal had only 40,000 infantry and 10,000 cavalry, but he drew up a much wider battle line than that of the Romans. When the battle began, Hannibal's center fell back, drawing in the Roman center after it. Then the two wings advanced and attacked the Romans on both flanks. The cavalry, having routed the Roman horsemen, wheeled and assailed the Roman army in the rear. Thus the Romans were surrounded and mercilessly slaughtered.

pugnā virī cōnsulārēs aut praetōriī vīgintī, senātōrēs trīgintā captī aut occīsī sunt; mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia, equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī perīērunt. In hīs tantīs malīs nēmō tamen pācis mentiōnem facere dignātus est. Servī, quod numquam ante factum erat, manūmissī et mīlitēs factī sunt.

Post eam pugnam multae Ītaliae cīvitātēs, quae Rōmānīs pāruerant, sē ad Hannibalem trānstulērunt. Hannibal Rōmānīs obtulit, ut captīvōs redimerent; sed respōnsum est ā senātū, eōs cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī armātī capī potuissent. Hōs omnēs captīvōs ille posteā variīs suppliciīs interfēcit, et trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum Carthāginem mīsit, quōs manibus equitum Rōmānōrum, senātōrum, et mīlitum dētrāxerat. Intereā in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, quī ibi remānserat cum magnō exercitū, ā duōbus Scīpiōnibus vincitur, perditque in pugnā trīgintā quīnque mīlia hominum.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

impatiēns, mentiōnem, dignātus, manūmissī, trānstulērunt, redimerent, necessāriōs, dētrāxerat, remānserat.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō modo Hannibal ab Rōmānīs vincī potuit? 2. Quis ab Rōmānīs Cunctātor vocātus est? 3. Quis erat Ameri-

---

8. virī cōnsulārēs aut praetōriī, *i.e.*, ex-consuls or ex-praetors.

11. dignor, –ārī, –ātus, [dignus], *deign.* **quod,** *a thing which.*

12. manū-mittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, (send out of one's hands), *set free.*

13. multae Ītaliae cīvitātēs, *i.e.*, of *southern* Italy.

14. pāreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *obey* (with dative).

18. modius, –ī, m., *measure* (of grain), *peck.*

19. equitēs, –um, m., *equites*, members of the *Equestrian Order.*

21. ā duōbus Scīpiōnibus: *P. Cornelius Scipio*, who was wounded in the battle of Ticinus, and his brother, *Cn. Cornelius Scipio.* This defeat prevented Hasdrubal from reinforcing Hannibal.

cānus Fabius? 4. Quō proeliō Hannibal in Āpuliā Rōmānōs vīcit? 5. Nōnne Rōmānī post pugnam Cannēnsem pācem facere volēbant? 6. Quid Hannibal dē captīvīs Rōmānīs facere voluit? 7. Quid senātus Hannibalī respondit? 8. Quis erat Hasdrubal? 9. Ubi remānserat? 10. Quam ob rem Hannibalī auxilium ferre nōn potuit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The one consul was an experienced commander, the other was inexperienced. 2. Varro was not killed, but Paulus perished in the battle. 3. Although the Romans were defeated in many battles, they made no mention of peace. 4. The Roman general replied that he would not redeem the captives. 5. All these captives were afterwards slain with the most cruel tortures.

Word Formation. — *Adjectives derived from Proper Names.* Some of the suffixes we have recently studied, when attached to *Proper Names*, form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with*. They are **–ius, –cus,** and **–nus.** To these we should add a very common suffix, viz. **–ēnsis.**

Thrācia, THRACE	**Thrāc-ius,** THRACIAN
Britannia, BRITAIN	**Britanni-cus,** *British,* BRITANNIC
Latium, LATIUM	**Latī-nus,** LATIN
Alba, ALBA	**Albā-nus,** ALBAN
Athēnae, ATHENS	**Athēni-ēnsis,** ATHENIAN

Explain the formation of the following adjectives: **Gallicus, Carthāginiēnsis, Africānus, Corinthius, Alpīnus, Delphicus, Hispāniēnsis, Syrius, Saguntīnus, Trōiānus.** What are their English equivalents?

War with Philip V. of Macedonia; Sicily is recovered by Marcellus and Laevinus

Annō quārtō postquam Hannibal in Ītaliam vēnerat, M. Claudius Mārcellus cōnsul apud Nōlam, cīvitātem Cam-

2. Mārcellus, who defeated the Gauls in 222 B.C. See p. 172, l. 7.

pāniae, contrā Hannibalem bene pugnāvit. Illō tempore Philippus, Dēmētrī fīlius, rēx Macedoniae, ad Hannibalem lēgātōs mittit, eīque auxilia contrā Rōmānōs pollicētur. Quī lēgātī cum ā Rōmānīs captī essent, M. Valerius Laevīnus cum nāvibus missus rēgem cōpiās in Ītaliam trāicere prohibuit. Īdem in Macedoniam penetrāvit et rēgem Philippum vīcit.

Roman Ruins at Syracuse.

In Siciliā quoque rēs prōsperē gesta est. Mārcellus magnam huius īnsulae partem cēpit, quam Poenī occupāverant; Syrācūsās, nōbilissimam urbem, expugnāvit, et inde ingentem

3. contrā Hannibalem bene pugnāvit: This was Hannibal's first defeat in Italy.

4. Macedonia, -ae, f., *Macedonia*, the country north of Greece.

5. auxilia, -ōrum, n., (pl. of **auxilium**), *auxiliary forces, auxiliaries.*

9. In Siciliā: Hiero, Rome's stanch ally, died shortly after the battle of Cannae, and within two years all Sicily joined Hannibal.

11. Syrācūsās . . . expugnāvit: The city was besieged for two years by Marcellus, whose operations were repeatedly blocked by the remarkable inventions of Archimedes, the famous mathematician.

praedam Rōmam mīsit. Laevīnus in Macedoniā cum multīs Graeciae populīs amīcitiam fēcit; et in Siciliam profectus Hannōnem, Poenōrum ducem, apud Agrigentum[14] cēpit; quadrāgintā cīvitātēs in dēditiōnem accēpit, vīgintī sex expugnāvit. Ita omnī Siciliā receptā, cum ingentī glōriā Rōmam regressus est.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

amity, auxiliaries, predatory, trajectory.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis Hannibalem apud Nōlam vīcit? 2. Quid Philippus Hannibalī pollicitus est? 3. Quis Philippum in Ītaliam cōpiās trāicere prohibuit? 4. Quī post pugnam Cannēnsem Siciliam occupāvērunt? 5. Quis magnam partem īnsulae cēpit? 6. Ubi Laevīnus Hannōnem, Poenōrum ducem, cēpit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Ambassadors are being sent by Philip to promise auxiliaries to Hannibal. 2. Roman ships prevented the king's forces from setting out (to set out) for Italy. 3. Marcellus waged war so successfully that a large part of Sicily was captured. 4. When Syracuse had been taken, immense booty was sent to Rome. 5. The messenger reported that the whole island had been received by Marcellus in surrender.

Review of Adjective Formation

Rule 1. The following suffixes form adjectives denoting *pertaining to* or *connected with:* **-lis, -ālis,** and **-īlis; -āris** and **-ārius; -nus, -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus,** and **-ēnsis; -cus** and **-ticus; -ius** and **-īvus.**

---

14. Agrigentum, -ī, n., *Agrigentum,* a large city on the south coast of Sicily.

RULE 2. **-āx** denotes *tendency;* **-tus,** *provided with.*
RULE 3. **-eus** denotes *made of;* **-ōsus,** *full of.*

Give examples of Latin adjectives that are formed with *each* of the above suffixes. Wherever possible, give an English derivative from the Latin adjectives.

The youthful Scipio's first campaign in Spain; Hasdrubal reaches Italy, but is slain in the battle of the Metaurus

Intereā in Hispāniam, ubi duo Scīpiōnēs ab Hasdrubale interfectī erant, missus est P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium et suā aetāte et posteriōre tempore ferē prīmus. Hic, puer duodēvīgintī annōrum, in pugnā ad Tīcīnum, patrem singulārī virtūte servāvit. Deinde post clādem Cannēnsem, cum multī nōbilissimōrum iuvenum Ītaliam dēserere cuperent, eōs auctōritāte suā ab hōc cōnsiliō dēterruit. Vīgintī quattuor annōrum iuvenis in Hispāniam missus, Carthāginem Novam cēpit, in quā omne aurum et argentum et bellī apparātum Poenī habēbant, nōbilissimōs quoque obsidēs, quōs ab Hispānīs accēperant. Hōs obsidēs parentibus reddidit. Quā rē omnēs ferē Hispāniae cīvitātēs ad eum ūnō animō trānsiērunt.

---

1. Intereā: The two Scipios, who defeated Hasdrubal in 216 B.C., pushed the war vigorously in Spain. But in 212 B.C. they made the mistake of dividing their forces, and were defeated and slain in separate battles by the Carthaginians. Two years later, when no one else ventured to take command against Hasdrubal, P. Cornelius Scipio, a mere youth, offered to do so, and was sent to Spain to avenge the death of his father and uncle.

3. aetās, -ātis, f., *age, time.* **posterior, -ius,** gen., **-ōris,** [comp. of **posterus**], *later.*

5. Cann-ēnsis, -e, [**Cannae**], *of Cannae.*

8. Carthāgō Nova, *New Carthage,* a large town on the southeastern coast of Spain.

10. ap-parātus, -ūs, m., [**ad**], *equipment.* **obses, -idis,** c., [**obsideō**], *hostage,* a person given by a conquered people as a guarantee of good faith.

Ab eō tempore rēs Rōmānōrum in diēs laetiōrēs factae sunt. Hasdrubal ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Ītaliam ēvocātus, ad Metaurum in īnsidiās incidit, et strēnuē pugnāns occīsus est. Plūrimae autem cīvitātēs, quae in Bruttiīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur, Rōmānīs sē trādidērunt.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

singulārī, apparātum, parentibus, ūnō animō, ēvocātus, īnsidiās.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid duōbus Scīpiōnibus in Hispāniā accidit? 2. Quō modo P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, ubi erat puer, sē esse fortissimum praebuerat? 3. Quot annōs nātus est, ubi in Hispāniam

---

14. in diēs, *day by day.* **laetus, –a, –um,** *joyful, glad, happy.*

15. Hasdrubal with a large army eluded Scipio and crossed the Pyrenees. In the spring of 207 B.C., following the same route that Hannibal took eleven years before, he crossed the Alps and arrived in Italy. It was a most critical time for the Romans. If Hasdrubal succeeded in joining forces with Hannibal in southern Italy, Rome was doomed. The nation's fate turned on the merest chance. One Roman army was in the north under the command of Livius Salinator, while the other under Claudius Nero was in the south watching Hannibal. A message from Hasdrubal to his brother was intercepted and brought to Nero. Leaving camp at once with a picked force, Nero marched north with incredible swiftness and secrecy and joined his colleague. Together they surprised and overwhelmingly defeated Hasdrubal.

16. Metaurus, –ī, m., *the Metaurus,* a small river in Umbria, flowing into the Adriatic Sea. **occīsus est:** The first news of this disaster reached Hannibal when his brother's head, which had been thrown into the camp, was brought to him. It was a sad, a bitter end to his long-cherished hope of reinforcement. Yet he had no thought of withdrawing from Italy. For four more years without any aid from Carthage he held his own in the enemy's country, like a hunted lion whom no one dared to approach.

17. Bruttiī, –ōrum, m., *the Bruttii,* inhabitants of Bruttium, a mountainous district in the extreme south of Italy.

missus est? 4. Quam urbem cēpit? 5. Quō modo Hispānōrum grātiam conciliāvit? 6. Quis cum magnō exercitū Alpēs trānsiit et in Ītaliam vēnit? 7. Ubi eō tempore fuit Hannibal? 8. Quid prohibuit Hasdrubalem cum frātre sē coniungere? 9. Quot annōs posteā Hannibal in Ītaliā remānsit? 10. Ubi erat Bruttium?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The writer believes that Scipio was the foremost of all Roman generals. 2. Scipio fought most fiercely in battle to save his father's life. 3. Many young men were prevented (**prohibeō**) by Scipio from deserting (to desert) the fatherland. 4. Very many hostages are being held in that city. 5. When Hasdrubal was slain in battle, Hannibal knew that he could not conquer the Romans.

Word Formation. — *Verbs derived from Verbs.* In the foregoing lessons we have studied the formation of Latin nouns and adjectives. Let us now consider the formation of Latin verbs.

Frequentative or *intensive* verbs denote a *repeated* or *intense action.* They are formed from verb stems, and end in **-tō** (or **-sō**) and **-itō.** Those derived from First Conjugation verbs end — not in **-ātō** as one would expect, but — in **-itō.**

cap-iō, *take*	**cap-tō,** CAPTURE
pell-ō, (p'p'l **pulsus**), *drive*	**pul-sō,** *beat*
rog-ō, *ask*	**rog-itō,** *keep asking*

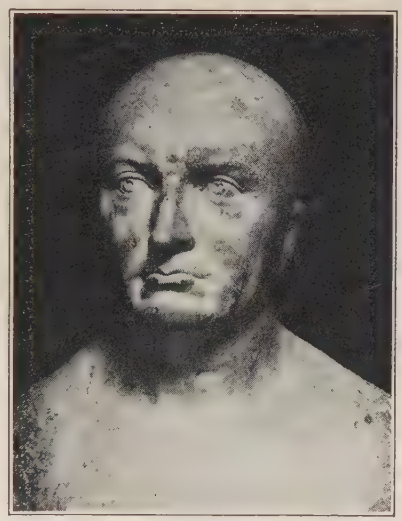
From what Latin verbs are the following Frequentatives derived: **iactō, habitō, dictō, versor, volitō?** How does each Frequentative differ in meaning from the verb from which it is derived?

Scipio invades Africa; final battle of Zama

Annō decimō tertiō postquam in Ītaliam Hannibal vēnerat, Scīpiō cōnsul creātus est, et posterō annō in Āfricam missus est. Ibi contrā Hannōnem, ducem Carthāginiēnsium, prōs-

1. **Annō decimō tertiō . . . vēnerat,** 205 B.C.

perē pugnat, tōtumque eius exercitum dēlet. Secundō proeliō ūndecim mīlia hominum occīdit, et castra cēpit cum quattuor mīlibus et quīngentīs mīlitibus. Syphācem, Numidiae rēgem, quī sē cum Poenīs coniūnxerat, cēpit, eumque cum nōbilissimīs Numidīs et īnfīnītīs spoliīs Rōmam mīsit. Quā rē audītā, omnis ferē Ītalia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricam redīre iubētur. Ita annō decimō septimō Ītalia ab Hannibale līberāta est.



Publius Cornelius Scipio.

Post plūrēs pugnās, cum pāx plūs quam semel frūstrā temptāta esset, pugna ad Zamam committitur, in quā eī perītissimī ducēs cōpiās suās ad bellum ēdūcēbant. Scīpiō victor discēdit; Hannibal cum paucīs equitibus ēvādit. Post hoc proelium pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō,

---

6. Syphāx, –ācis, m., *Syphax.* **Numidia, –ae,** f., *Numidia,* a country west of the Carthaginian territory. The capture of Syphax was exceedingly important, because the Numidian cavalry, which had so often brought disaster to the Romans, from now on fought on their side.

21. cum pāx . . . temptāta esset: Twice, after peace terms had been arranged, hostile outbreaks on the part of the Carthaginians caused a renewal of the war.

22. semel, adv., *once.*

26. victor discēdit, *comes off victorious.* **ē-vādō, –ere, –vāsī, –vāsus,** *go forth, escape.*

27. pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est: 201 B.C. The terms of peace were: that Carthage should surrender Spain and her Mediter-

cum Rōmam rediisset, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit, atque *Āfricānus* appellātus est. Sīc secundum Pūnicum bellum fīnem accepīt annō ūndēvīcēsimō postquam coeperat.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

infinite, nomads, in-delible, at-tempt, evade.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis in Āfricam missus est? 2. Quis erat dux Carthāginiēnsium in Āfricā? 3. Quot proeliīs Scīpiō Hannōnem vīcit? 4. Quis erat Syphāx? 5. Quam ob rem Hannibal in Āfricam redīre coāctus est? 6. Ubi ultima pugna commissa est? 7. Quis victor discessit? 8. Quam ob rem Scīpiō est appellātus *Āfricānus*? 9. Quot annōs secundum Pūnicum bellum dūrāvit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Scipio fought so successfully that the-whole-of Hanno's army was destroyed. 2. The army of the king of Numidia will unite with the enemy's forces. 3. On hearing these facts, the Carthaginians ordered Hannibal to leave Italy. 4. Hannibal had been in Italy seventeen years. 5. When Hannibal had been defeated by Scipio at Zama, Carthage made peace with Rome.

Word Formation. — *Verbs derived from Verbs. Inceptive* verbs denote *the beginning of an action.* They are formed from the present stem of some other verb, and end in **-scō.**

---

ranean islands; give up all her fleet (except ten triremes) and her elephants; pay 200 talents (about $227,000) annually for fifty years; transfer the kingdom of Numidia to Masinissa, a Roman ally; and *agree to wage no war without the consent of Rome.*

cre-ō, *make, produce*	**crē-scō,** (begin to produce), *grow.* (CRESCENT)
root **gno–,** KNOW	**(g)nō-scō,** (become acquainted with), KNOW
prō-fici-ō, *advance*	**pro-ficī-scor,** *set forth*
sene-ō, *be old*	**cōn-senē-scō,** *grow old together*
ad-ole-ō, *increase, magnify*	**ad-olē-scō,** *begin to grow, grow up.* (ADOLESCENT)

War with Philip V. of Macedonia; with Antiochus the Great of Syria

Fīnītō Pūnicō bellō, secūtum est bellum Macedonicum contrā Philippum rēgem. Superātus est rēx ā T. Quīnctiō Flāminīnō apud Cynoscephalās, pāxque eī data est hīs lēgibus: nē Graeciae cīvitātibus, quās Rōmānī contrā eum dēfenderant, bellum īnferret; ut captīvōs et trānsfugās red- 5
deret; quīnquāgintā sōlum nāvēs habēret; reliquās Rōmānīs daret; mīlle talenta praestāret, et obsidem daret fīlium Dēmētrium. T. Quīnctius etiam Lacedaemoniīs intulit bellum, et ducem eōrum Nābidem vīcit.

---

1. Fīnītō Pūnicō bellō: After a war lasting *seventeen years* one would think that the Romans would wish to enjoy peace for a short time. But not so. Having crushed Carthage and acquired Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, and Spain, they turned their eyes toward the East. Philip V. of Macedonia had been a source of annoyance to them in the late war. He now attacked Athens, and was evidently bent on adding Greece to his dominion. In response to the request of the Greeks for aid, Rome declared war upon Philip in 200 B.C. Nothing was accomplished for two years. Then **Flāminīnus** was appointed to take command.

3. Cynos-cephalae, –ārum, f., [Greek for "*Dog's-heads*"], *Cynoscephalae,* two hills in east central Thessaly, where the battle took place in 197 B.C. In the following year at the Isthmian Games Flamininus evoked great enthusiasm among the Greeks by proclaiming their freedom from the Macedonian yoke.

5. trāns-fuga, –ae, m., *deserter.*

6. sōlum, adv., [**sōlus**], *only.*

7. prae-stō, –stāre, –stitī, –stitus, *furnish.*

8. Lacedaemoniīs intulit bellum: Nabis, the "tyrant" of Lacedae-

Fīnītō bellō Macedonicō, secūtum est bellum Syriacum contrā Antiochum rēgem, cum quō Hannibal sē iūnxerat. Missus est contrā eum L. Cornēlius Scīpiō cōnsul, cui frāter eius Scīpiō Āfricānus lēgātus est additus. Hannibal nāvālī proeliō victus est. Antiochus autem ad Magnēsiam, Asiae cīvitātem, ā Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule ingentī proeliō fūsus est. Tum rēx Antiochus pācem petiit. Data est eī hāc lēge, ut ex Eurōpā et Asiā recēderet, atque intrā Taurum sē continēret, decem mīlia talentōrum et vīgintī obsidēs praebēret, Hannibalem, concitōrem bellī, dēderet. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, et ingentī glōriā triumphāvit. Ipse ad imitātiōnem frātris nōmen *Asiāticī* accēpit.

---

mon, had treacherously seized Argos. Flamininus brought him to terms in 195 B.C.

10. Syriacus, –a, –um, [**Syria**], *Syrian, of Syria*, a country on the eastern end of the Mediterranean, extending northward to the Euphrates river and eastward to the Arabian desert.

11. Antiochus, –ī, m., *Antiochus the Great.* His dominion, which formerly belonged to Alexander the Great's empire, included not only Syria, but a large part of Asia Minor. He was ambitious to extend it over the rest of Asia Minor and Greece, and his aggressiveness brought on the war with Rome in 192 B.C. **Hannibal:** For six years after the battle of Zama Hannibal remained in Carthage, doing much to reform the government and restore the city's prosperity. Alarmed by a report that he was forming a secret alliance, the Romans forced him into exile. Hannibal then went to Antiochus and influenced him to make war on Rome. If the king had given him command of the army and carried out his suggestions, he might have been more successful; but he merely put him in command of the fleet.

13. lēgātus, *i.e.*, Scipio Africanus served as lieutenant general under his brother.

14. Magnēsia, –ae, f., *Magnesia*, a city in western Asia Minor. This battle took place in 189 B.C.

17. Taurus, –ī, m., *the Taurus mountain range* in southeastern Asia Minor.

19. con-citor, –ōris, m., [cieō, *stir up*], *instigator.* **Hannibalem . . . dēderet:** Hannibal, however, escaped and fled to Prusias, king of Bithynia, a country bordering on the Black Sea. Again the Romans

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

Philippum, Syriacum, Magnēsiam, fūsus, recēderet, continēret, imitātiōnem, Asiāticī.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat Philippus? 2. Cui secundō Pūnicō bellō auxilium obtulit? 3. Quam terram nunc fīnibus suīs addere voluit? 4. Quis eum superāvit? 5. Quibus lēgibus pāx eī data est? 6. Quis erat Antiochus? 7. Quis eī persuāsit ut cum Rōmānīs bellum gereret? 8. Quī contrā Antiochum missī sunt? 9. Ubi Antiochus fūsus est? 10. Quō modo Hannibal mortuus est? 11. Uter erat maior imperātor, Hannibal an Scīpiō Āfricānus?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The Romans sent a large army into Macedonia to fight against king Philip. 2. Many Greek states were unable to defend themselves against the king. 3. The general asked why the captives had not been returned at once. 4. The ambassadors said that king Antiochus was begging-for peace from the Romans. 5. Hannibal did not give himself up to the Romans, but perished bravely by his own hand.

Word Formation. — *Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives. Denominative* verbs are formed from *nouns* and *adjectives*. Most of them are of the First Conjugation, but they are found in the other conjugations as well.

---

demanded the surrender of Hannibal, and Prusias treacherously sent a detachment of soldiers to capture him. But when Hannibal saw that his house was surrounded by them, he took a dose of poison, preferring to die thus rather than suffer an ignominious death at the hands of his relentless enemies.

lo-cus, *place*	**locō,** *place,* LOCATE
flōs, FLOWER	**flōreō,** FLOURISH
status, *position*	**statuō,** *set up; decide, determine*
fīnis, *end*	**fīniō,** FINISH
līber, *free*	**līberō,** LIBERATE

Define the following Denominatives, giving the Latin noun or adjective from which each is derived: **nōminō, pūniō, cūrō, labōrō, cūstōdiō, laudō, serviō, vulnerō, re-novō, honōrō.**

War with Perseus, the last king of Macedonia

Philippō, rēge Macedoniae, mortuō, fīlius eius Perseus rebellāvit, ingentibus cōpiīs ad bellum parātīs. Dux Rōmānōrum, P. Licinius cōnsul, contrā eum missus, proeliō ā rēge victus est. Rēx tamen pācem petēbat. Cui Rōmānī eam praestāre nōluērunt, nisi hīs condiciōnibus, ut sē et suōs Rōmānīs dēderet. Mox L. Aemilius Paulus cōnsul rēgem ad Pydnam superāvit, et vīgintī mīlia peditum eius occīdit. Equitātus cum rēge fūgit. Urbēs Macedoniae omnēs, quās rēx tenuerat, Rōmānīs sē dēdidērunt. Ipse Perseus ab amīcīs dēsertus in Paulī potestātem vēnit. Hic, multīs etiam aliīs rēbus gestīs, cum ingentī pompā Rōmam rediit in nāve Perseī inūsitātae magnitūdinis; nam sēdecim rēmōrum ōrdinēs habuisse dīcitur. Triumphāvit magnificentissimē in currū aureō, duōbus fīliīs utrōque latere adstantibus. Ante currum inter captīvōs duo rēgis fīliī et ipse Perseus ductī sunt.

---

1. morior, –ī, mortuus, *die.* **Perseus rebellāvit:** in the year 171 B.C.

5. prae-stō, –āre, –stitī, –stitus, (stand before), *show; furnish, give.*

6. Paulus was the son of the consul who died at Cannae. He was given command of the army in 168 B.C.

7. Pydna, –ae, f., *Pydna,* a town near the coast in Macedonia, north of Mt. Olympus.

12. rēmus, –ī, m., *oar.*

15. duo rēgis fīliī et ipse Perseus ductī sunt: After the triumphal procession Perseus was thrown into a dungeon. But Aemilius interceded in his behalf, and he was released and allowed to spend the rest of his days in honorable captivity at Alba Longa.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

pomp, rebel, ordinary, Paul, magnificently, mortuary, unused.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis Philippō, rēgī Macedoniae, successit? 2. Cūr Perseus cum Rōmānīs bellum gessit? 3. Quis prīmō proeliō vīcit? 4. Quibus condiciōnibus Rōmānī pācem dare voluērunt? 5. Quis dēnique rēgem superāvit? 6. Quid post proelium Perseō accidit? 7. In quantā nāvī Aemilius Rōmam rediit. 8. In quālī currū Aemilius triumphāvit? 9. Quī ante currum ductī sunt?

The Third Punic War; Carthage is destroyed

Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem susceptum est

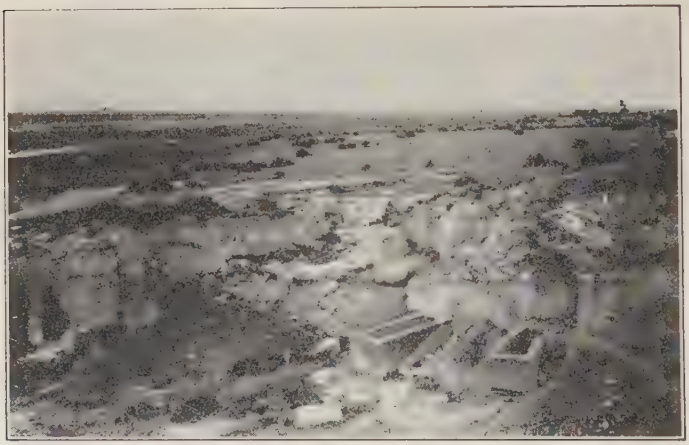
1. Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem: During the fifty years that had elapsed after the Second Punic War, Carthage had recovered her commercial prosperity. The Romans no longer feared her in war, but they could not bear the thought of her becoming a rival again even in trade. There was a growing conviction that she must be destroyed. The statesman Cato particularly was alarmed by her rapid recovery and ended every speech he made in the Senate with the words, "Dēlenda est Carthāgō!"

Cato.

A pretext for war was soon forthcoming. One of the conditions under which peace had been granted to Carthage in 201 B.C. was that she should not wage war without Rome's consent. Taking advantage of this clause

sescentēsimō et alterō annō ab urbe conditā, annō quīnquāgēsimō prīmō postquam secundum bellum Pūnicum trānsāctum erat. L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus et M'. Mānīlius cōnsulēs in Āfricam trāiēcērunt, et oppugnāvērunt Carthāginem.

in the treaty, Masinissa, king of Numidia, Rome's former ally, had constantly encroached upon Carthaginian territory. Protests from Carthage to Rome were of no avail. At last in 151 B.C., goaded on



EXCAVATIONS AT CARTHAGE.

These meager remains show how thoroughly Carthage was destroyed.

by a fresh seizure of lands, the Carthaginians went to war with Masinissa. Thereupon they were charged with breaking the treaty, and after long and fruitless negotiations in 149 B.C. the consuls sailed with an army to Carthage. On arriving, they demanded that all arms and military stores in the city should be surrendered. When this had been done, they announced that it was the will of the Roman Senate that Carthage should be destroyed, but that her citizens might, if they so desired, build another city *ten miles inland*. At this the fury of the people knew no bounds. Obtaining a respite of thirty days, they secretly manufactured arms and strengthened the battlements, working day and night, so that when the consuls returned they found the city prepared for a siege. Thus began the Third Punic War.

2. ses-centēsimus, –a, –um, [**sex** + **centum**], *six hundred.*

Multa ibi praeclārē gesta sunt per Scīpiōnem, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtem, quī tribūnus in Āfricā mīlitābat. Apud omnēs ingēns erat metus et reverentia Scīpiōnis, neque quidquam magis Carthāginiēnsium ducēs vītābant, quam contrā eum proelium committere.

Cum iam magnum esset Scīpiōnis nōmen, tertiō annō postquam Rōmānī in Āfricam trāiēcerant, cōnsul est creātus, et contrā Carthāginem missus. Is hanc urbem ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit ac dīruit. Ingēns ibi praeda facta est, plūrimaque inventa sunt, quae dē multārum cīvitātum excidiīs Carthāgō collēgerat. Haec omnia Scīpiō cīvitātibus Ītaliae, Siciliae, Āfricae reddidit. Ita Carthāgō dēlēta est septingentēsimō annō postquam condita erat. Scīpiō "Āfricānus Minor" vocātus est.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

trānsāctum, nepōtem, mīlitābat, reverentia, collēgerat, Minor.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr Rōmānī contrā Carthāginem bellum gerere volēbant? 2. Quibus verbīs omnēs ōrātiōnēs Catōnis in senātū fīnītae sunt? 3. Quam causam bellī Rōmānī repperērunt?

---

6. prae-clārē, adv., [**clārus**], *gloriously.* **Scīpiō Aemiliānus,** the son of Aemilius Paulus, conqueror of Perseus, was the *adopted son* of Cornelius Scipio, son of the great Scipio Africanus.

7. mīlitō, -āre, [**mīles**], (be a soldier), *serve.*

13. Is hanc urbem . . . cēpit ac dīruit: It was a frightful siege, attended by indescribable scenes of fire and slaughter. The Carthaginians fought on in grim despair until they were almost exterminated. Then in accordance with the decree of the Senate this once proud and beautiful city was leveled to the ground, its site was plowed, and its soil was cursed that it might never again be rebuilt.

16. ex-cidium, -ī, n., [**cadō**], *ruin.*

4. Quid cōnsulēs Carthāginiēnsēs facere iussērunt? 5. Quid fēcērunt Carthāginiēnsēs? 6. Quis erat magnus dux Rōmānōrum in tertiō bellō Pūnicō? 7. Pugnāvērunt-ne Carthāginiēnsēs fortiter? 8. Postquam urbs expugnāta est, quid Scīpiō iussū senatūs fēcit? 9. Erat-ne aequum sīc dēlēre hanc pulcherrimam urbem?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Another war will be undertaken by the Romans against the Carthaginians. 2. Scipio Africanus was the most famous of that noble family. 3. When he had been elected consul, he was sent to Africa. 4. In this city Scipio found much plunder, which had been collected from the states of Africa. 5. Carthage was taken and destroyed by Scipio in the third Punic war.

Review of Verb Formation

Define *Inceptives*, *Intensives*, *Denominatives*, *Frequentatives*. What distinctive endings do some of these verbs have? Give examples of each.

Metellus defeats Pseudo-Philip; Mummius destroys Corinth; three great triumphs celebrated in 146 B.C.

Interim in Macedoniā quīdam Pseudophilippus arma mōvit, et P. Iuventium, Rōmānōrum ducem, ad interneciōnem vīcit. Post eum Q. Caecilius Metellus dux ā Rōmānīs contrā Pseudophilippum missus est, et, vīgintī quīnque mīlibus ex mīlitibus eius occīsīs, Macedoniam recēpit; ipsum etiam Pseudophilippum in potestātem suam redēgit.

---

1. Pseudo-philippus, [**pseudo** (Greek word), *false*], *the False Philip, Pseudo-Philip*, a pretender named Andriscus, who, playing upon his resemblance to Philip, son of King Perseus, claimed the throne in Macedonia. **arma mōvit,** *stirred up war.*

2. inter-neciō, –ōnis, f., [**necō**], *annihilation.*

5. Macedoniam recēpit: Macedonia became a Roman province in 146 B.C.

Corinthiīs quoque bellum indictum est, nōbilissimae Graeciae cīvitātī, propter iniūriam Rōmānīs lēgātīs illātam. Hanc Mummius cōnsul cēpit ac dīruit.

THE SITE OF CORINTH.

Trēs igitur Rōmae simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt: Scīpiōnis ex Āfricā, ante cuius currum ductus est Hasdrubal; Metellī ex Macedoniā, cuius currum praecessit Āndriscus, quī et Pseudophilippus dīcitur; Mummī ex Corinthō, ante

7. Corinthiī, -ōrum, m., *the Corinthians,* inhabitants of Corinth. Constant dissensions among the Greeks compelled the Romans to interfere.

8. propter iniūriam Rōmānīs lēgātīs: In arresting some Lacedaemonians who had fled for refuge to the Romans, the houses of the Roman envoys were forcibly entered. This was a violation of the rights of ambassadors. **Hanc Mummius . . . dīruit:** Corinth like Carthage was utterly destroyed, another case of the wanton destruction of a beautiful city by the Romans.

10. celeber, -bris, -bre, comp., **celebrior,** sup., **celeberrimus,** *renowned, famous.*

11. Hasdrubal, the general in command during the siege of Carthage.

quem signa aēnea et pīctae tabulae et alia urbis clārissimae ornāmenta praelāta sunt.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

internecine, picture, pseudonym, precede, interim, celebrated, prefer.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat Pseudophilippus? 2. Quis Macedoniam recēpit? 3. Cūr Rōmānī Graecīs bellum indīxērunt? 4. Quis Corinthum cēpit ac dīruit? 5. Quī trēs celeberrimī triumphī simul Rōmae fuērunt? 6. Quō annō post urbem conditam fuērunt eī triumphī? 7. Quō annō ante Christum nātum?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Little by little the Greeks were being reduced into the power of the Romans. 2. The commander engaged in almost daily battles with the enemy. 3. The ambassadors asked why this great wrong had been done to a Roman citizen. 4. That town will be taken without any struggle. 5. In this triumph kings and princes were led before the chariot of the Roman general.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *Prefixes.* When we first began to study the derivation of Latin words, we noticed that *compound words* are formed by attaching one word to another, as **aquae-ductus,** *aqueduct;* **armi-ger,** *armor-bearer.* Some *compound verbs* are formed in this way. Thus **aedi-ficō,** *build,* is formed from **aedēs,** *building* + **faciō,** *make.*

---

14. pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus, *paint;* **pictae tabulae,** *paintings.*

The celebration of these three triumphs in 146 B.C. marks the end of a most remarkable period of conquest in the history of Rome. In a little more than a century she had subdued Carthage, Macedonia, Greece, and Asia Minor. More than that she organized the conquered territory into provinces, which she governed with great firmness. This especially tended to give permanence to the great empire she built up.

But most compound verbs are formed by prefixing a *preposition* or an *inseparable particle* to a verb to modify its meaning, as **īn-scrībō**, *write on*, INSCRIBE or **re-pellō**, *drive back*, REPEL. Such a preposition or particle is called a *prefix* (from **prae**, *before* + **fīgō**, FIX).

Observe how many compounds are formed from **mittō**, *send:*

ā-mittō, *send from* or *away*
ad-mittō, *send to*, ADMIT
circum-mittō, *send around*
com-mittō, *send together*, COMMIT
dē-mittō, *send* or *cast down*
dī-mittō, *send apart*, DISMISS
ē-mittō, *send forth*, EMIT
im-mittō, *send in*
inter-mittō, *send between*, INTERMIT
manū-mittō, *send from the hand, release*
o-mittō, *send aside*, OMIT
per-mittō, *send through*, PERMIT
prae-mittō, *send forward* or *ahead*
prō-mittō, *send forth*, PROMISE
re-mittō, *send back*, REMIT
sub-mittō, *send under*, SUBMIT
trāns-mittō, *send across*, TRANSMIT

(*a*) *Vowel Changes.* A short *a* or *e* in the stem of a verb compounded with a preposition is often weakened to short *i*, as **dē-ficiō** for **dē-faciō**; **ob-tineō** for **ob-teneō.**

(*b*) *Assimilation.* The final consonant in the preposition is often assimilated, *i.e. made like to* the initial consonant of the verb, as **of-ferō** for **ob-ferō.**

Show how the following compound verbs are formed and how the preposition affects their meaning: **accēdō, supportō, incipiō, occurrō, attribuō, incidō, afficiō, oppugnō, appōnō.**

Rebellions in Spain

Annō sescentēsimō decimō post urbem conditam Viriāthus in Lūsītāniā bellum contrā Rōmānōs excitāvit. Pāstor prīmō fuit, mox latrōnum dux; postrēmō tantōs ad bellum

---

2. Lūsītānia, –ae, f., *Lusitania*, a province on the west coast of Spain.

3. latrō, –ōnis, m., *robber*. **postrēmō**, adv., *finally*.

populōs concitāvit, ut vindex lībertātis Hispāniae exīstimārētur. Dēnique ā suīs interfectus est. Cum eius interfectōrēs praemium ā Caepiōne cōnsule peterent, respōnsum est, numquam Rōmānīs placuisse, imperātōrem ā mīlitibus suīs interficī.

Deinde bellum exortum est cum Numantīnīs, opulentissimā cīvitāte Hispāniae. Ab hīs superātus, Q. Pompeius

Gravestones among the Ruins of Carthage.

pācem ignōbilem fēcit. Post eum C. Hostīlius Mancīnus cōnsul iterum cum eīs fēcit īnfāmem pācem, quam populus et senātus iussit īnfringī, atque ipsum Mancīnum hostibus

---

4. vindex lībertātis Hispāniae: From 144 to 140 B.C. Viriathus defeated the Roman forces again and again.

9. Deinde, 141 B.C. **Numantīnī, –ōrum,** m., [**Numantia**], *Numantines, inhabitants of Numantia,* a strongly fortified city in the north of Spain. Though the rest of this district had submitted to the Romans, Numantia still held out.

10. Pompeius and the Numantines had actually arranged the terms of a treaty, but when a new Roman general arrived, Pompeius basely denied ever entering into any negotiations for peace.

12. īnfāmis, –e, [**fāma**], *dishonorable.* In order to avoid surrendering his army Mancinus and his officers signed a treaty with the Numantines.

13. īn-fringō, –ere, –frēgī, –frāctus, [**frangō**], *break off.*

trādī. Tum P. Scīpiō Āfricānus in Hispāniam missus est. Is prīmum mīlitem ignāvum et corruptum corrēxit; tum multās Hispāniae cīvitātēs partim bellō cēpit, partim in dēditiōnem accēpit. Postrēmō ipsam Numantiam famē ad dēditiōnem coēgit, urbemque ēvertit; reliquam prōvinciam in fidem accēpit.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

pāstor, vindex, opulentissimā, ignōbilem, īnfāmem, īnfringī, corruptum, corrēxit.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi erat Lūsītānia? 2. Quis erat Viriāthus? 3. Cūr Viriāthus vindex lībertātis Hispāniae exīstimātus est? 4. Num quī imperātor Rōmānus Viriāthum vīcit? 5. Quō modo mortuus est? 6. Ubi erat Numantia? 7. Quot annōs Rōmānī Numantiam obsidēbant? 8. Quis postrēmō urbem cēpit?

(*c*.) Translate:

1. The consul learned that Viriathus had been first a shepherd, then the leader of robbers. 2. Many tribes were urged on to the war, that Spain might be freed from the Romans. 3. The Roman general inquired why the soldiers had killed their own general. 4. The senate declared that the consul had made a dishonorable peace. 5. Numantia was forced to surrender, and the city was destroyed.

---

14. Tum, 134 B.C. **Scīpiō,** the destroyer of Carthage. His entire name was *Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus Africanus Minor!*

15. mīlitem, here used collectively, *soldiery.*

17. Postrēmō, in 133 B.C.

18. urbemque ēvertit: The city was destroyed and its inhabitants were sold into slavery.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *The prefix* **ad-**. Prepositions, when compounded with other words, sometimes vary to some extent from their usual meaning. Thus **ad,** *to* or *towards*, when used as a prefix, occasionally acquires the meaning of *against*, as **ad-orior,** *rise against, assail, attack.*

Explain the formation of the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived: *admonish, add, admire, apparatus, advocate, aggressive, adjoin, accident, adjective, administer, adjacent, apprehend.*

The Later Republic

In the early Republic, as we have seen, the Romans were a people of good morals, honest, industrious, and thrifty. But during the period of conquest their character had changed greatly. This is hardly to be wondered at. Within a century and a half this small country with no interest in neighboring lands had expanded into a large and powerful empire. Immense wealth was now flowing into it from the provinces. Commerce with other nations was flourishing. Business at home was prosperous. Poor indeed was the citizen who did not own at least one slave!

It was precisely this sudden acquisition of wealth that gradually undermined the character of the Romans. The peasant farms were swallowed up in vast estates that were worked by slaves. Industry declined. Contact with the Greeks and Orientals induced a taste for luxury and loose living. Far-sighted Romans like Cato and the Gracchi earnestly strove to repress these evils, but it was in vain. Widespread education and a pure religion might have checked the advancing tide, but there were no schools for the common people and they had lost the simple faith of their fathers. The city was filled with a rabble who cared for little more than to be amused by the games of the Circus and gladiatorial exhibitions. The nobles were actuated only by the desire to obtain the higher magistracies and acquire wealth by plundering the provinces. Even the Senate, which had governed so wisely in the past, had largely become corrupt, and was thus unfit to rule the state. Such were the conditions in Rome at the beginning of this period of her history.

War with Jugurtha, king of Numidia

P. Scīpiōne Nāsīcā et L. Calpurniō Bēstiā cōnsulibus, Iugurthae, Numidārum rēgī, bellum illātum est, quod Adherbalem et Hiempsalem, Micipsae fīliōs, patruēlēs suōs interēmisset. Adversus eum cōnsul Calpurnius Bēstia missus est, sed corruptus rēgis pecūniā pācem cum eō flāgitiōsissimam fēcit, quae ā senātū improbāta est.

Dēnique Q. Caecilius Metellus cōnsul Iugurtham variīs proeliīs vīcit, elephantōs eius occīdit vel cēpit, multās cīvitātēs ipsīus in dēditiōnem accēpit. Eī

MARIUS.

---

1. P. Scīpiōne . . . cōnsulibus, *i.e.*, 111 B.C.

2. Iugurtha, a grandson of Masinissa, was a brave and able prince, but utterly unscrupulous. **quod,** *on the charge that,* hence the subj.

3. interēmisset. (**119**, *b.*) **Micipsa,** who succeeded Masinissa, was Jugurtha's uncle. At his death he left the throne to his two sons and Jugurtha in common, but Jugurtha put his cousins to death. **patruēlis, –is,** m., [**patruus,** *uncle*], *cousin.*

5. flāgitiōsus, –a, –um, [**flāgitium,** *disgrace*], *disgraceful.*

7. im-probō, –āre, *disavow.*

8. Dēnique, 109 B.C.

12. vel, conj., *or.*

15 successit C. Marius, quī bellō terminum posuit, ipsumque Iugurtham cēpit. Ante currum triumphantis Marī vinctus, Iugurtha cum duōbus fīliīs ductus est, et mox iussū cōnsulis in carcere strangulātus est.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

pecuniary, successor, strangle, various.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat Iugurtha? 2. Quam ob rem Rōmānī Iugurthae bellum intulērunt? 3. Cūr cōnsul Calpurnius cum Iugurthā pācem fēcit? 4. Num Iugurtha pecūniā Metellum corrumpere potuit? 5. Quis bellō terminum posuit? 6. Quis Iugurtham cēpit? 7. Quid Rōmae Iugurthae accidit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The senators will inquire why the king of Numidia had murdered his own cousins. 2. Jugurtha came to Rome and bribed very many senators. 3. The senate disavowed the disgraceful peace which the consul had made with the king.

---

15. C. Marius was born of poor parents at Arpinum, a small town in Latium. He entered the army and served with distinction under Scipio at the siege of Numantia. Metellus appointed him lieutenant in the war with Jugurtha. When Metellus, notwithstanding his victories, did not succeed in subduing Jugurtha, Marius became a candidate for the consulship, and, being elected, superseded his commander.

16. Iugurtham cēpit: This was done through the aid of Bocchus, king of Mauretania, Jugurtha's father-in-law, who treacherously offered to surrender him to the Romans. The dangerous task of capturing Jugurtha was intrusted by Marius to a brilliant young officer by the name of Sulla, whose success in this daring expedition brought him great fame.

18. in carcere Mamertīnō: See note to **carcer** on page 123. When Jugurtha was thrust into the dungeon, he exclaimed, "By Hercules, how cold your bath is!"

4. Metellus fought so successfully that many cities of Numidia surrendered to him. 5. When Marius had captured Jugurtha, he brought him a captive to Rome.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *The prefix* **con–**. The preposition **cum** in compound words appears as **con–**, **com–**, or **co–**. It is sometimes assimilated before **l** or **r**.

Besides meaning *with* or *together*, it often acquires an intensive force, and means *forcibly, thoroughly, completely*. Thus **convenīre** is *to come together*, but **con-laudāre** is *to praise highly*.

Explain the formation of the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived, giving the particular force of the prefix in each: *commit, contain, correct, compel, cogent, corrupt, convoke, consent.*

The Cimbri and Teutones defeated by C. Marius

Dum bellum in Numidiā contrā Iugurtham geritur, Cimbrī et Teutonēs aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs Ītaliae mināb antur, plūrēsque Rōmānōrum exercitūs fūdērunt. Ingēns fuit Rōmae timor, nē iterum Gallī urbem occupārent. Ergō Marius cōnsul est creātus bellumque eī contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs dēcrētum est; bellōque prōtrāctō, eī tertius et

1. Cimbrī et Teutonēs, *the Cimbri and Teutones,* powerful German tribes which migrated southward.

3. minor, –ārī, –ātus, *threaten;* takes the dative. **plūrēsque Rōmānōrum exercitūs fūdērunt:** Between 113 and 105 B.C. six Roman armies were decisively defeated by the barbarians.

4. Rōmae, Locative, *at Rome.* **iterum,** *a second time,* as they had done before in 390 B.C.

5. Marius cōnsul est creātus: Marius had been consul in 107 B.C. According to the Roman constitution no magistrate was eligible for reëlection until an interval of ten years had elapsed. But the danger was so imminent that this restriction was repeatedly set aside in the case of Marius.

6. bellō prōtrāctō: Fortunately for the Romans the barbarians went off into Spain and did not return to Gaul for two years. During that time Marius reorganized the Roman army and brought it up to a high standard of training and discipline.

quārtus cōnsulātus dēlātus est. In proeliō cum Teutonibus ad Aquās Sextiās ducenta mīlia hostium cecīdit, octōgintā mīlia cēpit, eōrumque rēgem Teutobodum; propter quod meritum absēns quīntum cōnsul creātus est. Intereā Cimbrī in Ītaliam trānsiērunt. Iterum ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō contrā eōs dīmicātum est ad Vercellās. Centum et quadrāgintā mīlia aut in pugnā aut in fugā caesa sunt; sexāgintā mīlia capta sunt. Tria et trīgintā signa Cimbrīs sublāta sunt.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

Teutonēs, prōtrāctō, cōnsulātus, meritum, absēns.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ex quā terrā vēnērunt Cimbrī et Teutonēs? 2. Cūr Rōmānī Gallōs tantopere timēbant? 3. Cui bellum contrā barbarōs dēcrētum est? 4. Quotiēs in hōc bellō Marius est creātus cōnsul? 5. Ubi Teutonēs fūsī sunt? 6. Quō intereā Cimbrī profectī sunt? 7. Ubi Cimbrī victī sunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. When the German tribes invaded Italy, several Roman armies were routed. 2. So great was the fear of the Romans

---

7. In proeliō cum Teutonibus, 102 B.C. The two tribes had separated, the Cimbri marching round north of the Alps to invade Italy farther east.

8. Aquae Sextiae (modern *Aix*) was in southern Gaul, not far from **Massilia** (*Marseilles*).

9. Teutobodus was a giant, said to be so strong that he could leap over six horses at once.

10. meritum, –ī, n., [**mereō**], *service.* **absēns,** (*although*) *absent.* Candidates for office were required to be in Rome. **quīntum,** adv., [**quīntus**], *for the fifth time.*

12. Vercellae, a town in northern Italy, west of **Mediolānum** (*Milan*).

14. Cimbrīs: what case? why?

that they elected Marius consul a second time. 3. The senate has decided to elect him consul in his absence. 4. Meanwhile the Germans had crossed the Alps and come into Italy. 5. The messengers of the general will report that the enemy have been annihilated in a great battle.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *The Prefix* **dē-.** The preposition **dē** when compounded with verbs, denotes *down* or *from,* but also often acquires an intensive force with the meaning *utter y.* Thus **dē-currō** means *run down;* **dē-ripiō,** *snatch from;* **dē-dō,** *give up utterly, surrender.*

Define the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived, showing the force of the prefix in each case: *defend, demonstrate, denounce, depend, depose, depopulate, describe, detect, deter, detract.*

SULLA.

War with the Italian allies; with Mithridates; Civil War

Sescentēsimō sexāgēsimō quārtō annō ab urbe conditā in Ītaliā gravissimum bellum exārsit. Nam Pīcentēs, Mārsī, Paelignīque, quī multōs annōs 5 populō Rōmānō oboedierant, aequa cum illīs iūra sibi

1. Date: 90 B.C.

4. ex-ārdēscō, –ere, –ārsī, –ārsus, [**ārdeō**], *blaze out.*

5. Pīcentēs, –ium, m., [**Pīcēnum**], *the Picenes, inhabitants of Picenum,* a district in central Italy, bordering on the Adriatic Sea. **Mārsī, –ōrum,** m., *the Marsi,* a people east of Latium. **Paelignī, –ōrum,** m., *the Paeligni,* inhabitants of a district northeast of the Marsi. These three peoples with five others, including the Samnites, Apulians, and Lu-

darī postulābant. Perniciōsum admodum hoc bellum fuit. P. Rutīlius cōnsul in eō occīsus est; plūrēs exercitūs sunt fūsī fugātīque.

Tandem L. Cornēlius Sulla nōn sōlum alia ēgregiē gessit, sed etiam Cluentium, hostium ducem, cum magnīs cōpiīs fūdit. Rōmānī tamen, bellō fīnītō, iūs cīvitātis, quod prius negāverant, sociīs tribuērunt.

Annō urbis conditae sescentēsimō sexāgēsimō sextō prīmum Rōmae bellum cīvīle exortum est; eōdem annō etiam bellum Mithridāticum. Causam bellō cīvīlī C. Marius dedit. Nam cum Sullae bellum adversus Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, dēcrētum esset, Marius eī hunc honōrem ēripere cōnātus est. Sed Sulla quī adhūc cum legiōnibus suīs in Ītaliā morābātur,

---

canians, had long been clamoring for Roman citizenship on the ground that since they fought side by side with the Romans, they were entitled to all the privileges of citizens.

7. per-niciōsus, –a, –um, [**necō**], *destructive.* **ad-modum,** adv., (to the limit), *exceedingly.*

10. Tandem, in 89–88 B.C.

16. Mithridātēs, –is, m., *Mithridates,* king of Pontus, a country south of the Black Sea. Powerful in body and vigorous in mind (he is said to have mastered twenty-two languages!), this able and ambitious monarch gave Rome no end of trouble. Enlarging his dominion toward the south, he pushed westward and did not hesitate to invade the Roman province of Asia. After war had been declared, in 88 B.C., he issued an order for the simultaneous massacre of all the Roman citizens in Asia Minor, in consequence of which 80,000 persons perished on the same day.

MITHRIDATES.

18. Marius eī hunc honōrem ēripere cōnātus est: The appointment to command the Roman expedition against Mithridates naturally fell to Sulla, as he had been elected consul. Nevertheless, through the aid of a tribune, Marius succeeded in forcing a resolution through the assembly that he should be given the appointment instead of Sulla.

19. morābātur: Sulla was still occupied in subduing the Italian allies.

cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit, et adversāriōs cum interfēcit, tum fugāvit. Tum rēbus Rōmae utcumque compositīs, in Asiam profectus est, plūribusque proeliīs Mithridātem coēgit ut pācem ā Rōmānīs peteret, et, Asiā quam invāserat relictā, rēgnī suī fīnibus contentus esset.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

pernicious, composed, obedient, conative, invade, civil, arson, negative, content, adversary.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid sociī Ītalicī sibi postulābant? 2. Quis sociōrum cōpiās fūdit? 3. Num Rōmānī posteā sociīs iūs cīvitātis negāvērunt? 4. Quis erat Mithridātēs? 5. Cūr Rōmānī bellum contrā Mithridātem dēcrēvērunt? 6. Quis contrā rēgem missus est? 7. Quis eī hunc honōrem ēripere cōnātus est? 8. Quid deinde fēcit Sulla? 9. Quid Sulla Mithridātem facere coēgit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The faithful allies of the Roman people ought to have equal rights with the other citizens. 2. At the close of the war, the senate decided to give the right of citizenship to the allies. 3. The consul will be sent across the sea to fight with the king of Pontus. 4. Mithridates put eighty thousand Roman citizens to death on one day. 5. The king was defeated by Sulla in so many battles that he was compelled to sue for peace.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *The Prefix* **in-**. When compounded with verbs, the preposition **in** denotes *in, on; into, against.*

---

20. cum . . . tum, *either . . . or.*

21. ut-cum-que, adv., *in one way or another.* **in Asiam profectus est,** in 87 B.C.

Define the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived, showing the force of the prefix in each verb: *invoke, import, induce, inject, infringe, impose, incipient, include, invade, indicate, indict, impel, invent.*

Civil war between Marius and Sulla

Sed dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā Mithridātem vincit Marius, quī fugātus erat, et L. Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōnsulibus, bellum in Ītaliā reparāvērunt, et ingressī Rōmam nōbilissimōs ex senātū et cōnsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt; multōs prōscrīpsērunt; ipsīus Sullae domō ēversā, fīliōs et uxōrem ad fugam compulērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus

---

1. dum Sulla . . . Mithridātem vincit, 87 B.C.

2. Marius, quī fugātus erat: When Sulla in 88 B.C. entered Rome in triumph at the head of his army, Marius escaped and reached the coast of Latium. Here he wandered about for many days, hunted like a wild beast. Captured in the marshes near Minturnae, he was cast into a prison and a slave was sent to dispatch him. But when the slave entered the dark dungeon, saw Marius's eyes glaring at him, and heard his terrible voice crying, " Man, durst thou murder Gaius Marius? ", he dropped his sword and fled. Then the magistrates of Minturnae relented and put Marius on board a boat that landed him near the ruins of Carthage. Forced to leave even that desolate place, he took refuge in the island of Cercina. Once, when he was a boy, an eagle's nest with seven little eagles had fallen into his lap. That he said was an omen that he should be consul seven times. He had already held six consulships, and now he was returning to Rome in the hope that the prophecy would be fulfilled.

3. in-gredior, –ī, –gressus, [**gradior**], *enter.*

5. prō-scrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, *post, publish, proscribe.* The property of a " proscribed " person was *posted up, i.e.,* advertised for sale. What was worse, a reward was offered to any one who would slay the " proscribed." This massacre of citizens lasted for five days. Then Marius and Cinna proclaimed themselves consuls for the following year (86). Marius, however, held his seventh consulship for a very brief time. Exhausted by his terrible sufferings, he was stricken with fever and died on the eighteenth day after he became consul.

6. ūni-versus, –a, –um, [**ūnus + vertō**], *entire, all.*

ex urbe fugiēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit, ōrāns ut patriae subvenīret.

Sulla in Ītaliam trāiēcit, hostium exercitūs vīcit, mox etiam urbem ingressus est, quam caede et sanguine cīvium replēvit. Quattuor mīlia inermium cīvium, quī sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit; duo mīlia Equitum et Senātōrum prōscrīpsit. Tum dē Mithridāte triumphāvit. Duo haec bella fūnestissima, Bellum Ītalicum, quod et Sociāle dictum est, et Bellum Cīvīle, cōnsūmpsērunt ultrā centum et quīnquāgintā mīlia hominum, virōs cōnsulārēs vīgintī quattuor, praetōriōs septem, aedīliciōs sexāgintā, senātōrēs ferē ducentōs.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

reparāvērunt, ingressī, prōscrīpsērunt, compulērunt, ūniversus, subvenīret, replēvit, inermium, cōnsūmpsērunt, ultrā.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis Marium fugāverat? 2. Quō Marius effūgit? 3. Ubi Rōmam ingressī sunt, quid fēcērunt Marius et Cinna? 4. Quotiēs erat Marius cōnsul? 5. Quandō mortuus est? 6. Ubi Sulla Rōmam rediit, ignōvit-ne suīs hostibus? 7. Quot cīvēs Bellum Ītalicum et Bellum Cīvīle cōnsūmpsērunt? 8. Num erat senātus dignus quī diūtius cīvitātem regeret?

---

8. sub-veniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, *come to help,* with the dative.
9. Sulla in Ītaliam trāiēcit, 83 B.C.
11. re-pleō, –ēre, *fill again.* **in-ermis, –e,** [**arma**], *unarmed.*
14. fūnestus, –a, –um, [**fūnus**], *destructive.* **et,** *also.*
15. ultrā, adv., *more than.*
17. aedīlicius, –a, –um, [**aedīlis**], *of aedile rank, ex-aedile.*

JULIUS CAESAR

(From Lhomond's *Virī Rōmae*)

We have now traced the growth of Rome from a small town to a world empire. She had acquired prestige among other nations and was enjoying prosperity at home. Nevertheless, as we have just read, the conditions that prevailed in the city were intolerable.

Nor was there any improvement during the next thirty years. A constant succession of robberies, murders, riots, and conspiracies terrorized the citizens. Abroad Roman armies were busily occupied with an insurrection of slaves and gladiators in Italy and Gaul, a rebellion in Spain, and a second war with Mithridates. The seas swarmed with pirates. It was not simply misgovernment, it was anarchy! The Republic, which had begun so promisingly, had proved to be a failure, — not because it was a republic, but because the governing body, the Senate, had become utterly weak and corrupt. If Rome was to survive at all, it could only be through a different form of government, with absolute power centered in the hands of a single strong man.

In the Latin that follows we have an account of the remarkable life and achievements of the great Roman statesman who was destined to effect this change and establish an *imperial government*, under which Rome was to endure for four hundred years longer.

Caesar defies Sulla

C. Iūlius Caesar, genitus nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā, agēns sextum et decimum annum patrem āmīsit. Cornē-

---

TITLE: Charles François Lhomond, Professor at the University of Paris, toward the end of the eighteenth century compiled the history of a number of distinguished Romans. The following life of Caesar is taken from his **Virī Rōmae.**

1. genitus, 100 B.C. **Iūliī, -ōrum,** m., *the Julians*, members of the patrician *gēns Iūlia*, who claimed to be descended from *Iūlus*, grandson of Venus and Anchises. *Iūlus* was a name or title of Ascanius. See note to **Anchīsēs,** page 105, line 6; also page 106, lines 1–4.

2. agēns sextum et decimum annum: See note to **agō,** p. 173, l. 4.

liam, Cinnae fīliam, in mātrimōnium dūxit. Sulla, cum Cinna esset inimīcissimus, Caesarem voluit compellere ut eam repudiāret; id autem efficere nōn potuit. Quā rē Caesar, cum bonīs spoliātus etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste nocte ex urbe ēlāpsus est, et quamquam febris quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur. Est adeō comprehēnsus ā Sullae lībertō atque vix pecūniā datā ēvāsit nē ad Sullam perdūce-

CAESAR.

3. Cinna, colleague of Marius in his seventh consulship. Marius, too, had married Caesar's aunt. Naturally, therefore, in spite of his patrician descent, Caesar belonged to the *Marian* or *democratic party*, known as the *populārēs*.

5. re-pudiō, –āre, [**pudet,** *it shames*], *put away, divorce.*

9. nex, necis, f., [**necō**], *murder.*

11. ē-lābor, –ī, –lāpsus, *slip away, escape.*

12. febris, –is, f., *fever, ague.* **quārtānus, –a, –um,** [**quārtus**], *quartan. The quartan ague* was an intermittent fever, recurring every *third* day. As the Romans counted both the day of its appearance in the patient as well as the day of its reappearance, they called it *the fever of the fourth* (day).

13. labōrō, –āre, [**labor**], *suffer.*

14. per singulās noctēs, *every single night.* **latebra, –ae,** f., [**lateō**], *hiding place.*

16. adeō, adv., *even.*

19. ēvāsit nē . . . perdūcerētur, *escaped being led.*

rētur. Postrēmō per propinquōs et affīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit.

Sulla quidem, cum amīcissimī et ōrnātissimī virī prō Caesare dēprecārentur, aliquamdiū abnuit. Cum autem illī pertināciter contenderent, expugnātus tandem "Vincite," inquit, "dum modo sciātis eum iuvenem aliquandō optimātium partibus exitiō futūrum esse. Nam Caesarī multī Mariī īnsunt!"

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

fever, repudiate, elapse, pertinacious, quartan, propinquity, inimical, im-mutable, agenda, affinity, optimates, deprecate.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō annō nātus est Caesar? 2. Quā familiā genitus est? 3. Quandō patrem āmīsit? 4. Quid Sulla Caesarem facere voluit? 5. Quō modo Caesar ex urbe effūgit? 6. Quid per multās noctēs facere cōgēbātur? 7. Quō modo ē manibus Sullae lībertī effūgit? 8. Quī prō Caesare pertināciter dēprecābantur? 9. Quid Sulla dē Caesare dīxit?

---

21. **propinquus, –ī,** c., [**prope,** *near*], *kinsfolk.* **af-fīnis, –is,** c., [**ad**], *relation* (by marriage).

23. **ōrnātus, –a, –um,** *distinguished.*

24. **dē-precor, –ārī, –ātus,** *pray, intercede.* **ali-quam-diū,** adv., *for some time.* **ab-nuō, –ere, –nuī, –nūtus,** *refuse* (by a nod), *deny one's request.*

25. **per-tināciter,** adv., [**tenāx**], *persistently.* **ex-pugnātus,** (taken by storm), *yielding.* **"Vincite,"** *"Have your own way."*

26. **dum modo,** conj., *provided,* takes the Subjunctive.

27. **optimās, –ātis,** m., [**optimus**], *aristocrat;* **optimātium partēs,** *party of the aristocracy,* an aristocracy of *office,* not of birth, *i.e.,* of men whose ancestors had held the office of quaestor, curule aedile, praetor, or consul. **exitiō,** (for) *the ruin;* dative of Purpose, used often, as here, with another dative, **partibus.**

28. **in-sum, –esse, –fuī, —,** *be in;* with dative, **Caesarī.**

(*c*) Translate:

1. Caesar married Cornelia, the daughter of a most bitter enemy of Sulla. 2. Sulla ordered Caesar to divorce his wife, but Caesar said he would not do it. 3. Caesar changed his hiding place every night in order not to be captured and killed. 4. A freedman of Sulla arrested him, but on receiving a sum-of-money, released him. 5. Sulla knew that Caesar was a young man of remarkable ability.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *The Prefix* **ob–.** In your reading you have come across the preposition **ob** in the sense of *on account of.* Originally, however, it denoted *before, towards,* or *against,* and it is generally with some such force that it is compounded with verbs, as **op-pugnō,** *fight against;* **os-tendō,** *stretch out before,* i.e., *show.*

Define the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived, and give the force of the prefix in each: *object, obligate, obedient, obsess, obtain, occident, occur, offer, opponent, omit, oppress.*

Caesar's first military service; he is captured by pirates; his revenge

Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit. In expugnātiōne Mitylēnārum corōnā cīvicā dōnātus est.

Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tunc clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trāicit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque

---

1. ex-pugnātiō, –ōnis, f., [**pugnō**], *storming.* **Mitylēnae, –ārum,** f., *Mitylene,* principal city in the island of Lesbos, a large island in the Aegean Sea, off the coast of Asia Minor.

2. corōna cīvica, *the civic crown,* a wreath of oak leaves, was awarded for saving the life of a citizen in battle.

3. Mortuō Sullā: Sulla died in 78 B.C. **Rhodus, –ī,** f., *Rhodes,* a prosperous city in the island of Rhodes south of Asia Minor, famed for its schools of rhetoric. **ōtium, –ī,** n., *leisure.*

4. Apollōnius Molō was a celebrated teacher of oratory at Rhodes. **opera, –ae,** f., [**opus**], *attention;* **operam dare,** *study under.*

5. praedō, –ōnis, m., [**praeda**], *robber, pirate.*

apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit, ut pīrātīs pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset.

Interim comitēs servōsque dīmīsit ad expediendās pecūniās, quibus redimerētur. Vīgintī talenta pīrātae postulāverant; ille sē quīnquāgintā datūrum esse spopondit. Quibus numerātīs, cum expositus esset in lītore, cōnfestim Mīlētum, quae urbs proximē aberat, properāvit, ibique contrāctā classe, invectus in eum locum in quō ipsī praedōnēs erant, partem classis fugāvit, partem mersit, aliquot nāvēs cēpit, pīrātāsque in potestātem redāctōs eō suppliciō, quod illīs inter iocum saepe minātus erat, affēcit crucīque suffīxit.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

dōnātus, pīrātīs, venerātiōnī, spopondit, numerātīs, contrāctā, iocum, crucī, suffīxit.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi Caesar prīma stīpendia fēcit? 2. Quam ob rem corōnam cīvicam accēpit? 3. Cūr Caesar Rhodum īvit? 4. Ā quibus Caesar captus est? 5. Quot talenta pīrātae postulāvērunt? 6. Quot talenta Caesar pīrātīs dedit? 7. Quid posteā Caesar fēcit?

---

7. **pīrāta**, **-ae**, m., *pirate.* **pariter**, adv., [**pār**], *equally.* **venerātiō**, **-ōnis**, f., [**veneror**], *respect.*

9. **ex-pediō**, **-īre**, [**pēs**], *procure.*

11. **spondeō**, **-ēre**, **spopondī**, **spōnsus**, *promise.*

12. **numerō**, **-āre**, *count out, pay.* **cōn-festim**, adv., *speedily.*

13. **Mīlētus**, **-ī**, f., *Miletus*, a city on the southwest coast of Asia Minor. **proximē**, adv., [sup. of **prope**], *nearest.* **con-trahō**, **-ere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctus**, *bring together, assemble.*

14. **invectus**, sc. **nāve**, *having sailed.*

17. **illīs**, dative with **minātus erat.** **iocus**, **-ī**, m., *joke.* **suffīgō**, **-ere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxus**, [**sub**], *fasten;* **crucī suffīgere**, *crucify.*

(*c*) Translate:

1. The general will present three soldiers with civic crowns. 2. At this time Roman citizens were being captured daily by the pirates. 3. The pirates ordered Caesar to send his friends in all directions to obtain money. 4. Within a few days Caesar collected a fleet and attacked the pirates. 5. Some of their ships were sunk, others were captured by Caesar's fleet.

Word Formation. — *The Prefix* **per–.** The preposition **per** in composition with verbs not only denotes *through*, but often acquires an intensive force and means *thoroughly, completely, very*, as **per-currō,** *run through;* **per-ficiō,** *do thoroughly, accomplish.* In the sense of *thoroughly, very*, it is also compounded with adjectives, as **per-facilis,** *very easy.*

Define the following words, pointing out the force of the prefix in each: **permoveō, perfugiō, permultus, perveniō, perterreō, perspiciō, persequor, perpaucī, permittō, perferō.**

Caesar's ambition is awakened; his munificence as aedile

Caesarī quaestōrī Ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus, cum Alpēs trānsīret et ad cōnspectum cuiusdam pauperis vīcī comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent num illīc etiam esset ambitiōnī locus, Caesar sēriō dīxit sē mālle

---

1. Caesarī quaestōrī: *To Caesar as quaestor.* On his return from the East Caesar had plunged enthusiastically into politics and soon was the recognized leader of his party. He was thirty-three years old when he was elected to the quaestorship, which was a stepping-stone to the higher magistracies. At this time there were twenty quaestors. They were state treasurers, having charge of the public funds in connection with the city, the provinces, and the armies. Ten of the quaestors accompanied the proconsuls and propraetors to the various provinces. All assignments of quaestors were made by lot. **Ulterior Hispānia,** *Farther Spain*, in the southwestern part of the peninsula. **ob-veniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus,** *come* or *fall* (by lot).

3. num, conj., *whether.*

4. sēriō, adv., [**sērius**], *seriously.*

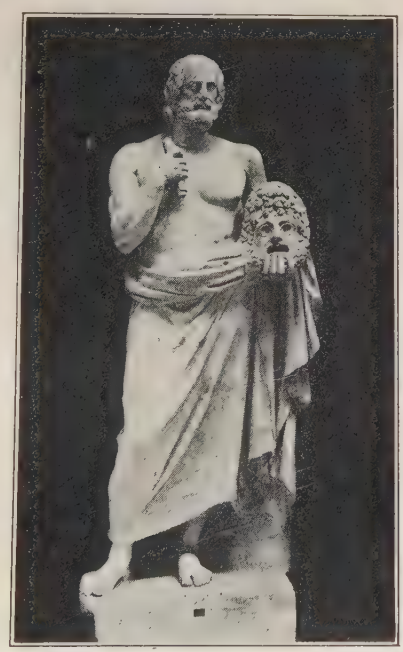
THE COLOSSEUM SEEN THROUGH THE ARCH OF TITUS.

Gladiatorial combats and fights with wild animals were held in the Colosseum. Chariot races took place in the Circus Maximus (see pages 98–101).

ibi prīmum esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā prīmā aetāte rēgnum concupīscēbat, semperque in ōre habēbat hōs Eurīpidis, Graecī poētae, versūs:

Nam sī violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā
Violandum est; aliīs rēbus pietātem colās.

Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, imāgine magnī Alexandrī apud Herculis templum animad-



EURIPIDES.

6. rēgnum, –ī, n., [**regō**], (sovereign) *power.* **concupīscō, –ere, –cupīvī, –cupītus,** [inceptive from **cupiō**], *greatly desire.* **in ōre habēre,** *have on one's tongue.*

7. Eurīpidēs, –is, m., *Euripides,* a famous tragic poet of Athens (480–406 B.C.). The verses were rendered into Latin by Cicero.

8. violō, –āre, *violate.* How should the gerundive be translated when used with the verb "to be"? See note to **faciendum,** page 153, line 16. **grātiā,** *for the sake;* like **causā,** it is always *preceded* by the genitive it governs.

9. pietātem colās, *one should observe justice;* Jussive Subjunctive in the second person with indefinite force.

10. Gādēs, –ium, f., *Gades* (modern Cadiz), a city on the south coast. **quod:** Observe that the relative, instead of agreeing with its antecedent **Gādēs** in the fem. gender and pl. number, is in the *neuter sing.*, being attracted to the gender and number of the predicate noun **oppidum.**

11. imāgō, –inis, f., *statue.* **Alexander, –drī,** m., *Alexander the Great* of Macedonia (356–323 B.C.).

versā ingemuit, et, quasi ignāviae eum pertaedēret, quod nihildum memorābile āctum esset ā sē in eā aetāte quā iam Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, continuō missiōnem efflāgitāvit, ut quam prīmum in urbe maiōrum rērum occāsiōnēs captāret.

Caesar aedīlis praeter Comitium ac Forum etiam Capitōlium porticibus ōrnāvit. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque et cum collēgā L. Bibulō et sēparātim ēdidit; quō factum est, ut sōlus commūnium impēnsārum grātiam caperet. Hīs

---

12. in-gemō, –ere, –uī, —, *sigh deeply.* **ignāvia, –ae,** f., [**in** + (**g**)**nāvus,** *busy*], *inactivity, laziness.* **per-taedet, –ēre, –taesum est,** impersonal, *it disgusts;* note the case of **eum** and **ignāviae.** Translate **quasi . . . pertaedēret** freely, 'as if he were disgusted with his laziness.' Such Clauses of Comparison regularly take the subj. **quod . . . āctum esset,** a Causal Clause taking the subj., because it expresses Caesar's thought, not the writer's.

13. nihil-dum, n., indecl., *nothing as yet.*

14. con-tinuō, adv., [**teneō**], *forthwith.* **missiō, –ōnis,** f., [**mittō**], *discharge, dismissal.*

15. efflāgitō, –āre, [**ex**], *earnestly request.* **quam** with the *superlative* denotes *as possible;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.* **maiōrum rērum occāsiōnēs captāret,** 'he might seize the opportunities for greater achievements.'

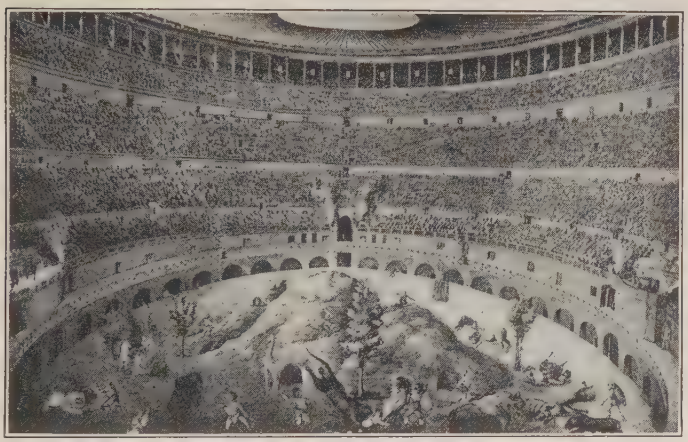
17. aedīlis, –is, m., *aedile.* Caesar was elected curule aedile for the year 65 B.C. There were four aediles, two plebeian and two curule. They were commissioners of trade, of streets and buildings, and of games. In order to become popular they generally provided the games at their own expense. **Comitium, –ī,** n., [**com-** + **eō**], *the Comitium,* an open space at the north end of the Forum, which was used for the Roman assemblies.

18. vēnātiō, –ōnis, f., [**vēnor,** *hunt*], *hunting; a hunting exhibition.* In the exhibitions furnished by Caesar the wild beasts' cages were of silver and the gladiators wore silver armor!

19. sē-parātim, adv., [**sē-,** *apart* + **parō**], *separately.* **quō factum est,** 'the result was.'

20. com-mūnis, –e, [**mūnus**], *joint.* **im-pēnsa, –ae,** f., [**pendō,** *weigh out, pay*], *expense.* **sōlus . . . grātiam caperet,** *i.e.,* Caesar *received the sole credit* for the exhibitions which were given at the *joint expense* of Bibulus and himself.

autem rēbus patrimōnium effūdit tantumque aes aliēnum cōnflāvit, ut ipse dīceret sibi opus esse mīliēs centēna mīlia sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.



"Games" in the Colosseum.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

pauper, separately, ulterior, verse, memorable, ex-pense, dispute, continuous, serious, common, violate, ambition, poet, avid, portico.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quot quaestōrēs Rōmae creātī sunt quotannīs? 2. Quae erant officia quaestōris? 3. Quō Caesar quaestor profectus est? 4. Quō modo Caesaris ambitiō suscitāta

---

21. ef-fundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, [ex], (pour forth), *squander.* **aes, aeris,** n., *copper, money;* **aes aliēnum,** (another's money), *debt.*

22. cōn-flō, –āre, (blow up), *heap up, contract.* **opus, –eris,** n., *need;* **sibi opus esse,** 'that he needed.' **mīliēs,** adv., [**mīlle**], *a thousand times.*

23. sēstertium: See notes on page 15, line 6: **mīliēs centēna mīlia sēstertium,** 'a hundred million sesterces,' about $5,000,000.

est? 5. Num aliquandō violandum est iūs? 6. Alexandrī imāgine animadversā, quid fēcit Caesar? 7. Quō modo Caesar aedīlis plēbī grātus factus est? 8. Quantum pecūniae opus erat Caesarī, ut nihil habēret?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Leaving the heavy baggage behind, the legions crossed the Alps and arrived in Gaul. 2. Several lieutenants said that there was no room for ambition in so poor a village. 3. But Caesar replied: "I prefer to be first there rather than second at Rome." 4. Alexander the Great had conquered the world when he was thirty-two years old. 5. Caesar furnished so many games for the citizens that he piled up a huge debt.

Word Formation. — *The Prefix* **sub-**. The preposition **sub,** *under, toward,* when compounded with verbs, may also mean *up; secretly; slightly.* Compare the following: **sub-mergō,** *plunge under,* SUBMERGE; **suc-currō,** *run toward* or *to the aid of,* SUCCOR; **sus-tineō,** *hold up,* SUSTAIN; **sub-ripiō,** *take away secretly;* **sub-rīdeō,** *laugh slightly, smile.* In the sense of *slightly* it is often used in composition with adjectives, as **sub-acidus,** *slightly acid;* **sub-rūsticus,** *somewhat clownish.*

Define the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived, giving the force of the prefix in each: *suspend, succeed, suppose, surreptitious, subtract, suffer, suggest, subjunctive, suffix, succumb, surge, supplicate, subscribe, subtend.*

Caesar's consulship; his colleague, Bibulus, treated as a joke

Cōnsul deinde creātus cum L. Bibulō, Caesar cum Gnaeō

1. **Cōnsul deinde creātus,** for the year 59 B.C. Bibulus, his colleague, belonged to the aristocratic party. **Gnaeus Pompeius,** *Pompey the Great,* was a most successful soldier. When but twenty-three years old, he served as general under Sulla, and so distinguished himself that Sulla hailed him as MAGNUS, a title which he kept thereafter. He brought the war in Spain to an end, suppressed the slave insurrection, cleared the seas of pirates, and conquered Mithridates.

Pompeiō et Mārcō Crassō societātem iūnxit, nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus.

Deinde lēgem tulit, ut ager Campānus plēbī dīviderētur. Cui lēgī cum senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum dētulit. 5 Bibulus collēga in Forum vēnit, ut lēgī obsisteret, sed tanta sēditiō in eum commōta est, ut in eius caput cophinus stercore plēnus effunderētur fascēsque eī frangerentur atque adeō ipse armīs Forō expellerētur.

---

2. Mārcus Crassus was the richest man in Rome: he was said to be worth $8,500,000. Much of this was made during Sulla's dictatorship by buying confiscated estates and selling them when they had risen in value. **societās, –ātis,** f., [**socius**], *alliance.* These three men, Pompey the successful general, Crassus the wealthy capitalist, and Caesar the leader of the people's party, made a very strong combination. It was nothing more than a political 'ring,' but it was dignified under the name of 'The First Triumvirate.'

POMPEY.

3. rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *the republic.* **dis-pliceō, –ēre, –uī, –itus,** [**placeō**], *displease,* with dative **ūllī.**

4. lēgem ferre, *pass a law.* **ager Campānus,** (state) *land in Campania.*

5. re-pugnō, –āre, *be opposed.*

6. ob-sistō, –ere, –stitī, –stitus, *withstand;* note the case used with it.

7. cophinus, –ī, m., *basket.* **stercus, –oris,** n., *manure.*

8. fascis, –is, m., *fagot;* pl., **fascēs,** *the fasces,* a bundle of rods tied with a red strap around an ax, the head of which projected from the side of the rods. It was a symbol of authority, the rods representing the right to scourge; the ax, to kill. In the city, however, the ax was re-

Quā rē cum Bibulus per reliquum annī tempus domō abditus cūriā abstinēret, ex eō tempore Caesar ūnus omnia in rē pūblicā ad arbitrium administrābat. Itaque nōnnūllī urbānōrum, sī quid testandī grātiā signābant, per iocum scrībēbant āctum esse nōn, ut mōs erat, cōnsulibus Caesare et Bibulō, sed Iūliō et Caesare, ūnum cōnsulem nōmine et cognōmine prō duōbus cōnsulibus appellantēs.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

Crassō, societātem, rē pūblicā, displicuisset, repugnāret, abstinēret, arbitrium, urbānōrum, testandī.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat Caesaris collēga in cōnsulātū? 2. Quibuscum Caesar societātem iūnxit? 3. Quis erat Gnaeus Pompeius? 4. Quis erat Mārcus Crassus? 5. Quid inter hōs triumvirōs convēnit? 6. Quid accidit, ubi Bibulus in Forum vēnit? 7. Quid fēcit Bibulus per reliquum annī tempus? 8. Quid fēcērunt nōnnūllī urbānōrum per iocum?

(*c*) Translate:

1. A law was passed, by which a large district was divided among the common people. 2. At one time during the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus there was a great riot in the

---

moved in order to indicate that no magistrate had the right to put a citizen to death. The consuls were entitled to have twelve lictors bearing the *fasces* before them, the praetors only two.

10. domō, *in his house;* the locative **domī** would mean *at home.*

11. ab-dō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *hide*

12. ad arbitrium, ' as he pleased.'

13. urbānus, –a, –um, [**urbs**], *witty;* **urbānī, –ōrum,** m., *city wits.* **testor, –ārī, –ātus,** [**testis**], (sign as) *witness.*

14. āctum esse, impers., freely, ' that it was done.' **cōnsulibus Caesare et Bibulō,** ' in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus,' *i.e.*, in the year 59 B.C.

city. 3. The Roman plebs were so opposed to this law that they drove Caesar's colleague out of the Forum. 4. The senate will inquire why Bibulus keeps away from the senate house. 5. Several citizens declared that Caesar was administering the government in accordance with his own judgment.

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* Many prepositions, besides those we have been studying, are used as prefixes in compound verbs. These generally have the same force as when they occur in prepositional phrases.

You have had the following verbs in your reading. Define them, giving the force of the prefix in each, and, if possible, an English derivative: **antecēdō, intercipiō, circumveniō, ēvocō, supersum, abdūcō, praecēdō, trānsportō, prōvideō, praetereō, exclūdō, circumferō, prōpōnō, superveniō, trāiciō, abstineō, praeficiō, intellegō, praetermittō.**

The conquest of Gaul; Caesar's pluck at critical moments

Fūnctus cōnsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Novem autem annīs, quibus in imperiō fuit, haec ferē gessit: Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit. Prīmus Rōmānō-

---

1. fungor, -ī, fūnctus, *perform, finish;* one of five deponent verbs, which take the *ablative.* **Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit:** Usually a proconsul was sent to a province for the year following his consulship, but Caesar under a special law was assigned to the province of Gaul *for five years.* Before his term was completed, Caesar renewed the alliance with Pompey and Crassus with the understanding that he should retain Gaul *for five years longer.* Pompey and Crassus were to be the consuls for the year 55 B.C., and then Pompey was to receive the proconsulship of Spain and Africa for five years, while Crassus was to go to Syria.

2. haec ferē gessit: freely, 'this was about what he accomplished.'

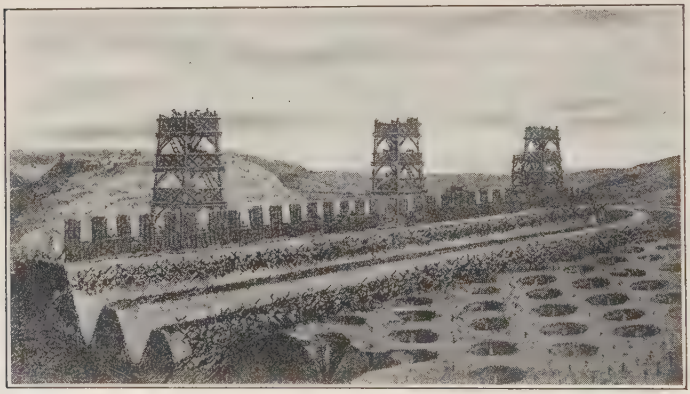
3. Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit: In 58 B.C. Gaul was in a very unsettled condition. The many tribes included within its borders were constantly at war with one another. To subdue these fierce nations and organize them into a province was a formidable undertaking even for a man of Caesar's ability. A dangerous crisis arose in the seventh campaign during the siege of Alesia. Caesar with 40,000 men

rum ponte fabricātō Rhēnum trānsiit et Germānōs maximīs clādibus affēcit. Aggressus est Britannōs, ignōtōs anteā, et eīs superātīs pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit.

Hīc, cum multa Rōmānōrum mīlitum īnsignia nārrantur, tum illud ēgregium īnsigne ipsīus Caesaris, quod, exercitū in fugam nūtante, scūtō ē manū fugientis raptō, volitāns in prīmam aciem proelium restituit.

---

in the heart of the enemy's country was attacked simultaneously by 80,000 from within the town and by 250,000 from without. A single break in the Roman line, and their fate was sealed! Had it not been for the splendid courage and endurance of the legionaries coupled with



CAESAR'S WORKS AT ALESIA.

the cool generalship of Caesar, not a Roman would have survived to tell the disaster of that day! Read the thrilling account of this siege, penned by Caesar himself, in his DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ.

4. fabricō, –āre, *construct.* **Rhēnum trānsiit,** near Bonn, Germany.

5. clādēs, –is, f., *disaster, defeat.*

6. eīs, dative, ind. object of **imperāvit:** freely, 'conquered them and commanded them to furnish,' etc.

7. Hīc, (here), 'in these campaigns.' Notice **cum . . . tum** again. **īn-signe, –is,** n., [**signum**], *exploit.*

8. quod, *that.*

9. nūtō, –āre, [freq. of **nuō,** *nod*], *wavering.* **volitō, –āre,** [freq. of **volō,** *fly*], *fly.*

Īdem in aliō proeliō, cum iam aquilifer ineundae fūgae causā sē convertisset, eum faucibus comprehēnsum in contrāriam partem dētrāxit, atque dextram ad hostem tendēns, "Quōrsum tū," inquit, "abīs? Illīc sunt, cum quibus dīmicāmus!" Quā adhortātiōne omnium mīlitum trepidātiōnem corrēxit, atque legiōnēs, vincī parātās, vincere docuit.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

contrary, fabric, ex-hortation, pontoon, doctor, insignia, nutation, detract, trepidation, volitant, function, restitution.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi erat Gallia? 2. Quot annōs Caesar in Galliā mānsit? 3. Quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant? 4. Quō modo Caesar Rhēnum trānsiit? 5. Quō modo Hannibal Rhodanum trānsiit? 6. Erant-ne Britannī eō tempore barbarī? 7. Quō modo Caesar quōdam proeliō ōrdinēs restituit? 8. Quid dīxit Caesar aquiliferō in aliō proeliō?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Gaul was conquered and reduced into a province by Caesar. 2. When Caesar had defeated the Germans, he crossed over into Britain. 3. The soldier was telling his comrades how Caesar himself restored the battle. 4. The fleeing standard bearer was seized by the general and turned toward the enemy. 5. Thus the soldiers, who were ready to be conquered, were shown how to conquer.

---

11. Īdem, *likewise.* **aquili-fer, -ī,** m., [**aquila** + **ferō**], *bearer of the eagle, standard-bearer.*

12. faucēs, -ium, f., *jaws, throat.*

14. quōrsum, adv., [**quō** + **versus**], *whither?*

15. ad-hortātiō, -ōnis, f., [**hortor**], *exhortation.* **trepidātiō, -ōnis,** f., [**trepidō**], *alarm.*

16. cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**regō**], (correct), *calm.* **doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus,** *teach, show . . . how.*

Word Formation. — *Compound Verbs.* — *The Prefix* **re–.** Some prefixes are never used as separate words, and are therefore called **Inseparable Prefixes.** Of these the prefix most frequently compounded with verbs is **re–** or **red–**, *back, again,* as **re-tineō,** *hold back,* RETAIN; **red-dō,** *give back, return,* RENDER.

Define the Latin verbs from which the following are derived, showing the force of the prefix: *recede, revoke, repel, remain, reject, revert, receive.*

Civil war with Pompey; Caesar crosses the Rubicon and marches to Brundisium

Interfectō intereā apud Parthōs Crassō et dēfūnctā Iūliā, Caesaris fīliā, quae, nūpta Pompeiō, generī socerīque concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Iam prīdem Pompeiō Caesaris opēs erant suspectae et Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās erat gravis, nec hic ferēbat parem, nec ille superiōrem.

---

1. Parthī, –ōrum, m., *the Parthians,* inhabitants of Parthia, a country southeast of the Caspian Sea. Crassus was eager to show that he was as good a general as Pompey or Caesar and undertook to wage war with this remote nation. Trusting to a teacherous guide, he was led into the desert, where the Parthian cavalry mounted on swift Arab horses circled round his army and showered it with poisoned arrows. On his retreat toward Armenia he foolishly stopped to parley with the enemy and was slain. His head was taken to the Parthian king, who to sate his greed for money poured molten gold into his mouth. 20,000 Romans were killed and 10,000 captured in this disastrous campaign of 53 B.C.

2. concordiam tenēre, 'keep . . . in accord.'

3. aemulātiō, –ōnis, f., [**aemulor**], *rivalry.* The reports that came from Caesar of his successful campaigns year after year naturally aroused Pompey's jealousy.

4. opēs, –um, f., *power, influence.* **su-spectus, –a, –um,** [**sub** + **–speciō,** *look*], *object of suspicion.* **Pompeiānus, –a, –um,** [**Pompeius**], *Pompeian, of Pompey.*

5. dignitās erat gravis, 'grandeur was irksome.' **hic,** *the latter,* referring to Pompey; **ille,** *the former,* Caesar. **ferēbat,** 'could bear.'

Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinērētur, et, nē imperfectō bellō discēderet, postulāvisset ut licēret sibi, quamvīs absentī, alterum cōnsulātum petere, id ā senātū, suādentibus Pompeiō eiusque amīcīs, negātum est. Caesar, ut hanc iniūriam vindicāret, in Ītaliam rediit et ratus bellum gerendum esse, cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae eius fīnis erat, trānsiit.

Ad hoc flūmen paulum cōnstitisse fertur, ac reputāns quantum mōlīrētur, conversus ad proximōs, " Etiam nunc," inquit, " regredī possumus; sī autem id ponticulum trāns-

---

7. im-perfectus, -a, -um, [per + **faciō**], *unfinished.*

8. quam-vīs, [**vīs** from **volō**], *although.* **absentī:** see note to **absēns,** page 204, line 10.

9. suādentibus Pompeiō eiusque amīcīs: After his consulship Pompey did not go as proconsul to Spain, but remained at Rome, thereby increasing his influence in the senate. During the year 53 B.C. Rome was in the utmost disorder with a constant succession of riots and murderous gang-fights. Finally the senate named Pompey *sole consul* for 52 B.C., and he quickly restored order. It was in this year that Pompey definitely broke with Caesar and joined the senatorial party.

10. hanc iniūriam: This however was not Caesar's only grievance. In 50 B.C. the senate weakened his army by withdrawing two legions under the pretense that they were needed for war in Syria. Instead of that, these legions were kept in Italy to strengthen Pompey's forces. In the following January Caesar again offered to resign his command, if Pompey would do likewise. To this the senate replied that Caesar *must disband his army* or *be regarded as a traitor to the state.* The tribunes of the plebs were not permitted to veto this decree in the senate, and were forced to flee to Caesar to save their lives. Then the senate and Pompey made preparations for war.

11. vindicō, -āre, *avenge.* **reor, rērī, ratus,** *think.*

12. Rubicō, -ōnis, m., *the Rubicon,* a small river, which formed the boundary between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul.

14. paulum, adv., *a little while.* **cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus,** *stop, halt.* **fertur,** *is said.* **re-putō, -āre,** *think over, reflect.*

15. mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, *undertake.*

16. ponticulum, -ī, n., [dim. of **pōns**], *little bridge.* **trānsierimus,** fut. perf.

ierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt." Postrēmō autem, exclāmāns "Iacta ālea estō!", exercitum trāicī iussit, plūrimīsque urbibus occupātīs Brundisium contendit, quō Pompeius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

dēfūnctā, aemulātiō, suspectae, gravis, dētinērētur, imperfectō, negātum, vindicāret, reputāns, proximōs, regredī, exclāmāns.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Ubi Crassus interfectus est? 2. Cui Iūlia nūpta est? 3. Quam ob rem erat aemulātiō inter Pompeium et Caesarem? 4. Quid Caesar ā senātū postulāvit? 5. Quās iniūriās Caesar ā Pompeiō senātūque accēpit? 6. Ubi erat Rubicō? 7. Cūr Caesar ad hōc flūmen cōnstitit? 8. Quid tum dīxit Caesar? 9. Quō Pompeius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgērunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The general was detained in the province, because the war was not yet finished. 2. The river Rubicon was the boundary of Caesar's province. 3. When Caesar came with his army to the river, he halted for a little while. 4. Finally Caesar crossed the river, seized many cities, and hastened to Rome. 5. Here Caesar was informed that Pompey and the senators had fled to Brundisium.

Word Formation. — *The Prefix* **dis-**. Another inseparable prefix is **dis-** or **di-**, meaning *apart, away,* as **dis-cēdō,** *go apart, depart;* **dī-ligō,** *choose out, love.*

---

18. ālea, -ae, f., *die.* **estō,** imperative fut. 3d sing. of **sum**; **iacta ālea estō,** '*let the die be cast.*'

19. Brundisium, -ī, n., *Brundisium* (modern *Brindisi*), a seaport in Calabria, the regular point of departure for Greece.

Define the Latin verbs from which the following are derived, pointing out the force of the prefix: *distract, dismiss, discern, differ, dispose, direct, dispute, distribute.*

Caesar crosses the Adriatic and defeats Pompey in the battle of Pharsalia; victories in Pontus and in Africa

Quī cum inde in Ēpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus Brundisiō Dyrrachium inter oppositās classēs gravissimā hieme trānsmīsit; cōpiīsque quās subsequī iusserat diūtius cessantibus, cum ad eās arcessendās frūstrā mīsisset, mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit. Morae enim impatiēns castrīs noctū ēgreditur et clam obvolūtō capite nē agnōscerētur nāviculam cōnscendit; et quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumēscēbat, in altum tamen nāvigium prōtinus dīrigī iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, "Quid timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis!", neque gubernātōrem cēdere adversae tempestātī passus est, priusquam paene obrutus esset flūctibus.

Deinde Caesar in Ēpīrum profectus, Pompeium Pharsā-

---

1. Quī, *i.e.*, Pompey and his party. **inde,** from Brundisium.

2. Dyrrachium, –ī, n., *Dyrrachium*, a seaport on the west coast of Illyria; Acc., Limit of Motion. **op-pōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus,** [**ob**], *oppose;* **oppositās,** translate freely, *opposing.*

3. hiems, hiemis, f., (winter), *storm.* **sub-sequī,** *follow closely.* **diūtius,** adv., [comp. of **diū**], *too long.*

4. cessō, –āre, [freq. of **cēdō**], *delay.*

6. clam, adv., *secretly.* **ob-volvō, –ere, –volvī, –volūtus,** *envelop, muffle.*

7. in-tumēscō, –ere, –tumuī, —, [**tumeō**], *swell.*

8. dī-rigō, –ere, –rēxī, –rēctus, [**dis** + **regō**], *direct, steer.* **gubernātor, –ōris,** m., [**gubernō**], *helmsman.*

9. trepidō, –āre, *tremble, be afraid.* **Caesarem vehis;** Caesar had unbounded faith in his good fortune!

11. patior, –ī, passus, *allow.* **ob-ruō, –ere, –ruī, –rutus,** *overwhelm;* subj. with **priusquam,** because the action is *anticipated.*

12. Pharsālicus, –a, –um, [**Pharsālia**], *of Pharsalia,* a small town in southern central Thessaly. This battle took place on the 9th of August, 48 B.C. Caesar had 22,000 infantry and 1000 cavalry. Pompey had

licō proeliō fūdit, et eum fugientem persecūtus est. Ubi autem eum occīsum esse cognōvit, bellum intulit Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompeī interfectōrī, ā quō sibi quoque īnsidiās tendī vidēret. Quō victō, in Pontum trānsiit, Pharnacemque, Mithridātis fīlium, intrā quīntum ab adventū diem, ūnā aciē prōflīgāvit, mōre fulminis, quod ūnō eōdemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit, abscessit. Nec vāna dē sē est praedicātiō Caesaris, hostem esse victum antequam esse vīsum. Posteā Ponticō triumphō titulum trium verbōrum praetulit: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, et rēliquiās Pompeiānārum partium in Āfricā refoventēs dēvīcit.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

opposite, direct, passive, profligate, vain, reliquary, percussion, moment, audacity, abscess, adverse, persecute, tumor,

---

47,000 infantry and 7000 cavalry. When the battle began, Pompey's cavalry easily scattered Caesar's horsemen, and then rode around to attack his infantry in the rear. But Caesar had anticipated this move, and when the cavalry charged, they were met and driven back by a fierce counter-attack of Caesar's reserve. Then in turn this reserve swung round, attacked Pompey's infantry in the rear, and routed it completely. It was a decisive victory. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by King Ptolemy.

15. **sibi quoque,** *i.e.*, Ptolemy, having made way with Pompey, was now plotting against Caesar.

16. **Quō victō,** in 47 B.C. **Phaınacēs, –is,** m., *Pharnaces*, who seized the opportunity afforded by the Civil War to enlarge his kingdom.

17. **ūnā aciē,** 'in a single battle' at Zela.

18. **prō-flīgō, –āre,** *overthrow.*

19. **vānus, –a, –um,** *empty, vain.* **prae-dicātiō, –ōnis,** f., [dicō], *boast.*

21. **Ponticus, –a, –um,** [Pontus], *Pontic, of Pontus.* **titulus, –ī,** m., *inscription* (on a banner).

22. **Deinde,** in the battle of Thapsus, 46 B.C. **Scīpiō,** Pompey's father-in-law.

23. **reliquiae, –ārum,** f., [relinquō], *remnant.* **re-foveō, –ēre, –fōvī, –fōtus,** *revive.*

predication, in-cessant, fluctuate, re-cognition, governor, insidious, title.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quō Caesar Pompeium persecūtus est? 2. Quam ob rem Caesar Brundisium redīre voluit? 3. Quid gubernātōrī nāviculae dīxit? 4. Ubi Caesar Pompeium proeliō fūdit? 5. Quis Pompeium interfēcit? 6. Intrā quot diēs Caesar Pharnacem vīcit? 7. Quem titulum trium verbōrum Ponticō triumphō praetulit? 8. Quōs in Āfricā dēvīcit?

Caesar's narrow escape at the battle of Munda

Posterō annō Caesar multō gravius bellum gessit, quod Cn. Pompeius, Magnī fīlius, adulēscēns fortissimus, in Hispāniā cōnflāverat, auxiliīs ex tōtō orbe ad eum cōnfluentibus. Sua fortūna Caesarem in Hispāniam comitāta est. Nūllum tamen atrōcius perīculōsiusque proelium umquam ab eō initum est. Quō proeliō, cum victōria esset plūs quam dubia, Caesar equō dēscendit, atque cōnsistēns ante recēdentem suōrum aciem et increpāns Fortūnam quod sē in eum exitum servāvisset, mīlitibus dēnūntiāvit sē vēstīgiō non esse recessūrum. Verecundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est, atque Cn. Pompeius victus et interēmptus est.

Caesar, omnium victor, in urbem regressus, ignōvit omnibus, quī contrā sē arma tulerant, et quīnquiēs triumphāvit.

---

1. Posterō annō, 45 B.C.
3. auxilia, –ōrum, n., *auxiliaries.* **cōnfluō, –ere, –flūxī, —,** *assemble.*
4. Sua fortūna, 'His usual good luck.'
8. increpō, –āre, –uī, –itus, *chide, upbraid.*
9. sē, Caesar. **vēstīgiō,** 'from his tracks.'
10. verecundia, –ae, f., [**vereor**], *shame.*
12. i-(g)nōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nōtus, [**in**], *pardon,* with dative.
13. quīnquiēs, adv., [**quīnque**], *five times.*

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

cōnfluentibus, initum, dubia, cōnsistēns, recēdentem, vēstīgiō, restitūta, adulēscens, atrōcius, dēscendit, exitum, dēnūntiāvit.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis contrā Caesarem in Hispāniā bellum cōnflāvit? 2. Quālis fortūna Caesarem comitābātur? 3. Ubi proelium ā Pompeiō commissum est? 4. Uter exercitus prīmō erat victor? 5. Quid deinde fēcit Caesar? 6. Quid mīlitibus dīxit? 7. Num mīlitēs suum imperātōrem dēseruērunt? 8. Propter quās virtūtēs erat Caesar imperātor summus? 9. Ubi Caesar Rōmam regressus est, replēvit-ne urbem caede et sanguine cīvium? 10. Quāle supplicium sūmpsit dē omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Many serious wars were waged by Caesar after he had conquered Gaul. 2. When he came to Spain in the following year, he waged a very fierce and dangerous war with Pompey. 3. When the soldiers were falling back, Caesar dismounted and stood before the line. 4. Then Caesar cried: "I will not retreat a step (from my track), even if you (will) desert me." 5. Thus Caesar restored the battle by his pluck and conquered Pompey.

Word Formation. — *The Prefix* **sē-**. The inseparable *prefix* **sē-** or **sēd-**, *apart*, is used in the formation of verbs, nouns and adjectives, as, **sē-gregō** (from **grex,** *flock*), *flock apart*, SEGREGATE; **sēd-itiō,** [**eō,** *go*], *a going apart*, SEDITION; **sē-cūrus,** [**cūra**], *care-less*, SECURE.

Define the Latin verbs from which the following are derived, showing the force of the prefix: *secede, seclude, seduce, separate, select.*

Caesar rules supreme at Rome; his far-reaching reforms and projects; the plot against his life

Bellīs cīvīlibus cōnfectīs, sine morā Caesar rem pūblicam ōrdināre incēpit. Fastōs corrēxit atque annum ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit, ut trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum esset et, intercalāriō mēnse sublātō, ūnus diēs quārtō quōque annō intercalārētur. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevēris-5 simē dīxit. Eōs pecūniārum repetundārum convictōs etiam ōrdine senātōriō mōvit. Peregrīnārum mercium portōria īnstituit. Praecipuē lēgem sūmptuāriam exercuit.

---

1. Bellīs cīvīlibus cōnfectīs: The citizens at Rome expected to witness a repetition of the frightful scenes of proscription and murder which had marked the return of Marius and Sulla. But instead of wreaking vengeance upon his enemies, Caesar pardoned them. He was no narrow-minded self-centered demagogue. He had broadened into a statesman, interested not merely in the prosperity of city and state, but also in the progress of the world.

2. ōrdinō, –āre, [**ōrdō**], *set in order.* **fastī, –ōrum,** m., [**fastī diēs,** *court days*], *calendar.*

4. esset, *might consist.* Up to this time the Roman calendar was based on the *lunar* year of 355 days. In order that this might correspond to the *solar* year, it was necessary to insert an extra (intercalary) month of 22 or 23 days every two years. The confusion arising from such constant changes was now removed. The *Julian* calendar, which got its name from *Julius* Caesar, was in vogue until 1582, when Pope *Gregory* made the then required correction of ten days, and instituted the *Gregorian* calendar. **inter-calārius, –a, –um,** *intercalary.* **mēnsis, –is,** m., *month.*

5. quōque, abl. of **quisque,** *every;* how does it differ from the adverb? **inter-calō, –āre,** *insert in the calendar.* **Iūs dīcere,** *administer justice.*

6. re-petō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus, *exact;* **pecūniārum repetundārum,** (of exacting monies), *of extortion.*

7. mōvit, *he removed.* **merx, mercis,** f., *merchandise.* **portōrium, –ī,** n., [**portō**], *duty;* **peregrīnārum mercium portōria,** 'duties on foreign merchandise.'

8. prae-cipuē, adv., [**capiō**], *especially.* **sūmptuārius, –a, –um,** [**sūmptus,** *expense*], (pertaining to expense), *sumptuary.* The Romans passed many *sumptuary laws,* variously limiting the expense of funerals,

Multa et magna cōnsilia iniit dē ōrnandā īnstruendāque urbe, item dē tuendō ampliandōque imperiō : imprīmīs iūs cīvīle ad certum modum redigere, atque ex immēnsā cōpiā optimās et maximē necessāriās lēgēs in paucissimōs librōs cōnferre ; magnās bibliothēcās Graecās et Latīnās pūblicāre ; Pomptīnās palūdēs siccāre ; viam mūnīre ā Marī Superō per Appennīnī dorsum ūsque ad Tiberim ; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum effūderant, coercēre ; mox Parthīs per Armeniam bellum īnferre.

Dum haec agit et alia meditātur, mors intervēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus, īnsolentius agere coepit. Senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit, et ubi quīdam monuit ut adsurgeret, eum īrātō vultū respexit. Praetereā

---

conveyances, jewelry, dress, and even of the table. One law, *e.g.*, restricted the fowl that might be served at a banquet to *a single unfattened hen!* Caesar *enforced* (**exercuit**) several such laws that were generally disregarded, and added a few of his own.

9. īn-struō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, *build up.*

10. tueor, –ērī, tūtus, *protect.* **im-prīmīs,** adv., (in the first place), *especially.*

11. ad certum modum, *to a fixed limit.*

13. bibliothēcās: When in Egypt, Caesar must have seen the two famous libraries in Alexandria, which are estimated to have contained at least 500,000 books. They were badly damaged during the siege at that time. **pūblicō, –āre,** [**pūblicus**], *open to the public.*

14. Pomptīnae palūdēs: *the Pomptine Marshes,* an extensive area of swamp land on the coast of Latium about 50 miles from Rome. **mūnīre,** *to construct.* **Mare Superum,** *the Upper Sea,* the Adriatic. The Romans called the Tuscan or Tyrrhenian Sea on the west coast **Mare Īnferum,** *the Lower Sea.*

15. Appennīnus, –ī, m., *the Apennines,* a mountain chain running the whole length of the Italian peninsula. **dorsum, –ī,** n., (back), *ridge.* **Dācī, –ōrum,** m., *the Dacians,* who lived north of the Danube.

19. per-petuus, –a, –um, [**petō**], *continuous;* **in perpetuum** (**tempus**), (forever), *for life.*

21. ad-surgō, –ere, –surrēxī, –surrēctus, [**sub** + **regō**], *rise.*

cum Caesar prō rōstrīs in sellā aureā sedēret et Mārcus Antōnius eius capitī diadēma, īnsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id quidem ā Caesare repulsum est, sed ita ut nōn offēnsus esse vidērētur. Quā rē in eum ā sexāgintā virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, coniūrātum est et eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū cōnfodere dēcrētum est.

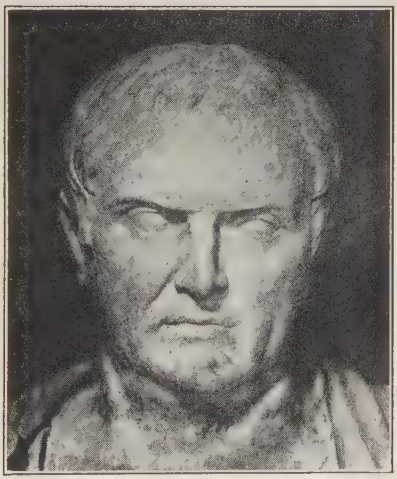
Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

severely, perpetual, convicted, sumptuary, repulse, dorsal, co-ordinate, intervene, laboriously, instrument, insolently, accommodate, merchant, publication, diadem, meditate, offend.

---

22. Mārcus Antōnius, *Mark Antony,* one of the tribunes who fled to Caesar in 49 B.C. He was Caesar's most trusted lieutenant general during the civil wars. At this time he was Caesar's colleague in the consulship.



Mark Antony.

23. diadēma, –atis, n., (Greek word), *diadem.* **īnsigne,** *emblem.*

24. of-fendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus, [**ob**], *offend.*

25. videor, –ērī, vīsus, [dep. of **videō**], *seem.* **Cassius,** a follower of Pompey, had not only been pardoned by Caesar, but had been appointed a praetor for the year 45 B.C. **Brūtus** also sided with Pompey. He was captured in the battle of Pharsalia, but his life was spared, and thereafter he was treated by Caesar with the greatest favor.

26. Īdūs, –uum, f., *the Ides.* "In March, July, October, May, the Ides are on the 15th day"; in other months, the 13th. **Mārtius, –a, –um,** [**Mārs**], *of March.*

27. cōn-fodiō, –ere, –fōdī, –fossus, [**fodiō,** *dig*], *stab, assassinate.*

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid post bella cīvīlia Caesar facere incēpit? 2. Quō modo Caesar annum corrēxit? 3. Quō modo iūs dīxit? 4. Quae cōnsilia prō bonō pūblicō iniit? 5. Quandō īnsolentius agere coepit? 6. Quam ob rem cīvēs exīstimābant Caesarem rēgem fierī velle? 7. Quot virī in eum coniūrāvērunt? 8. Quī erant ducēs coniūrātiōnis? 9. Quid facere dēcrēvērunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. After the civil war Caesar returned to Rome to set the government in order. 2. He was so severe that many men were removed from the senate. 3. The citizens began to think that Caesar would make himself king. 4. The senator inquired why Caesar did not receive the senate, standing. 5. Sixty senators conspired against Caesar and determined to kill him in the curia.

Word Formation. — *The inseparable Prefix* **in–**. In a previous lesson we learned that the *preposition* **in** is used as a prefix in the sense of *in, on, into, against.* We are now to consider a prefix **in–**, which must be carefully distinguished from the prepositional prefix. For this is an *inseparable* prefix, used largely to form *adjectives,* and denotes *not, un–, in–,* as **in-iūstus,** *unjust.* It is also used extensively in English in such words as *in–active, un–true.*

Define the following adjectives, showing the force of the prefix, and giving an English derivative from each: **īnsānus, imprūdēns, immortālis, incrēdibilis, impius, īnfīnītus, imperfectus.**

The assassination of Caesar

Diī immortālēs plūrima indicia futūrī perīculī obtulerant. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturnō vīsū, ōrābat ut Īdibus

1. **diī, dī,** and **deī** were all used as the nom. pl. of **deus.** **in-dicium, –ī,** n., [**dicō**], *indication.*

Mārtiīs domī subsisteret. Spūrinna harūspex praemonuerat ut proximōs diēs trīgintā quasi fātālēs cavēret, quōrum ultimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur diē Caesar Spūrinnae, 5

THE DEATH OF CAESAR.

" Ecquid scīs," inquit, " Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse? " et is, " Ecquid scīs, illās nōndum praeterīvisse? "

Cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, et coniūrātī speciē officī eum assīdentem circumstetissent, īlicō ūnus, quasi

---

3. domī, loc., *at home.*

4. caveō, –ēre, cāvī, cautus, *beware of.*

6. ec-quid, adv., *at all;* merely used for emphasis and may be omitted in translation.

7. praeter-eō, –īre, –īvī or **–iī, –itus,** *go by, pass by.*

8. con-iūrātī, –ōrum, m., [iūrō], *conspirators.* **speciē officī,** 'under the pretense of doing a friendly service'; they presented Caesar with a petition for some one's pardon.

9. as-sīdō, –ere, –sēdī, —, [**ad** + **sedeō**], *take one's seat;* **assīdentem,**

aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit, et eī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit. Deinde Caesar clāmāns " Ista quidem vīs est," ā Cascā, ūnō ē coniūrātīs, est vulnerātus paulum īnfrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae bracchium graphiō trāiēcit, et cōnātus prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est. Deinde ubi animadvertit undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit et ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem fīlī locō habēbat, in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxisse fertur: " Tū quoque, mī fīlī? "

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

indicia, nocturnō, vīsū, subsisteret, praemonuerat, fātālēs, cavēret, praeterīvisse, circumstetissent, apprehendit, iugulum, tardātus, strictīs.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quid Calpurnia dē Īdibus Mārtiīs Caesarī dīxit? 2. Quō modo Spūrinna Caesarem praemonuit? 3. Mānsit-ne Caesar domī Īdibus Mārtiīs? 4. Quō īvit Caesar? 5. Cūr coniūrātī eum circumstetērunt? 6. Quid deinde

---

' as he took his seat.' **circum-stō, –stāre, –stetī, —**, *stand around.* **ī-licō**, adv., [**in** + **locō**], (on the spot), *immediately.*

10. eī, Dative of Reference; often, as here, equivalent to a Possessive Genitive.

11. iste, –a, –ud, gen., **–īus**, pron. adj., *that of yours.*

13. iugulum, –ī, n., [dim. of **iugum**], *throat.* **graphium, –ī**, n., *stylus*, a sharp-pointed iron or bronze instrument like a pencil, used for writing on wax-covered tablets. **trāiēcit**, *pierced.*

14. tardō, –āre, [**tardus**], *check.*

15. pūgiō, –ōnis, m., *dagger.* **togā caput obvolvit:** This was at the foot of Pompey's statue.

16. plāga, –ae, f., *stroke, blow.*

17. fīlī locō, (in a son's place), ' as a son.' **ir-ruō, –ere, –ruī, —**, [**in**], *rush upon.*

18. mī fīlī, vocative sing.

ūnus ē coniūrātīs fēcit? 7. Quis prīmus Caesarem vulnerāvit? 8. Quid deinde fēcit Caesar? 9. Quam ob rem togā caput obvolvit? 10. Quid Caesar Brūtō dīxit?

(*c*) Translate:

1. The soothsayers declared that there were many indications of danger to Caesar. 2. Spurinna forewarned Caesar thus: "Beware of the Ides of March." 3. On that day Spurinna said: "The Ides of March have come, but they have not yet passed." 4. Casca, one of the conspirators, first wounded Caesar with a dagger. 5. Caesar wondered why Brutus, whom he especially loved, was attacking him.

Word Formation. — *Review of Prefixes.*

(*a*) What vowel changes occur in the stems of verbs when they are compounded with prepositions?

(*b*) What is assimilation?

(*c*) Define the Latin verbs from which the following words are derived, giving the force of the prefix in each: *import, occur, compel, separate, adjacent, depend, remain, subscribe, aggressive, dismiss, obsess, sustain, correct, impose, suggest, depopulate, oppress, accident, invade, convoke, subtract.*

(*d*) Define the following words, giving the force of the prefix in each, and if possible an English derivative: **exclūdō, perspiciō, antecēdō, praeficiō, īnfīnītus, circumstō, permoveō, intercipiō, supersum, prōvideō, trāiciō, perpaucī, praetereō, abstineō.**

Caesar's wish concerning his death; the fate of the conspirators

Illud inter omnēs ferē cōnstat, tālem mortem eī paene ex sententiā obtigisse. Nam quondam cum apud Xenophōn-

---

1. Illud inter omnēs ferē cōnstat: *It is generally agreed among all, i.e.* 'all are generally agreed.' **ex sententiā,** *according to his desire.*

2. ob-tingō, –ere, –tigī, —, [**tangō**], *occur.* **apud,** *in.* **Xenophōn, –ōntis,** m., *Xenophon,* a celebrated Greek general and historian. In 401 B.C. he accompanied Cyrus, king of Persia, on an expedition against his brother Artaxerxes. After the defeat and death of Cyrus, Xenophon

tem lēgisset Cȳrum ultimā valētūdine mandāvisse quaedam dē fūnere suō, āspernātus tam lentum mortis genus, sibi subitam celeremque mortem optāverat. Item prīdiē quam occīderētur, in sermōne nātō super cēnam, quisnam esset commodissimus fīnis vītae, fīnem repentīnum inopīnātumque praetulerat.

Neque quisquam percussōrum amplius quam triennium supervīxit neque morte necessāriā periit. Omnēs damnātī alius aliō cāsū periērunt, pars naufragiō, pars proeliō; nōnnūllī eōdem illō pūgiōne quō Caesarem violāvērunt, sēsē interēmērunt.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

commodious, triennial, legible, spurn, survive, opine, funeral, sentence.

---

conducted the Retreat of the Ten Thousand Greeks to the Black Sea. The history of this memorable march is contained in Xenophon's *Anabasis,* which is read by students of Greek in our schools. He also wrote the *Cyropaedia,* a history of *Cyrus the Great,* which contains the passage here referred to.

3. **valētūdō, –inis,** f., [**valeō**], *health, good* or *bad;* here, *illness.* **mandāvisse quaedam,** 'had given certain directions.'

4. **ā-spernor, –ārī, –ātus,** *despise.* **lentus, –a, –um,** *slow.*

5. **sub-itus, –a, –um,** [eō], *sudden.* **prī-diē,** adv., *on the day before;* with **quam** it is used like **priusquam** as a conjunction.

6. **sermō, –ōnis,** m., *conversation.* **nāscor, nāscī, nātus,** *be born, rise;* **nātō,** freely, 'which arose.' **quis-nam, quid-nam,** inter. pron., *who, what* (pray)? **quisnam** agrees with **fīnis.**

7. **com-modus, –a, –um,** *fitting, desirable.* **repentīnus, –a, –um,** [**repēns**], *sudden.* **in-opīnātus, –a, –um,** [**opīnor,** *suppose*], *unexpected.*

9. **per-cussor, –ōris,** m., [**quatiō,** *beat*], *assassin.*

10. **super-vīvō, –ere, –vīxī, —,** *survive.* **necessārius, –a, –um,** [**necesse**], *necessary, natural.* **damnō, –āre,** *condemn.*

11. **alius aliō cāsū,** 'each by a different fate.' **nau-fragium, –ī,** n., [**nāvis** + **frangō**], *shipwreck.*

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quis erat Xenophōn? 2. Quālis mors Cȳrō obtigit? 3. Quālem mortem sibi Caesar optāvit? 4. Quō modo omnēs coniūrātī periērunt?

(*c*) Translate:

1. While Caesar was doing these things, sudden, swift death befell him. 2. Cyrus, king of Persia, was ill for a long time before his death. 3. Caesar said that the most fitting end of life was (a) sudden (one). 4. The Romans observed that Caesar's assassins all perished within three years. 5. Some perished by one fate, others by another; several committed suicide.

Word Formation. — *To the student.* We have now come to the end of our special studies on the formation of Latin words. That, however, does not mean that you should cease to think of how they are formed. On the other hand, you should feel that every Latin lesson will afford you new opportunities of applying what you have learned. This you will find helpful in more than one way.

In the first place it will often enable you to get at the general meaning of a new word without looking it up in a vocabulary. Suppose, for example, that in your reading you came across the word **incursiō**. You would separate it into prefix + stem + suffix, as follows: **in** + **curs** + **iō** = *into* + *run* + *action*, i.e., *the act of running into*. Next you would try to think of an English derivative. The word *incursion* immediately suggests itself. That you probably know means *an invasion* of an enemy's territory. As this corresponds with the meaning you have worked out through the Latin, you conclude that **incursiō** must mean *incursion* or *invasion*. The last step is to see whether that meaning is suited to the *sense* of the phrase or sentence you are reading. If it is, you may be quite sure that you have succeeded in finding the right meaning for **incursiō**. This of course is very helpful in sight reading and in class tests or college examinations, when no vocabulary is available.

There is, however, another way in which your study of Latin words should be even more useful to you, and that is in your *English reading*. *More than half* the ordinary words you meet come from the Latin. You have already become familiar with a host of English derivatives in your study of Latin thus far. What is more, many of these mean a great deal more to you than if you had simply inferred their meaning when you first met them in an English sentence. For example, to you the word *incursion* will no longer have the *general* meaning of *invasion*. Rather you now have a *distinct mental picture* of a *force of men running into* an enemy's territory. In other words, to a Latin student a page of English does not appear merely as a series of words conveying some thought, but as a page interspersed with distinct mental pictures. Thus, instead of a drab colorless page, he will have a colorful, picturesque page. This not only gives him a better understanding of the thought, but adds greatly to his interest and pleasure in reading the English.

Lastly, it will help you to write better themes and essays, because you will have more words to choose from, and those you select will be more interesting in themselves because of their derivation.

Plan, therefore, to continue your study of the formation of words and of derivation. You will find it increasingly fascinating year by year. And even after school and college days are over, it will illuminate your reading, and vivify the writing you will be called upon to do in your profession and in the literary and civic clubs which you will join.

Caesar's self-control

Maximē in rēgibus et prīncipibus virīs moderātiō laudanda est. C. Iūlius Caesar victōriā cīvīlī clēmentissimē ūsus est;

---

1. **prīncipibus virīs,** 'great men.' **moderātiō, –ōnis,** f., [**modus**], *self-control*.

2. **victōriā cīvīlī,** 'victory over his fellow-citizens.' **clēmenter,** adv., [**clēmēns**], *mildly, moderately*. **ūtor, –ī, ūsus,** *use*, with Ablative.

cum enim dēprehendisset scrīnia epistulārum ad Pompeium missārum ab eīs, quī vidēbantur fuisse aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs partibus, eās legere nōluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōnsulendī locum darent.

Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī solēret nisi iniūriās. Simultātēs omnēs, occāsiōne oblātā, libēns dēposuit. Ultrō ac prior scrīpsit C. Calvō post eius fāmōsa adversum sē epigrammata. Valerium Catullum, cuius versiculīs fāmam suam lacerātam esse nōn ignōrābat, adhibuit cēnae. Fuit suffrāgātor C. Memmī in petītiōne cōnsulātūs, etsī eius ōrātiōnēs in sē fuisse asperrimās sciēbat.

---

3. scrīnium, –ī, n., (a round, wooden) *box* for holding books (papyrus rolls), letters, and papers.

4. dī-versus, –a, –um, [**dis-** + **vertō**], *opposite;* **in dīversīs partibus,** 'in the opposing party,' *i.e.*, to Caesar's party.

5. neuter, –tra, –trum, gen., –īus, [**nē** + **uter**], *neither.* **com-būrō,** –ere, –bussī, –būstus, *burn up.*

6. gravius, adv., [comp. of **graviter**], *too severely;* **gravius cōnsulendī locum,** 'occasion for taking too severe measures.'

7. quod, *that.*

8. ob-līvīscor, –ī, –lītus, *forget.* **soleō,** –ēre, –itus, (semi-dep.), *be accustomed.* **simultās,** –tātis, f., (encounter), *enmity.*

9. libēns, –entis, [**libet**], *willing(ly).* **Ultrō ac prior scrīpsit:** 'Of his own accord he wrote first,' *i.e.*, Caesar took the first step to conciliate **Calvus,** a talented orator and poet, whose writings have been lost.

10. epigramma, –atis, n., (Greek word), *epigram,* a concise poem, sentence, or expression, often witty and incisive.

11. Catullus was a poetical genius, famous as a writer of lyrics, elegies, and epigrams. **versiculus,** –ī, m., [dim. of **versus**], (short) *verse.* **lacerō,** –āre, (tear to pieces), *slander.* **nōn ignōrābat,** *he was not unaware, i.e.*, 'he was well aware.'

12. ad-hibeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, [**habeō**], *invite.* **suffrāgātor,** –ōris, m., [**suffrāgium**], (political) *supporter.* **Memmius** was a candidate for the consulship of 54 B.C., and was elected through Caesar's support.

13. petītiō, –ōnis, f., [**petō**], *candidacy.* **asper,** –a, –um, *harsh, severe.*

Exercises

(*a*) Form English derivatives from:

moderātiō, laudanda, clēmentissimē, epistulārum, dīversīs, neutrīs, combussit, oblīvīscī, fāmōsa, epigrammata, lacerātam, suffrāgātor, petītiōne, asperrimās.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Cūr est laudanda moderātiō maximē in rēgibus et prīncipibus virīs? 2. Quō modo Caesar victōriā cīvīlī ūsus est? 3. Quī antehāc victōriā cīvīlī inclēmenter ūsī erant? 4. Quam ob rem Caesar epistulās ad Pompeium missās legere nōluit? 5. Quid dīxit Cicerō dē Caesare? 6. Quō modo Caesar probābat sē simultātēs dēpōnere velle?

(*c*) Translate:

1. Kings and great men are sometimes not self-controlled. 2. Caesar burned up the letters, which had been sent by his enemies to Pompey. 3. Cicero said that Caesar forgot nothing except acts-of-injustice against himself. 4. The verses of Catullus hurt Caesar's reputation. 5. In his candidacy for the consulship Memmius delivered several harsh speeches against Caesar.

Caesar's personal appearance and characteristics

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō plēniōre, nigrīs vegetīsque oculīs, capite calvō; quam calvitī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocīs obnoxia erat,

---

1. **ex-celsus, -a, -um,** [**cellō,** *rise high*], *lofty, tall.* **plēniōre,** '*too full.*'

2. **niger, -gra, -grum,** *black.* **vegetus, -a, -um,** *quick, bright.* **calvus, -a, -um,** *bald.* **calvitium, -ī,** n., [**calvus**], *baldness.* **dē-fōrmitās, -ātis,** f., [**fōrma**], *ugliness, blemish.*

3. **ob-trectātor, -ōris,** m., [**tractō**], *disparager, critic.* **ob-noxius, -a, -um,** [**noceō**], *exposed.*

aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus honōribus sibi ā senātū populōque dēcrētīs nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae.

Vīnī parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem sōbrium accessisse ad ēvertendam rem pūblicam.

CAESAR.

Erat armōrum et equitandī perītissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteībat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrēdibilī celeritāte

---

4. aegrē, adv., [**aeger**], *uncomfortably;* **aegrē ferre,** *be annoyed at, dislike.* **id-eō,** adv., *therefore.*

5. ūsūrpō, –āre, [**ūsus** + **rapiō**], *assume.*

6. laurea, –ae, f., *laurel wreath.* **per-petuō,** adv., [**petō**], *continuously, always.* **gestō, –āre,** [freq. of **gerō**], *wear.* See note on **redimendīs,** page 158, line 5.

7. parcus, –a, –um, [**parcō**], *moderate* (in the use).

8. Verbum, –ī, n., *word, saying, epigram.* **Catō Minor** (93–46 B.C.), like his grandfather **Catō Maior,** was an " old-fashioned " Roman, simple, stern, and honest. One of Sallust's epigrams says of Cato: **Esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat,** *he preferred to be rather than to seem good.* He was an implacable enemy of Caesar, and after the battle of Thapsus in despair he committed suicide. **ex omnibus (Rōmānīs).**

9. sōbrius, –a, –um, [sē–, *apart from,* + **ēbrius,** *drunk*], *sober.* **accēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus,** [**ad**], (*go toward*), *undertake.*

12. perītus, –a, –um, *skilled* (in); with genitive.

13. agmen, –inis, n., *marching column;* **in agmine,** *on the march.* **nōn-numquam,** adv., (not never), *sometimes.*

15. ante-eō, –īre, –īvī or –iī, —, *go ahead.* **dē-tegō,** –ere, –tēxī, –tēctus, *uncover.* **seu** or **sī-ve,** *or if;* **seu . . . seu,** *whether . . . or.*

16. imber, –bris, m., *rain.*

cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs dē sē praevenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus īnflātīs ūtribus trāiciēbat.

Magnus imperātor erat Caesar, quod omnēs hostēs vīcit. Etiam maior erat, quod tam sapienter dē Imperiō Rōmānō cōnsilia cēpit. Summus autem erat Caesar, quod omnibus rēbus moderātiōne ūsus est.

Exercises

(*a*) Find the Latin word suggested by:

usurp, patient, excel, detective, stature, incredible, verb, prevent, negro, laurel, tradition, deformity, inflated, obnoxious, sober.

(*b*) Respondē:

1. Quālī speciē erat Caesar? 2. Quam ob rem Caesar calvitium suum aegrē ferēbat? 3. Quid fēcit Caesar, nē calvus vidērētur? 4. Solēbat-ne Caesar nimium vīnī bibere? 5. Quālis imperātor erat Caesar? 6. Quō modo in agmine exercitum dūcēbat? 7. Quibus rēbus hostēs vīcit? 8. Quā virtūte summus vir erat Caesar?

---

18. **ut,** *so that.* **prae-veniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus,** *outstrip.*

19. **nō, nāre, nāvī,** —, *swim.* **in-nītor, –ī, –nīxus** or **–nīsus,** *rest* or *lie on.* **īn-flātus, –a, –um,** [**flō,** *blow*], *inflated.*

20. **ūter, ūtris,** m., *skin.*

THE GALLIC WAR

JULIUS CAESAR

From time to time there has flashed across the horizon of history a character so far superior to the ordinary run of mortals, that he has been recognized ever since as a genius. Such was Socrates the philosopher, Phidias the sculptor, Raphael the painter, Shakespeare the writer, Napoleon the soldier. Such also was Julius Caesar.

Caesar was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C., of a distinguished patrician family in Rome. Besides the usual schooling of a wealthy Roman boy, he received private instruction at home in oratory and rhetoric. In his very first cases as a lawyer he proved to be a brilliant and forceful speaker, but wishing to perfect himself in oratory, he went to the island of Rhodes to study under the most celebrated teacher there.

Returning to Rome in 75, he plunged recklessly into the gay society of the capital, where his engaging personality and courteous manners made him a great favorite. Among men he bore himself with dignity, and never ate or drank to excess. He was affable and friendly, generous to a fault, and unswervingly loyal to his friends. Through these traits, coupled with marked tactfulness in handling men, he speedily became the acknowledged leader of the people's party.

At an early age he advanced through the regular political offices as quaestor, curule aedile, and praetor, and finally attained the consulship in 59. In the following year with the support of Pompey and Crassus he went as proconsul to Gaul, and in seven years completed the conquest of that vast land.

He was now fifty years old. Up to this time he had achieved nothing extraordinary. He had been quaestor, aedile, praetor, and consul. Yet hundreds of Romans before him had been recipients of

the same honors. He had acquired fame as a general and had added extensively to Roman territory. That too had been done repeatedly in the annals of the nation. If this was all he was to accomplish, he would have no more right to a niche in the Roman Hall of Fame than Pompey or Lucullus, — and far less right than Sulla, or Marius, or Fabius Maximus, or the Scipios. But Caesar had only made a beginning. The next six years — for that was all Fate would allot him — were to tell a different story.

Pompey had now become so jealous of Caesar that he broke with him and joined the senatorial party. Caesar's long continued efforts to bring about a peaceable solution of the questions at issue were fruitless. Early in 49 the Senate took action that inevitably forced Caesar to decide upon war to secure his rights. One after another he defeated the armies his enemies assembled against him, in the very last battle literally snatching victory out of the jaws of defeat.

Caesar developed into a great general quite late in life. He was 41 years old when he went to his province. Seven years of constant fighting against Gauls and Germans, — who though barbarians were brave soldiers, — brought out his latent talents. It was still later, however, — in the Civil Wars — that he proved to be possessed of consummate military skill. For then he was pitted against *Roman generals* in command of *Roman legions*, as well trained as his own. During these four years, sustaining but one reverse, he defeated four powerful armies.

Much of his success was due to the loyalty he inspired in his men. A strict disciplinarian, he exacted from them the utmost exertion and sacrifice. They tramped behind him in forced marches — day and night if need be, — as with superhuman energy he pressed forward to seize some strategic point in advance of the enemy. Again and again they suffered severely from lack of rations. All this they cheerfully endured in their devotion to their commander.

Caesar was a master in strategy. His policy was always to take the offensive and out-manœuvre the enemy. Even when greatly outnumbered he seldom hesitated to offer battle. In dangerous situations he was cool and resourceful. These were the qualities which made him invincible. Military critics — modern as well as ancient — have ranked him as one of the Great World Captains.

Caesar was now Master of the Roman World. The servile Senate conferred upon him numerous honors and titles. It made him **Dictator** for life, and gave him the title of **Imperator**, thus clothing him with supreme civil and military authority.

How was he going to use this power? Would he restore the Republic or would he rule as a monarch, furthering his own interests and ambition? The citizens recalled his consulship and pictured him as the same selfish politician. But fourteen years is a long time, and Caesar was a different man. Contact with widely separated portions of the empire had broadened him into a statesman, and had given him a new conception of Rome's future. For the past hundred years — amid city riots and civil wars — she had been the corrupt mistress of the provinces she regularly plundered. That could continue no longer. The only hope for her lay in the firm and wise government *of a single man looking to the welfare of the entire empire.* Of this Caesar was thoroughly convinced, and with his usual energy he began at once to lay the foundations of the new *Roman Empire.*

In less than a year Caesar instituted far-reaching reforms in government administration both at home and in the provinces, and formed many plans for the betterment of the empire. But he was not destined to see them accomplished. Ever since his fourfold triumph there had been persistent rumors that he intended eventually to rule Rome as a monarch. Suspicion soon developed into fanaticism against "the king." Sixty patriotic citizens, many of whom had been allowed to return to Rome simply because Caesar was magnanimous to his enemies and had pardoned them, formed a conspiracy against him. Under pretense of petitioning him to pardon one of the few remaining exiles, these "honorable men" crowded around him in the senate house and assassinated him. Thus perished Julius Caesar at the age of fifty-six on the Ides of March, 44 B.C.

Caesar excelled as an author. His writings cover a wide range of literature. He dabbled in *poetry* (quite unsuccessfully), composed a treatise on *grammar*, wrote a *criticism of Cato*, and published a book on *astronomy*, and a *collection of witticisms*. All these have been lost together with his *orations*, which Cicero himself characterized as remarkably clear, logical, and persuasive. The only

writings of Caesar that have come down to us are his *Commentaries on the Gallic War* and *The Civil War*. These are exceedingly valuable on account of the information they furnish concerning a most important period of Roman history. They are written of course from Caesar's point of view, but they have been generally accepted as substantially accurate. In point of style they are terse, unadorned, straight-forward, and vigorous, and as such have served as the highest model for all subsequent military histories.

Caesar had his faults. He was unscrupulous in politics, selfish in his ambition, at times excessively cruel in war. On the other hand he was generous, loyal to friends, and magnanimous to enemies. Possessed of an interesting personality, he was independent in thought, well balanced in his views, self-controlled in all things, — but especially in victory. His greatness, however, rests not so much on his character, as on the fact that he *achieved extraordinary success in three distinct lines*. He was a remarkable writer, a superb general, and a constructive statesman.

The question is frequently asked: *What enabled Caesar to become great?* It is difficult to make a selection from the various qualities of success which this many-sided man possessed. Nor can we hope that our selection will appeal to all our readers alike. But in our judgment there were three things that more than any others combined to make him great: (1) an exceptionally brilliant and versatile mind; (2) indomitable strength of will; (3) quickness in grasping opportunities of advancement and power.

CAESAR'S ARMY

1. **The Infantry, *peditēs*.** This consisted exclusively of Roman citizens, who could be called out to service between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. Many, however, were volunteers, who enlisted for twenty years. In addition to their pay — about $45 a year — they shared in the booty that was taken, and often received special gifts. At the end of their term of enlistment they were retired with a lump sum of money or an allotment of land.

The Legion, *legiō*. The full strength of a legion was 6000 men, but losses in battle, sickness, and desertion reduced the number.

In the Gallic war Caesar's legions contained an average of about 3600 men. The legion was divided as follows:

1 century (**centuria**) = 60 men.
2 centuries = 1 maniple (**manipulus**), 120 men.
3 maniples = 1 cohort (**cohors**), 360 men.
10 cohorts = 1 legion, 3600 men.

2. **The Cavalry,** ***equitēs.*** Caesar's cavalry was composed of foreigners — Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards, of whom the Germans were by far the best. The cavalry force, attached to each legion, was divided as follows:

1 squad (**decuria**) = 10 men
3 squads = 1 troop (**turma**), 30 men
10 troops = 1 squadron (**āla**), commanded by *a cavalry prefect* (**praefectus equitum**).

3. **The Auxiliaries,** ***auxilia,*** commanded by Roman officers, consisted of:

a. Light-armed foot-soldiers (**levis armātūrae peditēs**), drawn from allied or subject states. In battle these were generally posted on the wings to make a show of force. At other times they were used chiefly for raiding and foraging.

b. Slingers, **funditōrēs,** from the Balearic Islands.

c. Bowmen, **sagittāriī,** from Crete and Numidia.

4. **The Non-combatants.**

a. Camp-servants, **cālōnēs,** slaves who performed menial services about the camp or were the body servants of the officers.

b. Muleteers, **mūliōnēs,** who drove the pack animals and had charge of the heavy baggage.

c. Traders, **mercātōrēs,** who were permitted to accompany the army, but — except in time of danger — were not allowed to have quarters in the camp. They purchased booty from the soldiers, and in turn sold them food and clothing.

The Officers

These were:

1. *The Commander-in-chief,* **dux,** until he had won his first important victory, after which he received the title of **imperātor.**

2. *The Lieutenant generals,* **lēgātī,** who were appointed by the

Roman senate from the senatorial class. They were the commander's staff officers. They were not in charge of any special legion, but in battle were assigned by the commander to whatever legion he saw fit.

3. *The Quartermaster general,* **quaestor,** whose duty it was to pay the men and to purchase the supplies for the army. If he was a capable officer, he might be put in command of a legion in battle.

4. *The Military tribunes,* **tribūnī mīlitum,** six to each legion. They were usually young men of equestrian families, without any military experience, who served only a short time and then returned to Rome to take up a political career. Their duties were of minor importance, such as the command of small detachments, the providing of supplies, and the levying or discharge of soldiers.

5. *The Prefects,* **praefectī,** who commanded the auxiliaries and the cavalry squadrons.

6. *The Centurions,* **centuriōnēs,** non-commissioned officers of plebeian origin, who were promoted from the ranks for their bravery and efficient service. There were two centurions for each maniple, six for each cohort, and sixty for each legion. The ranking centurion was the first centurion of the first cohort (**prīmipīlus**).

7. *The Decurions,* **decuriōnēs,** who were cavalry leaders of the squads (**decuriae**).

8. *The* **Ēvocātī,** *veteran volunteers,* who had reënlisted after serving for twenty years.

9. **Signiferī** and **Aquiliferī,** who were *standard bearers.*

Clothing

The legionary soldier wore:

a. **tunica,** a short-sleeved *tunic,* reaching nearly to the knees.

b. **sagum,** a thick woolen cloak.

c. **caligae,** heavy leather sandals, fastened to the foot by many straps. Instead of the **sagum** the commander wore a distinctive scarlet cloak, **palūdāmentum.**

Armor

1. **Defensive arms:**

a. **galea,** *a helmet* of leather and bronze, adorned with a crest. While marching, the helmet was hung by a cord from the neck.

b. **lōrīca,** a leather *cuirass* or *coat-of-mail,* strengthened with metal strips.

c. **scūtum,** an oblong wooden *shield,* overlaid with linen or leather, with a metal rim. It was about 4 feet long and $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet wide. In the middle on the outside was a metal *boss,* **umbō.** The shield was variously ornamented, — often with the winged thunderbolt. A leather covering, **tegimentum,** encased it, except in battle. It was worn on the left arm.

2. **Offensive weapons:**

a. **pīlum,** a heavy *pike* or *javelin,* weighing about ten pounds. It consisted of a wooden shaft 4 feet long, into which was fitted an iron shaft 2 feet long. The latter was made of soft iron, but its barbed point was hardened. The pike could be hurled about 75 feet.

b. **gladius,** a sword, about two feet long, straight, pointed, and two-edged, used rather for quick thrusting than for slashing. It was kept in a *scabbard,* **vāgīna,** which was suspended on the soldier's right side by a *strap,* **balteus,** passing over the left shoulder.

The Standards

a. **aquila,** the standard of the legion, a silver *eagle* on a wooden staff carried by the **aquilifer.**

b. **signa,** the standards of the maniples (borne by the **signiferī**), of various designs. For example one type had an open hand at the top followed by two metal disks, with an oblong metal plate below, on which were inscribed letters indicating the place of the maniple. The standard bearers wore a wolf or bear skin over their head and shoulders.

c. **vexillum,** a small rectangular, bright-colored *banner,* the standard of the cavalry and the infantry auxiliaries. A large red **vexillum,** displayed over the commander's tent, was the signal to make ready for battle.

The Musical Instruments

a. **tuba,** a long straight *trumpet,* with deep tone.

b. **cornū,** a curved *horn,* with shriller note.

c. **būcina,** a *bugle,* used chiefly to sound orders within the camp.

In battle the *trumpeters,* **tubicinēs,** first sounded the general's orders, which the *horn-blowers,* **cornicinēs,** in turn sounded to the maniples to which they were attached.

The Artillery

The propelling power of Roman engines of war was secured by windlassing strong hair ropes, and then suddenly releasing them by means of a trigger. They were called **tormenta,** from **torqueō,** *twist,* because the ropes were twisted.

a. **catapulta,** *the catapult,* which shot large arrows or darts horizontally.

b. **scorpiō,** *the scorpion,* a small catapult.

c. **ballista,** *the ballista,* which hurled huge stones at an angle of about 45 degrees.

The Army on the March

The Roman army marched in three divisions:

a. **prīmum agmen,** *the vanguard,* composed of cavalry and perhaps some light-armed troops.

b. **agmen,** *the main column,* each legion being followed by its own baggage train. But if there was danger of sudden attack, the entire baggage was placed behind the legions that formed the **agmen.**

c. **novissimum agmen,** *the rear-guard,* as a rule consisting of the more recently enlisted legions (hence called "*the newest column*").

A regular day's march lasting six or seven hours began at sunrise, but in emergencies at an earlier hour, sometimes even at midnight. The average distance marched was 15 or 16 miles, but Caesar's army often covered 25 or 30 miles on a forced march, **iter magnum.** On the march each legionary carried a

pack containing his blanket, rations, cooking utensils, etc. These packs, called **sarcinae,** were fastened on a forked pole and carried over the left shoulder.

The Camp, Castra

At the close of each day's march the Roman army regularly constructed a fortified camp. A corps of engineers was sent ahead of the army to select a suitable site and to lay it out. Usually it was rectangular, its dimensions varying according to the size of the army. It had four gates.

The camp was fortified by:

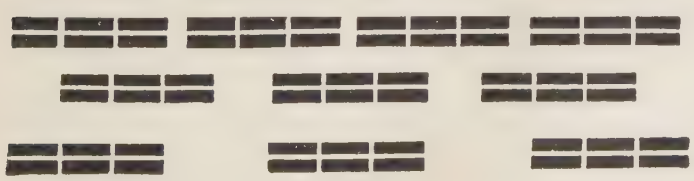
a. **fossa,** *a trench* with sloping sides, 10–12 feet wide at the top and 7–9 feet deep.

b. **vāllum,** *a rampart,* constructed from the earth and stones that were dug out of the trench. It was 5–6 feet high and 6–8 feet wide on top. On the outer edge of the rampart was a breastwork of stakes, **vāllī,** affording protection to soldiers posted on top of the wall.

The interior of the camp was laid out in a systematic way. The main street, **via prīncipālis** ran the full length of the camp, being crossed at right angles by the **via praetōria.** A number of passage-ways, **viae,** ran across the camp both lengthwise and widthwise. The general's tent, **praetōrium,** was near the middle, with the officers' tents close by. The soldiers' tents, each accommodating ten men, were nearer the front.

The Army in Battle

As a rule Caesar's legionaries were drawn up for battle in three lines, **aciēs triplex,** as follows:



Caesar's Triple Line of Battle

The three cohorts in the 2nd line were so placed that they could move up in the spaces between the cohorts of the 1st line, and relieve them if they became exhausted. The 3rd line was held in reserve, to enter the battle in an emergency.

Operations against Walled Towns

Towns might be captured by *storming* the walls, or by a regular *siege*.

a. In *storming*, **oppugnātiō,** the soldiers first filled the trench or moat with earth and *bundles of brush*, **crātēs,** and then pressed forward to break down the gates with a *battering ram*, **ariēs,** and mount the walls with *ladders*, **scālae.** Groups of soldiers advanced under cover of their shields overlapping above their heads. This formation was named **testūdō,** *tortoise*, because they were protected by it like a tortoise in its shell.

b. In a *siege*, **obsidiō,** the entire town, if possible, was invested with a line of works. Then at a distance of about 400 feet from the weakest point in the wall the soldiers began an **agger,** an inclined roadway — made of logs and earth — 40 or 50 feet wide, which was eventually to reach the wall at a level with the top. When it was extended nearer the enemy's wall, the soldiers at work upon it were shielded from missiles by *movable screens*, **pluteī,** or by *sheds*, **vineae** mounted on rollers.

Movable towers, **turrēs ambulātōriae,** were built at a safe distance from the wall, and at the proper time were pushed forward on rollers to take part in storming the walls.

THE GAULS

Caesar's original territory. — In the year 58 B.C. Caesar, as proconsul, was appointed to be governor of three Roman provinces, viz., Gallia Cisalpina, Illyricum, and Gallia Transalpina.

Gallia Cisalpina or *Citerior Provincia, the Hither Province*, comprised the basin of the Po, and extended eastward to the head of the Adriatic Sea, including the Roman colony of Aquileia. The Gauls in the territory lying between the river Rubicon and the Alps had been conquered as far back as 191 B.C.,

and by this time were completely Romanized. Though still a province, this country was geographically a part of Italy, and Caesar often calls it *Italia*. It was from this district that Caesar drew his soldiers, and here he spent most of his winters while in Gaul.

Illyricum lay along the east shore of the Adriatic, and was of little consequence in the war with the Gauls.

Gallia Transalpina or *Ulterior Provincia, the Farther Province,* extended from the Alps westward to the Garonne river. It had been more recently subjugated (121 B.C.), and its inhabitants for the most part still retained their Gallic customs.

Gaul proper. — To the north and west of Caesar's *Farther Province* stretched a vast land, into which the Roman legions as yet had not penetrated. It included all of what is now France, Belgium, Holland, Germany west of the Rhine, and Switzerland. A fertile well-watered country, it was adapted equally for farming or pasturage. In the northeast districts there were extensive forests and swamp lands.

The Gauls. — This territory was inhabited by perhaps ten or twelve million Gauls. In appearance they differed greatly from the Romans, as they were tall and light-haired, with fair complexion and blue eyes. The men wore their hair long and had fierce mustaches. They understood the art of weaving and were fond of bright colors. Their clothing consisted of trousers, tunic, and cloak, — all in gay colored stripes.

Their civilization. — The Gauls were in no sense savages, although they were little more than half-civilized. The peasants, who were practically serfs, lived in small round huts with thatched roofs, while the rich nobles built large stone houses. They had their herds of cattle, pigs, and horses, and cultivated corn and the coarser grains. They lived chiefly on bread, meat, and milk.

The Gauls of Caesar's time *spoke* a language which we call *Celtic*, but as they had no written language we know very little about it. It was related more or less closely to the Celtic languages still spoken in Wales, western Ireland, the Scotch Highlands, and Britanny (France).

The country contained quite a number of walled towns and cities, some of which were connected by roads. The rivers were

spanned by rude bridges. In certain districts there were valuable mines, and along the coast there was considerable ship building. The people produced some painted pottery and minted their own metal coins.

Their religion was a form of nature worship with numerous deities, such as the god of thunder and the sun god. The Druids, who were their priests, practiced human sacrifice, and taught the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. They also acted as judges in all public and private disputes, and exercised extraordinary power over the people through punishment by excommunication.

The Gallic peoples did not all have the same form of government. Caesar mentions several as having a popular assembly and a senate of nobles. Some states were ruled by a king, others by a chief magistrate who was elected annually.

The Gauls as warriors. — The Gauls had been the source of much trouble to the Romans. It will be remembered that in 390 B.C. under Brennus they invaded Italy and ignominiously defeated the Romans at the Battle of the Allia. Again, when Hannibal crossed the Alps, he could not have hoped to achieve any success against the Romans, had he not secured reënforcements from the Gauls in northern Italy. It is true that since then Cisalpine Gaul had been conquered and Romanized, and that an entering wedge had been driven into Transalpine Gaul. But the Gauls farther north, though they had settled down to agricultural pursuits, were still keen for war, and made it their chief concern. Their weapons were the javelin, spear or dart, and the long two-edged sword which was fastened with a metal chain. They had large oblong or oval shields of wood or metal, and wore metal helmets topped with horns and grotesque heads of wild beasts. The chiefs and rich nobles had chain armor, and gold rings, bracelets, and necklaces.

In battle they advanced rapidly to the attack with loud shouts, and depended much upon the shock of their first onset against the enemy's line. They were strong and brave warriors, but lacked the steadiness and persistence of the Roman legionaries, and were markedly inferior in their officers and commanders.

The outcome of the war. — Such then were the Gauls, a hardy, impetuous, high-spirited people, quick to take up arms, elated by victory, easily disheartened by defeat. When Caesar became governor of the province, their situation was critical. The Germans across the Rhine were advancing aggressively and had already encroached upon their territory. The Romans were pressing them on the south. Thus it fell to Caesar to decide whether Gaul was to be Romanized or Germanized. It was fortunate not only for the Roman Empire but for the progress of the world that his conquest of Gaul settled the matter, and that in consequence of it the civilization that developed in that country was *Latin* rather than *Teutonic*.

C. IŪLĪ CAESARIS

COMMENTĀRIĪ DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

Book I

The chief divisions and peoples of Gaul

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque saepe mercātōrēs ad eōs commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque

---

TITLE: **Commentāriī**: *Notes*, which Caesar wrote as an authoritative account of his Conquest of Gaul. They comprise seven books, dealing with the campaigns of the seven years, 58–52 B.C. Caesar probably wrote them in the winter of 52 B.C., after his decisive defeat of Vercingetorix at Alesia.

CHAPTER **1.** SPECIAL GRAMMAR STUDY: **Gerundive Phrases** (**130**, (**2**), and **Note**); **Ablative of Separation** (**75**).

1. omnis (note its emphatic position), *as a whole.* **dīvīsa,** here used with **est,** not to form the Perf. Pass. tense, but as a predicate adj.; hence **est . . . dīvīsa,** *is divided.* **quārum ūnam (partem) incolunt Belgae, aliam (partem incolunt) Aquītānī, tertiam (partem incolunt eī), quī,** etc. **2. ipsōrum** *their own.* **linguā (79). 3. Celtae (53). nostrā (linguā);** what language? **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus, (85). 4. inter sē:** *from one another.* **5. dīvidit:** Why singular? See map. **8. minimē . . . saepe:** (lit., *least often*), *very seldom.* **mercātōrēs,** *traders* from the Province, who followed the course of the rivers up into Gaul, selling clothing, ornaments, and wine.

8
6
4
2
0
50
48
46
44
St.Albans
CASSI
Tamesis Fl.
ANCALITES
Londinium
TRINOBANTES
BRITANNIA
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
VECTIS I.
CASSITERIDES IAE.
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
SANIA I.
CAESARIA I.
Litus Cantianum
VENELLI
CALETES
Rotomagus (Rouen)
LEXONII
Arenus Fl.
ESUVII
Castra Rosci
CORIOSOLITES
REDONES
DIABLINTES
AUL.
VENETI
CENOMANI
Liricus Fl.
VENETICAE IAE.
Herius Fl.
NAMNETES
ANDES
Liger
AMBILIATI
Vigenna
PICTONES
Lemonum (Poitiers)
GALLIA
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 50 100
SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100
CAMPAIGNS. YEAR OF ROME. B.C.
696 58
697 57
698 56
699 55
700 54
701 53
702 52
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
SANTONES
Garantunus Fl.
PETROCOR
Duranius Fl.
Garumna Fl.
COCOSATES
AQUITANI
TARUSATES
SOTIATES
Oppidum (Sos)
ELUSATES
Atur Fl.
PTIANII
TARBELLI
SIBUZATES
BIGERRIONES
CANTABRI
Mare Cantabricum
HISPANIA
Iberus Fl.
Pyrenaei Mo
6 Longitude 4 West from 2 Greenwich 0 Long

Insula Batavorum
USIPETES
TENCTERI
Lupia Fl.
Mosa Fl.
Vacalus
Rura Fl.
MENAPII
SUGAMBRI
CHERUSCI
Visurgis Fl.
GERMANIA
Silva
Bacenis
Caesaris
CEUTRONES
AMBIVARITI
EBURONES
Castra Sabini & Cottae
Adnatuca
Tongres
Siga Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Logana Fl.
Moenus Fl.
MORINI
Lys R.
Scaldis Fl.
Portus
ATREBATES
NERVII
Castra Cicerones
Oppidum
Nemetocenna
(Beauvais)
Castra Crassi
Sabis Fl.
GEIDUMNI
CONDRUSI
SEGNI
CAEROSI
Arduenna Silva
TREVERI
Castra Labieni
MARCOMANI
VIROMANDUI
Castra Trebonii
Noviodunum
SUESSIONES
Bibrax
Axona
Durocortorum
(Rheims)
Mosella Fl.
VANGIONES
SUEBI
Silva
REMI
Mosa Fl.
MEDIOMATRICI
NEMETES
TRIBOCES
Nicer Fl.
Hercynia
Danuvius Fl.
Licus Fl.
MELD
Matrona Fl.
Lutetia
(Paris)
SENONES
Sequana
(Yonne)
Agedincum
(Sens)
LEUCI
Vosegus Mons
LATOBRIGI
SUEBI
HARUDES
TULINGI
Lac. Venetus
LINGONES
Vellaunodunum
(Trigueres)
Alesia
(Alise St. Reine)
MANDUBII
(Vingeanne)
Vesontio
(Besançon)
RAURICI
Oenus Fl.
AEDUI
Noviodunum
(Nevers)
Bibracte
Dubis
Cabillonum
Chalons sur Saône
Tigurinus pagus
Verbigenus pagus
HELVETII
RHÆTIA
Rhenus Fl.
LEPONTII
Gorgobina
Decetia
(Decize)
BOII
Elaver Fl.
AMBIVARETI
BRANNOVICES
AUL.
Matisco
(Mâcon)
AMBARRI
Jura Mons
Lacus Lemannus
Rhodanus
SEDUNI
VERAGRI
NANTUATES
Genava
Octodurus
(Martigny)
Gergovia
ARVERNI
SEGUSIAVI
Liger Fl.
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
Morginum
CEUTRONES
Mediolanum
(Milan)
Laus Pompei
Ticinum
(Pavia)
Cremona
Mantua
Padus Fl.
GALLIA CISALPINA
Cularo
Catorissum
Isara Fl.
CRAIOCELI
Mellosecum
Segusio
Augusta Taurinorum
(Turin)
VELLAVII
Ocelum
(Usseau)
Durotincum
Stabatio
Brigantium
Mt. Genèvre
CATURIGES
Tanarus Fl.
LIGURIA
Genua
Rhodannus Fl.
HELVII
VOCONTII
GABALI
Cebenna Mons
VOLCAE
ARECOMICI
ALBICI
Druentia Fl.
Pisæ
PROVINCIALES
Arelate
(Arles)
SALLYES
Aquae Sextiae
(Aix)
Massilia
(Marseille)
MASSILIENSES
Portus Herculis
Monoeci
Narbo
(Narbonne)
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
East from 4 Greenwich 6 8

sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum 10
continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

THE HELVETIAN CAMPAIGN — I, 2–29. (58 B.C.)

Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī

---

10. Germānīs, (68). quibuscum, (90, Note 1). 11. Quā (43). 12. virtūte (85). 13. proeliīs (79). suīs . . . eōs . . . ipsī . . . eōrum: Notice how clearly these Latin pronouns indicate the peoples to which they refer, as compared with the corresponding English pronouns.

Account for the case of: **linguā (LINE 2), Celtae (3), lēgibus (4), Aquītānīs (4), Hōrum (6), cultū (7), Germānīs (10), virtūte (12), proeliīs (13), Germānīs (13), fīnibus (13).**

Give the Principal Parts of: **incolunt (2), differunt (4), dīvidit (5), absunt (7), pertinent (9), gerunt (11), praecēdunt (12), contendunt (13), prohibent (14).**

What is **effēminandōs (9)**? Is it governed by **ad**? Explain the construction.

Questions: Point out the three main divisions of Gaul on the map. Trace the course of the rivers mentioned in Chap. 1. What are their modern names? What great river separated Gaul from Germany? Trace the course of the Rhone.

What was the population of Gaul? What language did the Gauls speak? How far had they advanced in civilization? Which states were the most warlike? How did they compare with the Germans in bravery? Did the Romans in Caesar's time look upon the Gauls or the Germans as a menace to the empire?

Where was the Roman Province of Gaul? When Caesar was appointed Governor of the Province, did he plan to conquer Gaul? Did he have any right to invade Gaul?

2. SPECIAL GRAMMAR STUDY: **Irreg. Verb *fīō* (34); Substantive Volitive Clauses (107).**

2. M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus (89): This was 61 B.C., three years before Caesar took command of the Province.

cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. Id facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā

A View of the Jura.

ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī Prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō

3. cupiditāte (81). coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis: Not a conspiracy, but a *league* or *alliance* of the nobles, who may have kept secret the plan to migrate, until they were ready to lay it before the people. **cīvitātī (61). 5. Id:** *This* (*plan*), viz., to migrate. Dir. obj. of **persuāsit. 8. monte Iūrā,** *the Jura range.* **10. Hīs rēbus fīēbat:** *The result was.* How literally? **ut . . . vagārentur . . . possent (111).** The entire clause is the subject of **fīēbat. 11. fīnitimīs (62). 12. quā ex parte** = *quā dē causā.* **bellandī** depends on **cupidī (59).** Is it a Gerund or a Gerundive? **magnō dolōre afficiēbantur,** *they were greatly annoyed.*

dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

They make preparations; Orgetorix forms a conspiracy

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt comparāre ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse exīstimāvērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

---

13. Prō multitūdine hominum: *Considering their population.* According to Chap. 29 they numbered only 263,000. That part of Switzerland, which the Helvetians occupied, now has a population of over 2,000,000! **15. mīlia (72). passuum (58). 16.** CLXXX: The actual distance is about 80 miles. This error may be due to a mistake on the part of a scribe in copying from a manuscript.

Account for the case of: **cōnsulibus (2), cupiditāte (3), cīvitātī (3), nātūrā (5), rēbus (10), fīnitimīs (11), sē (14), mīlia (15), passuum (15).**

Prin. Parts of: **persuāsit (5), possent (12), patēbant (16).**

Mood and Tense of: **exīrent (4), vagārentur (11).**

Questions: In what year was Caesar appointed Governor of the Province? How long before that did the Helvetians decide to migrate? In what modern country did the Helvetians dwell? Point out the boundaries of their territory on the map. What reasons did they have for migrating? Where did they wish to settle? What form of government did they have? How do you account for Orgetorix's great influence over them?

3. SPECIAL GRAMMAR STUDY: **Irreg. Verb *possum* (31); Complementary Infinitive (123).**

1. Hīs rēbus: *By these considerations.* **2. pertinērent (112). 3. quam maximum:** What does **quam** with the *superlative* mean? See Vocab. **5. suppeteret (104). 7. in tertium annum,** *for the third year, i.e.,* 59 B.C. **8. cōnfīrmant:** The *Historical Present,* which

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque persuādet Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Illīs cōnfīrmat sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum, atque suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs sēsē tōtīus Galliae imperium obtinēre posse spērant.

---

is very common in Latin, but rare in English. How does it affect the Sequence of Tenses (**94, Note 1**)? How many examples of it are there in this chapter? **9. sibi** (**62**). **12. quod:** Pron. or conj.? Why? **13. prīncipātum:** The Aeduan state was divided into two factions, the one pro-Roman led by Diviciacus, the other anti-Roman led by Dumnorix. As Rome had failed to help the Aedui in their struggle against the Sequani and Germans, the anti-Roman faction with Dumnorix as its head was the stronger at this time. **14. plēbī:** Dative with the adj., **acceptus** (**68**); freely, *popular with the masses.* **16. obtentūrum (esse):** **esse** is often omitted in the Fut. Act. and Perf. Pass. Infin. So also **conciliātūrum (esse)** (**17**). **18. ōrātiōne,** *argument.* **inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant:** *exchanged an oath-bound pledge.* How lit.? **19. per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs,** *through three most powerful and firmly established nations,* viz., the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Aedui.

Case: **rēbus** (**1**), **sibi** (**7**), **sibi** (**9**), **Casticō** (**10**), **tempore** (**13**).

Prin. Parts: **permōtī** (**1**), **cōnstituērunt** (**2**), **coëmere** (**4**), **dēligitur** (**9**), **suscēpit** (**10**).

Mood and Tense: **cōnfīrmāre** (**6**), **occupāret** (**12**), **cōnārētur** (**15**).

Questions: What two powerful nations lay to the west of the Helvetians? What river separated their territories? What did Orgetorix undertake to do with regard to these nations? Who was the most prominent man in each of them? What plot did Orgetorix concoct with them? How did he persuade them to join him? Why were their designs treasonable?

The conspiracy is disclosed. Orgetorix, summoned to trial, dies

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; oportēbat eum damnātum īgnī cremārī.

Diē cōnstitūtā Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. Helvētiī autem arbitrantur, ipsum sē interfēcisse.

The Helvetians make ready to migrate; other tribes join them

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua

---

4. Special Grammar Study: **Aliquis** and **quisque** (**22**); **Infinitive as subject or object** (**124**).

1. Ea rēs: *This plot.* **Mōribus** (**82, Note**). **2. ex vinculīs:** (lit., out of chains), *i.e.*, (standing) *in chains.* **dīcere** (**124**). **3. damnātum,** (*if*) *convicted.* **4. Diē** (**88**). Why fem.? **familiam,** *slaves.* **5. ad,** adv., *about.* **7. eōdem,** adv. **nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit,** *he escaped pleading his case.* How lit.? The presence of so many slaves and followers of Orgetorix overawed the judges and compelled them to suspend the trial. **8. iūs suum,** *its right* to bring to trial a man who was charged with crime.

Case: **Mōribus** (**1**), **Diē** (**4**), **armīs** (**8**).

Prin. Parts: **coēgērunt** (**2**), **oportēbat** (**3**), **ēripuit** (**8**), **mortuus** (**10**).

Mood and Tense: **dīcere** (**2**), **dīceret** (**7**), **cōnārētur** (**9**).

Questions: How did the Romans punish traitors in the time of the kings? Account for Orgetorix's sudden death.

5. Special Grammar Study: **Irreg. Verb *ferō*** (**32**).

2. ex-eant: Pres. Subj. of **ex-eō** (**111**). The clause, **ut . . . exeant,** explains *id.*

omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur. Boiōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, ad sē sociōs recipiunt.

Of two possible routes they select the route through the Province

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,

---

5. praeter (id) quod. **7. sub-eunda:** From **sub-eō.** Gerund or Gerundive? **7. trium mēnsium molita cibāria,** *three months' (supply of) ground grain.* According to Chap. 29 the Helvetians and their allies numbered 368,000 souls. It has been estimated that their column on the journey would extend fifteen miles! **10. ūnā,** adv. **11. Boiōs:** From this word is derived **Bo-hemia,** "*Home of the Boii.*" **agrum Nōricum:** *The territory of the Norici* was far to the east, in what is now a part of Austria south of the Danube. Noreia was their chief city.

Case: **domum (6), spē (6), quemque (8), domō (8).**

Prin. Parts: **incendunt (5), sublātā (7), efferre (8), iubent (8), proficīscantur (10).**

Mood and Tense: **essent (7), proficīscantur (10).**

Questions: Why did the Helvetians burn their homes? How much ground grain would each person require a day? How would it be carried? How long would the emigrants' column extend *en route?* Point out the location of the Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi. How far east had the Boii been?

6. Special Grammar Study: **Irreg. Verb *eō* (33); Relative Clause of Purpose (105).**

1. quibus itineribus: Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent of the Relative in the relative clause, as he does here. It is done for greater clearness. Another example of it occurs later in this chapter. **2. possent (112). ūnum per Sēquanōs:** This pass about 17 miles from Geneva

inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, quā vix singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī eōs prohibēre possent; alterum per Prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea

Mill-Race Gorge.

This is about seventeen miles below Geneva and is the narrowest point on the route of the Helvetians.

quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus est Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs

is now called the Pas de l'Ecluse. Here the Rhone breaks through the Jura range. **3. quā,** adv., *where.* **4. dūcerentur,** *could be drawn* **(112).** **7. nūper,** *recently.* The Allobroges were first conquered in 121 B.C., and thereafter were included in the Roman Province. In 61 B.C. they rebelled, but were quickly subdued. Naturally they would not now feel kindly disposed toward the Romans, who had defeated them only three years before.

pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar hastens to Geneva and plans to halt the Helvetians

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per Prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem con-

---

11. persuāsūrōs . . . coāctūrōs: Observe that here are two more instances where **esse** is omitted with the Fut. Infin. **12. paterentur** (from **patior**), (**107**). **14. conveniant** (**105**). **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs,** *the fifth day before the Calends of April, i.e.*, March 28th. In periods of time the Romans counted both ends. **15. L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus,** 58 B.C. Piso was the father of Calpurnia, Caesar's wife.

Case: **locīs** (**8**), **vī** (**12**).

Prin. Parts: **dūcerentur** (**4**), **paterentur** (**12**), **dīcunt** (**13**).

Mood: **possent** (**5**), **paterentur** (**12**), **conveniant** (**14**).

Questions: Why were the Helvetians confined to only two routes? Point out the routes on the map. Why did they choose to go through the Province? Were the Allobroges under the protection of the Romans? How could the Helvetians go through the country of the Allobroges? What great army forced its way through a small country at the beginning of the late World War? When and where were the Helvetians and their allies to assemble for the migration?

7. Special Grammar Study: **Irreg. Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō* (35); Ablative of Description (84); Subjunctive of Anticipation (116).**

1. Caesarī: About the middle of March 58 B.C. the startling news was brought to Caesar, who was still in Rome, that the Helvetians were planning to journey through the Province. They and their allies were to assemble on the bank of the Rhone on the 28th of that very month! If he was to prevent this huge host from forcing its way through Roman territory, he must act at once. He left Rome immediately. **id,** *it*, explained by the clause **eōs . . . cōnārī. 3. quam maximīs potest itineribus:** Notice here the *full form* of a phrase consisting of **quam** with a *superlative;* **potest** is usually omitted, as in **quam maximum, 3,** 3.

tendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per Prōvinciam facere, propterea quod nūllum aliud iter habērent; sē rogāre, ut sibi licēret eius voluntāte id facere. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque exīstimābat hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per Prōvinciam itineris faciundī, ab iniūriā et maleficiō temperātūrōs. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit,

4. ad, *to the vicinity of* (**74**). **ad Genavam pervenit:** Plutarch, a Greek writer, says that Caesar reached the Rhone on the eighth day after leaving Rome. He must have traveled about 90 miles a day. **Prōvinciae . . . imperat:** *He levied upon the Province* (**61**). **6. legiō ūna:** The famous Tenth, upon whose bravery and loyalty Caesar learned to depend more than upon any other legion in his army. **9. Sibi esse in animō,** *that they had in mind*, or more freely, *that they intended.* How lit.? **sibi** (**67**). **11. habērent:** Subjunctive, because it is in a *Dependent Clause* in Ind. Disc. (**118**). **sē rogāre:** (another *Main Clause* depending on **dīcerent**), *that they requested.* **13. occīsum:** Supply **esse;** likewise with **pulsum, missum, concēdendum, temperātūrōs,** and **sūmptūrum** in the following lines. **Esse** is so frequently omitted, that on meeting a Fut., or a Perf. Passive Participle, or a Gerundive *in the Acc. case*, one should **stop to consider** whether the construction of the sentence requires a *participle* or *an infinitive.* If *an infinitive* is required, **esse** is to be supplied. **14. sub iugum missum:** This humiliating defeat occurred in 107 B.C., when the Cimbri (who were aided by the Tigurini, a *Helvetian* tribe), repeatedly defeated the Roman armies. See page **203.** **concēdendum** (**esse**): Impersonal, referring to the Helvetians' request. How is the Gerundive to be translated, when it is used with any part of the verb **sum**? (**130,** 1). **16. itineris faciundī:** How is this Gerundive to be translated? Why? (**130,** 2). **18. dum mīlitēs convenīrent: dum** means *until*, when followed by the Subj.

diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; si quid vellent, ad Id. Aprīl. reverterentur.

Caesar fortifies the bank of the Rhone and prevents the Helvetians from crossing

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex Prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, — mīlia passuum XVIIII — mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, ut Helvētiōs trānsīre cōnantēs prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī

---

denoting *anticipation* (**116**). **19. diem** (like the Eng. *a day or two*), *time*. **sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur:** *if they wished anything, they should return about the Ides of April, i.e.*, Apr. 13th.

Case: **eōs (1), Prōvinciae (4), iniūriā (16).**

Prin. Parts: **licēret (12), occīsum (13), pulsum (14), respondit (18), sūmptūrum (19).**

Mood and Tense: **dīcerent (9), licēret (12), posset (17).**

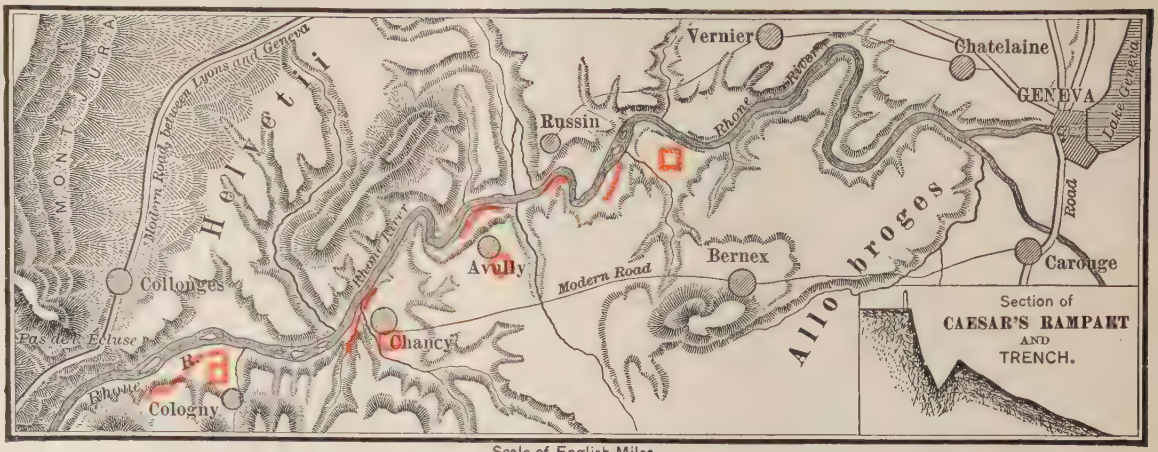
Questions: Why did Caesar regularly refer to himself in the 3d person? When did he learn that the Helvetians were planning to go through the Province? How far was Geneva from Rome? How did he travel? At what rate? What did he do on his arrival at Geneva? How large was the Roman army in Gaul? How many men constituted a legion? What request did the Helvetians make? Why did Caesar deem it unwise to grant the request? Why did he not refuse point blank to do so?

8. Special Grammar Study: **Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse (118); Genitive of Description (57).**

4. mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque: The left bank of the Rhone from Geneva to the Pas de l'Ecluse — about 17 Eng. miles — is so steep that it would not need much fortifying except at the fords. Caesar probably cut the slopes down quite sharply about sixteen feet, and banked up the earth on the side toward the river, thus forming a rampart and a trench, which would be hard to scale in the face of his soldiers at the top.

To face page 270

Caesar's Line of Works Along the Rhone from Geneva to Pas de L'Écluse



ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per Prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, sē eōs prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, aliī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs,

LAKE GENEVA.

flūmen trānsīre cōnantur; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere cōnantur. Sed operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

11. spē (75). **12. aliī,** *some.* **nāvibus . . . factīs:** *i.e.*, in order to transport their troops, they (1) lashed boats together, and (2) constructed a number of rafts. **15. operis mūnītiōne,** *by the strength of the fortifications.* How lit.?

Case: **legiōne (1), pedum (5), ūllī (10), spē (11).**

Mood and Tense: **possit (7), cōnentur (11).**

Prin. Parts: **dispōnit (6), revertērunt (9), ostendit (11), dēiectī (12), dēstitērunt (16).**

Questions: How did Caesar fortify the bank of the Rhone? Why did not the Helvetians try to cross the river before he had completed his fortifications? Did he intentionally deceive them? Had he any right to do so? How did they try to force his intrenchments?

The Sequani permit the Helvetians to go through their country

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Ille autem cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō obstrictās habēre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, atque perficit ut obsidēs inter sēsē dent: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

---

9. Special Grammar Study: ***Cum* Causal Clauses (114).**

1. ūna . . . via, *only one way*, viz., along the right bank of the Rhone and through the Pas de l'Ecluse. Beyond the pass lay the territory of the Sequani. **Sēquanīs invītīs (89). 4. eō dēprecātōre (89). impetrārent,** *not* **imperārent. 8. novīs rēbus,** *a revolution* **(61). 9. suō beneficiō obstrictās** (lit., *bound by his kindness*), *placed under obligation to him.* **11. patiantur (107). perficit . . . dent,** *brought about an exchange of hostages.* How lit.? **dent (111). 12. Sēquanī . . . Helvētiī:** In apposition with the subject of **dent.**

Case: **Sēquanīs (1), eō (4), itinere (12).**

Prin. Parts: **mittunt (4), studēbat (8).**

Mood and Tense: **possent (3), prohibeant (12).**

Questions: What was the only course now left to the Helvetians? Through whose territory would they have to pass? What state lay to the west of the Sequani? Was there any alliance between this state and Rome? Through whose influence did the Helvetians get permission to go through Sequanian territory? What led him to use his influence for them? What agreement was made by the Sequani and Helvetii? If a state failed to keep its agreement, what would be the fate of its hostages?

Obtaining five more legions in Italy, Caesar crosses the Alps in pursuit of the Helvetians

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō Prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre

10. 1. Caesarī renūntiātur: *Word was brought back to Caesar*, probably by men who had been sent out to get information of the movements of the Helvetians. **Helvētiīs esse in animō:** See note to **sibi esse in animō**, page **269**, line 9. **2. in Santonum fīnēs:** This was the territory the Helvetians expected to seize and permanently occupy. **3. ā Tolōsātium fīnibus:** The Tolosates, whose capital was **Tolōsa** (*Toulouse*), were about 120 miles southeast of the Santones. The intervening country, as Caesar states in the next sentence, was open and fertile. **4. magnō cum perīculō Prōvinciae, ut . . . fīnitimōs habēret,** freely, *that it would be very dangerous for the Province to have as neighbors.* **5. Prōvinciae (55). 6. locīs patentibus (68). 7. habēret (111). mūnītiōnī (62). Labiēnus,** who proved to be Caesar's most capable lieutenant general. **8. Ītaliam:** Cisalpine Gaul in northern Italy, embracing the great valley of the Po, was in Caesar's Province. The district south of the Po was thoroughly Romanized. **9. duās legiōnēs:** raw recruits, the XIth and XIIth. **trēs:** veteran legions, the VIIth, VIIIth, and IXth. **10. Aquileia** was a strongly fortified town at the head of the Adriatic. **11. per Alpēs:** He probably took the Mt. Genèvre pass (6102 ft.), a few miles south of the Mt. Cenis pass (6893), by which Hannibal is supposed to have crossed the Alps. See page **174,** line 14. **13. exercitum:** Labienus had joined Caesar with the Xth, so that his army consisted of six legions, and the auxiliaries from the Province, mentioned in **8, 2.**

cōnantur. Hīs pulsīs complūribus proeliīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris Prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā Prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Aedui and other states ask for protection against the Helvetii

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt quī auxilium rogent: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī eōrum

---

Case: **locīs (6), itineribus (8).**

Prin. Parts: **fieret (4), intellegēbat (4), praefēcit (8).**

Mood: **fieret (4), habēret (7).**

Questions: Point out the country of the Santones and the Tolosates. Why would the settlement of the Helvetians in western Gaul be more dangerous to the Province than a return to their former homes? Where did Caesar go to obtain reënforcements? Where is Aquileia? Over what pass did he cross the Alps? Would the mountain roads be free from snow at this time of the year? Trace Caesar's route from Cisalpine Gaul, across the Alps, to the Rhone. How many men did he now have in his army?

11. Special Grammar Study: **The Gerundive with *sum* (130, 1); Dative of Agent (66); Dative of Possessor (67).**

1. iam: It took Caesar about 50 days to go to Cisalpine Gaul, obtain reënforcements, and overtake the Helvetians. Meanwhile the emigrants had crawled slowly along a distance of 100 miles from the Pas de l'Ecluse. It was now about June 7th. **5. Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse:** *that they at all times had deserved so well of the Roman people,* more freely, *that they had always served the Roman people so well.* **6. ut . . . agrī eōrum . . . nōn dēbuerint,** *that their fields ought not to have been laid waste.* As the defective Eng. verb 'ought' has no perfect tense, the Latin Pres. Infinitives should be translated as *past* to make up for it.

vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar sibi nōn exspectandum esse statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Caesar annihilates one division of the Helvetii at the Saône

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs iūdicārī nōn possit in utram partem fluat. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, Helvētiōs iam trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxisse, et quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus

13. sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī, *that they had nothing left;* **reliquī,** here used as a noun, is a partitive Gen., depending on **nihil. solum:** Notice the quantity of the vowel **o.**

Case: **sibi (13), sibi (14).**

Prin. Parts: **dēfendere (3), meritōs (5), dēbuerint (8).**

Mood and Tense: **possent (4), dēbuerint (8), exspectandum esse (14), pervenīrent (16).**

Questions: Into whose territory had the Helvetians advanced early in June? Had they thus far committed any offence against the Romans, which would constitute a *casus belli?* What complaints did the Aedui, Ambarri, and Allobroges make to Caesar? Would he be justified now in attacking the Helvetians without a formal declaration of war?

12. Special Grammar Study: **Review: Ablative of Cause (81); Ablative of Means (79); Clauses of Result (110).**

1. Flūmen est Arar: *There is a river (called) the Saône.* **2. lēnitāte (84). 4. trānsībant:** In the following chapter we are told that the Helvetians were 20 days crossing the river. **7. dē tertiā vigiliā,** *in the third watch, i.e.,* some time between midnight and 3 A.M.

ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

The Arar, now called the Saône.

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae, quae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, prīnceps poenās per-

---

8. ē castrīs: Probably on the heights of Sathonay, a short distance north of the junction of the Saône with the Rhone. The Helvetians were 11 miles north of him. **11. in . . . silvās:** Acc., because of the idea of motion implied in **abdidērunt.** **18. prīnceps poenās persolvit:** (Like **prior** and **prīmus, prīnceps** is sometimes used to denote *the first to* do something), *was the first to pay the penalty.*

solvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, interfēcerant.

Summary of Chapters 13–20

After overwhelming the Tigurini, Caesar bridged the Saône and crossed it in a single day. The Helvetians then sent envoys to tell him that he had no reason to be proud of his slaughter of one canton. Their forefathers had taught them to depend upon bravery rather than ambuscades. They reminded him of their crushing defeat of the Romans only fifty years before, and predicted that a like disaster would befall his army, if he persisted in following them.

Caesar in turn charged them with (1) trying to force their way through the Province, and (2) ravaging the country of his allies. Nevertheless he would make peace with them, if they would indemnify the Aedui and Allobroges. They scornfully rejected his terms and resumed their journey. Thereafter for fifteen days Caesar followed them at a distance of about five miles.

Meanwhile the Aedui failed to furnish the grain they had promised. Assembling the Aeduan chieftains who were in his camp, Caesar sharply rebuked them for their remissness at so critical a time. One of their number then told him that it was not their fault, and laid the blame upon certain powerful men, who had prevented the people from collecting grain to aid the Romans. Upon further investigation Caesar found that it was all due to the treachery of Dumnorix. When, however, his brother Diviciacus interceded for Dumnorix, Caesar pardoned him, but warned him not to commit any further offence.

Case: **partēs (5), flūmen (6), cāsū (16).**

Prin. Parts: **iūnctīs (4), trānsībant (4), concīdit (10), abdidērunt (11), persolvit (18).**

Mood and Tense: **fluat (3).**

Questions: What were the Helvetians doing, when Caesar overtook them? Point out where he encamped. Was it fair for Caesar to attack one canton, when it could not get aid from the others? Why was he particularly pleased with *the defeat of this division?*

Caesar plans to surprise the Helvetians

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, mīsit explōrātōrēs, quī cognōscerent quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus. Renūntiātum est ascēnsum esse facilem. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

---

21. Special Grammar Study: **Review: Indirect Questions (117); Indirect Discourse with Perfect and Future Infinitive (125).**

1. Eōdem diē: "The same day" that he had summoned the Aeduan chieftains to a council with regard to the grain supply and had had interviews with Diviciacus and Dumnorix, as related in the foregoing summary. About June 27th. **sub monte,** *at the foot of a hill* **near** Bibracte in the valley of the *Loire* (**Liger**). **4. in circuitū** (lit., *in the going around*), *from the other side.* Caesar wished to find out whether it would be feasible to send a force secretly to ascend the hill behind the Helvetians, so that it might attack the enemy in the rear while he attacked it in front. **6. eīs ducibus,** *with those as guides.* **7. quid suī cōnsilī sit,** *what his plan was.* **cōnsilī (56). 10. reī (59). in exercitū L. Sullae:** In the war with Mithridates, 88–84 B.C. See page **206**, 17. **11. in M. Crassī (exercitū):** In the slave insurrection (71 B.C.), when Crassus defeated Spartacus.

Case: **explōrātōribus (1), hostēs (1).**

Prin. Parts: **cōnsēdisse (2), cognōscerent (3), ascendere (7), ostendit (8).**

Mood and Tense: **esset (3), cognōscerent (3), sit (7).**

Questions: Give a brief account of the events related in the omitted chapters (13–20). How far had the Helvetians advanced? What was the date? What were Caesar's orders to Labienus? What did the rest of the army do? Why did Caesar select Considius to lead the scouts?

The plan fails through the mistake of Considius

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque (ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit) aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.

Labiēnus, ut eī erat praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

---

22. Special Grammar Study: **Review**: ***Cum* Circumstantial Clauses (113)**; **Ablative of Agent (78)**; **Ablative of Time (88)**; **Accusative of Duration or Extent (72)**.

1. Prīmā lūce: At this season about 4 A.M. **2. ipse = et Caesar ipse.** Notice the omission of *and* here as well as in lines 5 and 8. It serves to *quicken the action* in the sentence. **passibus:** Abl. of Comparison, used with comparatives when **quam,** *than* is omitted (**86**). **3. neque:** Translate the negative with **aut . . . aut,** *and . . . neither . . . nor.* **4. equō admissō:** See Vocab., under **admittō.** **7. īnsignibus,** *decorations* on the standards, and the helmet-crests. **13. Multō diē,** *Late in the day.* **15. (id) quod,** *that which = what.* Supply **id** as the object of **renūntiā(vi)sse. prō vīsō:** (lit., *for* (something) *having been seen*), *as if seen.* In curt military fashion Caesar merely states the facts, and wastes no words in further criticism of the unfortunate blunder of Considius. **16. quō cōnsuērat intervāllō = eō intervāllō, quō hostēs sequī cōnsuēverat,** *at the usual distance.*

Prin. Parts: **comperit (3), īnstruit (8), mōvisse (14), cōnsuērat (16), pōnit (17).**

Caesar turns to Bibracte for supplies, and is followed by the Helvetians

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, seu quod eōs rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Mood and Tense: **abesset (3), voluerit (6), vīsae essent (10), vīdisset (15).**

Questions: Why did Caesar's plan to surprise the Helvetians miscarry? Was Considius really to be blamed for reporting what he *thought* he had seen? What was the "usual distance" between the two armies? Prove it.

23. Special Grammar Study: (Chapters 23–24): **Review: Accusative of *Place Whither* (74); Ablative Absolute (89); Ablative of Specification (85).**

1. Postrīdiē eius diēī (lit., *On that day's following day*), *On the next day.* **super-erat:** From what verb? **4. mīlibus:** What use of the Abl.? See note to **passibus** in the preceding chapter. **reī (62). 5. prōspiciendum (esse):** used impersonally, *that he ought to provide for.* How lit.? **8. quod . . . exīstimārent:** As another reason for this impression Caesar adds: "and all the more so, because on the day before, after having seized a higher position, they had not joined battle." The Causal Clauses, **quod . . . exīstimārent** and **(9) quod . . . cōnfīderent,** take the *Subjunctive*, because Caesar states these reasons *not as facts*, but as what he *supposed* to be the reasons. Compare the *Indicative* Causal Clauses in the first paragraph, which Caesar states as *facts*, for which he himself can vouch. **11. ā novissimō agmine:** See Vocab., under **agmen.**

Case: **ā Bibracte (2), Bibracte (6).**

Both sides prepare for battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocāvīt. Intereā sarcinās

Scene of the Battle with the Helvetians.

Prin. Parts: **āvertit** (**5**), **discēdere** (**9**), **interclūdī** (**10**), **cōnfīderent** (**10**).

Questions: Where was Bibracte? Why did Caesar stop following the enemy and turn aside to go to Bibracte? State two reasons which might have led the Helvetians to follow Caesar?

24. 1. id: Object of **ad** in **ad-vertit.** **2. collem:** The hill above Armecy, 16 Eng. miles southeast of a high plateau, now called *Mt. Beuvray*, which was the site of ancient Bibracte. **3. interim,** *i.e.*, while his cavalry were retarding the advancing enemy. **triplicem aciem:** The four veteran legions were drawn up side by side in three lines, each line being eight men deep.

in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum locum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Romans charge. The Helvetians are forced back, but rally

25. Caesar, prīmum suō equō deinde equīs omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs, ut, aequātō omnium perīculō, spem fugae

---

7. eum locum . . . mūnīrī: In the course of excavation on this hill several intrenchments were uncovered, containing bones, armor, and weapons. **8. iussit:** All these preparations for the battle must have occupied the Romans about two hours. **9. ipsī,** *i.e.*, the fighting men. **aciē (82).** **11. sub,** *up toward.* As the attacking force, the Helvetians were under the disadvantage of having to advance half way *up the hill* where Caesar had posted his veteran legions.

Prin. Parts: **cōnscrīpserat (6), contulērunt (9), reiectō (10).**

Questions: How did Caesar arrange his forces for battle? What battle formation did the Helvetians have? Describe it. Which army had the better position? Why?

25. Special Grammar Study: **Dative of Purpose (64); Dative of Reference (65); Dative with Special Verbs (61).**

The approaching engagement was bound to prove eventful in Caesar's career. He had served as an officer in previous campaigns, he had led an army in Spain, but this was his first real test as commander-in-chief against a powerful veteran army. His reputation as a general, his influence in Gaul, his control of the Province, — all were at stake! What of his army? He hardly knew his staff officers. The soldiers knew even less of him. The four veteran legions, upon which he must depend, numbered a scant 15,000 men. He had two legions (12,000 at the most) of raw recruits, and the Gallic auxiliaries (perhaps 30,000), — upon which he could *not* depend. Over against these, the enemy could muster 92,000 fighting men (Chap. 29), well disciplined and hardened by constant battling with the Germans. The odds were certainly against Caesar! Why not rather march on to Bibracte, and play safe? But no! that is not Caesar's way. Come what may, he is determined to settle the matter then and there by a pitched battle. At one o'clock in the afternoon he is ready. The massive Helvetian phalanx is already advancing up the hill. The attack is imminent.

1. suō equō (remōtō). omnium, *i.e.*, of all his mounted officers.

Auzon
la Boulaye
Montmort
Montoru
Ste. Radegonde
TOULON
SUMMIT OF HILL
Arroux
Brook
Veillerot
Brook
Road
Road
Road

tolleret, — cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs, in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque pīla ēvellere neque, sinistrā impedītā, satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Itaque multī, diū iactātō bracchiō, scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre praeoptābant. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī, pedem referre, et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant

---

3. cohortātus suōs: In the Roman army the commanding general regularly addressed the soldiers just before they entered battle. **4. pīlīs missīs:** These heavy pikes, weighing about ten pounds, were hurled 60–75 feet. Since in this battle they were hurled *downward*, they must have struck the Helvetian line with tremendous force. **5. Eā disiectā:** As long as the front line of the phalanx remained unbroken, it was invincible. But the volley of **pīla,** wounding and killing many of the enemy, had opened the line in many spots, and the Romans were quick to rush in, plying their short swords with swift thrusts to the right and left. In this hand-to-hand struggle the Helvetians, equipped with unwieldy shields and long swords, were at a distinct disadvantage. **7. Gallīs** (**65**). **impedīmentō** (**64**). **8. trānsfīxīs et colligātīs:** *i.e.*, a single javelin would pierce and pin together two overlapping shields. **plūribus** agrees with **scūtīs,** but may be translated *in many instances*. **9. ferrum:** The iron shaft of the **pīlum** was about two feet long, and was made of soft iron, which bent easily. The barbed point itself was hardened. **sinistrā:** The shield was carried on the left arm. **12. pedem referre** (**coepērunt**). **13. mōns:** A hill to the north of their first position. **spatiō** (**87**). **14. eō,** adv. **15. Captō,** *reached*. **16. mīlibus** (**79**). **agmen hostium claudēbant:** As they were the rear guard, they must have been several

et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī sunt. Id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī bipertītō signa intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

After a fierce struggle the Helvetians are defeated. Caesar pursues them

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum

---

miles away when the battle began. **17. ex itinere,** *on the march, i.e.,* as soon as they came in sight of the two armies, they took in the situation, and without halting for rest, advanced rapidly to attack the Romans on the flank and rear. **20. signa intulērunt:** See Vocab. under **īnferō.** **21. victīs et summōtīs:** Participles used as nouns, in the Dative with the verb **resisteret (61);** *those who had been beaten and forced back,* viz., the Helvetians. **tertia:** *The third line* faced about, and received the attack of the *oncoming* **(venientēs)** Boii and Tulingi.

Case: **equō (1), Gallīs (7), impedīmentō (7), manū (11).**

Prin. Parts: **aggressī (18), victīs (21).**

Questions: Why was this a critical battle for Caesar? Why did he dismount first? Why did he make his staff dismount? Describe the **pīlum.** What purpose did it serve? How did the Romans use their swords in contrast with the Helvetians? Did the Helvetians fight bravely? What expressions can you find in the text to prove your point? What led to the second attack of the Helvetians? Point out the position of the two armies at each stage of the battle thus far.

26. Special Grammar Study: **Ablative with Deponents (80); Review: Genitive of Possession (56); Genitive of the Whole (58).**

2. alterī, *the one division,* the Helvetii, . . . **alterī,** *the other,* the Boii and Tulingi. **5. cum,** meaning *although,* is always followed by the Subjunctive **(115). āversum,** *turned in flight.* Caesar admired bravery even in the enemy.

hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem, etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, quī nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt. Nam nostrī et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum trīduum morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuērunt. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

---

6. Ad multam noctem: *until late at night.* **8. ē locō superiōre:** From the top of the rampart of carts. **11. impedīmentīs castrīsque:** Abl. with **potior** (**80**). **14. nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō:** They fled without stopping all through the remaining hours of that night. "Before the sun went down, evil tidings must have reached the non-combatants who were still wending their way towards the field. It is certain that many of the wagons never came into the corral. What despair fell upon the baffled emigrants; how the jaded cattle were headed round again towards the north, and goaded through that night; how those who escaped the slaughter tramped after, and told the tale of the calamity; the din, the confusion, the long weariness of the retreat, — these things it is easy to imagine, but those only who have shared the rout and ruin of a beaten army can adequately realize." — From *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul* by T. Rice Holmes. **Lingonum:** Their frontier was about 70 miles north of the battlefield. **15. quārto diē:** We would call it the *third* day. **17. Lingonas,** acc. pl. **18. nē . . . iuvārent:** (saying) *that they should not aid* (**118,** 2).

Case: **diē** (**15**), **trīduum** (**16**).

Prin. Parts: **coeperant** (**3**), **sequī** (**17**).

Questions: What was the outcome of the battle "on two fronts"? How long did the entire battle last? What sort of fighting went on far into the night? Where did the surviving Helvetians flee? On the map trace their course from the battlefield. Why did not Caesar pursue them at once?

The Helvetians beg for peace. One canton steals away at night

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque eius ad pedēs prōiēcissent flentēsque pācem petīssent, eōs in eō locō, quō tum erant, suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgerant, poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, sīve spē salūtis inductī, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

The fugitives are punished. All the rest (except the Boii) are sent back to their homes

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, imperāvit hīs, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, utī eōs conquīrerent et redūcerent; eōs reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit;

---

27. 1. lēgātōs . . . ad eum mīsērunt: While he was on the way. **7. ea:** Referring to **obsidēs, arma, servōs,** in the line above. **9. timōre perterritī:** Afraid that after giving up their arms they might be punished. **spē salūtis inductī:** Thinking that among so many thousands of surrendered men, their flight would go unnoticed. **prīmā nocte,** *early in the night.*

Prin. Parts: **perfūgerant (6), poposcit (6).**

Questions: Why did the Helvetians send envoys to Caesar instead of waiting for his arrival? What were Caesar's demands? What led the 6000 men to slip away at night?

28. 1. Quod: Object of **resciit.** It refers to the flight of the Verbigeni mentioned in the last sentence of Chap. 27, and thus connects the two sentences. How should such a "connective relative" be translated? **(43). 2. conquīrerent (107). 3. in hostium numerō habuit:** *he treated as enemies, i.e.,* he either put them to death or sold them into slavery.

et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Aeduīs permīsit, ut in fīnibus suīs Boiōs collocārent; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem recēpērunt.

The number of the Helvetians and their allies

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae, litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae, repertae sunt et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināti m ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī,

7. tolerārent (112). **8. facerent,** *furnish.* **14. Aeduīs permīsit ut in suīs fīnibus Boiōs collocārent:** The Aedui were less powerful than their rivals, the Sequani, and asked Caesar to allow the Boii to settle in their territory. As Caesar wished to strengthen the Aedui, he granted their request. **16. in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem:** The Aedui admitted the Boii into citizenship by granting them full legal rights and liberty.

Case: **Helvētiōs (4), ratiōne (10).**

Prin. Parts: **restituere (8) dedērunt (15), recēpērunt (16).**

Mood: **facerent (8), essent (14).**

Questions: Why did Caesar deal so severely with the Verbigeni? Was it justifiable? Why did he insist that the Helvetians should return to their own land? Why did he allow the Boii to settle in the Helvetian country?

29. 1. tabulae: See illustrations on page 26. **litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae,** *written in Greek characters:* As the Gauls had no alphabet of their own, they used the Greek letters to write the words of their language. There was a Greek colony at **Massilia** (*Marseilles*), from which they probably obtained the Greek alphabet. **3. exīsset (117). 4. possent (112).**

senēs mulierēsque. Quōrum omnium summa erat Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuit ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

The War with Ariovistus, King of the Germans — I, 30–54

Summary of Chapters 30–48

News of Caesar's brilliant victory over the Helvetians soon spread through Gaul, and the chieftains of many states assembled to offer Caesar their congratulations. But they did not stop with that. They proceeded to inform him of a most serious danger that was threatening their land.

They told him of the long struggle for supremacy between the Aedui and the Arverni. Finally the Arverni and the Sequani had secured a force of German mercenaries, with whose aid they had overwhelmingly defeated the Aedui. But the victorious Sequani had suffered a worse fate than the conquered Aedui. For the Germans took a liking to their fertile fields, and, crossing the Rhine, occupied a third of their territory. More recently the German king Ariovistus, "a barbarous, passionate, headstrong man," had ordered them out of another large district in order to make room for 24,000 Harudes, who had come to him and asked for land. 120,000 Germans had already settled in Gaul! At that rate, it would not be long before they took possession of the entire land!

Caesar saw instantly how dangerous such a migration of Germans would be, not only to Gaul, but ultimately to Rome. He therefore assured the chieftains of his assistance and dismissed them.

Prin. Parts: **repertae (2), relātae (2).**

Questions: What proportion of the Helvetians and their allies "were able to bear arms"? What was the sum total of their losses? What proportion of the entire number returned to their homes? Estimate how many women, children, and old-folk were slain or sold as slaves.

His next step was to send an embassy to Ariovistus, inviting him to come to a conference. This Ariovistus haughtily declined to do. Caesar then despatched an ultimatum, demanding (1) that he should not bring any more Germans across the Rhine; (2) that he should return the Aeduan hostages and allow the Sequani to do likewise; (3) that he should not make war upon the Aedui or their allies. Ariovistus replied that he would take no orders from the

A View of the Rhine.

Roman people; he was entirely within his rights in his treatment of the Aedui; whenever Caesar felt like it, he would meet him in battle, and would show him what the invincible Germans could do.

This exchange of notes took considerable time. Meanwhile the Germans were not idle. An immense horde of them had reached the Rhine and were preparing to cross. Ariovistus was advancing with an army upon Vesontio (*Besançon*), a strongly fortified town of the Sequani. Caesar at once started eastward, and marching day and night seized and garrisoned Vesontio. While he delayed there for supplies, a panic spread through his camp. It affected soldiers and officers alike. They were filled with dismay at the thought of meeting the fierce Germans in battle. Caesar assembled

the centurions, and by a most vigorous and stirring speech restored their self-confidence and quelled the incipient mutiny. Seven days' further marching brought him within twenty-four miles of the enemy.

Ariovistus now offered to confer with Caesar, but insisted that they should come to the conference with no other escort but cavalry. To this Caesar consented, but instead of taking along his unreliable Gallic cavalry, he mounted the 10th legion on their horses, and thus secured a safe escort.

At the conference Caesar declared that the Roman people were bound to defend their allies, the Aedui, and reiterated his previous demands. Ariovistus replied that he had been invited by the Gauls themselves to enter their country. They had been defeated by him in a war which they had begun, and were therefore justly paying tribute to him. He had come into Gaul before the Romans, and they had no business to be in the province which he had conquered. Indeed, he had good reason to suspect that Caesar in spite of his feigned friendship was maintaining an army in Gaul simply for the purpose of crushing him. If Caesar did not withdraw from his territory, he would regard him not as a friend but as an enemy. On the other hand if Caesar would leave Gaul entirely to him, he would see that Caesar was amply compensated.

Caesar spoke at some length in answer to these points. While he was still speaking, he was informed that Ariovistus' cavalry was threatening his escort. He immediately withdrew, and returned to his camp. Two days later Ariovistus suggested that Caesar renew the conference or send him envoys. Caesar despatched Valerius Procillus and Marcus Metius with instructions to hear what Ariovistus had to say and bring back a report to him. When they entered the German camp, Ariovistus in the presence of his army shouted: "Why do you come to me? Is it for the purpose of spying?" They attempted to reply, but he stopped them and cast them into chains. He now advanced his army, and on the following day marched past the Romans and encamped two miles to the southwest, cutting them off from their base of supplies. Thereafter for five successive days Caesar led out his legions and offered battle, but for some unknown reason Ariovistus refused to be drawn out of his camp.

EXPLANATION

Caesar, marching from the south, encamped north of Modern Ostheim. Ariovistus, marching from the north, encamped on Zellenberg.

Caesar builds a second camp beyond Ariovistus

49. Ubi Ariovistum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs et partem auxiliōrum relīquit, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

---

49. 6. castra: The second camp was about a half mile south of the German camp. This move, therefore, opened the road to Vesontio, and restored Caesar's communication with his base of supplies. **8. expedīta,** *light-armed.* Translate as if it agreed with **hominum.**

Prin. Parts: **relīquit (12).**

Questions on the omitted chapters, I, 30–48: What Gallic people were suffering from German migrations into their territory? How many Germans had already settled in Gaul? On learning these facts, what did Caesar determine to do? What three demands did Caesar make in his ultimatum? What reply did Ariovistus make? Why did Caesar march day and night to reach Vesontio? What happened in the Roman camp at Vesontio? How did Caesar restore confidence in his army?

Trace Caesar's advance from Vesontio. How far from the German army was Caesar, when the German envoys came to him? Why did Ariovistus insist that both he and Caesar should come to the conference with no other escort but cavalry? What did Caesar do in view of this demand? What answer did Ariovistus make to Caesar's demands at the conference? Was he right? How did the conference end? What proposal did Ariovistus make two days later? What happened to Caesar's envoys? What was Ariovistus' next move? What did he accomplish by it? Point out the position of the two camps.

The Germans attack the small camp, but avoid a pitched battle

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū, multīs vulneribus et illātīs et acceptīs, Ariovistus suās cōpiās in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, reperiēbat apud Germānōs esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut mātrēs familiae sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Mood: **prohibērētur (2), perterrērent (9).**

Questions: Was Caesar's army afraid to meet the Germans? Prove it. Was Ariovistus afraid to try conclusions with Caesar? How did Caesar restore his line of communication? How did he divide his army between the two camps?

50. 3. potestātem fēcit, *gave an opportunity.* **8. multīs vulneribus et illātīs et acceptīs,** *after an indecisive engagement.* How lit.? **12. sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus:** The *lots* consisted of bits of twigs from fruit trees, which were marked and scattered on a white cloth. Three of these would be chosen at random, and interpreted according to the marks on them. The *prophecies* were said to be *inspired* by the sound of rushing waters. **13. dēclārārent (111). esset (117). eās (mātrēs familiae). 14. novam lūnam:** According to astronomers the "new moon" in September of the year 58 B.C. would fall on the 18th. This gives us the approximate date of the battle that followed. **contendissent (118).**

Case: **hostibus (3), Germānōs (11).**

Prin. Parts: **prōdīre (4), illātīs (8), quaereret (10).**

Mood: **dēcertāret (11), esset (13), contendissent (15).**

Questions: Why did the Germans avoid a decisive battle? What superstitions still exist among us about the new moon?

Caesar forces a decisive battle

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs relīquit quod satis esse vīsum est, et in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus omnēs ālāriōs cōnstituit, ut ad speciem eīs ūterētur; ipse, triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs; et nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur, omnem aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae, passīs manibus, mīlitēs in proelium proficīscentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

---

51. 2. quod satis esse vīsum est, *what seemed to be* (*a*) *sufficient* (*force*). **3. ad speciem:** The light armed auxiliaries (**ālārii**), which were usually posted on the wings (**ālae**) of the army, were drawn up in front of the smaller camp, and would thus *appear* to the Germans to be *legionary* soldiers. This was done by Caesar, in order that the Germans might not know that his infantry forces were outnumbered by theirs. **eīs** (**80**). **4. triplicī īnstrūctā aciē:** The arrangement of the legions in battle array is shown on the preceding map. In the rear line only *two cohorts* to each legion are shown, as one cohort from each was probably withdrawn to serve as the guard for the camp. (See line 1.) The front line formed by the legions must have been at least a mile long. **5. necessāriō:** Seeing that they *must* fight, the Germans — as brave men and good soldiers — set aside their superstitious fear, and decided to fight it out in the open. **6. generātim:** *by tribes, i.e.*, the forces of the different tribes formed separate divisions, fighting under their own officers and commander. **9. raedīs:** unlike the two-wheeled carts (**carrī**), these were four-wheeled covered wagons, probably resembling those of the American pioneers. **circumdedērunt,** *enclosed*, not in front, but on the sides and rear. **Eō,** adv., *thereon, i.e.*, upon the carts and wagons. **11. sē** refers to the women. Indir. Reflex. (**47**).

Case: **praesidiō** (**1**), **castrīs** (**1**), **manibus** (**10**).

Prin. Parts: **vīsum** (**2**), **ūterētur** (**4**).

Mood: **relinquerētur** (**8**), **trāderent** (**11**).

Questions: How did Caesar force a decisive battle? Why did not the Germans defend themselves from their camp? Why did they draw up their forces by tribes?

Desperate fighting. The Roman left wavers, but is reënforced

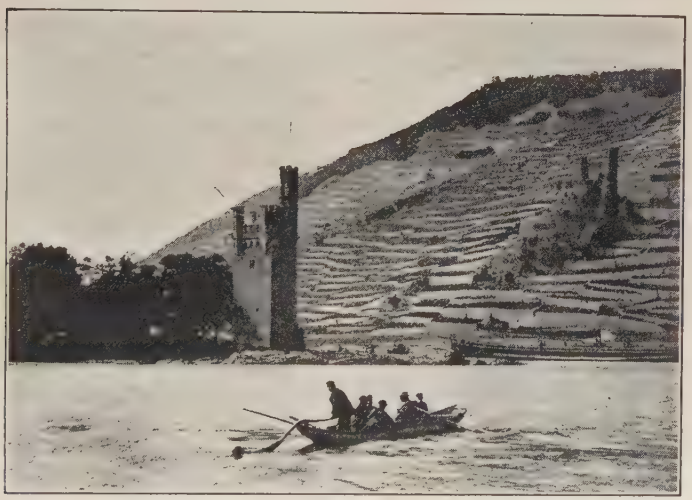
52. Caesar legiōnibus lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod hostium aciem ā sinistrō cornū minimē fīrmam esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita ācriter nostrī signō datō in hostēs impetum fēcērunt, itaque repente celeriterque hostēs prōcurrērunt, ut spatium coniciendī pīla in hostēs nōn darētur. Reiectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

---

52. 1. legiōnibus (62). lēgātōs et quaestōrem: Caesar had five lieutenant generals, each of whom he put in command of a single legion. The remaining legion was put in charge of a quaestor. Each of these six officers was thus held responsible for a particular legion. Moreover, as Caesar declares, every soldier and centurion would be roused to do his best when fighting under the watchful eyes of these superior officers. **2. eōs testēs,** *these as witnesses.* **quisque (mīles et centuriō). 6. ut spatium coniciendī pīla in hostēs nōn darētur:** Ordinarily, as in the battle with the Helvetians, the pikes were hurled when the enemy were 60–75 feet away, allowing the Romans just time enough to draw their swords before they closed with the enemy. But at the signal in this battle both sides dashed forward so swiftly that the Romans did not dare to hurl the **pīla. 10. manibus (79). 11. vulnerārent,** *dealt wounds.* **Cum,** *although* **(115). 14. Pūblius Crassus adulēscēns:** the younger son of Crassus, the triumvir, who was called **adulēscēns** to distinguish him from his father, and also from his older brother, Marcus, who afterwards served with Caesar in Gaul. **equitātuī (62). 15. expedītior,** *less engaged, freer to act.* **16. labōrantibus nostrīs:** *to our men who were hard pressed.*

The Germans are beaten. Ariovistus escapes. Caesar's envoys are rescued

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque fugere dēstitērunt, prius quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīndecim,



THE RHINE NEAR BINGEN.

Case: **pīla (6), phalanga (10), multitūdine (13).**
Prin. Parts: **prōcurrērunt (6), revellerent (10).**
Mood: **darētur (7), īnsilīrent (10), animadvertisset (14).**

Questions: Why did Caesar put his highest officers in charge of the legions? Why did he take position on the right wing? Would it not have been wiser for him to direct the left wing? Why did not the Romans use their pikes? What happened on the Roman right? What on the left? Who was Publius Crassus? What right did he have to order the reserves into the battle? Did Caesar commend or criticize him for doing so?

53. 1. Ita proelium restitūtum est: *Thus the battle was renewed.* Taken in connection with **labōrantibus, line 16,** this brief statement makes it clear that the Romans were so *hard pressed,* that the soldiers had actually *ceased fighting* when the reserves came to their assistance!

pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut, vīribus cōnfīsī, trānāre contendērunt aut, lintribus inventīs, sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī, nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus, eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā, trīnīs catēnīs vinctus, traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem, hostēs equitātū īnsequentem, incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium et sibi restitūtum vidēbat. Is, sē praesente, dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum esse dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

There can be no doubt therefore that their left wing narrowly escaped being routed. **3. quīndecim:** The manuscript reading is **quīnquāgintā**. But a flight of *fifty* miles is hardly possible, and as the Rhine is about 15 miles from the battlefield, it is probable that Caesar wrote **quīndecim.** **4. vīribus,** (*not* **virīs**), Abl. with **cōnfīdō.** **7. eā:** Abl. of means, but translate *in it.* **profūgit:** Caesar mentions Ariovistus' death in Book V, but no one knows when or how he died. **cōnsecūtī . . . interfēcērunt:** *overtook and killed.* **9. C. Valerius Procillus** and **M. Metius,** line **18,** were the two envoys who had been sent by Caesar to Ariovistus. See page **291.** **11. Caesarī** (**62**). **15. Is:** Procillus. **sē praesente,** *in his own presence.* **sortibus cōnsultum esse** (impersonal), *the lots were consulted.* **16. utrum:** (*to determine*) *whether.*

Case: **mīlia** (**3**), **cūstōdibus** (**9**), **catēnīs** (**10**), **sē** (**15**).

Prin. Parts: **nactus** (**7**), **vinctus** (**10**), **incidit** (**11**), **attulit** (**12**).

Mood: **reservārētur** (**17**), **esse** (**17**).

Questions: Did the Romans win this battle with ease? Did the Germans fight more fiercely than the Helvetians? Which battle brought the greater danger of defeat to the Romans? What became of the German army after the battle? Who was Procillus? What thrilling adventure did he have? What does Caesar's joy over his rescue show in regard to Caesar's attitude toward his friends?

Establishing winter quarters in Vesontio, Caesar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est. 5

---

54. 1. duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs: *In this single clause* Caesar sums up what he had accomplished during the summer, — "he had finished two important wars." No posing for his picture! No write up of his "splendid services to the Republic"! And yet he had every reason to be proud of his record. He had assembled an army; he had forced the Helvetians to return to their land; he had defeated the Germans and reëstablished the Rhine as a frontier. Through his success in these two campaigns he had scattered the war-clouds that threatened Rome in the form of barbarian migrations. That he preferred to state the facts so tersely throws light both upon his mind and character. **2. in hīberna in Sēquanōs:** Undoubtedly at Vesontio, a prosperous and well-fortified town. The question arises: Why did not Caesar withdraw his army to the Province, where it properly belonged? Not because — as has been suggested — he was now resolved to follow up his victories by the conquest of all Gaul. It is much more reasonable to conclude that he established his winter-quarters near the Rhine in order to ensure his allies, the Sequani, against any further encroachments upon their territory by the Germans. **4. ad conventūs agendōs,** *to hold court.* It was Caesar's duty, as governor of the province, to preside over the courts in the principal cities. Another reason for his going to Cisalpine Gaul was that he would be nearer Rome, and thus be able to communicate more easily with his political friends in the city.

Questions: At about what date did the campaign with the Germans end? What had Caesar accomplished in one summer? Why did he establish winter-quarters among the Sequani? How did Caesar occupy his time during the winter?

Book II

The Campaign against the Belgae (57 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–15

During the winter rumors reached Caesar that the Belgian states in the far north were forming a league to oppose a possible invasion by the Romans in the spring. Caesar enlisted two new legions, the XIIIth and XIVth, and early in the summer marched swiftly with his entire army to the borders of Belgium. Here he was met by envoys from the Remi, the nearest Belgian people, who said that they wished to become his allies, but that the rest of the Belgians were prepared to resist the Romans with an army of 300,000 men! Caesar gladly received the Remi in alliance, and then advancing into their territory, crossed the Aisne. Eight miles distant from his camp was the town of Bibrax, belonging to the Remi. This the Belgians attacked, but on finding that Caesar was sending reënforcements, they abandoned the assaults and advanced to within two miles of the Romans. Caesar did not propose to risk a battle with a force seven times as large as his own, so he fortified his position and awaited an attack. In front of him, however, there was a marsh, which the Belgians were not overeager to cross in the face of his soldiers. Why not rather force their way across the Aisne and attack Caesar from the rear? This they essayed to do. Sharp

---

Questions on omitted chapters, 1–15.

Locate the Belgae on the map. What led these states to form a league against the Romans? What was Caesar's first move with regard to this action of the Belgae? How many legions did he now have? Trace his route from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier. What Belgian people chose to cast their lot in with the Romans? How large an army did the remaining Belgians muster? Near what river did Caesar encamp? Describe the battle that followed. Why were the Belgae constrained to disperse their army? Were they permitted to go unmolested? Trace Caesar's course westward. What three states submitted to the Romans? What powerful state defied Caesar?

fighting occurred at the fords, but eventually the Belgae were repulsed.

They were very much disheartened by the failure of this plan. What was worse, they had not made proper provision for their huge army, and supplies were failing fast. "Soldiers cannot fight on an empty stomach!" They decided to return to their homes, but subsequently to rally to the defense of any state which the Romans might invade. About midnight they left camp in the utmost disorder. At daybreak Caesar despatched forces in pursuit, which overtook them and slaughtered them until the sun went down.

Caesar immediately marched westward, and as he advanced received in surrender successively the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani.

Beyond the Ambiani, stretching far to the northeast, dwelt the Nervii, a fierce and warlike people, who would allow no foreign traders to bring in wine or anything else pertaining to luxury. They sneered at their countrymen as cowards for submitting to the Roman people. As for themselves they declared they would neither send ambassadors nor accept any terms of peace.

The Nervii and their allies await Caesar at the river Sambre

16. Cum per Nerviōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlibus passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse, adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs; ab hīs etiam Aduatucōrum cōpiās exspectārī atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, eōsque quī per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniectōs esse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

---

16. 1. inveniēbat: Why is the imperfect used rather than the perfect? **3. mīlibus (86). 8. in eum locum,** *into a place.* **quō,** adv. = **ad quem.**

Case: **trīduum (1), exercituī (8).**

Mood: **vidērentur (7).**

Questions: Locate the Nervii, Atrebates, Viromandui, and Aduatuci. Trace the course of the river Sambre.

The Nervii plan a surprise attack. Their impenetrable hedges

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Eō tempore complūrēs ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs ūnā cum Caesare iter faciēbant. Quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt, atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere; neque esse quidquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abesset, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, futūrum esse ut reliquae cōnsistere nōn audērent.

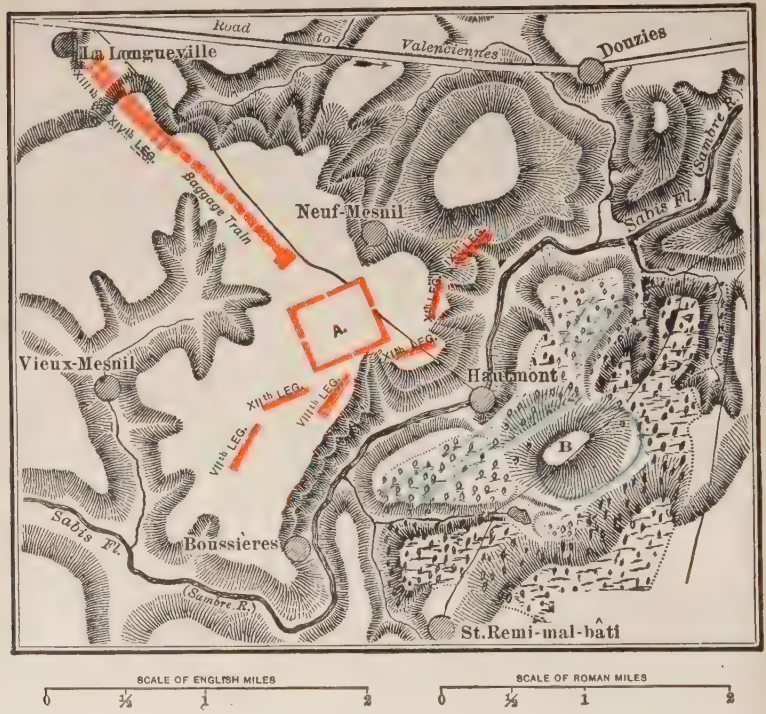
Adiuvābat etiam eōrum prōpositum quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent, quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, eius modī cōnsilium cēperant: Tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, et rubīs sentibusque inter-

---

17. 3. complūrēs . . . cum Caesare iter faciēbant: These Belgians and Gauls were not being held by Caesar as captives, but were probably accompanying the army as non-combatants on the chance of trading with the soldiers or looting after a battle. **5. cōnsuētūdine . . . perspectā:** *having observed the marching order of our army* for the past three days in the Nervian country. **8. neque esse quidquam negōtī . . . adorīrī,** *and that there was no difficulty . . . in attacking.* **negōtī (58).** **11. futūrum esse ut:** (the result would be), *it would follow that.* **12. Adiuvābat:** The obj. of this verb is **prōpositum;** the subj. is the clause, **quod . . . cēperant.** In translating, change to the passive construction: *The proposal . . . was favored by the fact that.* **13. cum equitātū nihil possent,** *having no strength in cavalry.* **nihil** used adverbially. **quō facilius . . . impedīrent:** Why is **quō** used instead of **ut? (106).** **15. vēnissent (118,** 1). **Tenerīs arboribus:** The trees, while still young, were cut into on one side and bent over until the top part became horizontal. The wound would heal, and many new branches would then grow downward to the ground, interweaving with those that grew out laterally from the trunk. Brambles and brier bushes planted thickly below pushed upward through the branches. Given time, such hedges would indeed "provide a very strong defence."

THE BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE (SABIS): FIRST PHASE

Book II, 18–22 To face page 301



EXPLANATION

Caesar's army, approaching the Sambre from the north, started to make a camp on a hill overlooking the river. The Belgian forces, comprising Nervians, Viromanduans, and Atrebatians, were lying in wait on the south side.

Supposing that each legion would be followed by its baggage train, the Belgians had planned to attack the first legion and destroy it before the others could come to the rescue, and in like manner to destroy the others one by one. Caesar, however, had placed six legions in light marching order first, then all the baggage, and two legions last, the XIIIth and XIVth; he sent cavalry, bowmen, and slingers in advance of the main column.

When the baggage train came into view, the Belgians hurled back the cavalry, bowmen, and slingers, rushed across the river and charged up the hill.

A. The Roman camp (chap. 18, ll. 1–7), with six legions forming in front.

B. The camp of the Belgians (chap. 26, ll. 10–12)

iectīs, saepēs dēnsās fēcerant, quae fīrmissimum mūnīmentum praebērent. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

The Romans make camp. The Nervii lie hidden on a hill across the river

18. Locī nātūra quem nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant, erat haec. Collis, ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis, ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminávimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

In certain localities with us there are hedges, clipped and trained for many generations, which grow to a height of ten feet and are three feet thick. It would be no child's play to hack an opening through such a hedge even with an ax or a hatchet. **18. praebērent (112). cum . . . impedīrētur (114).**

Case: **cōnsuētūdine (5), negōtī (8), equitātū (13), sibi (19).**

Prin. Parts: **adorīrī (10), audērent (11), Adiuvābat (12), incīsīs (16).**

Mood and Tense: **dēligant (2), audērent (11), praebērent (18).**

Questions: Describe Caesar's marching order, when no enemy was near. Who reported it to the Nervii? What plan of attack did they suggest? Describe the hedges that Caesar encountered in the Nervian country.

18. 2. Collis: *A hill,* on the north bank of the Sambre, on which the Romans were laying out a camp. **3. parī acclīvitāte collis:** *a hill with like slope,* across the river from the Romans. **4. adversus huic et contrārius:** *apposite to it* (the north hill) *and facing it.* **5. īnfimus apertus:** *cleared at the base; i.e.,* for about 1000 feet back from the river the hill was free from woods; above that point it was thickly wooded. **7. secundum,** prep., *along.* **9. pedum trium (57, Note).**

Case: **castrīs (1), acclīvitāte (3), pedum (9).**

Prin. Parts: **nāscēbātur (4), perspicī (6).**

Questions: What did the Romans regard as important in selecting a site for a camp? Describe the location of Caesar's camp. Describe the hill opposite. Did Caesar know that the Nervii were in the vicinity?

Suddenly the Nervii emerge from the woods, dash down the hill, cross the river, and sweep up toward the camp

19. Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant.

Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī, cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Illī identidem in silvās sē recipiēbant, ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum faciēbant. Nostrī autem longius quam ad silvās hostēs cēdentēs īnsequī nōn audēbant. Interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem

---

19. 2. cōpiīs (83). When may **cum** be omitted in this construction? **ratiō ōrdōque:** The two words, *plan and arrangement*, express one idea, viz., *formation*, and are therefore followed by a verb in the singular. **aliter sē habēbat ac,** (lit., had itself differently than), *was different from what.* This change in the formation of his marching column, which Caesar describes in the following sentence, was of the utmost importance. Had it not been made, Caesar would have been almost certainly defeated. **3. hostibus (62). 4. cōnsuētūdine suā (82, Note). 15. Ubi prīma impedīmenta . . . vīsa sunt:** The Nervii had agreed beforehand that the moment the **impedīmenta** (which they thought would follow the first legion) came into sight over the hill-top, they would start their attack. **20. in manibus nostrīs,** *upon us.* How lit.?

autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Caesar moves swiftly. His army's training and initiative count now

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret); mīlitēs ab opere revocandī; eī, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī; aciēs īnstruenda; mīlitēs cohortandī; signum tubā dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō: scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quī, superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, sibi praescrībere poterant quid fierī oportēret; et quod Caesar ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs discēdere, nisi mūnītīs castrīs, vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

---

21. adversō colle, *up the hill.* The distance from the woods to the Roman camp was about two-thirds of a mile.

Case: **impedīmentīs (7), cōpiīs (16), celeritāte (18).**

Prin. Parts: **claudēbant (6), latēbant (16).**

Questions: What change had Caesar made in his line of march? Why? Describe the Roman method of making camp. What was the prearranged signal of attack? About how long must it have taken the Nervii to reach the camp?

20. 1. Caesarī (66). **2. prōpōnendum:** Supply **erat.** The omission of **erat** (or **erant**) with this and the following participles, and the absence of connectives in this sentence convey the impression of *haste.* **3. paulō longius,** (lit., a little farther), *some distance away.* **aggeris,** *material for the rampart.* **5. signum,** *the signal* to begin fighting. **11. singulīsque legiōnibus,** *and from their respective legions.* **singulōs lēgātōs,** *the several lieutenant generals.* **13. nihil** (= an emphatic **nōn**), *not at all.*

Case: **Caesarī (1), castrīs (12).**

Prin. Parts: **agenda (1), arcessendī (4).**

Caesar's brief speech. No time to put on decorations, or even helmets

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs dēcucurrit et forte ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus est quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent, neu perturbārentur animō, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent. Deinde, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit et quae prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Questions: What were the *usual* duties of a commander, when a battle was imminent? Why did not Caesar order his lieutenant generals to do some of the necessary things? What helped Caesar in this critical situation? Are American soldiers trained to take the initiative in an emergency?

21. 3. nōn longiōre . . . quam: What does **quam** mean after a comparative? Of how many sentences did Caesar's address consist? **4. retinērent (107).** **6. quō tēlum adigī posset:** (lit., whither a weapon could be hurled), *a spear's throw* **(112).** **8. (suīs) pugnantibus occurrit:** *he came upon his men fighting* **(62).** **10. īnsignia:** *decorations,* here referring probably to the helmet crests — black and red plumes, — which were taken off the helmets during the march. **12. dēfuerit (110).** **Quam . . . in partem:** *To whatever place, wherever.* **13. quae . . . signa,** *whatever standards.*

Case: **animō (5), scūtīs (11).**

Prin. Parts: **dēcucurrit (2), dētrahenda (12), dēfuerit (12), cōnstitit (14).**

Mood and Tense: **dēfuerit (12).**

Questions: Were the soldiers' *insignia* of any practical use in battle? Why did they cover their shields?

Difficulties of the Roman position

22. Quibus ex rēbus īnstrūctus est exercitus magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat. Dīversae legiōnēs, aliae aliā in parte, hostibus resistēbant, atque, saepibus dēnsissimīs interiectīs, prōspectus impediēbātur. Neque certa subsidia collocārī, neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Atrebates and Viromandui are driven back, but the Nervii gain the Roman camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, Atrebātēs cursū exanimātōs ac lassitūdine oppressōs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et eōs trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī, gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et, in locum inīquum prōgressī, rūrsus resistentēs hostēs in fugam coniēcērunt.

Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur.

At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs,

---

22. 1. ut: What is its meaning in view of the mood of **postulābat**? **4. aliae aliā in parte:** *some in one place, others in another.* **hostibus (61).** **5. certa subsidia:** *reserves at fixed points.* All the infinitives depend upon **poterant.** **6. quid . . . opus esset:** *what was necessary* **(117).** **quāque,** from **quisque.** **8. ēventūs variī sequēbantur,** *i.e.,* where conditions were so uneven, various results followed in different parts of the field, as Caesar points out in the next chapter.

23. 1. in sinistrā parte: *on the left.* **5. impedītam:** *hampered (in crossing the river).* **6. in locum inīquum:** As they advanced up the hill and into the wooded section. **8. dīversae,** *separately.* **11. nūdātīs:** The VIIIth and XIth legions in the center and the IXth and Xth on the left of the camp had gone down the hill in pursuit of the

cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et, nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō, septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The situation seems hopeless for the Romans

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant (quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram), cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Itemque cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

---

enemy. This left the camp *unprotected* except on the right, where the XIIth and VIIth were stationed. See Map. **13. cōnstitisset (114). 14. duce Boduognātō,** *led by Boduognatus* **(89). 16. summum castrōrum locum:** *the height on which the camp was placed.*

Case: **cursū (2), gladiīs (4), duce (14).**

Prin. Parts: **compulērunt (3), resistentēs (6).**

Questions: Who were the Atrebates and Viromandui? Why did not the hedges hinder the Belgae just as much as the Romans? Draw a map of the battlefield and indicate the position occupied by the Romans and Belgae both at the beginning and at the end of this chapter.

24. 1. levis armātūrae peditēs: the slingers and bowmen. **3. adversīs hostibus occurrēbant (62):** *met the enemy face to face.* **5. cālōnēs,** *camp-servants.* These included officers' servants, drivers of pack animals, and slaves who performed the menial duties about the camp. **ab decumānā portā,** from the rear gate of the camp, farthest up the hill. **6. nostrōs victōrēs,** *our men as victors:* The soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions. **10. ferēbantur,** *rushed.* How lit.?

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī sunt equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant. Cum enim multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs,

Scene near the Site of the Battle with the Nervii.

Numidās dissipātōs in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus, domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

---

12. Trēverī: adj. with **equitēs.** Their name has come down to us in the name of the city *Trèves.* **18. pulsōs superātōsque . . . potītōs:** With each of these supply **esse.** **19. castrīs** (**80**).

Case: **armātūrae** (**1**), **fugae** (**8**).

Prin. Parts: **oriēbātur** (**10**), **premī** (**15**), **fugere** (**17**).

Mood: **reciperent** (**3**).

Questions: Where had the cavalry been? Who were the **cālōnēs?** Why had they left the camp? Were they expected to fight? Why did the Treveran cavalry desert Caesar?

The Romans weaken. Caesar rushes into the fight

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus est, ubi suōs urgērī atque, signīs in ūnum locum collātīs, duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit. Quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occīsī erant, signiferōque interfectō, signum āmissum erat; reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātī aut occīsī erant, atque in hīs prīmipīlus P. Sextius Baculus, fortissimus vir, multīs gravibusque vulneribus erat cōnfectus, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset. Reliquī erant tardiōrēs et nōn nūllī ab novissimīs, dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdēbant ac tēla vītābant. Hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittēbant et ab utrōque latere īnstābant. Caesar ubi rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod summittī posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit et, centuriōnibus nōminātim appellātīs, reliquōs cohortātus, mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cu-

---

25. The description of the battle that follows is vigorous and vivid. In his account of the battles with the Helvetians and the Germans Caesar is terse and restrained. Here on the other hand he tells the story in detail and evinces his intense interest in what he is writing.

1. Caesar ab . . . cohortātiōne: Caesar now resumes the account of his personal part in the battle, going back to the time when he encouraged his legions. See Chapter 21. **2. signīs . . . collātīs:** Each of the 30 maniples (about 140 men) of a legion had its own standard to follow in battle. When therefore all the standards drifted into one place, the confusion that ensued may be imagined! **8. Baculus** recovered from his wounds and distinguished himself for his bravery in several later battles. **10. tardiōrēs:** Force of the comparative? **11. neque subeuntēs intermittēbant,** *did not cease coming up.* **14. posset (112).** **15. mīlitī:** Dative of Separation (**63**). **16. centuriōnibus nōminātim appellātīs:** Caesar knew even his lower officers and could call them by name. This accounts in part for his popularity with his men. **18. quō:** When is **quō** used in place of **ut?** **gladiis (80).**

ius adventū, spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

A double battle front. Reënforcements appear

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim legiōnēs sēsē coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et Titus Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre cōnspicātus, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et

---

19. mīlitibus (62). 20. in extrēmīs suīs rēbus, *in his extreme danger.*

Case: **mīlitēs (3), sibi (3).**

Prin. Parts: **excēdēbant (11), cuperet (21).**

Mood: **posset (14), cuperet (21).**

Questions: How many maniples were there in a legion? How many cohorts? How many centurions? Was the **signum** a flag? Describe it. What sort of uniform did a standard-bearer wear? Were generals expected to risk their lives in battle in case of a crisis? What would have happened, if Caesar had not rushed in?

26. 3. conversa signa . . . īnferrent: *face about and advance.* How lit.? The two legions — hitherto fighting separately — were directed to move gradually toward each other until they united. The rear line of both legions was then to face about and thus afford protection from attacks in the rear. **4. aliīs aliī,** (lit., some to others), *to one another.* **5. nē** (after a verb of *fearing*), *that* **(108). āversī,** *in the rear.* **7. legiōnum duārum:** The XIIIth and XIVth. **10. Labiēnus,** in command of the Xth legion. **castrīs (80). ex locō superiōre:** The top of the hill, where the Belgian camp was placed. **11. gererentur (117).**

cālōnum fugā cognōvissent, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

Fighting bravely to the last, the Nervii are wiped out

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent. Hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī supererant, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs coniciēbant et pīla intercepta remittēbant. Nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs ausī sunt trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

---

15. nihil . . . reliquī fēcērunt: *they left nothing undone in point of speed* or *they made all possible speed.* **reliquī (58).**

Prin. Parts: **cōnspiciēbantur (9), potītus (10).**

Mood: **ferrent (5), versārētur (14).**

Questions: Who were the military tribunes? How many were there in each legion? What new position did the XIIth and VIIth now take? What reënforcements were now on their way?

27. 2. etiam (eī) quī. prōcubuissent (112). ut . . . redintegrārent . . . occurrerent . . . praeferrent: Result clauses following **tanta. 4. armātīs,** *armed* (*men*) **(62). 6. mīlitibus (62). sē . . . praeferrent,** *outdid.* **7. At hostēs:** The Nervii were now hemmed in between the XIIth and VIIth above them and the Xth below. **9. iacentibus (62):** *the fallen.* **10. (eī) quī super-erant. ut ex tumulō,** *as from a mound.* **11. intercepta remittēbant:** *picked up and threw back.* **12. Nōn nēquīquam,** etc. *i.e.*, the Nervii were so brave that it was not foolish of them to attempt this most difficult attack. **14. quae . . .**

The remnant of Nervii surrender

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil esse impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. In commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus sexāgintā vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit, suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

---

redēgerat: *these things, most difficult in themselves,* (lit., from most difficult things) *their great courage had rendered easy.*

Case: **pugnandō (6), virtūtis (12).**

Prin. Parts: **cecidissent (8), redēgerat (15).**

Mood: **dēlērent (5), pugnārent (9).**

Questions: What effect did the arrival of reënforcements have upon the Romans? Was it possible for the Nervii to escape by flight? What did they do? What tribute did Caesar pay to their bravery? What enabled the Romans to win this battle?

28. 2. nātū (85). 4. cum, *since.* **nihil esse impedītum:** *nothing was in the way.* **5. omnium:** with **cōnsēnsū. 7. commemorandā:** *not* 'commemorating.' **9. possent (118). 10. in,** *toward.* **ūsus (esse) misericordiā:** *to have shown mercy* **(80). 12. fīnitimīs (61).**

Case: **nātū (2), aestuāria (3).**

Prin. Parts: **coniectōs (3), dēdidērunt (7).**

Mood: **ūtī (12), prohibērent (13).**

Questions: Is it probable that the surviving Nervii exaggerated their losses in their report to Caesar? What was Caesar's policy in dealing with states that surrendered?

Summary of Chapters 29–35

After disposing of the Nervii, Caesar marched eastward into the territory of the Aduatuci, who immediately withdrew into a stronghold protected on three sides by steep cliffs and on the remaining side by a high wall. At first the Aduatuci laughed at the pygmy Romans, and ridiculed the siege works they constructed. When, however, they watched a tower actually *moving* toward the wall, they became alarmed and surrendered. The arms, which they threw into the moat, piled up until they almost reached the top of the wall. Nevertheless they secretly kept back about one-third of their weapons. On a sudden at midnight they made a sortie. But the Roman sentinels were alert. Fire signals flashed, and the soldiers rushed out to meet the attack. There was sharp fighting, but finally the enemy were driven back into the town. Caesar punished them for their treachery by selling the town's entire population (53,000) into slavery.

Thus the campaign of 57 B.C. ended with the complete conquest of the Belgae. Many of the maritime states in northwestern Gaul now submitted to the Romans, and envoys came even from several German tribes across the Rhine to offer their submission. Caesar's reports produced such an impression in Rome that a thanksgiving of *fifteen days* was ordered!

Book III

Campaign against the Veneti (56 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–13

At the close of the Belgian campaign Caesar stationed Galba with the XIIth legion in the Alps not far from Geneva, in order to open up the road from Italy to Gaul over the Great St. Bernard pass, — a route on which traders were forced to pay heavy tolls, and even then were in danger of being plundered by the natives. But before Galba had really established himself in his winter-quarters, he was furiously attacked by the mountaineers in overwhelming numbers. He finally succeeded in defeating them, but deciding not to risk remaining there, he withdrew for the winter into the safer territory of the Allobroges.

During the winter a revolt broke out among the coast states which had recently submitted. The leaders of this rebellion were the Veneti, who possessed a large fleet of ships, which, while slow and clumsy, were so strongly built that the usual Roman method of ramming a vessel with a galley's bronze prow was of no avail against them. Moreover, they were so high at both bow and stern that the Romans from their low-lying galleys could neither board them nor reach their decks effectively with any weapons. However, Caesar arranged for the building of a fleet in the Loire, and for the assembling of many Gallic ships besides.

Questions on omitted chapters, Book II, 29–35 and III, 1–13:

Locate the Aduatuci. How was their stronghold protected? How did they regard the Romans and their preparations for a siege? What led them to surrender? Was their midnight sortie justifiable? How did Caesar punish them? What did Caesar attempt in order to promote trade between Italy and Gaul? Where was Galba stationed? What happened?

What revolt broke out during the winter? Locate the Veneti. Explain why the Roman galleys would be at a disadvantage in a battle with the Venetan fleet? What provision did Caesar make for a fleet? When did he start his campaign against the Veneti? Did he have any ships to aid him? How was a great part of the summer frittered away?

Early in the following spring he sent troops into various districts of Gaul to check any incipient revolts, and then led his army against the Veneti. He invested and captured several of their coast towns, but in the absence of a fleet was unable to prevent their garrisons from embarking and sailing away to some other stronghold.

A Typical Bit of Venetan Coast.

Caesar's fleet in command of Brutus arrives. A clever Roman device

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam, captīs oppidīs, reprimī posse, statuit exspectandam esse classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt. Neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant;

14. 1. oppidīs: Coast towns of the Veneti. **6. ex portū:** Probably near the mouth of the Auray. **nostrīs (68).** **7. Neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnstābat:** *Nor was it quite clear to Brutus.* **classī (62). tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque:** On Roman galleys the *crews* were slaves, but legionary soldiers commanded by regular officers did the fighting. **9. quid agerent:** *what they were about to do.* **10. nocērī nōn posse:** (impersonal), *no harm could be done* (to the enemy's ships).

turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs erat magnō ūsuī, — falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō, praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs, antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

---

11. turribus . . . excitātīs, *even though towers had been erected* (on the decks). **ex,** *on.* **13. missa,** *those hurled.* **16. longuriīs (62). nōn absimilī formā (84),** *of a shape not unlike that of wall-hooks.* These must have been much like the long pruning knives we use for trimming trees. **17. Hīs (falcibus):** Abl. of Means, with **comprehēnsī erant. cum,** *whenever.* **fūnēs,** *halyards,* the ropes used in hoisting and lowering the sails. **18. adductī erant,** *had been drawn taut.* **nāvigiō:** the Roman ship. **19. praerumpēbantur:** (broken apart strand by strand), *severed.* **20. nāvibus:** Dat. of Reference (**65**). **21. vēlīs:** square sails made of leather. **armāmentīs:** they had no oars. **22. erat . . . positum in,** *depended upon.* **25. paulō fortius factum:** *unusually brave deed,* lit., a little braver (than usual). **26. collēs ac loca superiōra:** the heights of St. Gildas overlooking the Bay of Quiberon.

Case: **Rōstrō (10), mare (27).**

Prin. Parts: **acciderent (13), comprehēnsī (18), praerumpēbantur (19).**

Mood: **agerent (9), cōnsisteret (21).**

Questions: When did the naval battle take place? Explain the working of the ingenious device which the Romans had prepared. What sort of sails did the Venetan ships have? Did the galleys depend chiefly on their sails or their oars? What spurred the Romans to fight with unusual bravery?

Ingenuity, bravery, and good luck bring victory to the Romans

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The Veneti surrender and are sold into slavery as a warning

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubīque fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs, reliquī neque quō

---

15. 1. cum, *whenever.* **bīnae ac ternae nāvēs,** *two or three (Roman) ships.* **7. quō,** adv., = **in quam (partem). ferēbat,** *was blowing, i.e.,* the Venetan ships turned to sail before the wind. **malacia ac tranquillitās:** (calm and stillness), *a dead calm.* **12. cum . . . pugnārētur,** *as the battle lasted.* In such a protracted battle there was ample time for the galleys to capture most all the enemy's vessels.

Case: **vī (2), reī (5).**

Prin. Parts: **circumsteterant (2), reperīrētur (5).**

Questions: In what naval battle 200 years before this did the Romans win through their ingenuity? What prevented the Venetan ships from escaping? How long did the battle last?

16. 2. cum . . . tum: *not only . . . but also.* **3. graviōris,** *more advanced.* **aliquid cōnsilī (58),** *any judgment.* **4. nāvium quod ubīque fuerat,** (lit., whatever of ships had been everywhere), *all the ships they had had anywhere.* **5. quō,** adv., = **quem ad locum.**

sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque, omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Summary of Chapters 17–29

Expedition of Sabinus against the Venelli

At the beginning of the campaign Sabinus had been sent with three legions against the Venelli, who dwelt north of the Veneti. On his arrival he was confronted by so large an army that he refused to be drawn into battle with it. Thinking that he was afraid to meet them, the Venelli ventured up to the very wall of the camp. Sabinus now bribed a Gaul in his auxiliary forces to play the part of a deserter and report to the enemy that Caesar was hard pressed by the Veneti and that Sabinus was planning to steal out of the camp that very night and go to his assistance. The Venellan soldiers clamored to be led at once to the Roman camp. On the way they gathered brushwood with which to fill the moat. Heavily laden they were nearing the camp, when suddenly two gates swung open, and in a moment the legionaries were upon them. Panic-stricken they turned and fled with the Roman soldiers and cavalry in hot pursuit. The slaughter was great on that day. All the states surrendered forthwith to Sabinus.

---

6. reciperent . . . dēfenderent (117), *they had no place to which to retreat, nor any means of defending their towns.* **8. eō gravius,** *the more severely.* **vindicandum (esse)**, impers., *punishment must be inflicted.* **quō:** Notice the comparative that follows. **9. iūs lēgātōrum:** The Veneti had detained and imprisoned the envoys that Caesar sent to them in the winter. **10. sub corōnā,** *into slavery;* lit., under the wreath, — a phrase recalling the ancient custom of placing a wreath upon the head of a slave who was offered for sale at auction.

Case: **aetātis (3), nāvium (4).**

Mood: **dēfenderent (6), cōnservārētur (9).**

Questions: Account for the fact that a single battle ended the war. Why did Caesar punish the Veneti with unusual severity?

Conquest of Aquitania by Crassus

Crassus, who had been despatched to Aquitania, met with greater opposition. He was first attacked by the Sotiates, whom he defeated in a fierce battle. He then laid siege to their chief town, and finally forced it to surrender. The commander Adiatunnus with 600 devoted followers made a brave attempt to cut his way out, but was repulsed.

Crassus next invaded the land of the Vocates and Tarusates. Greatly alarmed, these people summoned aid not only from the neighboring states but even from the mountain tribes among the Pyrenees in Spain, and assembled a considerable army. They determined, however, not to fight a decisive battle, but to block the roads and cut off the Romans' supplies. When the latter retreated — as they were sure to do sooner or later, — they would attack them on the march and win an easy victory.

But Crassus did not retreat. Instead he attacked their camp. While his men were storming the ramparts, he was informed that the other side of the camp was not well guarded. Having a strong force of cavalry, he directed it to make a wide detour and surprise the enemy by a rear attack. The cavalry reached the camp, pushed through the fortifications, and launched a furious attack, while the Roman infantry straining every nerve burst through the defences they were assaulting. Hemmed in — front and rear — the enemy leaped the camp walls and fled in wild confusion. Of their splendid army — 50,000 strong — scarcely one-fourth survived. Thus Aquitania was won for the Romans.

Caesar's Expedition against the Morini and Menapii

Only two states in all Gaul now remained unsubdued, viz. the Belgic Morini and Menapii in the far north. Although it was late in the summer, Caesar started with his army from the Venetan country, marched about 400 miles, and invaded their territory. Instead of fighting, however, they hastily withdrew into the wide-reaching marshes and forests of their land. Caesar pushed on energetically felling the forests before him, but heavy rains set in, and he was compelled to retire without bringing them to terms. He

established his legions in winter-quarters among the coast states which he had conquered during the summer campaign.

Questions on omitted chapters, III, 17–29.

Locate the Venelli. By what ruse did Sabinus lead them to attack him? What followed? What was the immediate result of this battle?

Where was Aquitania? Locate the Sotiates. How did Crassus force them to submit? Locate the Vocates and Tarusates. What policy did they adopt with regard to the Roman army? What brought about their defeat by Crassus?

Locate the two Gallic tribes that still remained unsubdued. Trace Caesar's course to their territory. Why was he compelled to withdraw without conquering them?

Book IV

Summary of Chapters 1–19

The Campaign against German Invaders of Gaul (55 B.C.)

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been forced by a more powerful neighbor to migrate from their land, and after wandering about for three years they came in B.C. 56 to the right bank of the lower Rhine. Here they were held in check for a time by the Menapii (of whom we have just heard), but they finally succeeded in crossing the river, and dispossessing the Menapii, occupied their homes and feasted upon their stores for the rest of the winter.

Fearing that other German tribes would soon cross the Rhine and that the fickle Gauls would unite with them against him, Caesar — in the spring of 55 — marched northward until he neared the Germans, who by this time had moved into the territory of the Eburones. Here he was met by their envoys with the request that they should be assigned lands in Gaul. Caesar refused, but suggested that they should settle among the Ubii just across the Rhine. He then advanced to a point not more than twelve miles away from them.

This expedition to Britain is especially interesting to English speaking peoples, because it is the first authentic account of the island and its inhabitants that has ever been written. That it was penned by a writer as keenly observant and alert as Caesar, makes it all the more valuable.

Questions on omitted chapters, IV, 1–19.

Relate the circumstances which led the Usipites and Tencteri to invade Gaul. Where did they settle for the winter? Why did Caesar determine to drive them back? Into whose country had they migrated when he approached with his army? What did their envoys request? What was Caesar's reply? Why did he refuse to grant them a truce? What happened when the Romans advanced? Was it right for Caesar to detain their leaders when they came to him next morning? What did he do then? Was it justifiable?

Why did Caesar now decide to invade Germany? How did he cross the Rhine? Trace his course. What did he accomplish in Germany? What did he do with the bridge when he returned into Gaul?

The envoys now returned and asked for a truce of three days. Suspecting that they were only parleying to gain time for the return of a large cavalry force from an expedition across the Meuse, Caesar again refused, but said that he would not advance more than four miles that day, and sent word to his cavalry in the van not to provoke the enemy to battle. No sooner, however, had the German cavalry seen the Romans approaching than they attacked the cavalry and drove them back in confusion toward the main army.

Next morning the leaders of the Germans came to Caesar's camp to apologize for this attack, and to renew their effort to secure a truce. Disgusted with their treachery and their parleying, Caesar detained them, and marched at once to their camp. Deprived of their leaders, the Germans offered but little resistance, and were either cut down in flight by the cavalry or perished in attempting to cross the swift-flowing river. Thus the two tribes — men, women and children — were virtually annihilated.

Seeing how easy it was for migratory German tribes to establish themselves in Gaul, Caesar now determined to invade their country in turn, and instil in them a wholesome fear that he might conquer and annex a portion of their territory. In order to impress them the more with the efficiency of a Roman army, he decided to cross the Rhine — not by boats — but on a bridge. The river was wide and swift. Nevertheless within *ten days* it was spanned by a remarkably strong bridge, over which the Roman army passed in perfect safety. Leaving a garrison at both ends to guard it, Caesar marched against the Sugambri, who had previously defied him but were now fleeing into the forests. He devastated their country, and then thinking he had accomplished all his purposes, he marched back to the Rhine, recrossed it, and destroyed the bridge.

First Expedition to Britain (55 B.C.)

Caesar finds it hard to get information about Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae

20. 1. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā (89). It was about the end of July.

sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temere, praeter mercātōrēs, illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quidquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Envoys come from Britain

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, prius quam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gaium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

---

4. hostibus (62). **7. adīsset = adiisset (37, 2).** **9. illō,** adv. **13. quanta esset:** This and the following clauses depend on **reperīre poterat (117).** **15. īnstitūtīs (80).**

Questions: What excuse did Caesar offer for going to Britain? Was there any reason why he should not invade and conquer the island? Why could not the traders inform him about it?

21. 1. faceret (116). **2. Volusēnum:** Subject of **esse** and object of **praemittit.** **6. Hūc:** The harbor Caesar elsewhere calls **Portus Itius.** Probably it was Boulogne, which is about 30 miles from Britain. **7. quam . . . classem = eam classem quam.**

Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse,

The English Coast Opposite Gaul.

Atrebātibus superātīs, rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī

11. polliceantur (105). imperiō (61). **15.** et, *both.* **17.** magnī: Gen. of Indefinite Value. **21.** quantum . . . potuit: *so far as opportunity could be afforded to one.*

facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

The Morini submit. Caesar assembles a fleet

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod, hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī, bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat, neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat, neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem recēpit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contrāctīsque, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō

---

19. sē: Caesar.

Questions: Locate the Morini and Portus Itius. Why did Caesar send Commius with the envoys to Britain? Does Caesar blame Volusenus for his failure to land in Britain?

22. 2. morātur (94, Note). 3. dē . . . cōnsiliō: *for their previous conduct*, referring to their defiance of Caesar in the autumn of 56. **4. hominēs:** in App. with the subject of **fēcissent.** Supply *being.* **cōnsuētūdinis:** Gen. with the adj. **imperītī (59). 9. hās . . . occupātiōnēs:** *occupation with such trivial matters.* **10. Britanniae (62). 14. quot,** *a number which.* **duās . . . legiōnēs:** the VIIth and Xth. **15. quod . . . nāvium longārum,** (lit., what of long ships), *the galleys which.* **17. ex eō locō:** They were detained at Ambleteuse. **ā mīlibus passuum VIII:** *eight miles away.* ā is used as an adverb.

tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar sets sail and prepares to land in Britain

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustīs mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit, mo-

---

18. quō minus: *so that . . . not* (**109**). **22. dūcendum:** with **exercitum.**

Questions: What had the Morini done against Caesar? Estimate how many men each transport carried. Why were the cavalry assigned to the 18 transports that were detained? How many legions did Caesar send among the Morini and Menapii?

23. 4. Ā quibus cum, etc.: *While they carried out his orders a little too slowly,* — and on this account could not sail for three days. **5. hōrā diēī circiter quārtā:** Aug. 26th, about 9 A.M. **6. Britanniam attigit:** near Dover. **7. haec,** *such.* **8. montibus angustīs:** *steep cliffs.* The chalk cliffs of Dover rise abruptly almost from the water's edge. **11. convenīrent** (**116**). **ad hōram nōnam:** What time? **14. et quae . . . cognōvisset, et quae . . . vellet:** clauses dep. on **ostendit** (**117**).

nuitque ut ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons vigorously resist his landing

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī, atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī, nōn eādem

---

15. ad nūtum: all orders should be carried out with the greatest promptness because of the unsteady movement of the sea. **18. apertō ac plānō lītore:** between Walmer and Deal, seven miles northeast of Dover.

Questions: Why did Caesar start at midnight? What causes the choppy sea in the Channel? How far is it across? How can the day and hour of Caesar's sailing be determined? How long did it take Caesar to cross? What type of ships would be the first to arrive? Why did not Caesar land at once?

24. 2. quō genere: *a class* (of warriors), *which* (**80**). **3. cōpiīs** (**83**). **6. mīlitibus:** Dat. of Agent with **dēsiliendum . . . cōnsistendum . . . pugnandum erat** (impers.). Translate the verbs as Active and make **mīlitibus** the subject (**66**). **ignōtīs locīs** (**91**). **7. oppressīs:** agrees with **mīlitibus. 9. cum illī:** *while they, i.e.,* the Britons. **12. īnsuēfactōs:** *trained* (to go into the water). **13. generis:** with **imperītī** (**59**).

alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

The eagle-bearer of the xth legion leads the way

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

---

14. alacritāte et studiō: with **ūtēbantur** (**80**).

Questions: State the disadvantages of the Romans in landing. What advantages did the Britons have?

25. 2. inūsitātior, *quite unfamiliar.* **10. (is) quī . . . aquilam ferēbat = aquilifer. 17. ex proximīs nāvibus:** *the men from the nearest ships.*

Questions: Which was the enemy's exposed flank? Why? What was the propelling power of the **tormenta**? What does the eagle as an emblem represent? What is as sacred to us as the eagle was to the Roman?

Finally the Romans land, and rout the enemy

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs, impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons sue for peace, and return Caesar's envoy Commius

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs de pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset, factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.

---

26. 3. alius aliā ex nāvī . . . sē aggregābat: *one from one ship, another from another would join.* **7. plūrēs:** *many.* **8. ūniversōs:** *groups of soldiers,* as contrasted with **singulārēs.** **11. quōs . . . cōnspexerat:** here, as often, the relative clause — instead of following — precedes the antecedent, which is **hīs.** **12. simul,** *as soon as.* **suīs omnibus:** *all their comrades.* **14. neque,** *but . . . not.* **15. Hoc . . . dēfuit:** *In this respect alone did Caesar's usual good fortune fail him.*

Questions: How did Caesar use his cavalry in battle?

27. 3. quaeque, etc. = **et ea quae imperāvisset.** **5. suprā:** Find the other passage in which Commius is mentioned.

Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce, eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et, propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō (in continentem lēgātīs missīs) pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Caesar's cavalry transports are driven back to the continent

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, diē quārtō, postquam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII (dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est), quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen, ancorīs iactīs, cum

---

6. illī: To whom does this pronoun refer? **ōrātōris modō:** *as an envoy.* How lit.? **8. remīsērunt:** Supply **eum.** **10. ignōscerētur:** Impers. (**107**). **11. cum . . . petissent** (**115**). **12. intulissent** (**119,** *b*). **13. imprūdentiae** (**61**). **16. suōs:** *their people.*

Questions: How did Caesar usually treat a state that violated the **iūs lēgātōrum?** Find an example. Did Caesar regard Commius as an accredited envoy? Prove it.

28. 2. suprā: When? **9. quae tamen . . . complērentur:** *but when these cast anchor and on this account were being swamped by the waves; i.e.,* so long as they ran before the wind, the waves did not break badly over the ships, but when — in order to escape being dashed upon

flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Caesar's main fleet is damaged by wind and tide

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat, quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent (fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs) ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat,

---

the shore — they anchored, the waves swept over them and threatened to swamp them. **10. adversā nocte:** *in the face of the night.* **in altum prōvectae:** *they put out to sea.*

Questions: Locate the **superior portus.** In what direction was the wind blowing? Why was it safer to make for the mainland than to try to weather the storm at anchor near the shore?

29. 1. eādem nocte: Aug. 30th. **quī diēs:** *a time which.* **2. aestūs maximōs:** the highest tide at Dover rises about 20 feet. **3. nostrīs . . . incognitum:** There is very little tide in the Mediterranean, but the Romans must have learned something about ocean tides through their experience on the Atlantic coast in the previous summer. What they did not know was that there was some connection between the highest tide and the full moon. **6. afflīctābat:** the transports were damaged, some by breaking anchor and being dashed on the shore, others by colliding with adjoining vessels. **13. possent (112).** **14. quod** etc. *and as it was clear to all that the winter would have to be spent in Gaul.*

Questions: When do the two highest tides occur in each month? What causes them?

hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons secretly plan revolt. Caesar provides against it

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent (quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat), optimum esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus, coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere ac suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō

---

30. 1. prīncipēs: subject of **dūxērunt.** **5. hōc:** *on this account;* explained by the **quod** clause. **etiam angustiōrā:** *even narrower* (than usual for two legions). **6. dūxērunt,** *thought.* **11. suōs . . . dēdūcere:** *i.e.*, the soldiers, who had been told to return to their farms (p. **329,** l. 16), were now called to take up arms again.

31. 2. ex ēventū nāvium suārum: *from what had happened to his ships.* **ex eō, quod:** *from the fact that.* **3. fore . . . suspicābātur:** *he suspected the very thing that happened.* **5. quae . . . nāvēs, eārum = eārum nāvium, quae.** See note to **quōs cōnspexerat,** p. **328,** l. 11.

studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

The Britons attack the VIIth legion, while foraging

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt, pulverem maiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositīs armīs, in

---

10. ut posset . . . effēcit: *he made it possible.*

Questions: Were not the Romans in great danger after the storm? What was there to prevent the Britons in overwhelming numbers from attacking their camp and setting fire to their ships? Why was bronze more serviceable in ships than iron?

32. 1. frūmentātum: supine (**132,** *a*); *to get grain.* **3. hominum = Britannōrum. 6. quam cōnsuētūdō ferret:** *than usual.* How lit.? **8. id quod erat:** *the truth.* **aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum** (esse) **cōnsilī,** (a clause in apposition with **id**): *namely that some new plan had been formed by the barbarians.* **10. cohortēs:** probably four, one at each of the four gates of the camp. **11. armārī:** *to arm themselves.* **12. paulō longius:** *some little distance.* **15. ūna,** *only one.* **17. tum** (eōs) **dispersōs . . . occupātōs.**

Questions: How many cohorts were there in a legion? How many cohorts were ordered to arm and follow Caesar?

metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The war chariots of the Britons

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt, atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere, et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

---

33. 1. essedīs: Several later Roman writers allude to British *scythe-bearing war chariots.* But the absence of scythes on the chariots depicted on Roman coins, the failure to find them in graves, and the fact that Caesar does not mention them at all, makes it improbable that British war chariots were equipped with scythes. **3. equōrum:** *caused by the horses.* **4. equitum:** *the enemy's cavalry.* **6. currūs:** About a century ago near York, Eng., a grave was discovered, which, when opened, was found to contain the skeleton of a man, two chariot wheels, and the skeletons of two horses. The wheels were 2 ft. 11 in. in diameter, proving that the British chariots were too narrow to carry more than two men apiece. The skeletons of the horses showed that they were only 13 hands high. **illī:** *the warriors.* **10. incitātōs equōs sustinēre:** *control their horses at full speed.* **11. brevī (tempore):** *quickly.*

Questions: How many men did each chariot carry? Describe the British method of attacking with chariots and cavalry. Did the warriors actually run along the pole, etc., in battle? What was the use of learning to do so? What practical value is there in training our cadets to form "a living pyramid" on their horses in motion?

Caesar rescues the VIIth. British reënforcements arrive

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit.

Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

The Britons are defeated and sue for peace. Caesar returns to Gaul

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum

---

34. 1. nostrīs: Dat. with **auxilium tulit.** **7.** (eī) **quī.** **9. continērent** (**112**). **13. suī** (**130,** 2). **14. expulissent** (**118**).

Questions: Is discretion sometimes the better part of valor?

35. 1. idem (explained by the foll. clause) is the subject of **fore.** **2. sī essent . . . pulsī:** Compare **sī . . . expulissent,** line **14,** in preceding chapter. **7.** (**nostrī**) **secūtī. tantō spatiō,** etc.: *as far as their speed and strength allowed.* How lit.?

cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat.

Ipse, idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Summary of Chapters 37–38

While 300 Roman soldiers from the two transports, which had been carried down the coast, were marching toward the camp, they were attacked by some 6000 Morini. Forming a circle the little band fought bravely for four hours, and were finally rescued by the cavalry. Labienus was at once despatched with two legions against the Morini, and quickly subdued the revolt. But lieutenants Titurius and Cotta, who were sent against the Menapii, finding it impossible to penetrate their forests, devastated their country and returned to Caesar. The legions were quartered among the Belgae for the winter. On receiving Caesar's reports of his invasions of Germany and Britain the Senate at Rome decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days.

---

36. 2. Hīs: Dat. with **duplicāvit** (**65**). **4. quod . . . aequinoctī:** *because the season of the equinox was at hand, and,* etc. The equinox was due on Sept. 26th. **5. hiemī:** *stormy weather* (**62**). **8. quōs,** *as.*

Questions: What sort of weather is expected at the equinox? About how long had Caesar been in Britain? What had he accomplished?

Book V

Second Expedition to Britain (54 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–7

During the winter of 55–54 Caesar employed his legions in building 600 transports for the coming expedition to Britain. They were built a little shallower than usual, so that they could be more easily beached. They were also wider, which enabled them to carry heavier cargoes and more horses. When Caesar reached the army in the spring, these transports together with 28 war galleys were almost ready to be launched. Learning that the Treveri would not submit, he invaded their country and soon received hostages from the leader of the revolt. On his return to Portus Itius he found that the fleet and army had already assembled. Many chiefs of the Gallic states were also gathered there. For, in order to make sure that there would be no revolt in Gaul during his absence, he had determined to take with him as hostages all the chiefs, of whose fidelity he had any doubt. Among these was Dumnorix, an ambitious and intriguing Aeduan, who strongly objected to accompanying Caesar. He even approached other Gallic chiefs secretly and urged them to insist on remaining in Gaul. After a delay of 25 days on account of head winds Caesar ordered the army to embark. During the ensuing confusion Dumnorix escaped from the camp. He was overtaken by a detachment of cavalry, and while resisting arrest was slain.

Questions on the omitted chapters:

What were the results of the expeditions against the Morini and the Menapii by Caesar's lieutenants? What did the Senate at Rome decree in honor of Caesar's successful campaigns in B.C. 55?

What changes did Caesar make in building transports for the second expedition to Britain? Who was Dumnorix? Why was he slain?

Caesar sets sail. The Britons are frightened at the approach of 800 ships

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur, cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et, longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus, rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

---

8. 2. ut . . . tuērētur . . . provideret . . . cognōsceret . . . caperet: four clauses setting forth the *purposes* which Labienus was to bear in mind. **4. prō:** *in accordance with.* **5. rē,** *circumstances.* **parī . . . quem:** *the same . . . as.* **6. sōlis occāsum:** about July 6th. **15. Accessum est . . . omnibus nāvibus:** *All the ships neared.* How lit.? **18. annōtinīs (nāvibus):** *ships built the year before.* **19. prīvātīs (nāvibus):** *privately owned ships; i.e.,* belonging to the officers, and the traders who accompanied the expedition. **suī commodī (causā). amplius** does not affect the construction (**86, Note**). **20. octingentae:** with **quae,** line **18**: *of which more than 800.*

Questions: From what port did Caesar sail? Estimate the number of men in both infantry and cavalry that crossed the Channel. In what direction was the fleet carried by the tide? Where had Caesar landed before?

Caesar lands and captures a forest stronghold

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat; eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse, noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII, hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.

Illī, equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant, nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, et quod, magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

A storm shatters the fleet. Caesar repairs it, and again advances inland

10. Postrīdiē eius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur.

---

9. 4. essent (105). 5. nāvibus (65). 6. dēligātās (nāvēs). 9. flūmen: the Stour. **13. bellī:** with **causā. 17. aggere:** *i.e.*, after filling the ditch with fascines and earth, they continued to pile up the material until they had formed a rough causeway to the top of the rampart. **18. Caesar (suōs) prōsequī.**

Questions: Why did Caesar start his marches so often at midnight? What was a **testūdō**?

Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cognōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut, āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus, reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur.

Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, eīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs X cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs, eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter

---

10. 3. aliquantum itineris: *some distance* (**58**). **extrēmī:** *the rear* of the division that had been sent to pursue the Britons was still visible from the camp.

11. 8. sint (**118**, 1). **9. rēs erat multae operae:** *a matter involving much toil.* **18. summā . . . administrandī:** *the chief command and the management of the war.* How lit.?

mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed, nostrō adventū permōtī, Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

The geography and inhabitants of Britain

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt), et, bellō illātō, ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō, crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus examinātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et

---

21. Huic . . . intercesserant: *This man had been engaged in.* How lit.?

Questions: Is Caesar to be criticised for failing to properly protect his fleet before advancing inland? Where did he obtain carpenters and mechanics to repair the ships?

12. 1. nātōs (esse): *originated.* **2. quī . . . appellantur:** *e.g.*, there were British tribes called the *Atrebates* and the *Belgae* in southern Britain. **4. quibus ex cīvitātibus ortī. 7. aedificia (sunt). 8. aere:** The earliest British *bronze* coins that as yet have been found go back almost to Caesar's time. **nummō aureō:** *Gold* coins have been unearthed that were in use more than a century before Caesar's invasions. **10. plumbum album:** *tin.* As early as the 9th century B.C. the Phoenicians obtained tin from the Cornish mines. As a matter of fact the mines are near the coast in southwestern England. **11. ferrum:** Iron in abundance is now found in the interior. **13. fāgum atque abietem:** both beech and fir trees are native to Britain.

ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta.

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt, diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlia passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

---

14. animī . . . causā: *for pastime and pleasure.*

13. 1. nātūrā: *in shape.* **4. īnferior (angulus),** *i.e.,* the south-western. **6. ad Hispāniam:** This curious idea that Spain projected northward toward Britain prevailed for many centuries. **7. dīmidiō (87).** **8. sed parī . . . atque:** *but the passage across is the same as.* How lit.? **9. In hōc mediō cursū:** *Half-way across.* **10. subiectae (esse):** *lie near by.* **11. nōn nūllī:** probably Greek writers. **13. certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs:** *by exact measurements with a water clock.* The **clepsydra,** which was used in Roman camps, was a glass globe with a small hole in the bottom, through which the water dropped slowly, the time being measured by the height of the water in the globe. **15. ut . . . opīniō:** *as they* (the Britons) *think.* **19. vīciēs centum:** *2000 miles,* which for a rough estimate is fairly correct.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō.

The Britons resist bravely, but are decisively defeated

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen, ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed, complūribus interfectīs, cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt.

At illī, intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare — atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum —, cum hae, perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō, inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī, plūribus summissīs cohortibus, repelluntur.

---

14. 6. hōc (81). 7. aspectū (85). capillō prōmissō (84).

Questions: Mention some names of states and cities in our land, which go to prove that they were settled by immigrants from Europe. What makes the climate of England milder than that of France or Holland? Estimate the no. of *Roman* miles along the sides of a rough quadrilateral inclosing Great Britain and Ireland, and compare the result with Caesar's figures. From whom did Caesar get much of his information? Is it reasonable to expect such information to be exact?

15. 4. sed (nostrī equitēs). 10. atque hīs prīmīs: *and those the first cohorts.* **11. inter sē:** *apart.* **12. per mediōs:** *i.e.*, between the two cohorts.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est, nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque

Scene in a Roman Camp.

cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

---

16. 2. intellēctum est: *it was evident.* **3. (hostēs) cēdentēs. 5. equitēs . . . dīmicāre:** Clause dependent upon **intellēctum est. 9. Accēdēbat hūc ut . . . proeliārentur:** *In addition to this they fought.* How lit.? **10. statiōnēs dispositās:** *reserves posted.*

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius, quam prīdiē, nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt sīc, utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.

Nostrī, ācriter in eōs impetū factō, reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō, neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt.

Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar's army crosses the Thames, but is harassed on the march

18. Caesar, cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus — atque hōc aegrē — trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur.

---

17. 6. sīc utī . . . absisterent: *with such boldness that they actually charged the lines of the legions.* How lit.? **9. subsidiō cōnfīsī:** *depending upon the support* of the legions (**81**). **13. quae:** what is its antecedent? **auxilia (Britannōrum)**.

Questions: Where did the fighting, described in Chapters 15–17, take place? What tactics did the Britons adopt? Under what disadvantages did the legions fight with them?

18. 2. ūnō locō: probably near Brentford, about 20 miles up the river from London. **6. praefīxīs:** *i.e.*, driven into the edge of the bank, and projecting out toward the river.

Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque, Caesar, praemissō equitātū, cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relīctīs, itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdebat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat, atque eīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat.

Summary of Chapters 20–21

The Trinobantes, a powerful state in this part of Britain, now offered terms of peace, which Caesar was quick to accept. Five other states then submitted to him. Advancing further, Caesar stormed Cassivellaunus' stronghold, but failed to capture his army.

An attack on the naval camp fails. Cassivellaunus surrenders

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus

---

10. eā and **eō:** *such.* **cum,** *although.*

19. 2. spē contentiōnis: *hope of* (*success from*) *open fighting.* **4. excēdēbat:** How should this and the following imperfects be translated to show *customary* action? **11. (nostrōs) vagārī.**

Questions: Mention several ways by which the Romans could force a crossing in spite of the sharp stakes.

regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī, coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs, castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Eī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī, ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōnstituit; imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar returns with his army to Gaul

23. Obsidibus acceptīs, exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur; at ex eīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum

---

22. 3. regiōnibus (62). **15. quid vectīgālis (58).** This tribute was never paid.

Questions: What form of government did the British tribes have? Compare the government of the Gallic states. What form of government have England and France now? Why did Cassivellaunus send envoys through Commius? Why was the tribute, which Caesar imposed on the Britons, never paid?

23. 4. commeātibus, *trips.* **9. locum:** *their destination, i.e.,* Britain.

aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā 10
nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs collocāvit ac, summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

Attacks on Caesar's Winter Camps among the Belgae

I. Ambiorix annihilates the forces of Sabinus and Cotta

Summary of Chapters 24–29

Scarcity of grain compelled Caesar to distribute his legions for the winter in widely separated states of Gaul. One legion under Labienus was quartered among the Treveri. Another under the command of Quintus Cicero, brother of the distinguished orator, had its winter quarters among the Nervii. A third with five additional cohorts, under the command of lieutenants Sabinus and Cotta, was stationed among the Eburones. The remaining five legions were assigned to the Esuvii, Morini, and Bellovaci. Caesar determined to put off going to Northern Italy until these camps were properly fortified. But this wide distribution of the legions led to serious attacks by the Gauls upon two of his winter camps.

The revolt was started by Ambiorix, the wily chief of the Eburones, who had been the recipient of several favors from Caesar

---

12. angustius: *rather closely.*

Questions: About what date did Caesar leave Britain? How long had he been on the island?

Results of Caesar's Expeditions to Britain. — In spite of Caesar's failure to subdue the island, his invasions had several important results. The *immediate* consequences were (1) that the Britons ceased to aid the Gauls in resisting the Romans, and (2) that trade between Gaul and Britain was greatly stimulated.

But a more important result was the conviction that it would be both easy and worth while for Rome to conquer Britain. In this Caesar was *the pioneer* who opened the way to the more permanent conquest about a hundred years later. During the three following centuries a large part of Britain became completely *Romanized*, and the lasting impress of Roman civilization can still be traced in the character and government of the British people.

three years before. This man suddenly attacked the Roman camp which had just been established in his state. Being repulsed, he requested a parley, which was granted. At this conference, posing as a warm friend of Caesar's, he declared that he had made the attack only because he was forced to do so by his people. A wave of rebellion was sweeping through the Gauls, and a simultaneous attack was being made on all the winter camps that very day. A large force of German mercenaries had crossed the Rhine and would arrive within two days. He warned Sabinus and Cotta that their only safety lay in marching at once to the camp either of Labienus or Cicero. He would be glad to prove his gratitude to Caesar by insuring them a safe passage through his territories.

At this alarming report a council of officers was called and a hot discussion ensued. Cotta and several other officers argued against following Ambiorix's advice on the ground (1) that they could repulse any attack of Gauls or Germans, and (2) that it was never prudent to trust to the suggestion of an enemy. On the other hand Sabinus maintained that Caesar had probably set out as usual for Italy. Ambiorix would never have dared to attack the camp, if he had not been sure of the aid of other Gallic states and of German mercenaries. Whether Ambiorix was friend or foe, his plan was the only safe one to follow.

Sabinus forces Cotta to yield. The Romans leave camp

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur,

"Vincite," inquit, "sī ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre

Questions on the omitted chapters 24–29:

Why did Caesar distribute his legions more widely than usual? Locate the states among which the winter camps were established. Who was Ambiorix? Whose camp did he attack? What plausible statement did he make at the parley? What did he advise the lieutenants to do? Which had the better side of the argument in the officers' council, — Sabinus or Cotta?

---

30. 1. in utramque partem: *on both sides.* **2. prīmīs ōrdinibus:** *i.e.*, centurions of the first rank. **3. 'Vincite':** *Have your own way.*

vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear."

"Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem poscent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī, commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, — nōn, reiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs, aut ferrō aut famē intereant."

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Prīmā lūce ex castrīs proficīscuntur longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

The Romans are ambushed. They form a "hollow square"

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus

---

4. exaudīret: the council was held in the middle of camp. **neque is sum quī . . . ex vōbīs . . . terrear:** *I am not the man among you to be frightened.* **6. Hī:** pointing to the soldiers. **7. quī:** *they (the soldiers).* **sī . . . liceat:** *if you would only allow it.*

31. 1. Cōnsurgitur: Translate as though personal. **6. dat manūs:** *yielded.* **9. quid** (to see) *what.*

Questions: Did Cotta have any other course than to yield? Was it prudent to allow the soldiers to stay up all night and to carry so much baggage with them?

32. 3. locō (91).

passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt, novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidābat et concursābat cohortēsque dispōnēbat, — haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pugnā mīlitis officia praestābat.

Cum propter longitūdinem agminis minus facile per sē omnia agere, et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit (quod fierī necesse erat) ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

---

33. 1. Titūrius (**Sabīnus**). **prōvīdisset:** Relative clause denoting *cause*. **2. haec tamen ipsa** (**faciēbat**). **3. ut omnia:** *in such a way that all his wits*. **7. auctor:** *in favor of*. **8. imperātōris** and **mīlitis:** with **officia**. **15. mīlitibus** (**65**). **17. factum** (**esse**). **19. quaeque** = **et ea quae. cārissima habēret:** *held most precious*.

Questions: What disadvantages usually attend the formation of a hollow square? What caused the legionaries to display such utter lack of discipline in this crisis?

The Romans fight desperately against great odds

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēs quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant, rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant ēgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant, et ab eīs quī proximī steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant.

Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil, quod ipsīs esset indignum, committēbant. Tum T. Balventius, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit,

---

34. 2. discēderet: a rare use of the Subst. Vol. clause after **iubeō**. **5. ā fortūnā:** agent, because fortune is personified. **8. cadēbat:** *would fall*. **9. et (eōs) rūrsus sē recipientēs.**

35. 1. praeceptō: noun. **3. partem nūdārī:** subject of **erat (124)**. **13. ipsīs indignum (85).** **16. fīliō (62).**

interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

Sabinus is treacherously slain. The Romans are virtually annihilated

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit quī roget ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nēminem nocitūrum esse, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.

Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat, atque in eō persevērat.

37. Sabīnus, quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs, sē sequī iubet; et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit, suīsque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt, longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur.

Tum vērō suō mōre 'Victōriam' conclāmant, impetūque

---

18. **in adversum ōs:** *full in the face.* **fundā:** *by a sling (shot).*

Questions: Explain the tactics of the Gauls, whenever a Roman cohort advanced outside the circle.

36. **3.** **sibi mīlitibusque (61).** **5.** **(sē) spērāre . . . posse, quod:** *he hoped that the request might be granted, so far as.* **6.** **ipsī (Sabīnō) vērō:** *but as for Sabinus himself* **(61).** **7.** **sē . . . interpōnere:** *he pledged his honor.* **8.** **Ille:** Sabinus. **sī videātur:** *whether it seemed best.* **9.** **(sē) spērāre.**

37. **1.** **quōs tribūnōs = eōs tribūnōs, quōs.** **in praesentiā:** *at the time.* **4.** **suīs (61).**

in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs, dēspērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt.

Paucī, ex proeliō ēlāpsī, incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

2. CICERO'S HEROIC DEFENCE AGAINST THE NERVII

Incited by Ambiorix, the Nervii attack Cicero's camp

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā.

---

15. ad ūnum: *to a man.*

Questions: How many Roman soldiers perished in this disaster?

38. 5. Nerviōs: See II, 16–28. **suī līberandī (130, 2). 9. oppressam legiōnem . . . interficī:** *to crush and destroy the legion.* How lit.?

Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque, hanc adeptī victōriam, in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

The Romans fight all day and toil all night. Cicero will not leave the camp

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs, missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ā nostrīs resistitur.

Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnsti-

---

39. 6. Huic quoque: To Cicero, just as happened to Sabinus and Cotta. **(id) quod:** *as.* **7. lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque:** *timber for the fortification.* **12. is diēs sustentātur:** *they held out that day.* How lit.? **13. adeptī:** equiv. to a conditional clause.

Questions: Locate the Eburones, Aduatuci, and Nervii. Was Ambiorix an ungrateful rebel or a true patriot? How large a force did Cicero have?

40. 1. ad Caesarem: at Samarobriva (*Amiens*). **2. sī (nūntiī eās) pertulissent. 3. missī:** *the messengers.* **13. mūrālium pīlōrum:** *wall pikes,* heavier than the ordinary **pīlum.**

tuitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quidquam ab hīs praesidī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī, accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre, prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

---

14. contabulantur: *i.e.*, the floors were laid in unfinished towers. **lōrīcae ex crātibus:** *breastworks of wattle*, screens of interwoven branches. **17. concursū et vōcibus:** *i.e.*, the soldiers gathered round him and begged him to rest.

41. 1. aliquem sermōnis aditum: *some claim to talk with him*, having met him before. **7. fideī faciundae causā:** *in order to inspire belief* in their statements. **9. rēbus (61). hōc animō in:** *so disposed toward.* **11. cōnsuētūdinem:** *custom* of establishing winter-quarters among them. **12. per sē:** *so far as they* (the Nervii) *were concerned.* **16. sē adiūtōre ūtantur:** *they might use his* (Cicero's) *aid.* **18. (eōs) impetrātūrōs.**

Questions: What was the object of building towers on the wall?

The enemy renew the attack and set fire to the huts

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum III in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt.

At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vul-

---

42. 1. pedum x: in height. **2. pedum xv:** in width. **4. nūllā cōpiā:** Abl. Abs. **8. hōrīs (88).** **9. turrēs:** movable towers. **10. testūdinēs:** movable sheds.

43. 2. fundīs: the slings must have been lined with metal. **5. (īgnem) distulērunt.**

nerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant, recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant.

Paulum quidem intermissā flammā, et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

The bravery of two rival centurions

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vorēne? Aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.' Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, in eam irrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem, subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum

---

18. ut: *as* or *since*. **19. ultimī:** *those behind*. **20. turrī:** a tower of the enemy's. **22. eō locō:** on the Roman wall. **25. dēturbātī (sunt).**

Questions: Describe the movable towers. Describe two kinds of **testūdinēs.** Which did the Gauls use in this siege? What did the soldiers use instead of huts during the regular campaign?

44. 4. alterī (62). dē locō: *for advancement*. **6. Quid:** *Why*. **11. Nē . . . quidem:** *Nor . . . either*. **15. illum:** Pullo.

Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt.

Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

At last a message reaches Caesar. He starts to relieve Cicero

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, — maximē quod, magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, — tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa, in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur.

Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem

---

17. Pullōnī (65). **18. (eī) cōnantī.** **20. illī (62).** **23. rem gerit:** *fights.* **24. in . . . īnferiōrem:** *stumbling into a hollow.* **28. utrumque versāvit:** *changed both about.*

Questions: Did the legionary's sword-belt pass round his waist? On which side did it hang?

45. 1. Quantō . . . tantō, etc.: *The more serious and desperate . . . the more frequently.* **7. locō:** *family.* **8. ā prīmā:** *at the beginning.* **9. servō (61).**

dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

46. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum XX prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit.

Labiēnus, interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus, nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, — praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, — litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam

---

46. 5. Alterum (nūntium). **7. sī . . . posset:** *if he could serve the best interests of the state,* a stereotyped expression = *if he deemed it wise.* **9. veniat (118, 2).**

47. 1. antecursōribus: Caesar must have started before Crassus reached Samarobriva. **7. nōn ita,** etc.: *with little delay.* **11. praesertim quōs . . . scīret:** *especially since he knew that they.* **12. quantō:** begin this clause with '*explaining.*' **13. rem gestam:** *what had hap-*

in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

Cicero receives a cheering message. The Gauls turn upon Caesar

48. Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.

Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit.

Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

---

pened. On hearing of this disaster Caesar is said to have sworn that he would neither shave nor cut his hair again until he had avenged the death of his men.

Questions: How may the letter have been tied in the javelin? At what o'clock did Caesar get Cicero's message? How many hours elapsed before he started? What had been accomplished in the meantime?

48. 1. opīniōne: *expectation.* **6. cuidam (61).**

49. Gallī, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō, datā facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet, iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra; et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus, trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs, tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō potest locō, castra commūnit, atque haec, (etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs), tamen angustiīs viārum, quam maximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim, speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs, explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Caesar routs the Gauls. He praises Cicero and his men

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs, utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar,

---

49. 5. hunc: Caesar. **6. faciat** (**118,** 2). **14. aequō,** etc.: *that without anxiety he could slacken speed.* **18. angustiīs viārum:** By reducing the width of the **viae** Caesar made his camp narrower.

Questions: Trace Caesar's march. Why was Caesar's letter written in Greek characters? What purpose did the thong on the javelin serve? What information does this passage contain as to the average number of men in a legion?

50. 1. ad aquam: near the brook. **3. Caesar** (**sē suō locō continet**).

sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut, explōrātīs itineribus, minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret.

Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.

Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar, omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum

---

4. suum = *favorable.* **5. contenderet (104).** **13. concursārī** and **agī:** impers. Translate as active and personal.

51. 9. singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum: the single row of sods looked solid to the Gauls, but could be easily pushed aside at the proper time by the Romans. **eā:** *in that way, i.e.*, through the gates.

52. 2. neque, etc.: *and that no opportunity remained for (inflicting) even a trifling loss upon them.*

locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus cōpiīs eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; legiōne prōductā cognōscit, nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit.

Posterō diē, cōntiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Summary of Chapters 53–58

The destruction of the entire force commanded by Sabinus and Cotta, and the narrow escape of Cicero's legion naturally stirred up a spirit of rebellion, which broke out in various parts of Gaul. Alarmed by reports of these revolts, Caesar determined not to go to Northern Gaul as usual, but to remain at Samarobriva all through the winter. The Treveri attacked Labienus, but were repulsed, and their leader Indutiomarus was slain. Then for a time there was quiet in Gaul.

---

6. nōn, etc.: *not one soldier in ten.* How lit.? **8. rēs:** *the defense.* **14. (id) dētrīmentum quod.**

Questions: What quality did Cicero possess, which brought him victory instead of the disaster that befell Sabinus?

Book VI

1. Caesar's Second Expedition into Germany (53 B.C.)

Summary of Chapters 1–10

During the winter Caesar more than made up for the losses he had sustained by recruiting two new legions and obtaining the loan of another from Pompey. He took the field earlier than usual, and by his rapid movements quickly stamped out revolts among the Nervii, Senones, and Carnutes. He then ravaged the country of the Menapii and reduced them to submission.

Meanwhile Labienus was again attacked by the Treveri, but by the pretense of fear he drew them into an unfavorable position and defeated them. Caesar now joined forces with him, and at once started on a second expedition into Germany. Receiving hostages from the Ubii, he advanced into the territory of the Suebi, whereupon they withdrew into the vast forests of their land.

2. Customs of the Gauls and the Germans

Summary of Chapters 11–12

At this point Caesar breaks off his narrative to compare the customs of the Gauls and Germans. In Gaul, he said, every state, every district, almost every household was divided into factions. Before he came into Gaul, the Sequani with the aid of the Germans wrested the leadership from the Aedui, but were forced by Ariovistus to yield much of their territory to incoming German tribes. When Caesar defeated Ariovistus and expelled the Germans from Gaul, he restored the Aedui to the leadership of one faction, and placed the Remi at the head of the other.

Classes in Gaul. The Druids — their power as priests and judges

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene

13. 1. aliquō numerō: *of any account* (**84**).

servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum dēligitur; nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent.

---

6. dicant: not **dīcant.** **quibus . . . sunt:** *who have* (**67**). **in hōs:** *over them.* **9. rēbus** (**62**). **12. eōs** = Gallōs. **15. īdem:** *likewise.* **17. stetit:** *abide by.* **18. Quibus,** (dat.): *Those who are thus excluded.* **19. hīs** (**63**). **30. dēcrētīs** (**61**).

Questions: Why did Caesar decide to spend the winter at Samarobriva? How did he obtain three more legions? How many did he

Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

The privileges of the Druids; their training and beliefs

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt; mīlitiae vacātiōnem, omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs, et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs, minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī

---

now have? Trace Caesar's course. Where did he unite with Labienus? What river did he now cross? Locate the Ubii and Suebi. What was the condition of the common people among the Gauls? What two classes were above them? What powers did the Druids possess as judges? as priests? Upon the death of the chief Druid, how was the vacancy filled?

14. 7. ea litterīs: *these teachings to writing.* **8. cum,** *although.* **9. ratiōnibus,** *transactions.* **litterīs** (80). **12. quod:** (pronoun), *for, it.* **15. hoc persuādere:** *to convince* (men) *of this.* **animās . . . trānsīre:** the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, still held by Buddhists. **17. excitārī:** impers., *men are spurred on.*

Questions: Were the Druids right in their methods of teaching?

ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ante Caesaris adventum ferē quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human sacrifices. The gods of the Gauls

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

---

15. 4. (iniūriās) illātās. **5. eōrum ut quisque . . . ita plūrimōs:** *the more distinguished each one of these . . . the more.* How lit.?

Questions: What system in the Middle Ages resembled this of the Knights? What Gallic noble, relying on the number of his retainers, defied the courts?

16. 4. administrīs: (*as*) *ministers.* **9. simulācra:** immense wickerwork images in human form.

17. Deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut quispiam, neglēctā religiōne, aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Strange customs of the Gauls

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium

---

17. 1. Mercurium: Just as the Romans identified Greek gods with their own, so here Caesar identifies certain divinities (whose Gallic names he does not give) with Roman gods of the same general attributes. **2. simulācra:** Possibly the huge upright stones called *menhirs*, which are still standing in some districts of France, especially in Brittany. **ferunt:** *they say.* **5. (colunt) Apollinem. 10. cēperint (112). 15. (ea) capta . . . posita. 16. supplicium:** Compare the fate of Achan, Joshua, VII, 19–26.

Questions: Did the Romans ever offer human sacrifices? How was theft punished in England before the XVIIIth century? Have *tumuli* been found in our country?

18. 1. Dīte patre: A Gallic divinity is here identified with *Father Dis* (later called Pluto), god of the Underworld, — a region of darkness and night. **3. noctium:** That our Anglo-Saxon ancestors also reckoned time by nights is evident from the word *fortnight* (fourteen nights).

fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae, illūstriōre locō nātus, dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūneribus cōnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

---

8. fīlium . . . assistere: *for a son to appear;* subject of (esse) **turpe.**

19. 1. pecūniās: *property.* **2. cum dōtibus commūnicant:** *add it to the dowry.* **4. vītā superāvit:** *survives.* How lit.? **7. vītae . . . potestātem:** Theoretically the head of a Roman family had the same power. **10. in servīlem modum:** *as is done with slaves, i.e.,* by torture. **11. sī compertum est:** *if* (their guilt) *is proved.* **14. cordī fuisse:** *were dear.* How lit.? **15. suprā hanc memoriam:** *before our time.* **16. iūstīs:** *regular.*

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs, quae vīsa sunt, occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

The Germans: their religion; manner of assigning land

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque

---

20. 1. (Eae) cīvitātēs, quae. 2. habent lēgibus sānctum: *have it ordained by law.* **3. accēperit,** *Implied Indirect Discourse* (**118,** 1). **5. quod . . . cognitum est:** *because it has been found.* **7. quae vīsa sunt:** *what seems (advisable).*

Questions: Why do primitive peoples measure time by the moon rather than the sun? How do the Indians reckon time? Which of our holidays begins on the evening before? Among what people was it customary for wives to be burned alive on the funeral pyre with their dead husbands?

21. 7. ā parvīs: *from childhood.*

22. 4. in annōs singulōs: *for a single year.*

hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt.

Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē, assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī, studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

German frontiers; rulers; freebooting; protection of guests; supremacy in war

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātīs fīnibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam, quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac

5. quīque = eīsque quī: *and to those who have joined (the clans)*, as dependents. **6. agrī:** with **quantum.** **aliō:** adv. **7. reī:** *practice.* **assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī:** *pleased with a permanent mode of living.* **8. agrī cultūrā:** *for agriculture.* **13. aequitāte:** *contentment.*

Questions: Which had the more primitive religious system, — the Gauls or the Germans? What German superstition aided Caesar to win a victory? What modern theory with regard to land ownership is based upon several of the reasons Caesar cites in Chapter 22?

23. 2. Hoc: *It;* explained by the two foll. clauses. **proprium:** *a sign.* **3. fīnitimōs:** *for their neighbors to*, etc. **6. bellum . . . īnfert:** *wages defensive or offensive war.* How lit.?

dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, — cōnsurgunt iī, quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine

The Lorelei Rock on the Rhine.

collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

---

15. quī, etc., *and that those who are willing to follow should volunteer.*
18. hīs (63).

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.

Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur. Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia ad cōpiam atque ūsūs multa largītur. Itaque paulātim assuēfactī superārī, multīsque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest and its wonderful animals

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdo novem diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus, dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus, multārumque gentium fīnēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter

24. 12. prōvinciārum (Rōmānārum). 13. ad cōpiam atque ūsūs: *contributing to their wealth and enjoyment.* **multa:** *many articles.* **15. (Gallī) ipsī.**

Questions: How did the Germans regard freebooting? What people in the East never violate the rights of hospitality? Does civilization make men less brave?

25. 2. lātitūdō: from north to south. **iter (72). expedītō:** *for an unencumbered (traveler).* **3. mēnsūrās:** *i.e.*, the people of that region had no system of measuring distances as the Romans did. **4. rēctā regiōne:** *straight along.* **9. cum (115).**

LX prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat, quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus, quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit, excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, sī quō afflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant, atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt.

Horns of a Moose.

---

26. 1. bōs: Perhaps the reindeer, but the one horn is a bit puzzling. **2. hīs cornibus:** *than those horns* (**86**).

27. 3. antecēdunt (**caprās**). **15. omnēs:** with **arborēs**. **16. summa:** *exact, i.e.*, the trees look exactly as though they were standing firmly. **17. eārum** (**arborum**). **Hūc:** *against these.*

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

2. Caesar's Pursuit of Ambiorix

Summary of Chapters 29–44

As it was impossible to follow the Suebi into their forests, Caesar recrossed the Rhine, and immediately marched into the country of the Eburones in pursuit of Ambiorix. That chieftain, narrowly escaping capture by Caesar's cavalry, took refuge in the forest of the Ardennes. Caesar advanced to the site of Sabinus' camp. Here he left his baggage with one of the newly recruited legions under the command of Cicero. The remaining nine legions in three divisions, one of which Caesar commanded, proceeded in different directions. They were to devastate the country for a week and then return to Cicero's camp.

Desirous of inflicting the most bitter punishment upon the Eburones, Caesar now invited the neighboring tribes to plunder their territory. Among those who came to do so were the Sugambri, a German tribe from across the Rhine. Learning that Caesar had left large stores behind with a very small force to protect them,

---

28. 4. hominī and **ferae** (**61**). **8. quae sint** = **ut ea sint. 12. ab labrīs:** *at the rim.* **13. pōculīs:** Drinking horns were still used in the Middle Ages.

Questions: Locate the Hercynian Forest. Estimate its width.

they suddenly attacked Cicero's camp, when half the legion had gone foraging. The inexperienced recruits within were seized with a panic, and the capture of the camp was averted only through the gallantry of the veteran centurion Basilus. Balked in this attempt, the Germans attacked the foraging party on their return, and inflicting severe losses upon them made off with their booty.

Caesar returned and continued to ravage the district in all directions, but Ambiorix, hunted through swamp and forest like a wild animal, always managed to elude his relentless enemies. Late in the autumn, as there was no longer any hope of capturing him, Caesar assigned his legions to their camps, and proceeded to Northern Italy for the winter.

Questions on omitted chapters 29–44:

Locate the Eburones. What had they done to merit punishment from Caesar? Who was their chief? Locate the forest of the Ardennes. Where did Caesar leave his baggage in the care of one legion? What was the rest of his army detailed to do? Who were the Sugambri? Why did they now come into this region? What did they do? Who saved Cicero's camp? Where had he shown splendid courage before? What did Caesar do after his return to the camp? Where did he go for the winter?

Book VII

Campaign of 52 B.C.

The Final Struggle for Gallic Freedom under Vercingetorix

Caesar had been in Gaul six years. He had conquered the country and annexed it as a province of Rome. Yet he had by no means won the allegiance of the Gallic states. Hitherto he had succeeded in holding them under control by shrewdly playing faction against faction and by suppressing scattered revolts through the superiority of his army. But the Gauls had not lost all hope of expelling the Roman invader. What they had lacked thus far was a truly great commander, under whom they could unite to do battle against a common enemy. Now at last in the seventh year there appeared among them — unexpectedly — an inspiring leader, who combined unusual military ability with great personal magnetism. This was the Arvernian nobleman, Vercingetorix.

Summary of Chapters 1–67

During the winter of B.C. 53–52 the city of Rome was greatly disturbed by political dissensions and street riots. Thinking that these troublous conditions would detain Caesar in Northern Italy, many chiefs of Gaul secretly met and conspired against him. The Carnutes began the rebellion by massacring the Roman citizens at Cenabum. News of this outbreak soon reached Gergovia, capital city of the Arverni, the home of Vercingetorix. He at once appealed to the patriotism of his people and persuaded them to take part in this movement for the freedom of Gaul. Numerous other states quickly followed the example set by the Arverni. A large army was assembled and the supreme command was given to Vercingetorix. His first step was to send a force to invade the Roman Province and attack Narbo.

Roused by these alarming reports, Caesar moved with lightning speed. He first went to Narbo and provided for the protection of

the Province. Then with a small force he crossed the Cévennes Mountains through snow six feet deep, and suddenly descended upon the Arverni. He thereby forced Vercingetorix, who was farther north among the Bituriges, to return for the relief of his own people. Now came Caesar's opportunity. Leaving his forces in command of Brutus to devastate the Arvernian district, he dashed to the river Rhone, up the Saône, through the Aedui, into the country of the Lingones, where two of his legions were wintering. Then

The Site of Gergovia.

stationing two legions at Agedincum to guard the heavy baggage, in quick succession he captured Vellaunodunum, Cenabum, and Noviodunum, and marched toward Avaricum.

These disasters convinced Vercingetorix that there was only one way to cope with the Romans. He called a council and set forth his plan. It called for the utmost self-sacrifice on the part of his countrymen. They must burn their houses, their barns, their villages, — even their towns, and thus cut off Caesar's supplies. The only alternative was to be conquered, and that meant death for the warriors and captivity for their wives and children. To

this staggering appeal the Gauls responded in a spirit of noble patriotism, and soon the countryside was ablaze in every direction. But the Bituriges could not bear to see their splendid capital Avaricum destroyed. They insisted that it was impregnable, and plead so piteously that at last Vercingetorix yielded against his better judgment.

Avaricum was indeed wonderfully well fortified, but the Romans pressed the seige indefatigably, and in spite of the garrison's gallant defense took it by storm. It was another hard blow for the Gauls, but they knew full well that it was their own fault. Vercingetorix cheered them with the hope of ultimate victory, and retired with his army to his home-town Gergovia.

Dispatching Labienus with four legions to put down a revolt in the valley of the Seine, Caesar with the six remaining legions laid siege to Gergovia. But the Aedui were threatening to rebel, and he hurried away to win them back to their allegiance. In his absence Vercingetorix made a furious attack upon the Roman camp, and Caesar returned just in time to save it from capture.

The situation now caused Caesar deep anxiety, for his forces were widely separated, and the rebellion was rapidly gaining in strength. He attempted to surprise the enemy, but the attack — though successful at first — was eventually repulsed with severe losses. A few days later Caesar abandoned the siege, and marched north into the country of the Aedui, only to find that they too had joined the rebellion. He was hemmed in on every side, and his supplies were falling short. Marching day and night, at length he reached the Loire, and having crossed its swollen stream; once more confounded his enemies by his speed. Labienus, who had defeated the Parisii and returned to Agedincum, was summoned, and with the arrival of his legions Caesar's united army resumed operations in a more hopeful spirit.

But the disaster to the Romans at Gergovia had already had its effect. All the states of Celtic and Belgic Gaul except three, the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri, were now included in the Great Rebellion. A council of war was called at Bibracte, and Vercingetorix was elected commander-in-chief of the united Gallic armies. In view of the enemy's enormous forces Caesar's most pressing need was in some way or other to reënforce his army. At this critical

juncture he obtained from across the Rhine a strong detachment of *German cavalry*. It was the turning point of the war. For once Vercingetorix was caught off his guard and rashly risked a cavalry engagement. It ended in the utter rout of the Gallic cavalry.

Vercingetorix takes refuge in Alesia. Caesar lays siege to the town

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū, Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar, impedīmentīs in proximum collem dēductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relīctīs, secūtus hostēs, quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs circumvāllāre īnstituit.

Questions on omitted chapters 1–67:

What was the greatest need of the Gauls in their struggle for freedom? What encouraged the chiefs of Gaul to conspire against Caesar during the winter? How did the rebellion start? What noble leader now took up the Gallic cause? What qualifications did he possess? Locate Gergovia. What was Vercingetorix's first move against the Romans? Where was Caesar? Trace his course to Narbo. What did he do there? How did he rejoin his army? Trace his course. What city did he make his base for the campaign? Locate the cities he captured. What did Vercingetorix now persuade his countrymen to do? Locate Avaricum. Why was not this city destroyed by the Gauls? After its capture where did Vercingetorix retire? Why did Caesar abandon the siege? Where was Labienus? How did Caesar manage to reunite his forces? What resulted from Caesar's defeat at Gergovia? How did Caesar reënforce this army? How did the German cavalry compare with that of the Gauls? What was the result of the cavalry engagement that now followed?

---

68. 2. quod (44). 6. quantum (spatium), *as far as*. **8. alterō = posterō.**

Questions: Locate Alesia.

Alesia's defenses. The Gallic cavalry is routed again

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam sex in altitūdinem pedum praedūxerant.

Eius mūnītiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur, circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

70. Opere īnstitūtō, fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē, quam — intermissam collibus — tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs summittit, legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat.

---

69. 1. colle: now called *Mont Auxois*, rising to a height of about 500 ft. above the streams on either side. On the southwestern slope of the hill is the village of *Alise-Ste-Reine*. Excavations have yielded many interesting objects, — Roman and Gallic weapons and coins, barbed hooks, etc. **3. flūmina:** the *Ose* and the *Oserain*. **4. plānitiēs:** west of the town, now called *Les Laumes*. **6. spatiō:** The distance between the hill-top of Alesia and the tops of the surrounding hills is about a mile. **parī . . . fastīgiō (84)**, *of equal height* (high as the hill of Alesia). **7. quae pars collis . . . hunc omnem locum:** *all that part of the hill which*. **12. castra . . . castella:** The sites of four infantry and four cavalry camps, and of five redoubts have been determined.

70. 1. Opere: The Roman works. **2. intermissam collibus:** *free from hills*. How lit.? **4. nostrīs (62)**.

Praesidiō legiōnum additō, nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs, in fugam coniectī, sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque, angustiōribus portīs relictīs, coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī, relictīs equīs, fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō

Vercingetorix and His Warriors.

cōnstituerat, prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant, Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs, ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

9. portīs: entrances in the stone wall (**māceria**) on the side east of Alesia. **14. venīrī:** impers., *that the Romans were coming.*

Questions: Locate the Roman camps. Where was the plain of *Les Laumes?* On which side of Alesia did the cavalry battle take place?

Vercingetorix summons aid from all Gaul, and apportions his scanty supplies

71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque, ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē, optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum, hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat; ratiōne initā, sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.

Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam eīs, quī nōn pāruerint, cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppidum recēpit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum parat administrāre.

Caesar's inner and outer line of siege works

72. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs, Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit.

Fossam pedum XX dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae

---

71. 2. perficiantur (116). 7. sē . . . meritum (p'pl.): *him, who had most devotedly served the cause of the common liberty.* **10. ratiōne initā:** *by actual calculation.* **12. opus intermissum:** a gap in the Roman line of works, which had not yet been completed.

Questions: How many legions did Caesar have? How did his army compare in numbers with that of Vercingetorix?

72. 3. Fossam: This trench ran across the plain of Les Laumes between the Ose and the Oserain. **pedum XX:** in width. Excavations

solum tantundem patēret, quantum summae fossae labra distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC redūxit, id hōc cōnsiliō, — quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, — nē dē improvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent.

Hōc intermissō spatiō, duās fossās XV pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine, perdūxit; quārum interiōrem, campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs, aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit.

Post eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit. Huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent; et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent.

---

show that it was about 9 feet deep. **dērēctīs:** The Romans usually dug trenches with sloping sides. **4. solum:** *the bottom* was as wide as the top. **5. pedēs CCCC:** The actual distance was nearer 400 yds. **6. esset complexus** and **cingerētur:** Implied Ind. Disc., depending on the *thought* implied in **cōnsilium.** **11. Hōc spatiō:** the 400 yds. **duās fossās:** Of these the inner trench encircled the entire town, but the outer trench, starting at the Ose, ran across the plain only as far as the foot of the Flavigny Heights. **14. Post:** On the farther side from the town. **vāllum:** *palisade.* **XII pedum:** in height. **15. lōrīcam pinnāsque:** *breastwork and battlements* of interwoven branches. **cervīs:** *forked branches,* spreading like a stag's horn. **16. pluteōrum:** *the screens* of branches.

73. 2. nostrīs cōpiīs: *i.e.,* the soldiers available for guarding the works. **6. addendum (esse):** impers. **quō:** why not **ut?** (**106**).

Seigny
Bussy-le-Grand
Rue de Pissot
Rue du Chateau
Menetreux
Gresigny
Mont Réa
Les Laumes
Venarey
Alise-St-Reine
Alesia
Bussy la Fosse
Pouillenay
Flavigny
Oserain R.
A
B
C
D
G
H
I
K

EXPLANATION

Caesar's lines of works about Alesia encompassed a circuit of 11 Roman miles on the inside, 14 miles on the outside.

In the plain west of the city, and at other points where required, there were two systems of defenses, one to protect Caesar's men against the attacks of Vercingetorix in the city, the other as a defense against the relieving army.

Camps of infantry were probably located at **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**; of cavalry at **G**, **H**, **I**, **K**. The redoubts, *castella* (chap. 69), are numbered 1 to 23.

On the west, along the edge of the plain, a trench, or moat, 20 feet wide, with vertical sides, was constructed (chap. 72, ll. 3–5). Further west, in this order, 'goads,' *stimulī;* 'wolf-holes,' *līlia;* 'boundary posts,' *cippī;* two V-shaped 'trenches,' *fossae;* 'rampart,' *agger*, and 'palisade,' *vallus*, with a 'breastwork,' *lōrīca*, and 'battlements,' *pinnae;* also 'towers,' *turrēs*, at intervals of 80 feet. These defenses formed the LINE OF CONTRAVALLATION (chap. 72–73).

The same defenses, in a reverse series, the 'goads' being furthest outside, the rampart inside, formed the LINE OF CIRCUMVALLATION (chap. 74).

Itaque, truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs ramīs abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī, et ab īnfimō revinctī nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

Ante hōs, oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem dispositīs, scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur, paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine, ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī, dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul, cōnfīrmandī et stabiliendī causā, singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant.

Ante haec tāleae, pedem longae, ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs, tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs, omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIIII mīlia passuum complexus, parēs eiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā

10. Hūc: In these five-foot trenches. **illī stīpitēs:** described in the preceding sentence. **12. ab rāmīs:** only the branches were above the ground. **13. quō,** adv. **14. cippōs:** jokingly named *boundary posts,* because they resembled surveyors' boundary marks. **15. in quīncuncem:** *in diagonal order,* like the five-spot on dice. **16. paulātim angustiōre:** *gradually narrowing.* **17. feminis,** from **femur. 19. digitīs** (86). **20. singulī pedēs exculcābantur:** *each trunk was packed with earth to the depth of a foot from the bottom.* How lit.? **25. tāleae . . . īnfīxīs:** barbed iron spikes driven into wooden blocks. Some of them have been found.

74. 3. dīversās: *facing in the opposite direction, i.e.,* outward.

exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine, sī ita accidat, mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; ac nē cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

The Gauls muster an immense army for the relief of Alesia

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī, conciliō prīncipum indictō, nōn omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent.

Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Neviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Boiīs bīna; xxx ūniversīs cīvitātibus, quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō

---

7. convectum: *collected.* Notwithstanding these precautions toward the end of the siege Caesar's soldiers suffered greatly from lack of provisions.

Questions: Why was the trench dug with *vertical* sides? Why did not Caesar fill the entire inner trench with water? Was Caesar prudent to remain at Alesia after Vercingetorix had sent for reënforcements? Would the soldiers naturally be interested in constructing such ingenious and elaborate defenses?

75. 4. cīvitātī (61). 12. duodēna mīlia: *12,000 each.* Notice the following *distributive* numerals.

Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī.

Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō, prō eius hospitiō duō mīlia ūnā mīsērunt.

76. Huius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvīmus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; quibus ille prō meritīs cīvitātem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae, et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur.

Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

---

76. 1. operā: with **ūsus erat** (80). **3. ille:** Caesar. **cīvitātem:** the Atrebates. **4. ipsī:** to Commius. **14. dēlēctī:** an advisory staff. **16. ad** (74).

Questions: What states remained faithful to Caesar? What was the sum total of the levy? How much less did the Gauls actually send? Was Commius justified in deserting Caesar for the sake of Gallic freedom?

Summary of Chapter 77

The thirty days set by Vercingetorix had passed, and still the army of relief did not appear. All the grain in Alesia had been consumed and the garrison was faced with starvation. A council was called, at which some advocated surrender, others a sortie. Then Critognatus, an Arvernian nobleman, made a speech that was noteworthy for its frightful barbarity.

The Hill of Alesia.

Scorning surrender as a suggestion that could come only from a traitor, he said that he could approve of a sortie, were it not for the discouragement it would cause to the rest of the Gauls.

For when the army of relief came — as it was bound to come in time — how would the soldiers feel, if they had to fight among the corpses of 80,000 of their countrymen? What then did he favor? This, — that they should follow the example of their ancestors in a war with the Cimbri and Teutons, and subsist on the bodies of

those who could not take part in the fighting! It would be a noble thing to do in the cause of freedom! It would be a glorious example to hand down to posterity!

Wretched fate of the inhabitants of Alesia

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt, ut eī, quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem.

Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositīs in vāllō cūstōdiīs, recipī prohibēbat.

The army of relief arrives. The Gallic cavalry attack fiercely, but are repulsed

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et, colle exteriōre occupātō, nōn longius mīlle passibus ab nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē, equitātū ex castrīs ēductō, omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent; pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā

---

78. 3. prius . . . quam: *before.* **dēscendant (116). 4. potius,** with **quam. ūtendum (esse) cōnsiliō (80):** *that they should adopt that plan.* **11. (eōs) recipī.**

Questions: What did Critognatus favor rather than surrender or a sortie? Was Caesar forced to let the inhabitants of Alesia starve to death between the lines?

79. 3. colle: southwest of the town, now called *Mussy-la-Fosse.*

dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt, hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, prōductīs cōpiīs, ante oppidum cōnsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē improvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant.

Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī, quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.

Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam

---

9. dēspectus: noun. **Concurrunt:** the Gauls in Alesia.

80. 8. succurrerent (105). 9. complūrēs: of Caesar's cavalry. **16. rēctē aut turpiter factum:** *no brave or cowardly deed.* **22. (hostēs) cēdentēs.**

Questions: Locate the hill on which the relieving forces encamped. How many miles of works on the inner and outer lines did the legionaries have to defend? What was the combined strength of the Gallic armies within and without the town? How long did the cavalry battle last? What decided it?

coniectīs, sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī, cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī, suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī, quī ab Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls make an attack by night and are again repulsed

81. Ūnō diē intermissō, Gallī, atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī, ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne, quī in oppidō obsidēbantur, dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore, clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs summittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteā quam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus

81. 2. harpagōnum: *grappling hooks* on long poles, for tearing down the Roman breastwork. **3. campestrēs:** facing on the *Les Laumes* plain. **11. fundīs lībrīlibus:** *with slings that threw stones weighing a pound.* **15. M. Antōnius:** Caesar's first mention of the famous Mark Antony. **16. quā ex parte:** *wherever.*

trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt, quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

A simultaneous assault by the Gauls from without and within

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant, cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriō paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

A Coin of Vercingetorix.

Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum, quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercas-

---

82. 7. superiōribus: on the Flavigny Heights. **9. interiōrēs:** The Gauls within Alesia. **10. priōrēs:** *nearer*. **12. appropinquārent** (**116**).

Questions: Did the Romans suffer severe losses in this second attack? How did Antonius and Trebonius help in the defense? Why did not Vercingetorix's soldiers take part in this battle?

83. 2. locōrum (**59**). **4. collis:** now *Mont Réa*. **7. castra:** Camp D on Plan. **14. quōque** = **et quō. 16. videātur** (**118**, 1).

sivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit, mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

84. Vercingetorīx, ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Seeing his men weakening, Caesar sends reënforcements, and encourages them to make a supreme effort

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium summittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus, quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnī-

---

23. campestrēs: along the plain of *Les Laumes*.

84. 2. mūs-culōs, ('mousies'), *sheds* to protect the soldiers while filling the trenches. **8. pugnantibus (65).**

Questions: Locate Mont Réa. Why did the Gauls regard this as the weakest spot in the Roman lines? How many hours did the 60,000 men march on their detour?

85. 1. locum: on the Flavigny Heights, the spot marked with a cross on the Plan. **3. Utrīsque:** *To both sides.*

tiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat.

Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere.

Interiōrēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta ex ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

---

5. rem: *position.* **8. ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium:** *the downward slope.* The Roman camp (marked **D** on the battle plan) was on the side of the hill, not at the top. The sentence may be freely translated: *The unfavorable downward slope of the ground proved to be very serious* (to the Romans). **11. Agger:** *Earth.*

86. 2. (**nostrīs**) **labōrantibus:** these were the two legions under Antistius Reginus and Caninius Rebilus, which were being fiercely assailed in the camp at **D**. **3. dēductīs cohortibus:** *to withdraw his cohorts* from the rampart. **8. Interiōrēs:** Vercingetorix's troops. **9. loca:** probably on the Flavigny Heights. **11.** (**nostrōs**) **prōpugnantēs.**

Questions: Locate the spot where Caesar stood. Where was the outside Gallic army attacking? Where were Vercingetorix's men attacking? How far apart were these two points?

Caesar leads his men in person. A cavalry charge from the rear routs the enemy

87. Mittit prīmō Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit.

Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūnā XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, quō īnsignī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō, excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī, omissīs pīlīs, gladiīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa mīlitāria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs

---

87. 1. Mittit: to the point attacked by Vercingetorix. **4. eō:** Mont Réa. **6. circumīre:** probably starting from the point marked **G.** **8. aggerēs:** *ramparts.*

88. 1. vestītūs: a scarlet cloak. **īnsignī:** *distinguishing mark.* **3. haec . . . dēvexa:** the slopes down which Caesar rode in full view of the enemy on the Heights. **5. excipit:** *is taken up.*

in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus, hāc rē audītā, ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Surrender of Vercingetorix

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsēdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

---

17. Quod: *And.*

Questions: Which of the two attacks by the Gauls was the more dangerous for the Romans? How did Caesar meet this crisis? What action on his part broke up the attack upon the camp on Mont Réa?

89. 4. ad utramque rem: *for either fate.* **9. sī:** (*to see*) *whether.* **10. capita singula:** *one to each* (*soldier*).

Questions: What enabled the Roman army of 50,000 men to defeat forces that were almost seven times that number?

Vercingetorix: Plutarch vividly describes the scene at Vercingetorix's surrender. Caesar was seated on a tribunal erected well within his fortified lines when forth from the city gate came Vercingetorix, clad in armor, mounted upon a splendidly adorned horse. Riding round the tribunal, he dismounted, put off his armor, and then took his place at the feet of his conqueror. For a time there was profound silence. At

Caesar assigns his legions to winter quarters. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī, quae imperāret, sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter XX mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.

T. Labiēnum duābus cum legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et Lūcium Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne

length Caesar gave an order, and a guard quietly led the Gallic chieftain away.

Vercingetorix was sent to Rome, where he remained a prisoner for six years. At Caesar's triumph in B.C. 46 he marched in the procession, and then with several other noble captives was slain in sacrifice to the gods of Rome. Yet, in spite of this sad fate, he won a glorious name in history as a high-minded patriot and martyr to the cause of Gallic freedom. Today his statue crowns the heights of ancient Alesia, and the people of France respect and honor him as the first of their great national heroes.

90. 13. Cabillōnī et Matiscōne: Names of towns in the Locative case. Translate *at*. So also **Bibracte** (l. **15**), and **Rōmae** (l. **16**).

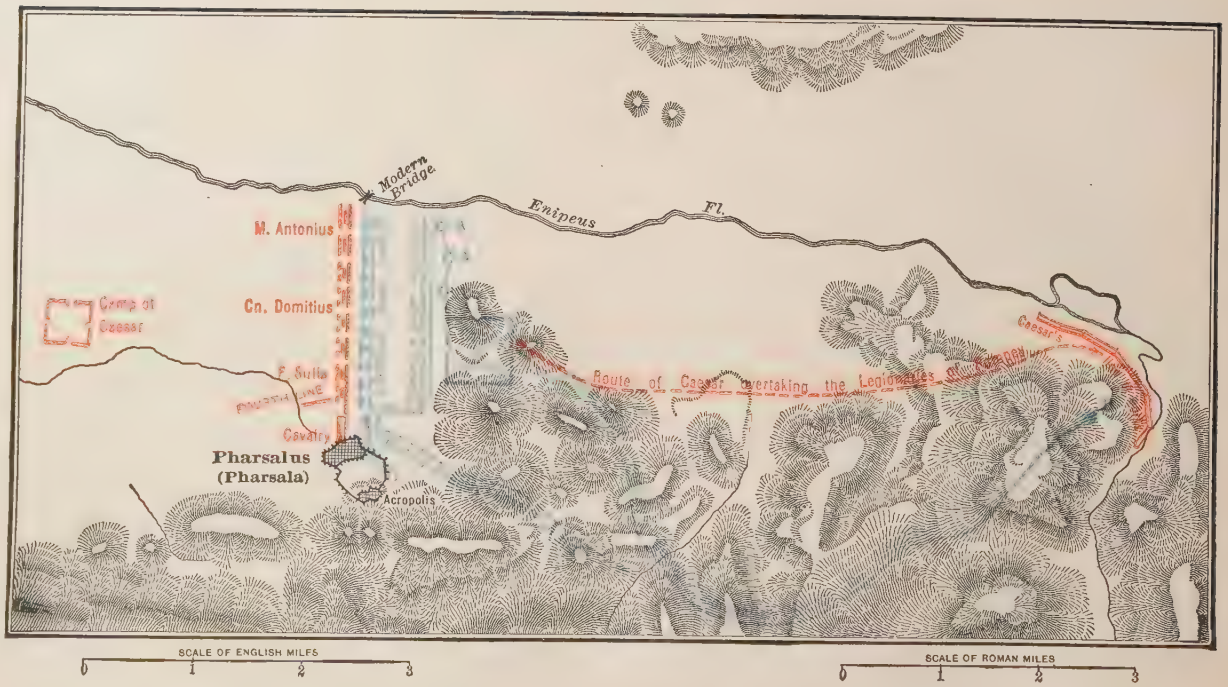
Conclusion. Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War* come to an end with the VIIth book. A further account of what he accomplished in Gaul is contained in an VIIIth book, written by Caesar's friend, Aulus Hirtius. During the year 52 there were revolts here and there, which Caesar crushed without much difficulty. The conquest of the land was now complete, but there still remained the task of securing the allegiance of the Gallic states. To this end Caesar adopted a policy of kindness and conciliation. He took the usual measures to organize the country into a Roman province, but he imposed upon it only a moderate tribute. He presented the chieftains with munificent gifts and gained

in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs, Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

---

their friendship by his courtesy and consideration. That he succeeded is evidenced by the fact that all rebellion ceased, and in a few years the Province of Gaul became thoroughly Romanized.



A. Redoubts, built by Pompey. **B.** Height on which Pompey's soldiers halted.

THE CIVIL WAR

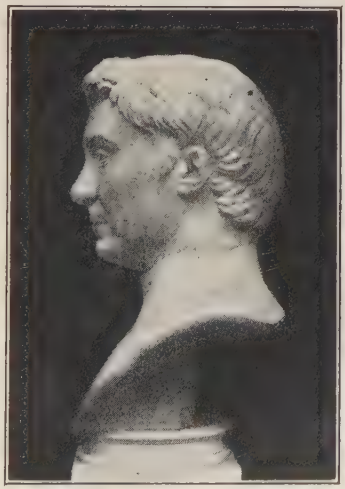
C. IŪLĪ CAESARIS

COMMENTĀRIĪ DĒ BELLŌ CĪVĪLĪ

The Battle of Pharsalus (Aug. 9, 48 B.C.)

Caesar draws up his army near Pompey's camp, and tests his cavalry

84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparātā cōnfīrmātīsque mīlitibus, et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre mīlitum animum vidērētur, temptandum Caesar exīstimāvit, quidnam Pompeius prōpositī aut voluntātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque exercitum ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, prīmō suīs locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompeī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs collibusque Pompeiānīs



Pompey.

84. 2. ā Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs: *after the battles at Dyrrachium,* in which Caesar's troops had been defeated. **3. quō (spatiō) . . . vidērētur:** *to enable him to feel quite sure of the spirit of his soldiers.* **4. (sibi) temptandum (esse).** **5. quidnam prōpositī (58):** *what purpose.* **11. suīs:** *favorable.* **12. continentibus:** *subsequent.* **13. ut:** *in such a way that.*

aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōnfīrmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.

Superius tamen īnstitūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset īnferior, adulēscentēs atque expedītōs ex antesignānīs, ēlēctīs ad pernīcitātem armīs, inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, quī cotīdiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum perciperent. Hīs erat rēbus effectum ut equitēs mīlle, etiam apertiōribus locīs, VII mīlium Pompeiānōrum impetum, cum adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent, neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit, atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeium suprā docuimus, cum quibusdam interfēcit.

Pompey declines battle until he finds that Caesar is about to move on

85. Pompeius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īnfimās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur,

16. Quae rēs: The fact that Pompey did not venture to offer battle, when Caesar moved nearer. **18. Superius īnstitūtum:** *his former arrangement*, of interspersing light-armed infantry among the cavalry. He first tried this formation shortly after leaving Dyrrachium. It had proved very effective. **19. multis partibus (87):** *many times.* **20. adulēscentēs . . . antesignānīs:** *light-armed young men from among the picked skirmishers.* **21. ad pernīcitātem:** *with reference to speed.* **22. cōnsuētūdine:** *practice.* **ūsum:** *experience.* **23. perciperent (105).** **25. ūsus:** *need.* **28. duōbus:** Two brothers, who had received many favors from Caesar for their services to him while in Gaul, and who more recently held places of trust in his army. Detected in dishonest dealing, they resented being censured by Caesar, and deserted to Pompey.

Questions: Trace Caesar's route from Dyrrachium to Pharsalus. How did Caesar's cavalry compare with Pompey's in number? What did Caesar do to strengthen his cavalry? From whom did he get the idea of this formation?

85. **2. īnstruēbat:** What does the Imp. tense here denote?

exspectāns sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar, nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī posse Pompeium exīstimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur; simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dīmicandī nancīscerētur et īnsolitum ad labōrem Pompeī exercitum cotīdiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, signō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs, animadversum est paulō ante, extrā cotīdiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompeī prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dīmicārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in praesentiā nōbīs, et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sīcut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō sīmus ad dīmicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus,' cōnfestimque expedītās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey is confident of victory by means of his cavalry. Labienus regards Caesar's army with contempt

86. Pompeius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dīxerat, prius quam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērīque admīrātī, 'Sciō mē,' inquit, 'paene

---

3. sī: (*to see*) *if.* **sē subiceret:** *would advance close to.* **5. bellī ratiōnem:** *plan of campaign.* **6. haec spectāns:** *with this in view.* **12. paulō ante:** *a little before* they were ready to start. **extrā . . . longius:** *farther than had been its daily custom.* How lit.? **14. nōn:** with **inīquō.** **19. expedītās:** (lit., *unencumbered* with their packs), *in fighting trim.*

Questions: What was Pompey's real purpose in declining battle? What new plan of campaign did Caesar make? Why?

86. 3. etiam: *actually.* **in cōnsiliō:** *in a meeting* with his staff.

incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsilī meī accipite, quō fīrmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis.'

'Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs (idque mihi sē factūrōs cōnfīrmāvērunt), ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō aggrederentur, et, circumventā ā tergō aciē, prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent, quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine perīculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.'

Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parātī in posterum diem, et, quoniam fieret dīmicandī potestās, ut saepe rogitāvissent, nē suam neu reliquōrum opīniōnem fallerent.

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompeī cōnsilium summīs laudibus efferret, 'Nōlī,' inquit, 'exīstimāre, Pompeī, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvīcerit. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs neque temere incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illīus exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit (quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse), multōs autumnī pestilentia in Ītaliā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in continentī. An nōn audīstis, ex eīs quī per causam valētūdinis remānsērunt cohortēs esse Brundisī

---

6. ratiōnem: *nature.* **7. quō:** conj. **8. equitibus (61).** **15. dēnūntiāvit:** *urged.* **17. neu . . . fallerent:** *not to disappoint his expectation or that of the rest* (of the army).

87. 1. Labiēnus: At the very beginning of hostilities Labienus had deserted his old commander and gone over to Pompey. **excēpit:** *followed.* **cum . . . dēspiceret . . . efferret:** *disparaging . . . extolling.* **3. Nōlī exīstimāre:** *Do not suppose.* How lit.? **Pompeī (54).** **7. autumnī pestilentia:** *the autumnal pestilence.* In the Autumn of B.C. 49 Caesar's army had suffered from the scourge of fever in Apulia and at Brundisium. **9. continentī:** Italy. **An:** Single Direct Questions introduced by **an** often denote surprise, indignation, or emphatic argument. Do not translate **an.** **10. Brundisī:** Locative.

factās? Hae cōpiae, quās vidētis, ex dīlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērīque sunt ex colōniīs Trānspadānīs. Ac tamen, quod fuit rōboris, duōbus proeliīs Dyrrachīnīs interiit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hoc laudāns, Pompeius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec tum facta sunt in cōnsiliō magnāque spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmārī vidēbātur.

The formation of the battle lines of both armies

88. Caesar, cum Pompeī castrīs appropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem eius īnstrūctam animum advertit:

Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae, trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō; quārum ūna prīma, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompeius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūncta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās

---

11. hōrum annōrum: years of the Civil War. **13. quod fuit rōboris:** *all their strength.* **21. nihil . . . vidēbātur:** *it was evident that no groundless assurance was being given.*

Questions: What was Pompey's plan of battle? Was it sound? How was Caesar's left wing protected? Had Labienus proved himself a good general in Gaul? Was he right in his opinion of Caesar's present army? What oath did Pompey and his officers take at this meeting? Was it a sensible or silly thing to do?

88. 2. animum advertit: *observed.* **3. trāditae ā Caesare:** See note to page **227**, line 10. **5. appellābātur:** These were the VIth and XVth in Caesar's army in Gaul. **6. Scīpiō:** One of Pompey's most ardent supporters. After the death of Julia, Pompey married this Scipio's daughter. **Syriacīs:** Scipio, who was governor of Syria, set out from his province with two legions, and succeeded in effecting a junction with Pompey in Macedonia. **7. Ciliciēnsis legiō:** A veteran legion from Cilicia in southeastern Asia Minor.

trāductās ab Āfrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās fīrmissimās sē habēre Pompeius exīstimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat, numerōque cohortēs CX explēverat. Haec erant numerō mīlia XLV; ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriīs superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs VII castrīs propinquīsque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impedītīs rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūnctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcerat.

89. Caesar, superius īnstitūtum servāns, decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta, et huic sīc adiūnxit octāvam ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs VII castrīs praesidiō relīquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediae aciēī Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompeium cōnstitit. Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit

---

8. ab Āfrāniō: One of Pompey's lieutenants, who had been defeated by Caesar in Spain (B.C. 49). **erant collocātae:** plural, because **legiō cum cohortibus Hispānīs = legiō et cohortēs Hispānae.** **9. Hās . . . habēre:** *That these (legions) were the strongest he had.* **11. cohortēs CX,** *i.e.*, the equivalent of 11 legions. **12. ēvocātōrum:** *of veteran volunteers.* **duo (mīlia).** **beneficiāriīs:** *privileged soldiers,* who by order of the commander were exempted from certain duties. **16. rīvus:** the Enipeus. **17. impedītīs:** *difficult* to cross.

89. 1. superius īnstitūtum: of giving the xth legion the place of honor on the right wing. **8. Sullam:** the dictator's nephew. **12. singulās:** *one from each legion.*

atque ex hīs quārtam īnstituit equitātuīque opposuit; et quid fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque eius diēī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul tertiae aciēī imperāvit nē iniussū suō concurrerent; sē, cum id fierī vellet, vexillō signum datūrum.

Caesar addresses his soldiers. Crastinus leads the charge

90. Exercitum cum mīlitārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur, suaque in eum perpetuī temporis officia praedicāret, in prīmīs commemorāvit:

Testibus sē mīlitibus ūtī posse, quantō studiō pācem petīsset, quae per Vatīnium in colloquiīs, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modīs ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī mīlitum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū prīvāre voluisse.

Hāc habitā ōrātiōne, exposcentibus mīlitibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hic signō datō, 'Sequiminī mē,' inquit, 'manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī, quam cōnsuēvistis, operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium su-

---

16. vexillō: a special signal for this particular movement.

Questions: How many men were there in each of Pompey's legions? In Caesar's legions? In Caesar's 4th line?

90. 2. sua . . . officia: *his unvarying kindness to it.* **4. Testibus . . . ūtī:** *call his soldiers to witness.* How lit.? **5. Vatīnium . . . Clōdium:** Caesar had made every effort in behalf of peace with Pompey through these men. **7. Libō:** commander of Pompey's fleet at Oricum. He refused to allow Caesar to send envoys to Pompey. **8. abūtī (80):** *waste.*

91. 4. manipulārēs meī: *my old comrades.* How lit.? **5. quam:** pron. with **operam,** but translate *as.*

perest; quō cōnfectō, et ille suam dignitātem et nōs nostram lībertātem recuperābimus.' Simul respiciēns Caesarem, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vīvō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.' Haec cum dīxisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum ēlēctī mīlitēs circiter CXX voluntāriī sunt prōsecūtī.

Pompey awaits the evening's charge. Caesar's criticism

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī, ut satis esset ad concursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompeius suīs praedīxerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent, aciemque eius distrahī paterentur; idque admonitū C. Triārī fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut prīmus excursus vīsque mīlitum īnfringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suīs ōrdinibus dispositī dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat, in locō retentīs mīlitibus, quam sī ipsī immissīs tēlīs occurrissent; simul fore ut, duplicātō cursū, Caesaris mīlitēs exanimārentur et lassitūdine cōnficerentur.

Quod nōbīs quidem nūllā ratiōne factum ā Pompeiō vidētur, proptereā quod est quaedam animī incitātiō atque alacritās nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus īnstitūtum est, ut signa undique concinerent clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs incitārī exīstimāvērunt.

---

11. voluntāriī (*serving as*) *volunteers.*

Questions: What was a **prīmipīlus**? How many men constituted a maniple?

92. 1. tantum spatī: *only so much space,* probably about 500 feet. **4. distrahī:** *to fall into disorder.* **5. Triārius:** One of Pompey's officers. **excursus vīsque;** *charge and impetus.* **7. (Pompeiānī) dispositī. levius:** *with less effect.* **9. tēlīs (62). duplicātō cursū:** *by running double the distance.* **11. ratiōne:** *judgment.* **15. signa concinerent:** *trumpet signals should sound.*

Questions: Is Caesar's criticism of Pompey sound?

Caesar's veterans halt, then charge. Pompey's victorious cavalry is suddenly attacked by Caesar's fourth line, and routed

93. Sed nostrī mīlitēs, datō signō, cum īnfēstīs pīlīs prōcucurrissent atque animum advertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompeiānīs, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī, suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnsūmptīs vīribus appropinquārent; parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū, pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō Pompeiānī huic reī dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs cōnservārunt pīlīsque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt.

Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompeī cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdit. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompeī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ab latere apertō circumīre coepērunt.

Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, quārtae aciēī, quam īnstituerat VIII cohortium, dedit signum. Illae celeriter prōcucurrērunt, īnfēstīsque signīs tantā vī in Pompeī equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret, omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtīs, omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī, inermēs, sine praesidiō, interfectī sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū,

---

93. 1. īnfēstīs pīlīs: *with leveled pikes.* **2. nōn concurrī:** impers., *that there was no advance.* **8. huic reī dēfuērunt:** *failed to meet this emergency.* **9. excēpērunt:** (lit., *received* with their shields), *warded off.* **11. rediērunt:** *resorted.* **15. locō mōtus:** *driven from its position.* **16. sē turmātim explicāre:** *to deploy by squadrons.* **20. īnfēstīs signīs:** (we should say) *with flying colors.* How lit.? **22. incitātī fugā:** *in headlong flight.* **24. dēstitūtī:** *deserted* by the cavalry.

pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompeiānīs, circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortae.

Caesar's third line enters into action. Pompey's infantry breaks and flees

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompeiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit, quīn ab eīs cohortibus, quae contrā equitātum in quārtā aciē collocātae essent, initium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs mīlitibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim prīmum equitātus est pulsus, ab īsdem factae caedēs sagittāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab īsdem aciēs Pompeiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

Sed Pompeius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, atque eam partem, cui maximē cōnfīdēbat, perterritam animum advertit, aliīs diffīsus aciē excessit, prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit; et eīs centuriōnibus, quōs in statiōne ad praetōriam portam posuerat, clārē, ut mīlitēs exaudīrent, 'Tuēminī,' inquit, 'castra et dēfendite dīligenter, sī quid dūrius

---

26. etiam tum: *still.* **Pompeiānīs:** Pompey's legionaries.

Questions: How did Caesar's men outwit Pompey in their attack? Trace the course of Pompey's cavalry. Where did it fall in with Caesar's 4th line? Trace the course of the 4th line after it had defeated Pompey's cavalry.

94. 3. aliī: Caesar's 4th line. **5. Neque . . . quīn:** *But it did not escape Caesar's notice that.* **7. orīrētur (111, Note). 9. factae (sunt). 11. circumita . . . factum (est). 14. aliīs diffīsus (61):** *distrusting the rest* of his troops. **17. sī . . . acciderit:** *if anything goes amiss.* How lit.?

Questions: What was the signal for the 3rd line to enter battle? To what did Caesar chiefly attribute his victory? Locate the **porta praetōria** and the **praetōrium** in a Roman camp. What would Caesar have done in Pompey's place?

acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōnfīrmō.' Haec cum dīxisset, sē in praetōrium contulit, summae reī diffīdēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Caesar takes Pompey's luxurious camp. Pompey flees

95. Caesar, Pompeiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs, nūllum spatium perterritīs darī oportēre exīstimāns, mīlitēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatīgātī — nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta, — tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relīctae, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thracibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, dīmissīs plērīque armīs signīsque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

96. In castrīs Pompeī vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, L. etiam Lentulī et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā, quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriae fīdūciam dēsignārent; ut facile exīstimārī posset, nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēī timuisse,

---

95. 1. vāllum: of Pompey's camp. **6. imperiō (61).** **10. plērīque:** *in most cases.* With **mīlitēs.** **12. (eī), quī.** **15. ducibus:** *as leaders.*

96. 1. vidēre licuit: *one might see.* **trichilās:** *arbors* shaded with branches, under which to dine. **2. argentī:** *silver plate.* **3. cōnstrāta:** *laid.* **L. Lentulī:** consul in B.C. 49. **nōn nūllōrum:** *some (others).* **4. hederā:** *ivy.*

quī nōn necessāriās conquīrerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent!

Pompeius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus, dētrāctīs īnsignibus imperātōriīs, decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēiēcit, prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum XXX ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō, initiō fugae factō, paene prōditus vidērētur.

Caesar forces the surrender of Pompey's army. The losses on both sides

97. Caesar, castrīs potītus, ā mīlitibus contendit, nē, in praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit. Pompeiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompeī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompeiānīs occurrere coepit, et prō-

7. nōn: with **necessāriās. conquīrerent (112). 8. exercituī Caesaris . . . obiciēbant:** *used to taunt Caesar's army with.* How lit.? **11. īnsignibus:** the scarlet cloak and decorations. **16. opīniōnem** (subj. of **fefellisse**): *that he had been so greatly disappointed in his expectation.* How lit.? **17. ā quō genere . . . ab eō = ab eō genere . . . ā quō. 18. prōditus (esse).**

Questions: What evidences of luxury were found in Pompey's camp? Trace Pompey's flight. What happened to him afterwards?

97. 1. contendit: *urged.* **2. negōtī gerendī:** *of completing their task.* **5. iugīs eius (montis):** *along its ridges.* **versus** (prep., follows its case): *toward.* **9. commodiōre itinere:** *taking an easier route.* **occurrere coepit:** *started to intercept.*

gressus mīlia passuum VI aciem īnstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Pompeiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar, mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtius diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompeiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere, illī dēditiōne, missīs lēgātīs, agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum hīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt.

98. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passīsque palmīs, prōiectī ad terram, flentēs ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit; et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit mīlitibusque suīs commendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsīderārent. Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā, ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās, quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius CC mīlitēs dēsīderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter XXX āmīsit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pugnam proficīscēns dīxerat. Sīc enim Caesar exīstimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam vir-

---

12. flūmen: the Enipeus. **14. sēclūsit:** *cut off.*

98. 4. passīs palmīs: *with outstretched hands.* **7. nē quī:** (*urging*) *that none.* **8. quid suī (58):** *any of their belongings.* **Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā:** *Having given careful attention to this matter.* **9. sibi occurrere:** *to join him.* **10. in vicem:** *in turn.*

99. 4. in ōs adversum: *full in the face.*

tūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat.

Ex Pompeiānō exercitū circiter mīlia XV cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt amplius mīlia XXIV (namque etiam cohortēs, quae praesidiō in castellīs fuerant, sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs refūgērunt; signaque mīlitāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae IX. L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum vīrēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

---

7. optimē . . . meritum: *that he had rendered him* (Caesar) *the most devoted service.* **10. amplius mīlia (86, Note).** **14. Domitius:** one of Pompey's generals.

Questions: How did Caesar force the surviving Pompeian soldiers to surrender? How did he treat them afterwards? What losses did each army sustain? Why is the battle of Pharsalus regarded as one of the decisive battles of the world?

THE ARGONAUTS

Once upon a time there lived in Thessaly a king named Aeson. His brother, Pelias, expelled him from his kingdom and even attempted to take the life of his son, Jason. But Jason escaped, and grew to manhood in another country. Then he returned to Thessaly where Pelias, who feared that he might attempt to recover the kingdom, tried to get rid of him by sending him to fetch the Golden Fleece from Colchis. This was supposed to be an impossible feat.

Jason, with a band of heroes, started in the ship Argo (named for Argus, its builder), and after many adventures reached Colchis. Here Aeetes, the king, not wishing to give up the Fleece, set Jason to perform what seemed an impossible task, namely, to plough a field with certain fire-breathing oxen, and then to sow it with dragon's teeth.

Medea, the daughter of the king, however, assisted Jason by her skill in magic, first to perform the task appointed, and then to procure the Fleece. When Jason left, Medea fled with him after sacrificing her brother Absyrtus in order to delay her father's pursuit. When they reached Thessaly, Medea caused the death of Pelias, but later she and Jason were driven out. They removed to Corinth, and here Medea, becoming jealous of Glauce, daughter of Creon, caused her death by means of a poisoned robe. After this Medea was carried off in a chariot sent by the sun-god, and Jason was soon afterwards accidentally killed.

The wicked uncle

1. Erant ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Aesōn prīmum rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte

1. 1. Thessalia: *Thessaly*, a country in northeastern Greece. **alter . . . alter:** *one . . . the other.* **2. prīmum:** adv., *at first.*

adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt et, cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās cum haec audīvisset, etsī rē vērā magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit, et quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit. Illī tamen, cum bene intellegerent dolōrem eius falsum esse, nēsciō quam fābulam dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

A careless shoestring

2. Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā vī et dolō occupātum āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit, et, quam ob causam vēnisset, dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in praesentia perīculum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis venīret calceum ūnum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat, et certam diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē cōnstitūtā, magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit; inter aliōs autem vēnit etiam Iāsōn, quī

---

4. in animō habēbat: *planned.* How lit.? **6. amīcīs (58, Note 2). 10. rē vērā:** *in truth, really.* **12. cum,** meaning *since,* always takes the Subjunctive (**114**). **13. nēsciō quam fābulam:** (lit., *I know not what story*), *some story or other.* **fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictus,** *invent.*

2. 1. vereor, -ērī, -itus, *fear;* **veritus nē:** *fearing that* (**108**). **2. dolus, -ī,** m., *deceit, treachery.* **quendam (22). 3. cōnsuleret (105). quam** with superlative. See **quam** in Vocab. **6. venīret (118).** In Direct Discourse the words of the oracle would be: **Sī quis . . . veniet, eum cavē. 7. cavēret (107). 8. ut . . . esset (111).**

ā puerō apud centaurum quendam vīxerat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō nēsciō quō flūmine āmīsit.

---

12. centaurus, -ī, m., *centaur*, a mythical creature, half-man, half-horse. The centaurs were a rough warlike tribe, but this one — Chiron by name — was versed in the art of music and skilled in surgery. He dwelt in a cave on the summit of Mt. Pelion. **vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victus,** *live*. **13. in trānseundō . . . flūmine:** a gerundive phrase. See

Apollo Temple at Delphi.

Note to page **158**, line 5, and (**130**, 2). Jason had come to the River Anaurus, which was swollen with recent rains. Here a woman, old and ill-clad, bade him carry her across the river. At first he refused, but afterwards pitying her, he put her on his shoulders and entered the stream. As he struggled along in the midst of the turbulent waters, he lost one shoe, but at last he reached the bank almost exhausted and laid his burden down. Then to his astonishment he saw that the ugly old woman was transformed into a beautiful goddess, who told him that she was Juno, and that in return for his kind act she would help him in every undertaking.

The Golden Fleece

3. Iāsōn, igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, ūnō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum Peliās vīdisset, subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem, quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum, quod Phrixus ōlim ibi relīquerat. Cōnstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare, ut hōc vellere potīrētur; cum enim rēs esset magnī perīculī, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse. Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit, et quid fierī vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Iāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

The building of the good ship Argo

4. Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficīscī; dīmīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendī dīcerent. Intereā, postquam omnia, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, comportārī iussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rērum

---

3. 1. cum . . . posset: cum causal (**114**). **2. ūnō pede nūdō** (**89**). **rēgia, –ae,** f., [**rēgius**], *royal palace.* **4. dēmōnstrāvisset** (**118**). **6. Colchis, –idis,** (Acc., **Colchida**), f., *Colchis,* a province of Asia, east of the Black Sea. **7. vellus, –eris,** n., *fleece. Phrixus* and *Helle* were the children of Athamas, king of Boeotia in Greece. Their stepmother planned to kill them, but through the aid of a god they escaped, riding through the air on a ram with golden fleece. Near the shore of Asia Helle fell off and was drowned in the straits that still bear her name (*Hellespont*), but Phrixus reached Colchis in safety. Here he sacrificed the ram to Zeus and gave its fleece to Aeetes, who hung it up in the grove of Ares. **9. vellere** (**80**). **potīrētur** (**107**). **esset:** Account for the mood.

4. 1. iter (**72**). **3. docērent** (**105**). **5. ūsuī:** Dative of purpose (**64**); freely, *of use, useful.* **ad armandās nāvēs** (**130,** 2).

nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt; Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam dīligentiam praebēbat, ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore facta est.

The anchor is weighed

5. Intereā ea diēs appetēbat, quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Trādunt autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, Orpheum, citharoedum clārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem et multōs

HERCULES.

8. operī (62). 11. quam (eae nāvēs). 12. quibus (80). nostrō marī: the Mediterranean. **14. tōta** (with **nāvis**): *wholly, throughout.* **15. rōbur, –oris,** n., *hard wood, oak.*

5. 1. ap-petō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus, [ad], *draw near.* **9. Herculēs, –is,** m., *Hercules,* a hero famous for his strength. **Orpheus,** a Thracian bard who is said to have tamed wild beasts and even moved trees and rocks with the music of his golden lyre. **citharoedus, –ī,** m., [**cithara,** *lyre*], *harpist, minstrel.* **10. Thēseus:** The Athenian hero of many exploits and adventures, of which his victorious battle with the Minotaur is the most interesting. **11. Castor** and *Pollux,* the former famed for his skill in taming horses, the latter for boxing, were twin brothers who

aliōs, quōrum nōmina omnēs sciunt. Ex hīs Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda perīcula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit, et sociōs sibi adiūnxit; tum, paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit et, tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus, magnō cum favōre omnium solvit.

A fatal mistake

6. Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cȳzicum attigērunt, et ē nāvī ēgressī, ā rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī, ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt; at, postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae, unde nūper profectī erant, magnō cum perīculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī, arma rapuērunt, et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam lūx orīrētur, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

---

were deified by the Romans. In gratitude for their assistance in battle a temple was erected to their honor in the Roman Forum. **12. quōs** (the antecedent is **eōs** in the foll. line): *he selected those who he thought*, etc. **16. nāvem:** called the *Argo* after the name of its builder. **tempestātem:** (here) *weather*. **18.** (**nāvem**) **solvit,** (lit., *he loosed ship*): *set sail.*

6. 3. Cȳzicus was on the southern shore of the Propontis (Sea of Marmora). The city on the island bore the same name. **6. coorior, –īrī, –ortus,** *arise.*

The loss of Hylas

7. Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam, quam sēcum habērent, iam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs, in terram ēgressī, aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī dum aquam quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem, quae rīvum colēbant, cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī, diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vēstīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

Dining made difficult

8. Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad oppidum Salmydessum nāvem appulērunt, in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesīssent, quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō afficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset. Cuius supplicī hoc erat

---

7. 1. Postrī-diē, adv., [**posterus** + **diēs**]: *On the following day.* **Postrīdiē eius diēī,** (lit., *On that day's following day*) = **posterō diē.** **4. Mȳsia,** a country in northeastern Asia Minor. **in ancorīs:** *at anchor.* **6. habērent (118).** **11. cum ille negāret:** *when he said . . . not.* **15. Polyphēmus,** one of the Argonauts.

8. 1. Thrācia: *Thrace,* a country northeast of Greece, extending as far as the Black Sea. **2. ap-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus,** [**ad**], *bring to, land.* **5. caecus, -a, -um,** *blind.* **6. dīrus, -a, -um,** *dreadful.* **7. praebuisset (118).**

genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpȳiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam afferēbant; quotiēs enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, haud multum āfuit quīn Phīneus famē morerētur.

THE HARPY SEIZES PHINEUS' FOOD.

The Harpies beaten

9. Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illī eī reī auxilium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium

---

9. volucris, –is, f., [volō, *fly*], *bird*. **10. Harpȳia**, –ae, f., *Harpy*. **11. molestia**, –ae, f., *trouble, annoyance*. **quotiēs**, adv., [quot], *as often as*. **15. haud . . . morerētur**, (lit., *not much was wanting but that Phineus should die from hunger*): *Phineus was nearly dying of hunger*.

9. 1. locō: *condition*. **4. simul atque (ac)**: *as soon as*. **6. gaudeō**, –ēre, **gāvīsus**, semi-deponent (**28, Note**): *rejoice*. **7. opīniōnem**: *reputation*. **10. ferrent** (**111, Note**). **16. repperissent** (**118**).

libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpȳiae domum intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, qui ālīs īnstrūctī sunt, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpȳiae, reī novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

The Symplegades

10. Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Iāsonī dēmōnstrāvit, quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Iove in marī positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervāllō natābant et, sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est, quid faciendum esset, Iāsōn, sublātīs ancorīs, nāvem solvit, et lēnī ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit. Tum in prōrā stāns, columbam, quam in manū tenēbat, ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit et, priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene

21. *Zetes* and *Calais* were winged youths, sons of the North Wind, Boreas. **āera:** Greek Acc. ending. **22. sub-levō, –āre,** *raise, lift.* **dē-super,** adv., *down from above.*

10. 2. grātiam referret: *show gratitude, make return.* **3. rūpēs, –is,** f., [**rumpō,** *break*], *rock.* **4. magnitūdine** (84). **5. parvō intervāllō:** *a short distance apart.* **6. natō, –āre,** *swim, float.* **8. faciendum esset:** How is the Gerundive translated, when used with any part of the verb 'to be'? (**130,** 1). **9. lēnis, –e,** *gentle, light.* **prō-vehō, –ere, –vexī, –vectus,** *carry forward.* **10. prōra, –ae,** f., *prow, bow.* **columba, –ae,** f., *dove.* **11. rēctā viā:** *straight.* **13. cauda, –ae,** f., *tail.* **tantum,** adv., *only.* **14. concurrerent:** Subjunctive with **antequam** to denote *anticipation* (**116**): *they could rush together.*

intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī essent; bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

A difficult task

11. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset, quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum, sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs iūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs rēbus audītīs, Iāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

---

15. in . . . positam esse, *depended upon.* What is the literal translation? **17. grātiās agere:** *to give thanks.* Note the distinction between this phrase and the following: **grātiam habēre,** *to feel gratitude;* **grātiam** or **grātiās referre,** *to return a favor, show gratitude, requite.* **18. ēreptī essent:** Subj. in a relative clause denoting *cause.*

11. 1. Phāsis, –idos, (Acc., **Phāsim**), m., *Phasis,* a river emptying into the east end of the Black Sea. **5. trāderētur (107). 10. perfēcisset (118). 12. iungendī erant (130,** 1). **14. serō, –ere, sēvī, satus,** *sow, plant.* **16. reī bene gerendae:** *of accomplishing his purpose.* How lit.?

The magic ointment

12. At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat) hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, ex urbe ēvāsit, et postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam lēgit; tum, sūcō expressō, unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfīrmāret. Hōc factō, Iāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem, ut eō diē, quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī essent, corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Iāsōn, etsī paene omnēs magnitūdine et vīribus corporis antecēdebat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnstiterat), tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse cēnsēbat.

Sowing the dragon's teeth

13. Ubi is diēs vēnit, quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Iāsōn, ortā lūce, cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī inclūsī erant; tum, portīs apertīs, taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte iugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Iāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nēsciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam

---

12. 1. ad-amō, -āre, *fall in love with.* **2. rem aegrē ferēbat:** *was greatly troubled.* How lit.? **6. īn-sciente patre (89):** *without her father's knowledge.* **8. sūcus, -ī,** m., *juice.* **ex-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, [premō],** *press out.* **9. quod . . . aleret . . . cōnfīrmāret (105). alō, -ere, -uī, altus,** *nourish, sustain.* **nervus, -ī,** m., *sinew, muscle.* **11. essent (118,** 1). **12. ob-linō, -ere, -lēvī, -līnus,** *anoint.* **14. cōnstiterat,** (lit., *had consisted*): *had been spent.* **15. cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsus,** *think, judge.*

dīligentiam praebuit, ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc factō, ad locum, ubi rēx sedēbat, adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum, quem arāverat, magnā cum dīligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis, ut in eō locō, ubi sparsī essent, virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

A strange crop

14. Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs, ut armātōs virōs, quī ē dentibus gignerentur, sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum erat, cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium, quod Mēdēa dedisset, nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim Mēdēa praecēperat) in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et, cum quisque sibi id saxum (nēsciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī, vulneribus cōnfectī, ā Iāsone nūllō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

---

13. 9. cōnfēcerit (110). **12. spargō, –ere, sparsī, sparsus,** *scatter, sprinkle.* **14. gignō, –ere, genuī, genitus,** *bring forth, produce.*

14. 2. gignerentur: *should be born* **(118, 1).** **4. lassitūdō, –inis,** f., [**lassus,** *weary*], *weariness.* **ex-animō, –āre,** [**anima,** *breath*], (put out of breath), *exhaust.* **5. gignerentur:** Subj. of *anticipation* with **dum** meaning *until* **(116).** **6. vesper, –ī,** m., *evening.* **8. galea, –ae,** f., *helmet.* **9. mīrum in modum = mīrō modō.** **16. negōtiō:** *difficulty.*

The flight of Medea

15. At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, īrā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore perīculō, sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum, ubi Argō subducta erat, sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum, nē in tantō perīculō mulierem dēsereret, quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat, sē per eius auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patrem timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāve suā ablātūrum.

Seizure of the fleece

16. Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt, quō in locō Mēdca vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et sociīs ad mare relictīs, quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās contendit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus, quod quaerēbat, in arbore quādam vīdit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribilī arborem cūstōdiēbat. Tum Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum, quem ex

---

15. 4. tulisset (**111, Note**). **10.** lacrima, **-ae**, f., *tear*. ob-secrō, **-āre**, [sacer], *beseech*. **11.** eī (**62**).

16. 3. cēlō, **-āre**, *hide, conceal*. **6.** essent (**105**).

arbore proximā dēripuerat, venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs eius adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit; deinde, cum dracō somnō oppressus esset, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

Back to the Argo

17. Dum autem ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō ānxiō reditum Iāsonis exspectābant; bene enim intellegēbant, id negōtium summī esse perīculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē eius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent; sed, dum proficīscī parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōnspiciunt mīrum in modum inter silvās refulgēns, et magnopere mīrātī, quae causa esset eius reī, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Iāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās summās ēgērunt, quod rēs ita fēlīciter ēvēnisset.

Pursued by the angry father

18. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscendērunt, et, sublātīs ancorīs, prīmā vigiliā solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī

---

13. īn-ficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, [**faciō**], *stain.*

17. 6. mātūrandum (**esse**), impers., *that they ought to hasten.* **8. lūmen, –inis,** n., [**lūceō,** *shine*], *light.* **9. re-fulgeō, –ēre, –fulsī, —,** *flash back, shine.* **10. Iāsonī et Mēdēae** (**62**). **14. ēvēnisset** (**119,** *b*).

iussit, et, mīlitibus impositīs, fugientēs īnsecūtus est. Argonautae, quī bene sciēbant rem in discrīmine esse, summīs vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis, quā vehēbantur, ingentī esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte, quā Colchī, prōgredī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, minimum āfuit quīn ā Colchīs sequentibus caperentur; neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēlum adicī posset. At Mēdēa cum vīdisset, quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā, īnfandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

A fearful expedient

19. Erat in nāve Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa, ex urbe fugiēns, sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere, eō cōnsiliō, ut membrīs eius in mare coniectīs, cursum Colchōrum impedīret; sciēbat enim Aeētem, cum membra fīlī vīdisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opīniō eam fefellit; omnia enim ita ēvēnerunt, ut Mēdēa spērāverat. Aeētēs ubi prīmum membra vīdit, ad ea colligenda nāvem tenērī iussit. Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox ē cōnspectū hostium auferēbantur, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Eridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus, sī longius prōgressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut fīlī corpus ad sepultūram daret.

18. 8. fugientēs: *the fugitives.* **9. dis-crīmen, –inis,** n., [**cernō**], *crisis.* **12. quā,** (*with which*), *as.* **minimum āfuit quīn . . . caperentur:** See note to p. **420,** l. 15. **14. quō . . . posset:** *a spear's throw.* How lit.? **16. īn-fandus, –a, –um,** [**for, fārī,** *speak*], *unspeakable, monstrous.*

19. 7. fallō, –ere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive.* **Neque . . . fefellit:** *And she was not mistaken.* How lit.? **8. ubi prīmum:** *as soon as.* **10. rēm-igō, –āre,** [**rēmus** + **agō**], *row.* **11. prius . . . quam,** *until.* **12. Ēridanus, –ī,** m., mythical name of the **Padus,** the river *Po.* **14. dēmissus, –a, –um,** [part. of **dē-mittō**], *downcast, dejected.* **15. sepultūra, –ae,** f., [**sepeliō,** *bury*], *burial.*

The bargain with Pelias

20. Tandem post multa perīcula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit, unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam (quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat), statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur; Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Iāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permānsit; tandem ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quīn diēs suprēmus mihi adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vīvam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; cum autem ego ē vītā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.

Medea's magic arts

21. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit, et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta, mortem rēgī per dolum īnferre cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus iuvenem fierī?" Tum fīliae rēgis ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit: "Mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam scītis. Nunc igitur vōbīs dēmōnstrābō, quō modo haec rēs fierī possit." Hīs dictīs, cum arietem aetāte iam cōnfectum interfēcisset, membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcit, et īgne suppositō, aquae herbās quāsdam īnfūdit. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen

---

20. 10. mihi (62). **Liceat . . . mihi:** *Permit me* (**103**).

21. 1. rem aegrē tulit: *was vexed.* **5. Vultis:** 2nd pl. Indic. Pres. of **volō**, *wish* (**35**). **12. vās, vāsis,** n., pl., **vāsa, –ōrum,** *vessel.* **13. īnfundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus,** *pour in* or *upon.* **effervēscō, –ere, –ferbuī, —,** [**ex**], *boil.*

magicum cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse dēsiluit et, vīribus refectīs, per agrōs currēbat.

A dangerous experiment

22. Dum fīliae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī, ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō." Hīs verbīs audītīs, fīliae rēgis cōnsilium, quod dedisset Mēdēa, nōn omittendum putāvērunt. Patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt, et membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quīn hoc maximē eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac spērāverant; Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit, quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse. At cīvēs, cum intellegerent quō modo Peliās periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt; itaque, Iāsone et Mēdēā rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

A fatal gift

23. Post haec Iāsōn et Mēdēa, ē Thessaliā expulsī, ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē; quam cum vīdisset, Iāsōn cōnstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam repudiāre, eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātrimōnium dūceret. At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō

---

14. cantō, –āre, *chant, sing.*

22. **1.** stupeō, –ēre, –uī, —, *be amazed.* in-tueor, –ērī, –itus, *look on, behold.* **9.** aliter, adv., [alius], *otherwise;* aliter ac, *otherwise than.* **11.** quibus (80). **15.** aegrē tulērunt: *were indignant at.* **16.** Acastus was the son of Pelias.

23. **3.** Creontī (67).

habēret, īrā graviter commōta, iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē tantam iniūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte contextam et variīs colōribus tīnctam; hanc quōdam īnfēcit venēnō, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset, corpus eius quasi īgne ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem ad Glaucēn mīsit; illa autem, nihil malī suspicāns, dōnum libenter accēpit, et vestem novam (mōre fēminārum) statim induit.

Flight of Medea and death of Jason

24. Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et paulō post crūdēlī cruciātū affecta, ē vītā excessit. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa furōre atque āmentiā impulsa, fīliōs suōs necāvit; tum magnum sibi fore perīculum arbitrāta, sī in Thessaliā manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi praebēret. Sōl autem, hīs precibus commōtus, currum mīsit, cui dracōnēs ālīs īnstrūctī iūnctī erant. Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta, currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta, incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) iūxtā nāvem suam, quae in lītus subducta erat, quiētī sē trādiderat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem, ubi Iāsōn iacēbat, subitō dēlapsa virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

---

7. iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., *oath.* **8.** ulcīscor, –ī, ultus, *avenge.* **9.** con-texō, –ere, –uī, –textus, *weave.* **10.** tingō, –ere, tīnxī, tīnctus, *dye.* **12.** ūrō, –ere, ussī, ūstus, *burn.*

24. 2. cruciātus, –ūs, m., [crux, *cross*], *torture.* **4.** ā-mentia, –ae, f., [mēns], *madness.* **15.** dē-labor, –ī, –lapsus, *slip down.*

LATIN COMPOSITION EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, I, 1–12; 21–29; 49–54

Lesson I. — Caesar I, 1

Gerundive Phrases (130, 2); Ablative of Separation (75). 1. The Roman province was separated from Gaul by mountains and rivers. 2. The Germans had crossed the river Rhine for-the-purpose-of (**ad**) waging war in Gaul. 3. Will not the Helvetians keep the Romans out of their territories? 4. Roman traders came to the Belgians for-the-purpose (**causā**) of importing these things. 5. The Belgians were farther away from the province than the Helvetians were.

Lesson II. — Caesar I, 2

Irregular Verb *fīō* (34); Substantive Volitive Clauses (107). 1. They will persuade their neighbors not to wage war with the Romans. 2. Conspiracies are being made by the Gauls daily. 3. The general commanded the traders to come to the camp. (Use both **imperō** and **iubeō**.) 4. These men said that Orgetorix had become the leader of the nobility. 5. The envoys persuaded the citizens to take arms for the purpose of defending the state.

Lesson III. — Caesar I, 3

Irregular Verb *possum* (31); Complementary Infinitive (123). 1. The Aedui could not establish friendship with the nearest state. 2. You (pl.) will be able to accomplish these things within two years. 3. Orgetorix tried to persuade Casticus to seize the throne. 4. Dumnorix thinks that he can become the leader in his state. 5. Will not one year be enough to accomplish this purpose (**rēs**)?

Lesson IV. — Caesar I, 4

***Aliquis* and *Quisque* (22); Infinitive as Subject or Object of Verb, (124).** 1. We shall compel every citizen to come to this trial. 2. He had commanded (**imperō**) all his retainers to come together (**con-**

venīre), in order to save him. 3. Some of these soldiers could not be saved. 4. Each one of that man's retainers ought (**oportet**) to suffer punishment. 5. They said that this matter had been reported to some one.

Lesson V. — Caesar I, 5

Irregular Verb *ferō* (32). 1. We can no longer bear the king's injustice. 2. Are you not bringing aid to the enemies of Gaul? 3. The Helvetii had set out from their territory, in order to bring war upon (**īnferō**) their neighbors (**62**). 4. Bring-forth all the weapons which you have concealed in the town. 5. Frequent rumors of a conspiracy had been brought to the general.

Lesson VI. — Caesar I, 6

Irregular Verb *eō* (33); Relative Clause of Purpose (105). 1. The Helvetians are crossing the Rhone, in order to go through our territory. 2. Caesar had sent scouts ahead to ascertain where (**quō**) the enemy's forces were going. 3. The river was so deep that the Gauls could not cross. 4. The soldiers will go out of this town and march to the bank of the Rhine. 5. They sent envoys to say that they would not go through our province.

Lesson VII. — Caesar I, 7

Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō* (35); Ablative of Description (84); Subjunctive of Anticipation (116). 1. They said that the Germans were men of huge size and incredible bravery. 2. Do you wish to cut down the bridge, which is near Geneva? 3. Envoys are being sent to learn what the enemy wish to do. 4. The general is unwilling to wait, until the Gauls shall attack a city of such great wealth. 5. The Helvetians asked why Caesar was unwilling to allow them to go through the province.

Lesson VIII. — Caesar I, 8

Dependent Clauses in Indirect Discourse (118); Genitive of Description (57). 1. They declared that the Romans would stop those who tried to journey through the province. 2. We asked them why they were trying to cross a river of such-great depth. 3. The envoys said that the Germans, who lived across the Rhine, were men of great courage. 4. He showed them that, if they stationed guards at intervals, the Germans could not break through. 5. The scouts say that the river, which separates Gaul from the province, is very wide.

Lesson IX. — Caesar I, 9

***Cum* Causal Clauses (114).** 1. Since you have persuaded the Sequani not to give us hostages, we do-not-wish to undertake the journey. 2. They sent envoys to inform Dumnorix about these matters. 3. After giving hostages (89), the Helvetii obtained-their-request from the Sequani. 4. When they had reached the river Rhone, they learned that Caesar's army was not far away. 5. Since the Sequani are friendly, the Helvetii will be able to go through their territory.

Lesson X. — Caesar I, 10

Review of Deponent Verbs (28); Dative with Compound Verbs (62). 1. After enrolling two new legions, Caesar will hasten to Aquileia by forced marches. 2. Caesar will put Labienus in command of this legion and the camp. 3. When Caesar was leading his army through the Alps, the Gauls tried to stop him. 4. Overtaking the enemy's forces, our cavalry slaughtered a great number. 5. Caesar knows that, if this is done, the warlike Gauls will try to seize these districts.

Lesson XI. — Caesar I, 11

Gerundive with *sum* (130, 1); Dative of Agent (66); Dative of Possessor (67). 1. The Allobroges have many villages across the Rhone. 2. The fields of our allies must not be ravaged by that king. 3. The enemy had very large forces of infantry and cavalry. 4. The messenger was waiting, until the soldiers should return to the camp. 5. Caesar will-have-to-send aid to the allies of the Roman people.

Lesson XII. — Caesar I, 12

Ablative of Cause (81); Ablative of Means (79); Clauses of Result (110). 1. Setting out about the fourth watch, they will cross the river by boat and hide themselves in the great forest. 2. They were so hampered by the river that a large part of them were killed. 3. The consul sent the enemy's soldiers under the yoke because of that great wrong. 4. The river is so wide and deep that they cannot cross it. 5. Because of this disaster the Romans had cut-to-pieces a fourth part of the Helvetians.

Lesson XIII. — Caesar I, 21

Indirect Questions (117); Indirect Discourse with Perfect and Future Infinitive (125). 1. The lieutenant had sent scouts to learn in what place the Gauls had encamped. 2. The scouts learned that the

Gauls had encamped about three miles from the Romans. 3. He showed his (men) by what route the two legions were ascending the highest ridge. 4. He showed them that the two legions would ascend the highest ridge.

5. They learned that } Caesar had sent the cavalry ahead.
They asked why }

Lesson XIV. — Caesar I, 22

***Cum* Circumstantial Clause (113); Ablative of Agent (78); Ablative of Time (88); Accusative of Duration or Extent (72).** 1. Within three hours the Roman legions had marched twelve miles, in order to make an attack upon the Gauls. 2. Late in the day Caesar was informed by scouts that the mountain had been occupied by the lieutenant. 3. The Helvetians did not understand why the Romans had refrained from battle for six hours. 4. When the enemy saw that our men were holding the mountain, they broke camp. 5. Caesar ordered his men to pitch camp three miles from the camp of the Helvetians.

Lesson XV. — Caesar I, 23–24

Accusative of *Place Whither* (74); Ablative Absolute (89); Ablative of Respect (85). 1. Changing their plans, they hastened to a very large town, Bibracte by name. 2. After the camp has been fortified, Caesar must draw up a line of battle half-way up the hill. 3. Having tried in vain to cross by the fords of the Rhone, they proceeded as quickly as possible to Geneva. 4. Though he had seized the highest ridge, Labienus did not begin battle. 5. When the messengers came to Vesontio, they reversed their route and returned home.

Lesson XVI. — Caesar I, 25

Dative of Purpose (64); Dative of Reference (65); Dative with Special Verbs (61). 1. He commanded (**imperō**) the soldiers not to begin battle at once. 2. These two legions will serve as a rear guard. 3. Our allies cannot be persuaded to go home. 4. Our men attacked so fiercely that the Gauls were unable to resist them. 5. The heavy baggage will be a great hindrance to the army on this journey.

Lesson XVII. — Caesar I, 26

Ablative with Deponents (80); Genitive of Possession (56); Genitive of the Whole (58); Genitive of Description (57). 1. Some of our

men, who had been wounded, withdrew to the nearest hill. 2. Although the Romans fought fiercely for six hours, they could not get-possession-of the enemy's camp. 3. The Helvetians showed that they were men of the highest courage. 4. One hundred thousand Gauls, who survived from this battle, marched all night. 5. The centurion ordered his men to throw aside their pikes and use their swords.

Lesson XVIII. — Caesar I, 27–29

Review of Dative Constructions (60–68). 1. The leader of the conspiracy had many friends in the neighboring states. 2. The Aedui will send large forces as an aid to Caesar. 3. The states which have made war upon (**īnferō**) the Roman people have surrendered to the general. 4. Gaul must be defended from the Germans by Caesar. 5. He will persuade the Allobroges to give a supply of grain to their neighbors.

Lesson XIX. — Caesar I, 49

Review of Accusative Constructions (69–74). 1. Having delayed three days, the Romans were not able to overtake the Gauls. 2. The legions were marching through the enemy's territory across the Rhone. 3. The messenger said that the envoys had not come to Bibracte. 4. He advanced { one mile, / two miles, } and encamped in a suitable place. 5. The Roman army will cross the Rhine and go into Germany.

Lesson XX. — Caesar I, 50

Review of Ablative Constructions (75–91). 1. Drawing up a line of battle, Caesar determined to join battle with the Germans in this place. 2. The Germans refrained from battle on this day from fear of the gods. 3. Using these guides, the Romans advanced with great speed. 4. The Germans were men of great strength and surpassed the Gauls in bravery. 5. Most of the enemy were slain by the soldiers with swords.

Lesson XXI. — Caesar I, 51–52

Review of the Subjunctive (103–120). 1. Let us persuade our allies not to give themselves up in slavery to the Romans. 2. The gates will be closed, that no one may go out of the town. 3. The Germans fought so fiercely, that our line was hard pressed on the right wing. 4. Caesar sent the third line to sustain the attack of the cavalry. 5. There were (only) a few, who were panic-stricken and fled.

Lesson XXII. — Caesar I, 53–54

Review of the Subjunctive (103–120). 1. When Caesar had defeated the Germans in battle, he led his army into winter quarters. 2. Since the Germans excel all (men) in valor, they will conquer the Gauls. 3. Caesar inquired how Valerius had been rescued out of the enemy's hands. 4. The cavalry tried to overtake the fugitives, before they reached the bank of the river. 5. The messengers said that the Suebi, who lived across the Rhine, slaughtered the Germans.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

		I	II		III				IV		V
STEM.		−a	−o		Consonant		−i		−u		−ē
		F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
SINGULAR	N.	−a	−us, −er, −ir	−um	−s[1] *or* ——[2]	——[2]	−s[1] *or* ——[2]	——[2]	−us	−ū	−ēs
	G.	−ae	−ī		−is				−ūs		−ēī
	D.	−ae	−ō		−ī				−uī	−ū	−ēī
	Ac.	−am	−um		−em	*Nom.*	−em (−im)	*Nom.*	−um	−ū	−em
	Ab.	−ā	−ō		−e		−e (−ī)		−ū		−ē
PLURAL	N.	−ae	−ī	−a	−ēs	−a	−ēs	−ia	−ūs	−ua	−ēs
	G.	−ārum	−ōrum		−um		−ium		−uum		−ērum
	D.	−īs	−īs		−ibus				−ibus		−ēbus
	Ac.	−ās	−ōs	−a	−ēs	−a	−ēs (−īs)	−ia	−ūs	−ua	−ēs
	Ab.	−īs	−īs		−ibus				−ibus		−ēbus

MODEL NOUNS

STEM.		porta−	servo−	bello−	reg−	capit−	turri−	mari−	manu−	cornu−	diē−
SINGULAR	N.	porta	servus	bellum	rēx	caput	turris	mare	manus	cornū	diēs
	G.	portae	servī	bellī	rēgis	capitis	turris	maris	manūs	cornūs	diēī
	D.	portae	servō	bellō	rēgī	capitī	turrī	marī	manuī	cornū	diēī
	Ac.	portam	servum	bellum	rēgem	caput	turrim (−em)	mare	manum	cornū	diem
	Ab.	portā	servō	bellō	rēge	capite	turre (−ī)	marī	manū	cornū	diē
PLURAL	N.	portae	servī	bella	rēgēs	capita	turrēs	maria	manūs	cornua	diēs
	G.	portārum	servōrum	bellōrum	rēgum	capitum	turrium	marium	manuum	cornuum	diērum
	D.	portīs	servīs	bellīs	rēgibus	capitibus	turribus	maribus	manibus	cornibus	diēbus
	Ac.	portās	servōs	bella	rēgēs	capita	turrēs (−īs)	maria	manūs	cornua	diēs
	Ab.	portīs	servīs	bellīs	rēgibus	capitibus	turribus	maribus	manibus	cornibus	diēbus

[1] Usually with euphonic changes.

[2] Wanting, and stem usually undergoes euphonic changes.

BRIEF LATIN GRAMMAR

FORMS

NOUNS

1. FIRST DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	porta, *a gate*	portae, *the gates*
Gen.	portae, *of a gate* or *a gate's*	portārum, *of the gates* or *the gates'*
Dat.	portae, *to* or *for a gate*	portīs, *to* or *for the gates*
Acc.	portam, *a gate*	portās, *the gates*
Abl.	portā, *from, with,* or *by a gate*	portīs, *from, with,* or *by the gates*

Note. — Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.
Exc. — Nouns denoting *males* are Masculine.

2. SECOND DECLENSION

	Singular			
Nom.	servus, *m.*	puer, *m.*	ager, *m.*	vir, *m.*
Gen.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī
Dat.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō
Acc.	servum	puerum	agrum	virum
Abl.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō
Voc.	serve			
	Plural			
Nom.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī
Gen.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
Dat.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Acc.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
Abl.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Voc.	servī			

	templum, *n.*	templa	fīlius, *m.*	fīliī
Gen.	templī	templōrum	fīlī	fīliōrum
Dat.	templō	templīs	fīliō	fīliīs
Acc.	templum	templa	fīlium	fīliōs
Abl.	templō	templīs	fīliō	fīliīs
Voc.			fīlī	fīliī

Notes. — 1. Second Declension Nouns in **–us, –er,** or **–ir** are Masculine; those in **–um** are Neuter.

2. **Fīlius,** Proper Names in **–ius,** and nouns in **–ium** usually have **–ī** (not **–iī**) in the Gen. Sing., with the accent on the penult, as: **fī'lī, Vale'rī, auxi'lī.**

3. Vocative Case. — The Vocative is the case of Direct Address. *Its ending is like the Nominative.*

Exc. — 1. In the *Singular* of Second Decl. nouns in **–us** the Vocative ends in **–e,** as: **serve,** *O slave.*

2. The Vocative Sing. of **fīlius** and *Proper Names* of the Second Decl. in **–ius** ends in **–ī** (not **–ie**), with the accent on the penult, as: **fī'lī,** *O son;* **Vale'rī,** *O Valerius.*

4. THIRD DECLENSION

a. Consonant Stems

SINGULAR

	mīles, *m.*	pater, *m.*	dux, *c.*
Gen.	mīlitis	patris	ducis
Dat.	mīlitī	patrī	ducī
Acc.	mīlitem	patrem	ducem
Abl.	mīlite	patre	duce

PLURAL

Nom.	mīlitēs	patrēs	ducēs
Gen.	mīlitum	patrum	ducum
Dat.	mīlitibus	patribus	ducibus
Acc.	mīlitēs	patrēs	ducēs
Abl.	mīlitibus	patribus	ducibus

Nom.	flūmen, *n.*	flūmina	corpus, *n.*	corpora
Gen.	flūminis	flūminum	corporis	corporum
Dat.	flūminī	flūminibus	corporī	corporibus
Acc.	flūmen	flūmina	corpus	corpora
Abl.	flūmine	flūminibus	corpore	corporibus

b. I Stems

SINGULAR

Nom.	hostis, *m.*	caedēs, *f.*	urbs, *f.*
Gen.	hostis	caedis	urbis
Dat.	hostī	caedī	urbī
Acc.	hostem	caedem	urbem
Abl.	hoste	caede	urbe

PLURAL

Nom.	hostēs	caedēs	urbēs
Gen.	hostium	caedium	urbium
Dat.	hostibus	caedibus	urbibus
Acc.	hostēs (–īs)	caedēs (–īs)	urbēs (–īs)
Abl.	hostibus	caedibus	urbibus

Nom.	mare, *n.*	maria	animal	animālia
Gen.	maris	marium	animālis	animālium
Dat.	marī	maribus	anmālī	animālibus
Acc.	mare	maria	animal	animālia
Abl.	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

Notes. — 1. To –i stems belong:

a. Masculines and Feminines in –is and –ēs, not increasing in the Genitive, as **nāvis, caedēs**.

b. Neuters in –e, –al, and –ar, as **mare, animal, calcar.**

c. Monosyllables, whose base ends in two consonants, as **pars, part-is; nox, noct-is.**

d. Nouns, whose base ends in –nt or –rt, as **cliēns, client-is; cohors, cohort-is.**

2. **Turris** and some *Proper Names* in –is have –im in the Acc. Sing., as: **turrim, Tiberim.**

3. A few –i stems have both –ī and –e in the Abl. Sing., as: **turris, cīvis, nāvis, classis, īgnis, fīnis.**

4. Third Declension Gender Rules:

a. Masculine are nouns ending in **–or, –ōs,** and **–es** (Gen., **–itis** or **–idis**).

b. Feminine are nouns ending in **–ās, –ēs, –is; –x** and **–s** (preceded by a consonant); **–dō, –gō,** and **–iō;** and **–ūs** (Gen., **–ūtis** or **–ūdis**).

c. Neuter are nouns ending in **–l, –e, –n, –t ; –ar, –ur;** and **–us** (Gen., **–eris** or **–oris**).

5. FOURTH DECLENSION

	Singular		
Nom.	frūctus, *m.*	cornū, *n.*	domus, *f.*
Gen.	frūctūs	cornūs	domūs (domī, *loc.*)
Dat.	frūctuī	cornū	domuī, domō
Acc.	frūctum	cornū	domum
Abl.	frūctū	cornū	domō, domū

	Plural		
Nom.	frūctūs	cornua	domūs
Gen.	frūctuum	cornuum	domuum, domōrum
Dat.	frūctibus	cornibus	domibus
Acc.	frūctūs	cornua	domōs, domūs
Abl.	frūctibus	cornibus	domibus

Note. — Fourth Declension nouns in **–us** are Masculine; those ending in **–ū** are Neuter.

Exceptions. — **Manus** and **domus** are Feminine.

6. FIFTH DECLENSION

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	diēs, *m.*	diēs	rēs, *f.*	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

Note. — 1. The ending of the Gen. and Dat. Sing. is **–eī,** instead of **–ēī,** when a consonant precedes, as: **reī, fideī, speī.**

2. Fifth Declension nouns are Feminine, except **diēs,** which is usually Masculine in the Singular, and always in the Plural.

7. Irregular Nouns

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	deus, *m.*	deī, diī, dī	vīs, *f.*	vīrēs
Gen.	deī	deōrum, deum	——	vīrium
Dat.	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs	——	vīribus
Acc.	deum	deōs	vim	vīrēs (-īs)
Abl.	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs	vī	vīribus

8. Greek Nouns

	DEC. I	DEC. II	DEC. III
Nom.	Anchīsēs, *m.*	Dēlōs (-us), *f.*	Colchis, *f.*
Gen.	Anchīsae	Dēlī	Colchidis
Dat.	Anchīsae	Dēlō	Colchidī
Acc.	Anchīsēn	Dēlon (-um)	Colchida
Abl.	Anchīsē (-ā)	Dēlō	Colchide

ADJECTIVES

9. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Singular

Nom.	bonus, *m.*	bona, *f.*	bonum, *n.*
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Nom.	bonī, *m.*	bonae, *f.*	bona, *n.*
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	Singular		
Nom.	līber, *m.*	lībera, *f.*	līberum, *n.*
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō

	Plural		
Nom.	līberī, *m.*	līberae, *f.*	lībera, *n.*
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	Singular		
Nom.	sacer, *m.*	sacra, *f.*	sacrum, *n.*
Gen.	sacrī	sacrae	sacrī
Dat.	sacrō	sacrae	sacrō
Acc.	sacrum	sacram	sacrum
Abl.	sacrō	sacrā	sacrō

	Plural		
Nom.	sacrī, *m.*	sacrae, *f.*	sacra, *n.*
Gen.	sacrōrum	sacrārum	sacrōrum
Dat.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
Acc.	sacrōs	sacrās	sacra
Abl.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

10. THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

Three Endings

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	ācer, *m.*	ācris, *f.*	ācre, *n.*	ācrēs, *m.*	ācrēs, *f.*	ācria, *n.*
Gen.		ācris			ācrium	
Dat.		ācrī			ācribus	
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (–īs)	ācrēs (–īs)	ācria
Abl.		ācrī			ācribus	

Two Endings

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	fortis, *m. f.*	forte, *n.*	fortēs, *m. f.*	fortia, *n.*
Gen.	fortis		fortium	
Dat.	fortī		fortibus	
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī		fortibus	

One Ending

	m. f.	*n.*	*m. f.*	*n.*
Nom.	audāx		audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis		audācium	
Dat.	audācī		audācibus	
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
Abl.	audācī		audācibus	

Present Participle

	m. f.	*n.*	*m. f.*	*n.*
Nom.	regēns		regentēs	regentia
Gen.	regentis		regentium	
Dat.	regentī		regentibus	
Acc.	regentem	regēns	regentēs (-īs)	regentia
Abl.	regente (-ī)		regentibus	

Note. — Present Participles, when used as Participles or Substantives, have **-e** in the Abl. Sing.; when used as Adjectives, they have **-ī**.

11. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	sōlus, *m.*	sōla, *f.*	sōlum, *n.*	sōlī, *m.*	sōlae, *f.*	sōla, *n.*
Gen.	sōlīus			sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum
Dat.	sōlī				sōlīs	
Acc.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla
Abl.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō		sōlīs	

	Plural			Singular	Plural
Nom.	duo, *m.*	duae, *f.*	duo, *n.*	mīlle, *adj.*	mīlia, *noun, n.*
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

	Plural	
Nom.	trēs, *m. f.*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	trium	
Dat.	tribus	
Acc.	trēs (trīs)	tria
Abl.	tribus	

12. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

a. Regular

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
lātus, –a, –um	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, –a, –um
fortis, forte	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, –a, –um
miser, –era, –erum	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, –a, –um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, –a, –um
facilis, facile	facilior, facilius	facillimus, –a, –um

Notes. — 1. Adjectives in –er have –rimus in the Superlative.

2. Five adjectives in –lis have –limus in the Superlative, viz., facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, humilis.

b. Irregular Comparison

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
magnus, *great*	maior, *greater*	maximus, *greatest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *smaller*	minimus, *smallest*
multus, *much*	——, plūs, *more*	plūrimus, *most*
multī, *many*	plūrēs, plūra, *more*	plūrimī, *many*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
exterus, *outward*	**exterior,** *outer*	**extrēmus, extimus,** *outmost*
īnferus, *low*	**īnferior,** *lower*	**īnfimus, īmus,** *lowest*
posterus, *following*	**posterior,** *later*	**postrēmus, postumus,** *last*
superus, *upper*	**superior,** *higher*	**suprēmus, summus,** *highest*
——	**prior,** *former*	**prīmus,** *first*
——	**propior,** *nearer*	**proximus,** *next*
——	**ulterior,** *farther*	**ultimus,** *farthest*

13. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

Singular

Nom.	lātior, *m. f.*	lātius, *n.*	——	plūs, *n.*
Gen.	lātiōris		——	plūris
Dat.	lātiōrī		——	——
Acc.	lātiōrem	lātius	——	plūs
Abl.	lātiōre		——	plūre

Plural

Nom.	lātiōrēs	lātiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	lātiōrum		plūrium	
Dat.	lātiōribus		plūribus	
Acc.	lātiōrēs	lātiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	lātiōribus		plūribus	

14. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Pos.	Comp.	Superl.	Pos.	Comp.	Superl.
lātē	lātius	lātissimē	bene	melius	optimē
aegrē	aegrius	aegerrimē	male	peius	pessimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē	magnopere	magis	maximē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē	parum	minus	minimē
facile	facilius	facillimē	multum	plūs	plūrimum

15. NUMERALS

	Roman	Cardinals	Ordinals
1	I	**ūnus, –a, –um,** *one*	**prīmus,** *first*
2	II	**duo, duae, duo,** *two*	**secundus,** *second*
3	III	**trēs, tria,** *three*	**tertius,** *third*
4	IIII *or* IV	**quattuor**	**quārtus**
5	V	**quīnque**	**quīntus**
6	VI	**sex**	**sextus**
7	VII	**septem**	**septimus**
8	VIII	**octō**	**octāvus**
9	VIIII *or* IX	**novem**	**nōnus**
10	X	**decem**	**decimus**
11	XI	**ūndecim**	**ūndecimus**
12	XII	**duodecim**	**duodecimus**
13	XIII	**tredecim**	**tertius decimus**
14	XIIII *or* XIV	**quattuordecim**	**quārtus decimus**
15	XV	**quīndecim**	**quīntus decimus**
16	XVI	**sēdecim**	**sextus decimus**
17	XVII	**septendecim**	**septimus decimus**
18	XVIII	**duodēvīgintī**	**duodēvīcēsimus**
19	XVIIII *or* XIX	**ūndēvīgintī**	**ūndēvīcēsimus**
20	XX	**vīgintī**	**vīcēsimus**
21	XXI	**vīgintī ūnus** / **ūnus et vīgintī**	**vīcēsimus prīmus** / **ūnus et vīcēsimus**
30	XXX	**trīgintā**	**trīcēsimus**
40	XXXX *or* XL	**quadrāgintā**	**quadrāgēsimus**
50	L	**quīnquāgintā**	**quīnquāgēsimus**
60	LX	**sexāgintā**	**sexāgēsimus**
70	LXX	**septuāgintā**	**septuāgēsimus**
80	LXXX	**octōgintā**	**octōgēsimus**
90	LXXXX *or* XC	**nōnāgintā**	**nōnāgēsimus**
100	C	**centum**	**centēsimus**
101	CI	**centum (et) ūnus**	**centēsimus (et) prīmus**
200	CC	**ducentī, –ae, –a**	**ducentēsimus**
300	CCC	**trecentī, –ae, –a**	**trecentēsimus**
400	CCCC	**quadringentī, –ae, –a**	**quadringentēsimus**
500	D	**quīngentī, –ae, –a**	**quīngentēsimus**
600	DC	**sescentī, –ae, –a**	**sescentēsimus**
700	DCC	**septingentī, –ae, –a**	**septingentēsimus**
800	DCCC	**octingentī, –ae, –a**	**octingentēsimus**
900	DCCCC	**nōngentī, –ae, –a**	**nōngentēsimus**
1000	M	**mīlle**	**mīllēsimus**
2000	MM	**duo mīlia**	**bis mīllēsimus**

PRONOUNS

16. PERSONAL — 17. REFLEXIVE

Singular

Nom.	ego	tū	—
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē *or* sēsē
Abl.	mē	tē	sē *or* sēsē

Plural

Nom.	nōs	vōs	—
Gen.	nostrum *or* nostrī	vestrum *or* vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē *or* sēsē
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē *or* sēsē

18. DEMONSTRATIVE

Singular

Nom.	hic, *m.*	haec, *f.*	hoc, *n.*	ille, *m.*	illa, *f.*	illud, *n.*
Gen.		huius			illīus	
Dat.		huic			illī	
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.		hīs			illīs	
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.		hīs			illīs	

Singular

Nom.	is, *m.*	ea, *f.*	id, *n.*	īdem, *m.*	eadem, *f.*	idem, *n.*
Gen.		eius			eiusdem	
Dat.		eī			eīdem	
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	Plural					
Nom.	eī *or* iī	eae	ea	eīdem / iīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīs *or* iīs			eīsdem *or* īsdem	
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.		eīs *or* iīs			eīsdem *or* īsdem	

19. INTENSIVE

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	ipse, *m.*	ipsa, *f.*	ipsum, *n.*	ipsī, *m.*	ipsae, *f.*	ipsa, *n.*
Gen.		ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

20. RELATIVE

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n.*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.		cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui			quibus	
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō		quibus	

21. INTERROGATIVE

	Singular		
Nom.	quis, *m. f.*		quid, *n.*
Gen.		cuius	
Dat.		cui	
Acc.	quem		quid
Abl.		quō	

Notes. — 1. The Plural of the *Interrogative Pronoun* **quis** is like the Plural of the Relative **quī**.

2. The *Interrogative Adjective* is declined throughout like the Relative **quī**, as: **quī deus**, *what god?* **quae via**, *what road?* **quod dōnum**, *what gift?*

22. INDEFINITE

Substantive Form

SINGULAR

Nom.	**aliquis**, *m. f.*		**aliquid**, *n.*
Gen.		**alicuius**	
Dat.		**alicui**	
Acc.	**aliquem**		**aliquid**
Abl.		**aliquō**	

PLURAL

Nom.	**aliquī**, *m.*	**aliquae**, *f.*	**aliqua**, *n.*
Gen.	**aliquōrum**	**aliquārum**	**aliquōrum**
Dat.		**aliquibus**	
Acc.	**aliquōs**	**aliquās**	**aliqua**
Abl.		**aliquibus**	

Adjective Form

SINGULAR

Nom.	**aliquī**, *m.*	**aliqua**, *f.*	**aliquod**, *n.*
Gen.		**alicuius**	
Dat.		**alicui**	
Acc.	**aliquem**	**aliquam**	**aliquod**
Abl.	**aliquō**	**aliquā**	**aliquō**

PLURAL

Nom.	**aliquī**, *m.*	**aliquae**, *f.*	**aliqua**, *n.*
Gen.	**aliquōrum**	**aliquārum**	**aliquōrum**
Dat.		**aliquibus**	
Acc.	**aliquōs**	**aliquās**	**aliqua**
Abl.		**aliquibus**	

Note. — After **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num** the Indefinite Pronoun **quis, quid** is generally used. It is declined like the Interrogative Pronoun. The Adjective form is **quī, qua, quod,** etc.

		Singular	
Nom.	**quīdam**, *m.*	**quaedam**, *f.*	**quiddam**, *n.*
Gen.		**cuiusdam**	
Dat.		**cuidam**	
Acc.	**quendam**	**quandam**	**quiddam**
Abl.	**quōdam**	**quādam**	**quōdam**
		Plural	
Nom.	**quīdam**, *m.*	**quaedam**, *f.*	**quaedam**, *n.*
Gen.	**quōrundam**	**quārundam**	**quōrundam**
Dat.		**quibusdam**	
Acc.	**quōsdam**	**quāsdam**	**quaedam**
Abl.		**quibusdam**	

Note. — The *Adjective* form has **quoddam**, *n.* instead of **quiddam.**

Singular		Singular	
Nom. **quisque**, *m. f.*	**quidque**, *n.*	**quisquam**, *m. f.*	**quidquam**, *n.*
Gen.	**cuiusque**		**cuiusquam**
Dat.	**cuique**		**cuiquam**
Acc. **quemque**	**quidque**	**quemquam**	**quidquam**
Abl.	**quōque**		**quōquam**
	(*Plural rare*)		(*Plural lacking*)

Note. — The *Adjective* form of **quisque** is **quisque, quaeque, quodque,** etc.

Note. — **Quisquam** is used chiefly in *negative* sentences, and in questions implying a *negative* answer.

REGULAR VERBS

23. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus**
Stems: **parā–, parāv–, parāt–**

ACTIVE VOICE		Indicative	PASSIVE VOICE
Present			Present
I prepare, am preparing, do prepare			*I am (being) prepared*
parō	**parāmus**	**paror**	**parāmur**
parās	**parātis**	**parāris (–re)**	**parāminī**
parat	**parant**	**parātur**	**parantur**

Indicative

ACTIVE VOICE

Imperfect

I was preparing, prepared, did prepare

parābam	parābāmus
parābās	parābātis
parābat	parābant

Future

I shall prepare

parābō	parābimus
parābis	parābitis
parābit	parābunt

Perfect

I prepared, have prepared

parāvī	parāvimus
parāvistī	parāvistis
parāvit	parāvērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect

I had prepared

parāveram	parāverāmus
parāverās	parāverātis
parāverat	parāverant

Future Perfect

I shall have prepared

parāverō	parāverimus
parāveris	parāveritis
parāverit	parāverint

PASSIVE VOICE

Imperfect

I was (being) prepared

parābar	parābāmur
parābāris (-re)	parābāminī
parābātur	parābantur

Future

I shall be prepared

parābor	parābimur
parāberis (-re)	parābiminī
parābitur	parābuntur

Perfect

I was prepared, have been prepared

parātus (-a, -um)	sum / es / est	parātī (-ae, -a)	sumus / estis / sunt

Pluperfect

I had been prepared

parātus (-a, -um)	eram / erās / erat	parātī (-ae, -a)	erāmus / erātis / erant

Future Perfect

I shall have been prepared

parātus (-a, -um)	erō / eris / erit	parātī (-ae, -a)	erimus / eritis / erunt

Subjunctive

ACTIVE VOICE

Present

parem	parēmus
parēs	parētis
paret	parent

PASSIVE VOICE

Present

parer	parēmur
parēris (-re)	parēminī
parētur	parentur

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Subjunctive			
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
parārem	parārēmus	parārer	parārēmur
parārēs	parārētis	parārēris (–re)	parārēminī
parāret	parārent	parārētur	parārentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
parāverim	parāverīmus	parātus (–a, –um) sim / sīs / sit	parātī (–ae, –a) sīmus / sītis / sint
parāverīs	parāverītis		
parāverit	parāverint		
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
parāvissem	parāvissēmus	parātus (–a, –um) essem / essēs / esset	parātī (–ae, –a) essēmus / essētis / essent
parāvissēs	parāvissētis		
parāvisset	parāvissent		

Present Imperative

parā, *prepare (thou)* — parāre, *be (thou) prepared*
parāte, *prepare (ye)* — parāminī, *be (ye) prepared*

Infinitive

Pres. parāre, *to prepare* — parārī, *to be prepared*
Perf. parāvisse, *to have prepared* — parātus esse, *to have been prepared*
Fut. parātūrus esse, *to be about to prepare* — parātum īrī, *to be about to be prepared*

Participles

Pres. parāns, –antis, *preparing*
Perf. parātus, –a, –um, *having been prepared*
Fut. parātūrus, –a, –um, *about to prepare*
Fut. parandus, –a, –um, *necessary to be prepared*, or as Gerundive, *preparing*

Gerund

Gen. parandī, *of preparing*
Dat. parandō, *for preparing*
Acc. parandum, *preparing*
Abl. parandō, *by preparing*

Supine

Acc. parātum, *to prepare*
Abl. parātū, *to prepare*

24. SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**
STEMS: **monē–, monu–, monit–**

Indicative

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (–re)	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (–re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (–re)	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
monuī	monuimus	monitus (–a, –um) sum / es / est	monitī (–ae, –a) sumus / estis / sunt
monuistī	monuistis		
monuit	monuērunt (–ēre)		
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus (–a, –um) eram / erās / erat	monitī (–ae, –a) erāmus / erātis / erant
monuerās	monuerātis		
monuerat	monuerant		
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus (–a, –um) erō / eris / erit	monitī (–ae, –a) erimus / eritis / erunt
monueris	monueritis		
monuerit	monuerint		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Subjunctive			
PRESENT		PRESENT	
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus, (-a, -um) sim	monitī, (-ae, -a) sīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis	monitus, (-a, -um) sīs	monitī, (-ae, -a) sītis
monuerit	monuerint	monitus, (-a, -um) sit	monitī, (-ae, -a) sint
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus, (-a, -um) essem	monitī, (-ae, -a) essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	monitus, (-a, -um) essēs	monitī, (-ae, -a) essētis
monuisset	monuissent	monitus, (-a, -um) esset	monitī, (-ae, -a) essent

Present Imperative

monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī

Infinitive

Pres.	monēre	monērī
Perf.	monuisse	monitus esse
Fut.	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī

Participles

Pres.	monēns, -entis	*Perf.*	monitus, -a, -um
Fut.	monitūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	monendus, -a, -um

Gerund		Supine	
Gen.	monendī	*Acc.*	monitum
Dat.	monendō	*Abl.*	monitū
Acc.	monendum		
Abl.	monendō		

25. THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**
STEMS: **rege–, rēx–, rēct–**

Indicative

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris (–re)	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris (–re)	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris (–re)	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus, (–a, –um) sum / es / est	rēctī, (–ae, –a) sumus / estis / sunt
rēxistī	rēxistis		
rēxit	rēxērunt (–ēre)		
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus, (–a, –um) eram / erās / erat	rēctī, (–ae, –a) erāmus / erātis / erant
rēxerās	rēxerātis		
rēxerat	rēxerant		
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus, (–a, –um) erō / eris / erit	rēctī, (–ae, –a) erimus / eritis / erunt
rēxeris	rēxeritis		
rēxerit	rēxerint		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Subjunctive			
PRESENT		PRESENT	
regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris (-re)	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris (-re)	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
rēxerim	rēxerīmus	rēctus, (-a, -um) sim	rēctī, (-ae, -a) sīmus
rēxerīs	rēxerītis	sīs	sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus, (-a, -um) essem	rēctī, (-ae, -a) essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	essēs	essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent	esset	essent

Present Imperative

rege	regite	regere	regiminī

Infinitive

Pres.	regere	regī
Perf.	rēxisse	rēctus esse
Fut.	rēctūrus esse	rēctum īrī

Participles

Pres.	regēns, -entis	*Perf.*	rēctus, -a, -um
Fut.	rēctūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	regendus, -a, -um

Gerund		Supine	
Gen.	regendī	*Acc.*	rēctum
Dat.	regendō	*Abl.*	rēctū
Acc.	regendum		
Abl.	regendō		

26. FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**
STEMS: **audī, audīv–, audīt–**

Indicative

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris (–re)	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (–re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbāt	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (–re)	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus, (–a, –um) { sum / es / est	audītī, (–ae, –a) { sumus / estis / sunt
audīvistī	audīvistis		
audīvit	audīvērunt (–ēre)		
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus, (–a, –um) { eram / erās / erat	audītī, (–ae, –a) { erāmus / erātis / erant
audīverās	audīverātis		
audīverat	audīverant		
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus, (–a, –um) { erō / eris / erit	audītī, (–ae, –a) { erimus / eritis / erunt
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Subjunctive			
PRESENT		PRESENT	
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus, (-a, -um) { sim / sīs / sit	audītī, (-ae, -a) { sīmus / sītis / sint
audīverīs	audīverītis		
audīverit	audīverint		
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus, (-a, -um) { essem / essēs / esset	audītī, (-ae, -a) { essēmus / essētis / essent
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		
audīvisset	audīvissent		

Present Imperative

audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī

Infinitive

Pres.	audīre	audīrī
Perf.	audīvisse	audītus esse
Fut.	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

Participles

Pres.	audiēns, -entis	*Perf.*	audītus, -a, -um
Fut.	audītūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	audiendus, -a, -um

Gerund		Supine	
Gen.	audiendī	*Acc.*	audītum
Dat.	audiendō	*Abl.*	audītū
Acc.	audiendum		
Abl.	audiendō		

27. THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -IŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**
STEMS: **cape–, cēp–, capt–**

Indicative

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (–re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
capiēbam, etc.		capiēbar, etc.	
FUTURE		FUTURE	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (–re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēpī, etc.		captus sum, etc.	
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
cēperam, etc.		captus eram, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
cēperō, etc.		captus erō, etc.	

Subjunctive

PRESENT		PRESENT	
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (–re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
caperem, etc.		caperer, etc.	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēperim, etc.		captus sim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
cēpissem, etc.		captus essem, etc.	

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Present Imperative			
cape	capite	capere	capiminī

Infinitive

Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

Participles

Pres.	capiēns, –entis	*Perf.*	captus, –a, –um
Fut.	captūrus, –a, –um	*Fut.*	capiendus, –a, –um

Gerund		Supine	
Gen.	capiendī	*Acc.*	captum
Dat.	capiendō	*Abl.*	captū
Acc.	capiendum		
Abl.	capiendō		

DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent verbs are *Passive* in *form*, but *Active* in *meaning*. They are inflected in all conjugations as follows:

28. FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
STEMS: **cōnā–, cōnāt–**

Indicative

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
I try	*I was trying*	*I shall try*
cōnor	cōnābar	cōnābor
cōnāris (–re)	cōnābāris (–re)	cōnāberis (–re)
cōnātur	cōnābātur	cōnābitur
cōnāmur	cōnābāmur	cōnābimur
cōnāminī	cōnābāminī	cōnābiminī
cōnantur	cōnābantur	cōnābuntur

Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
I (have) tried	*I had tried*	*I shall have tried*
cōnātus (–a, –um) sum / es / est	cōnātus (–a, –um) eram / erās / erat	cōnātus (–a, –um) erō / eris / erit
cōnātī (–ae, –a) sumus / estis / sunt	cōnātī (–ae, –a) erāmus / erātis / erant	cōnātī (–ae, –a) erimus / eritis / erunt

Subjunctive

Present	Imperfect
cōner	cōnārer
cōnēris (–re)	cōnārēris (–re)
cōnētur	cōnārētur
cōnēmur	cōnārēmur
cōnēminī	cōnārēminī
cōnentur	cōnārentur

Perfect	Pluperfect
cōnātus (–a, –um) sim / sīs / sit	cōnātus (–a, –um) essem / essēs / esset
cōnātī (–ae, –a) sīmus / sītis / sint	cōnātī (–ae, –a) essēmus / essētis / essent

Present Imperative

cōnāre, *try (thou)* cōnāminī, *try (ye)*

Infinitive

Pres. cōnārī, to try
Perf. cōnātus esse, *to have tried*
Fut. cōnātūrus esse, *to be about to try*

Gerund

Gen. cōnandī, *of trying*
Dat. cōnandō, *for trying*
Acc. cōnandum, *trying*
Abl. cōnandō, *by trying*

Participles

Pres. cōnāns, –antis, *trying*
Fut. cōnātūrus, *about to try*
Perf. cōnātus, *having tried*
Fut. cōnandus, *necessary to be tried*, or as Gerundive, *trying*

Supine

Acc. cōnātum, *to try*
Abl. cōnātū, *to try*

Conj. II.	**vereor, verērī, veritus sum**
Conj. III.	**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
–ior Verb.	**patior, patī, passus sum**
Conj. IV.	**potior, potīrī, potītus sum**

Indicative

Pres.	vereor	sequor	patior	potior
Imp.	verēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
Fut.	verēbor	sequar	patiar	potiar
Perf.	veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	potītus sum
Plup.	veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	potītus eram
Fut. P.	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	potītus erō

Subjunctive

Pres.	verear	sequar	patiar	potiar
Imp.	verērer	sequerer	paterer	potīrer
Perf.	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	potītus essem

Present Imperative

2nd Sing.	verēre	sequere	patere	potīre
2nd Pl.	verēminī	sequiminī	patiminī	potīminī

Infinitive

Pres.	verērī	sequī	patī	potīrī
Perf.	veritus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	potītus esse
Fut.	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	potītūrus esse

Participles

Pres.	verēns, –entis	sequēns, –entis	patiēns, –entis	potiēns, –entis
Fut.	veritūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	potītūrus
Perf.	veritus	secūtus	passus	potītus
Fut.	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	potiendus

Gerund

Gen.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	patiendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

	Supine			
Acc.	veritum	secūtum	passum	potītum
Abl.	veritū	secūtū	passū	potītū

Note. — Four verbs, which are *Active* in the *Present System*, become *Deponents* in the *Perfect System*, and are called *Semi-deponents*. They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*

29. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

1. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation is made by combining the Future Active Participle with **sum.**

2. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation is made by combining the Future Passive Participle with **sum.**

Active Periphrastic Conjugation

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	parātūrus sum, *I am about to prepare*	parātūrus sim
Imp.	parātūrus eram	parātūrus essem
Fut.	parātūrus erō	
Perf.	parātūrus fuī	parātūrus fuerim
Plup.	parātūrus fueram	parātūrus fuissem
Fut. P.	parātūrus fuerō	

Infinitive

Pres. parātūrus esse
Perf. parātūrus fuisse

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	parandus sum, *I am to be (must be) prepared*	parandus sim
Imp.	parandus eram	parandus essem
Fut.	parandus erō	
Perf.	parandus fuī	parandus fuerim
Plup.	parandus fueram	parandus fuissem
Fut. P.	parandus fuerō	

Infinitive

Pres. parandus esse
Perf. parandus fuisse

IRREGULAR VERBS

30. Sum, *be*

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

Indicative

Present		Imperfect		Future	
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

Perfect		Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
fuī	fuimus	fueram	fuerāmus	fuerō	fuerimus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerās	fuerātis	fueris	fueritis
fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)	fuerat	fuerant	fuerit	fuerint

Subjunctive

Present		Imperfect		Perfect	
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus	fuerim	fuerīmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis	fuerīs	fuerītis
sit	sint	esset	essent	fuerit	fuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

Present Imperative

es este

Infinitive		Participle
Pres.	esse	
Perf.	fuisse	
Fut.	futūrus esse or fore	futūrus

31. Possum, *be able*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
Imp.	poteram		possem	
Fut.	poterō			
Perf.	potuī		potuerim	
Plup.	potueram		potuissem	
Fut. P.	potuerō			

Infinitive

Pres. posse *Perf.* potuisse

Participle

Pres. potēns, –entis (adj.), *powerful*

32. Fero, *bear, bring*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	Indicative			
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris (–re)	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Imp.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
Plup.	tuleram		lātus eram	
Fut. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	
	Subjunctive			
Pres.	feram		ferar	
Imp.	ferrem		ferrer	
Perf.	tulerim		lātus sim	
Plup.	tulissem		lātus essem	

Present Imperative

fer ferte ferre feriminī

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Infinitive	
Pres. ferre	ferrī
Perf. tulisse	lātus esse
Fut. lātūrus esse	lātum īrī
Participles	
Pres. ferēns, –entis	*Perf.* lātus
Fut. lātūrus	*Fut.* ferendus
Gerund	**Supine**
Gen. ferendī, etc.	*Acc.* lātum
	Abl. lātū

33. Eō, *go*

Principal Parts: eō, īre, īvī *or* iī, itum

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres. eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant
Imp. ībam		īrem	
Fut. ībō			
Perf. īvī or iī		īverim or ierim	
Plup. īveram or ieram		īvissem or īssem	
Fut. P. īverō or ierō			

Present Imperative

ī īte

Infinitive

Pres. īre
Perf. īvisse or īsse
Fut. itūrus esse
Passive Pres. īrī

Participles

Pres. iēns, euntis
Fut. itūrus
Perf. itum (impers.)
Fut. eundus

Gerund

Gen. eundī, etc.

Supine

Acc. itum
Abl. itū

34. Fīō, *be made* (Passive of Faciō)

Principal Parts: fīō, fierī, factus sum

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	fīō	fīmus	fīam	fīāmus
	fīs	fītis	fīās	fīātis
	fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant
Imp.	fīēbam		fierem	
Fut.	fīam			
Perf.	factus sum		factus sim	
Plup.	factus eram		factus essem	
Fut. P.	factus erō			

Present Imperative		Participles	
fī	fīte	*Perf.*	factus
		Fut.	faciendus

Infinitive		Gerund	
Pres.	fierī	*Gen.*	faciendī, etc.
Perf.	factus esse		

35. Volō, Nōlō, Mālō

Principal Parts

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

	Indicative		
Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Present Imperative

	——	nōlī nōlīte	——

Infinitive

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

Pres.	volēns, –entis	nōlēns, –entis	——

36. DEFECTIVE VERBS

1. **Coepī,** *I have begun, I began,* is used only in the Perfect System. With a *Passive* Infinitive the Passive of **coepī** is used, as: **Pōns īnstituī coeptus est.** *The bridge began to be built.*

2. **Meminī,** *I remember,* and **ōdī,** *I hate,* are used only in the Perfect System, but with the meanings of the Present.

37. CONTRACTED FORMS

1. *Perfects* in **–āvī** and **–ēvī** (as well as other tenses in the Perfect System) are sometimes contracted, losing **–ve–** before **–r,** and **–vi–** before **–s,** as: **oppugnārunt** for **oppugnāvērunt, cōnsuērat** for **cōnsuēverat.**

2. *Perfects* in **–īvī** may lose **–vi–** before **–s,** as: **audīssem** for **audīvissem.**

SYNTAX

NOUNS

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

38. Apposition. — An Appositive is in the *same case* as the noun it describes.

Ad urbem Rōmam, *To the city Rome.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

39. Adjectives. — An Adjective agrees with the noun it describes in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

Malus nauta, *a bad sailor.*

a. An *Attributive* Adjective, used with two or more nouns of *different gender*, agrees with the *nearest* noun.

Summa alacritās et studium, *The highest eagerness and zeal.*

b. A *Predicate* Adjective, used with two or more nouns of different gender, is *plural*, and *masculine* if the nouns denote living beings, *neuter* if they denote things without life.

Et porta et mūrus erant alta, *Both the gate and the wall were high.*

40. Adjectives as Substantives. — Adjectives are often used as Substantives:

nostrī, *our men.* **sua,** *their possessions.*

41. Partitive Adjectives. — The following adjectives sometimes designate *a part* of that to which they refer: **extrēmus, īnfimus** (**īmus**), **medius, prīmus, reliquus, summus.**

Summus mōns, *the top of the mountain;* **prīmā nocte,** *in the first part of the night.*

Note. — **Prīnceps, prior, prīmus** sometimes designate *the first to* do something.

Ea prīnceps poenās persolvit, *This was the first to pay the penalty.*

AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS

The Relative Pronoun

42. Relative Pronoun. — The Relative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender*, *number*, and *person*, but its *case* depends upon its use in its own clause.

Nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, *There was nothing, with which to sustain hunger.*

Note. — The antecedent of the Relative is often omitted.

Quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat. (*He*), *who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.*

43. Connecting Relative. — In Latin a Relative Pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence, where the English idiom requires a connective — *and*, *but*, *for*, *now*, etc. — with a *Demonstrative* or *Personal* Pronoun.

Quā dē causā, *And for this reason.*

44. Relative with Predicate Noun. — The Relative often agrees with a predicate noun in its clause instead of with the antecedent.

Rhēnus, quod est flūmen lātum, *The Rhine, which is a wide river.*

45. Relative Clause Preceding. — For the sake of emphasis a Relative clause sometimes precedes the clause containing the antecedent.

Quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs imperāvit, *He commanded those, through whose territory they had gone.*

Reflexive Pronouns

46. Direct Reflexive. — The Reflexive Pronoun **sē** and its Possessive Adjective **suus** usually refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

Sē suaque dēdidērunt, *They surrendered themselves and their possessions.*

47. Indirect Reflexives. — In a subordinate clause **sē** and **suus** may refer back to the subject of the principal clause.

Dat negōtium Gallīs uti sē certiōrem faciant.
He directs the Gauls to inform him.

Note. — **Sē** and **suus** refer only to the *third person.* The Personal Pronouns are used as reflexives for the first and second persons.

The Intensive Pronoun

48. ***Ipse.*** — The Intensive Pronoun **ipse,** *self, very,* etc., is used to emphasize the word with which it agrees, or as an emphatic Pronoun.

Ipsī magistrātūs, *The magistrates themselves.*
In ipsīs rīpīs, *On the very banks.*

Note. — **Ipse** is sometimes used as an Indirect Reflexive.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS

49. General Rule. — A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt, *The Helvetians send ambassadors.*

50. Two or More Subjects. — *a.* With two or more subjects connected by **et, -que,** or **atque** the Verb may be plural, or agree with the nearest subject.

Imperātor et lēgātus commōtī sunt, *The general and the lieutenant were alarmed.*
Fīlia et ūnus ē fīliīs captus est, *The daughter and one of the sons were captured.*

Note. — When two or more subjects form *a single idea,* the Verb may be Singular.

Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit, *The Marne and the Seine separate.*

b. With two or more Singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor* the Verb is in the Singular.

Neque imperātor neque lēgātus commōtus est, *Neither the general nor the lieutenant was alarmed.*

Impersonal Verbs

51. Some Verbs are only used impersonally, as **oportet,** *it is necessary.* But many Personal Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, as: **ventum est,** *they came:* **mīlitibus dēsiliendum erat,** *the soldiers had to leap down.*

CASES OF NOUNS

Nominative

52. Subject. — The subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative case.

Lēgātī vēnērunt, *The envoys have come.*

53. Predicate Nominative. — A Predicate Noun or Adjective, describing the subject, is in the Nominative.

Labiēnus erat lēgātus, *Labienus was a lieutenant.*

Note. — Predicate Nouns and Adjectives are used with **sum,** *be;* **fiō,** *become;* **videor,** *seem;* and the Passive of certain verbs, like **appellō,** *call.*

Flūmen appellātur Tamesis, *The river is called the Thames.*

Vocative

54. Vocative. — The *Person* or *Thing addressed* is in the Vocative. It is usually postpositive.

Dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs, *Leap down, comrades.*

Genitive

55. Limiting Genitive. — A noun or pronoun used to limit or modify the meaning of another noun (not denoting the same person or thing) is put in the Genitive. This general rule covers the three uses of the Genitive with Nouns that follow.

56. Possessive Genitive. — The Genitive is used to denote *possession.*

Fīnēs Aeduōrum, *The territory of the Aedui.*

57. Genitive of Description. — The Genitive *with a modifying Adjective* is used to describe a person or thing.

Vir magnae virtūtis, *A man of great courage.*

Note. — The Descriptive Genitive is often used in expressions of *measure.*

Mūrus duodecim pedum, *A wall of twelve feet* (in height).

58. Genitive of the Whole. — The Genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

Trēs partēs cōpiārum trādūxērunt, *They led across three quarters of their forces.*

Notes. — 1. The Genitive of the Whole is used not only with nouns, but with pronouns and adjectives.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī, *The bravest of all these.*

2. Instead of the Genitive of the Whole, the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** is regularly used with *Cardinal Numerals* (except **mīlia**) and **quīdam,** as: **decem ex mīlitibus,** *ten of the soldiers.*

59. Genitive with Adjectives. — The Genitive is used with Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt,* and their *opposites.*

Reī mīlitāris perītus, *Skilled in warfare.*

Dative

60. Dative of Indirect Object. — The *Indirect* Object of a verb is put in the Dative.

Mīlitibus signum dat, *He gives the signal to the soldiers.*

61. Dative of Indirect Object with Special Verbs. — The following Intransitive verbs (generally Transitive in English) take the Dative of the Indirect Object in Latin:

cōnfīdō, crēdō, faveō, ignōscō, imperō,
indulgeō, invideō, noceō, parcō, pāreō,
persuādeō, placeō, resistō, serviō, studeō.

Eī cīvitātī persuāsit, *He persuaded this state.*

Note. — In the Passive these verbs become impersonal and retain the Dative.

Eī cīvitātī persuāsum est, *This state was persuaded.*

62. Dative of Indirect Object with Compounds. — The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with many verbs compounded with the Prepositions **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super.**

Dumnorīx equitātuī praeerat, *Dumnorix was in command of the cavalry.*

Fīnitimīs bellum īnferēbant, *They were making war upon their neighbors.*

63. Dative of Separation. — Verbs of *taking away,* especially those compounded with **ab, dē,** or **ex,** are followed by the Dative of words denoting Persons.

Mīlitī scūtum dētrāxit, *He snatched a shield from the soldier.*

64. Dative of Purpose. — The Dative is used to denote the *purpose* of an action.

Locum castrīs dēlēgit, *He selected a place for a camp.*

65. Dative of Reference. — The Dative is used to denote the Person to whom an act or state *refers* or whom it *concerns.*

Sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt, *They cast themselves at Caesar's feet.*

a. The Dative of Reference is often used in combination with the Dative of Purpose.

Praesidiō impedīmentīs erant, *They served as a guard to the baggage.*

66. Dative of Agent. — The Dative is used with the Future Passive Participle to denote the *agent.*

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Everything had to be done by Caesar.*

67. Dative of Possessor. — The Dative is used with the verb **sum** to denote the *possessor.*

Gladius mihi est, *I have a sword.*

68. Dative with Adjectives. — Adjectives denoting *likeness, nearness, fitness, friendliness,* and their *opposites,* take the Dative.

Proximī sunt Germānīs, *They are nearest to the Germans.*

Accusative

69. Direct Object. — The Direct Object of a Transitive verb is in the Accusative.

Lēgātōs mīsērunt, *They sent envoys.*

70. Two Accusatives. — *a.* Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, take two Accusatives, one of the *person*, and the other of the *thing*.

Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat, *Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.*

Note. — **Petō** and **postulō** usually take **ab**, and **quaerō, ab, dē,** or **ex,** with the Ablative of the person.

b. Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, showing* may take two Accusatives of the *same* person or thing.

Caesar Commium rēgem cōnstituit, *Caesar made Commius king.*

c. **Trādūcō** and **trānsportō** may take two Accusatives.

Flūmen exercitum trādūxit, *He led his army across the river.*

71. Subject of Infinitive. — The Subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative.

Turrim cōnstituī vīdērunt, *They saw that the tower was built.*

72. Accusative of Duration or Extent. — *Duration of time* and *extent of space* are expressed by the Accusative.

Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat, *He had held the throne many years.*

Fossa quīndecim pedēs lāta, *A trench fifteen feet wide.*

73. Accusative with Prepositions. — The following Prepositions govern the Accusative:

ad, *to*	**ergā,** *toward*	**praeter,** *past*
adversus, *against*	**extrā,** *outside*	**prope,** *near*
ante, *before*	**īnfrā,** *below*	**propter,** *on account of*
apud, *at, among*	**inter,** *between*	**secundum,** *after*
circiter, *about*	**intrā,** *within*	**super,** *over*

circum, *around*	**iūxtā,** *near*	**suprā,** *above*
cis, *this side of*	**ob,** *on account of*	**trāns,** *across*
citrā, *this side of*	**per,** *through*	**ultrā,** *beyond*
contrā, *against*	**post,** *after*	**versus,** *toward*

Note. — Two Prepositions, **in,** *in* or *into,* and **sub,** *under,* govern the *Accusative* to denote *motion whither,* but the Ablative to denote *place where.*

In silvam, *into the forest.* **In silvā,** *in the forest.*

74. Accusative of Place to Which. — Place to Which is expressed by the Accusative with **ad** or **in.** *Names of towns* and **domum** regularly omit the Preposition. When used, the Preposition means *to the vicinity of.*

In Ītaliam, *To Italy.* **Rōmam,** *To Rome.* **Ad Genavam,** *To the vicinity of Geneva.*

Ablative

The Ablative is used to express three different relations:

I. **From** II. **With** III. **Where**

75. Ablative of Separation. — The Ablative with the Prepositions **ab, dē,** or **ex** is used to denote *Separation.* Certain verbs, as **abstineō, careō, dēiciō, dēsistō, excēdō,** and **līberō,** omit the Preposition. With *Persons* a Preposition is regularly used.

Hic locus ā castrīs Caesaris aberat, *This place was distant from Caesar's camp.*

Labiēnus proeliō abstinēbat, *Labienus was refraining from battle.*

Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna dīvidit, *The Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.*

76. Ablative of Place from Which. — *Place from Which* is expressed by the Ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex.**

Ex oppidō ēgreditur, *He sets forth from the town.*

Note. — Names of towns and **domō** regularly omit the Preposition. When used, the Preposition means *from the vicinity of.*

Rōmā, *From Rome.* **Ab Ocelō,** *From the vicinity of Ocelum.*

77. Ablative of Source. — The Ablative, with or without **ab, dē,** or **ex,** is used to denote *source* or *origin.*

Amplissimō genere nātus est, *He was born of a most distinguished family.*

78. Ablative of Agent. — The *Personal Agent* with Passive verbs is expressed by the Ablative with **ab.**

Oppidum ā Caesare expugnātum est, *The town was taken by Caesar.*

79. Ablative of Means. — The *Means* or *Instrument* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.

Pīlō vulnerātus est, *He was wounded by a javelin.*

80. Ablative with Deponents. — The Ablative is used with **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds.

Castrīs nostrī potītī sunt, *Our men got possession of the camp.*

81. Ablative of Cause. — The Ablative without a Preposition is used to denote *cause,* chiefly with verbs of *emotion.*

Suā victōriā glōriantur, *They boast on account of their victory.*

82. Ablative of Manner. — The Ablative with **cum** is used to express the *Manner* of an action. When there is a modifying Adjective, **cum** *may* be omitted.

Cum cruciātū necātī sunt, *They were put to death with torture.*
Incrēdibilī celeritāte dēcucurrērunt, *They ran down with wonderful swiftness.*

Note. — The Ablative may express that, *in accordance with* which something is done.

Īnstitūtō suō, *In accordance with his custom.*

83. Ablative of Accompaniment. — The Ablative with **cum** is used to denote *Accompaniment.* **Cum** is sometimes omitted in *military expressions* containing a modifying adjective (other than a numeral).

Cum hīs lēgātīs vēnit, *He came with these ambassadors.*
Subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs, *He followed with all his forces.*

84. Ablative of Description. — The Ablative *with a modifying Adjective* is used to describe a person or thing. For *physical qualities* the Ablative is regularly used.

Hominēs inimīcō animō, *Men of unfriendly disposition.*

85. Ablative of Specification. — The Ablative without a Preposition is used to specify *in what respect* a statement is true.

Virtūte praecēdunt, *They excel in courage.*

Note. — The Ablative of Specification is used with the Adjectives **dignus** and **indignus**.

Nihil ipsīs indignum, *Nothing unworthy of themselves.*

86. Ablative of Comparison. — After a *comparative* the Ablative may be used instead of **quam,** *than,* (but *only when* the first of the things compared is in the *Nominative* or *Accusative*).

Eī sunt hūmāniōrēs { **cēterīs,** / **quam cēterī,** } *These are more civilized than the rest.*

Note. — Occasionally the Comparative Adverbs **amplius, longius, plūs,** and **minus** do not affect the construction of the Noun following.

Spatium nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, *A space of not more than six hundred feet.*

87. Ablative of Degree of Difference. — The *Measure* or *Degree of Difference* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.

Paulō longius, (lit., *further by a little*), *a little further.*

88. Ablative of Time. — *Time When* or *Within Which* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.

Diē tertiō, *On the third day.* **Paucīs annīs,** *Within a few years.*

89. Ablative Absolute. — An Ablative noun or pronoun with a participle, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, may be used to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action.

Signō datō, mīlitēs impetum fēcērunt, *When the signal was given, the soldiers charged.*

For full explanation and further examples see Lesson V, §§ 15–16.

90. Ablative with Prepositions. — The following Prepositions govern the Ablative:

ā, ab, or **abs,** *from, by*	**dē,** *from, concerning*	**prae,** *before*
cum, *with*	**ex** or **ē,** *from, out of*	**prō,** *in front of, for*
		sine, *without*

Notes. — 1. **Cum,** when used with the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns, becomes an enclitic; usually also with the Relative and Interrogative Pronouns; **nōbīscum,** *with us;* **sēcum,** *with himself;* **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

2. Two Prepositions **in,** *in, into,* and **sub,** *under,* govern the Ablative to denote *place where,* but the Accusative to denote *motion whither.*

Sub aquā, *Under the water.* **Sub iugum mittere,** *To send under the yoke.*

91. Ablative of Place Where. — *Place Where* is regularly expressed by the Ablative with **in,** *in, on.* The Preposition is often omitted with certain words, as **locō, locīs, parte, partibus,** when they are modified by an Adjective or a Genitive. (*Names of Towns* and **domus** are put in the Locative. See below.)

In eōrum fīnibus, *In their territory.* **Aliēnō locō,** *In an unfavorable place.*

Locative

92. With *Names of Towns* and **domus,** Place Where is expressed by the Locative case. This in the *Singular* of the *First* and *Second* Declension is like the Genitive; elsewhere it is like the Ablative. (The Locative of **domus** is **domī,** *at home.*)

Rōmae, *At Rome.* **Athēnīs,** *At Athens.* **Bibracte,** *At Bibracte.*

VERBS

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

93. Present. — The Present tense represents an act as *going on now,* or states something that *applies to all time.*

Parat, *He prepares; he is preparing; he does prepare.*

94. Historical Present. — In narration the Present tense is often used instead of a past tense for the sake of greater vividness.

Cōnsidius ad eum accurrit, dīcit, *Considius rushed up to him and said.*

Notes. — 1. When the Historical Present is vivid enough to be felt as a *real present*, it is followed by a *Principal* tense; when it is felt as *past*, it is followed by a *Historical* tense.

Fīnitimīs persuādent, utī proficīscantur, *They persuaded the neighbors to set out.*

Casticō persuādet, ut rēgnum occupāret, *He persuaded Casticus to seize royal power.*

2. **Dum,** meaning *while*, takes the Historical Present.

Dum morātur, lēgātī vēnērunt, *While he was delaying, envoys came.*

95. Imperfect. — The Imperfect denotes *continued* or *repeated* action in past time.

Parābat, *He was preparing; he kept preparing.*

96. Future. — The Future denotes action in the future.

Parābit, *He will prepare.*

97. Perfect. — The Perfect represents an act: (1) as completed *in the past.* (2) as completed *at the time of speaking.*

Parāvit, (1) *He prepared.* (2) *He has prepared.*

98. Pluperfect. — The Pluperfect denotes an act completed in the past before another was begun.

Parāverat, *He had prepared.*

99. Future Perfect. — The Future Perfect represents an action as completed in the future.

Parāverit, *He will have prepared.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

100. The Indicative Mood is used to express *a fact.*

Germānī Rhēnum trānsiērunt, *The Germans crossed the Rhine.*

101. Temporal Clauses. — Clauses introduced by **postquam,** *after,* **ut** and **ubi,** *when,* **cum prīmum, simul,** and **simul atque,** *as soon as,* take the Indicative, usually in the *Perfect tense.*

Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, *After Caesar had arrived, he demanded hostages.*

102. Adversative Clauses. — Clauses introduced by **quamquam** and **etsī,** *although,* take the Indicative.

Etsī castra erant exigua, haec contrāxit, *Although the camp was small, he contracted it.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Independent Sentences

103. Independent Volitive Subjunctive. — The Independent Volitive Subjunctive represents an idea as *willed.*

Fortēs sīmus, *Let us be brave.* **Nē ignāvī sint,** *Let them not be cowards.*

Subordinate Clauses

For Sequence of Tenses see Lesson XI, §§ 36–37.

104. Purpose Clauses. — Purpose Clauses introduced by **ut** (negative **nē**) take the Subjunctive.

Veniunt ut pācem faciant, *They are coming to make peace.*
Abiit, nē id accideret, *He went away, that this might not happen.*

105. Relative Purpose Clauses. — A Purpose Clause may be introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb.

Lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, *They sent envoys to say.*

106. Purpose Clauses with Quō. — Purpose Clauses *containing a Comparative* are introduced by **quō** instead of **ut.**

Castra mūnīvērunt, quō facilius hostium impetūs sustinērent. *They fortified the camp in order to withstand the enemy's attacks more easily.*

107. Substantive Volitive Clauses. — Verbs meaning to *warn, persuade, request, urge, command,* etc., are followed by an object clause with **ut** or **nē** and the Subjunctive.

Cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent, *He persuaded the citizens to go out.*

Lēgātō imperat nē id faciat, *He commanded the lieutenant not to do this.*

Note. — **Iubeō,** *order,* **vetō,** *forbid,* and **cupiō,** *desire* take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

Equitēs proficīscī iussit, *He ordered the cavalry to set out.*

108. Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. — Verbs and expressions of *Fearing* are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by **nē,** *that, lest,* or **ut,** *that not.*

Verēbātur nē Dīviciācī animum offenderet, *He feared that he might hurt the feelings of Diviciacus.*

109. Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering. — Verbs of *Hindering, Preventing,* are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **quōminus** if the main verb is *affirmative,* and **quīn** or **quōminus** if the main verb is *negative.*

Eōs dēterrēbat nē frūmentum cōnferrent, *He was deterring them from collecting grain.*

Retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla conicerent, *They could not be restrained from hurling darts.*

Note. — **Prohibeō,** *prevent,* regularly takes the Infinitive.

Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant, *They were preventing the Germans from crossing.*

110. Result Clauses. — Clauses of Result introduced by **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) take the Subjunctive. The Main Clause often contains such a word as **tantus, tam, ita, adeō,** etc.

Tanta erat caedēs ut perpaucī effugerent, *So great was the slaughter that very few escaped.*

Vulneribus cōnfectus est ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, *He was exhausted by wounds, so that he could no longer hold himself up.*

111. Substantive Clauses of Result. — Substantive Result Clauses (introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**) with the Subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs meaning *to happen* or *to cause* or *effect.*

Accidit ut esset lūna plēna, *It happened that it was full moon.*
Efficiunt ut equī sint summī labōris, *They render the horses capable of the highest exertion.*

Note. — *Negative* verbs and expressions of Doubt and Uncertainty are followed by **quīn** with the Subjunctive.

Nōn dubium est quīn plūrimum possint, *There is no doubt that they are the most powerful.*

112. Descriptive Relative Clauses. — A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may be used to *describe* an indefinite antecedent. These clauses of *description* or *characteristic* are used especially after such expressions as **est quī, sunt quī, ūnus quī, sōlus quī, nēmō est quī.**

Erant duo itinera, quibus exīre possent, *There were two routes by which they could go out.*

113. *Cum* Circumstantial Clauses. — *In narration,* **cum,** meaning *when,* is used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which the action took place.

Cum in fugā traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem incidit, *While he was being dragged along in flight, he happened upon Caesar himself.*

Cum pervēnisset, ea cognōvit, *When he had arrived, he ascertained these facts.*

Note. — If the **cum** Clause is used merely to denote *the point of time* at which the action occurred, the verb is in the Indicative.

Cum Caesar vēnit, prīncipēs erant Aeduī, *At the time when Caesar came, the Aedui were leaders.*

114. *Cum* Causal. — **Cum,** meaning *since,* takes the Subjunctive.

Hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem mittunt, *Since they could not persuade these, they sent envoys to Dumnorix.*

115. Adversative Clauses with Subjunctive. — An Adversative Clause introduced by **cum, ut,** or **quamvīs,** *although,* takes the Subjunctive.

Cum prīmī ōrdinēs concidissent, tamen reliquī resistēbant, *Although the first ranks had fallen, still the rest kept resisting.*

116. Clauses of Anticipation. — Temporal Clauses introduced by **dum,** *until,* and **antequam** or **priusquam,** *before,* take the Subjunctive to denote something as *anticipated.* To express an *actual fact* they take the Indicative.

Priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, *Before the enemy could recover from fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.*

Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt, *They did not cease fleeing before they came to the river Rhine.*

117. Indirect Questions. — *Interrogative* Clauses used as the object of verbs of *inquiring, knowing, telling,* etc. take the Subjunctive.

Eī ostendit unde vēnisset et quis esset, *He showed him whence he had come and who he was.*

118. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving* (which are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the main clause), take the Subjunctive in all *Subordinate Clauses.*

Dīxit Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolerent, inter sē obsidēs dare, *He said that the Germans, who dwelt across the Rhine, were exchanging hostages.*

Notes. — 1. **Implied Indirect Discourse.** Even when there is no verb of saying or thinking in the main clause, the Subjunctive is used in clauses in which Indirect Discourse is *implied.*

Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī, flāgitābat. *Caesar demanded of the Aedui the grain which* (as he reminded them) *they had promised.*

2. **Commands** in Direct Discourse become Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

Scrībit Labiēno, cum legiōne veniat, *He writes Labienus to come with the legion.*

119. ***Quod*** **Causal Clauses.** — Causal Clauses, introduced by **quod** or **quoniam,** *because, since,* (*a*) take the *Indicative* when they give the *writer's* or *speaker's reason,* (*b*) take the *Subjunctive* to suggest that it is the reason of *some other person.*

(*a*) **Fortissimī sunt propterea quod longissimē absunt,** *They are the bravest, because they are farthest away.*

(*b*) **Aeduī querēbantur, quod Harūdēs eōrum fīnēs populārentur,** *The Aedui complained, because the Harudes were devastating their borders.*

120. *Conditional Sentences*

INDICATIVE

Simple Conditions

1. *Present.* — **Sī cēdit, ignāvus est,** *If he yields, he is a coward.*
2. *Past.* — **Sī cessit, ignāvus fuit,** *If he yielded, he was a coward.*
3. *Future.* — **Sī cēdet** (**cesserit**), **ignāvus erit,** *If he yields* (lit., *shall yield* or *shall have yielded*), *he will be a coward.*

Less Vivid Future Condition

4. **Sī cēdat, ignāvus sit,** *If he should yield, he would be a coward.*

Contrary to Fact Conditions

5. *Present.* — **Sī cēderet, ignāvus esset,** *If he were yielding, he would be a coward.*
6. *Past.* — **Sī cessisset, ignāvus fuisset,** *If he had yielded, he would have been a coward.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

121. The Imperative is used to express a command.

Dēsilīte, *Leap down.* **Nōlīte dēsilīre,** *Do not leap down.*

INFINITIVE MOOD

122. Infinitive as Subject. — As the Infinitive is a Verbal Noun, it may be used as the subject of a verb.

Vidēre est crēdere, *To see is to believe.*

123. Infinitive as Object. — The Infinitive is often used as the object of a verb. As it *completes* the meaning of some verbs, it is called the *Complementary Infinitive.*

Cōpiās parāre coepērunt, *They began to prepare forces.*
Exīre potuērunt, *They were able to go out.*

124. Infinitive Phrase as Subject or Object. — The Infinitive with a Subject Accusative may be used as the subject or object of a verb.

Oppida incendī oportēbat, *It was necessary that the towns be burned.*
Iubet arma trādī, *He ordered the arms to be handed over.*

125. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. — After verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving,* the *main clause* has the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

Nūntiāvit equitēs pulsōs esse, *He reported that the cavalry had been routed.*

For the Tenses of the Infinitive, see Lesson IV, § 12.

PARTICIPLES

126. A participle is a verbal adjective; as a *verb* it may be followed by an object; as an *adjective* it must agree with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

127. Present Participle. — The Present Participle is used to denote the *same* time as the Principal Verb.

Cotta pugnāns occīditur, *Cotta is killed (while) fighting.*

128. Perfect Participle. — The Perfect Participle is used to denote time *before* that of the Principal Verb.

Caesar, adductus eōrum precibus, bellum suscēpit, *Influenced by their entreaties, Caesar undertook the war.*

129. Future Active Participle. — The Future Participle is used to denote time *after* that of the Principal Verb.

Moritūrī, tē salūtāmus, *We, (who are) about to die, salute thee.*

Note. — The Future Participle is chiefly used in the Active Periphrastic Conjugation. See **29.**

130. Future Passive Participle (Gerundive). — The Future Passive Participle has two distinct uses:

(1) With the Verb **sum** in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. When thus used with any part of the verb **sum** — expressed or understood — it is translated, *necessary to be, ought to be, must be.* See **29.**

Signum tubā dandum erat, *The signal had to be given with the trumpet.*

(2) As a Gerundive (expressing the leading idea of a phrase) in agreement with a noun, in the sense of *-ing.*

Cōnsilium cēpērunt legiōnis opprimendae, *They formed the plan of crushing the legion.*

Note. — Gerundive phrases introduced by **ad** with the Accusative, or by **causā** (or **grātiā**) and the Genitive, are used to express *purpose.*

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, *For the purpose of accomplishing these things.*

Bellī īnferendī causā. *For the sake of making war.*

GERUND

131. The Gerund is a *verbal noun* of the Second Declension, used only in the Singular. It lacks the Nominative case, which is supplied by the Infinitive. It may take a direct object, but as a rule it does so only in the Genitive, or Ablative (without a preposition).

Spēs capiendī urbem, *Hope of taking the city.* See Lesson V, § 18–19.

SUPINE

132. The Supine is a *verbal noun* of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Accusative and Ablative.

a. The Accusative of the Supine is used with verbs of motion to express *purpose.*

Lēgātōs mīsērunt rogātum auxilium, *They sent envoys to ask assistance.*

b. The Ablative of the Supine is used with a few adjectives.

Perfacile factū est, *It is very easy to do.*

SECOND YEAR WORD LIST

1 abdō
2 accēdō
3 accidō
4 aciēs
5 adhibeō
6 aditus
7 administrō
8 adorior
9 adulēscēns
10 adventus

11 adversus
12 aedificium
13 aeger
14 aegrē
15 aestus
16 afferō
17 ager
18 agmen
19 aggredior
20 aliēnus

21 aliquis
22 alius
23 alter
24 an
25 ancora
26 angustiae
27 angustus
28 animadvertō
29 anteā
30 apertus

31 arbitror
32 arbor
33 arcessō
34 armō
35 at
36 attingō
37 attribuō
38 audācter
39 augeō
40 āvertō

41 bis
42 cadō
43 caedēs
44 campus
45 captīvus
46 carrus
47 castellum
48 cāsus
49 cēterī
50 circiter

51 circumdō
52 circumsistō
53 citerior
54 cliēns
55 cohors
56 cohortor
57 colligō
58 collocō
59 colloquium
60 commeātus

SECOND YEAR WORD LIST

1 hide
2 go to, approach
3 happen
4 line of battle
5 summon; employ
6 approach (*noun*)
7 manage
8 attack
9 young man
10 arrival

11 against
12 building
13 sick
14 with difficulty
15 heat; tide
16 bring (forward)
17 field
18 marching column
19 attack
20 another's; foreign

21 some one
22 another
23 the other (of two)
24 or
25 anchor
26 narrows; straits
27 narrow
28 attend to; punish
29 before
30 open

31 judge; think
32 tree
33 summon
34 arm
35 but
36 touch; reach
37 assign
38 boldly
39 increase
40 turn away

41 twice
42 fall
43 slaughter
44 plain
45 captive
46 cart; wagon
47 redoubt
48 chance; accident
49 the others
50 about

51 put around; surround
52 stand around; surround
53 hither
54 dependent; client
55 cohort
56 encourage
57 gather; collect
58 place
59 conference
60 supplies

61 commodus
62 comparō
63 comperiō
64 compleō
65 complūrēs
66 comprehendō
67 concēdō
68 concilium
69 concurrō
70 concursus

71 cōnferō
72 cōnfīdō
73 cōnflīgō
74 congredior
75 coniungō
76 cōnor
77 conquīrō
78 cōnscrībō
79 cōnsequor
80 cōnsīdō

81 cōnspectus
82 cōnspiciō
83 cōnspicor
84 cōnstō (cōnstat)
85 cōnsuēscō
86 contentiō
87 contrā
88 conventus
89 convertō
90 cornū

91 cotīdiē
92 cotīdiānus
93 crēdō
94 cruciātus
95 cum (*conj.*)
96 cum . . . tum
97 cūnctus
98 cūrō
99 cursus
100 cūstōdia

101 dēcertō
102 dēclīvis
103 dēditiō
104 dēdūcō
105 dēfēnsor
106 dēfessus
107 dēficiō
108 dēiciō
109 deinde
110 dēprehendō

111 dēserō
112 dēspērō
113 dēsum
114 dētrīmentum
115 diēs
116 dīmicō
117 disciplīna
118 discō
119 dispergō
120 dispōnō

121 distribuō
122 dīversus
123 domus
124 dubius
125 ducentī
126 dum
127 efficiō
128 effugiō
129 ēgredior
130 emō

131 eō (*adv.*)
132 eōdem
133 equester
134 equitātus
135 ēruptiō
136 etsī
137 ēventus
138 excēdō
139 excipiō
140 exercitātiō

61 convenient
62 prepare; secure
63 ascertain
64 fill
65 several; a number
66 seize; arrest
67 yield; grant
68 council
69 run together
70 assembly; onset

71 bring together
72 trust
73 dash together
74 meet; fight
75 unite
76 try
77 search out
78 enrol
79 overtake
80 encamp

81 sight; view
82 behold; see
83 catch sight of
84 stand firm; be agreed
85 be accustomed
86 struggle
87 against
88 meeting
89 turn; change
90 horn; wing (of an army)

91 daily
92 daily; usual
93 believe; trust
94 torture
95 when; since; although
96 both . . . and
97 all, whole
98 care for
99 speed; course
100 guard; watch

101 fight to a finish
102 sloping; steep
103 surrender
104 lead down *or* away
105 defender
106 exhausted
107 fail; rebel
108 cast down
109 then
110 seize; catch

111 desert
112 despair of
113 be lacking
114 loss
115 day
116 fight; struggle
117 training
118 learn
119 scatter
120 arrange

121 distribute
122 different
123 home; house
124 doubtful
125 two hundred
126 while; until
127 accomplish
128 escape
129 go out; disembark
130 buy; obtain

131 thither
132 to the same place
133 cavalry (*adj.*)
134 cavalry
135 sortie
136 although
137 outcome
138 go out; depart
139 take; receive
140 practice; training

141 exercitus
142 exiguus
143 exitus
144 expediō
145 experior
146 explōrātor
147 expōnō
148 exterior
149 extrā
150 extrēmus

151 facultās
152 famēs
153 ferō
154 ferrum
155 fidēs
156 fīō
157 fīrmus
158 fors
159 fossa
160 frōns

161 frūmentārius
162 frūstrā
163 gladius
164 grātus
165 hīberna
166 hīc
167 hiemō
168 hortor
169 hospes
170 hūc

171 ibi
172 idōneus
173 īgnis
174 ignōrō
175 imperātum
176 imperītus
177 impetrō
178 impetus
179 incendium
180 incidō
181 incolō
182 incolumis
183 incommodum
184 inde
185 ineō
186 īnferior
187 īnferō
188 īnfīrmus
189 īnfrā
190 īnsidiae

191 īnstituō
192 īnstitūtum
193 īnstō
194 interclūdō
195 intereā
196 intereō
197 intericiō
198 interior
199 intermittō
200 intrā

201 iste
202 ita
203 itaque
204 item
205 iūdicō
206 iugum
207 iūrō
208 iūs iūrandum
209 iūstus
210 lapis

211 lātitūdō
212 latus
213 lēgātiō
214 liber
215 licet
216 littera
217 lītus
218 loquor
219 magis
220 magistrātus

141 army
142 scanty
143 exit; issue
144 set free; get ready
145 try; test
146 scout
147 set forth; explain
148 outer
149 outside
150 last; end of

151 ability; opportunity
152 hunger
153 bear; bring
154 iron
155 faith; protection
156 be made; become
157 strong; firm
158 chance
159 trench
160 forehead; front

161 pertaining to grain
162 in vain
163 sword
164 pleasing
165 winter quarters
166 here
167 winter
168 urge; encourage
169 host; guest
170 hither

171 there
172 suitable
173 fire
174 be unaware of
175 command
176 unskilled
177 gain one's request
178 attack
179 fire
180 fall upon; happen

181 dwell
182 unharmed
183 disadvantage; defeat
184 thence; then
185 enter; begin
186 lower; inferior
187 bring on or against
188 weak
189 below
190 ambush; plot

191 arrange; undertake
192 custom; institution
193 press on
194 cut off
195 meanwhile
196 perish
197 put between
198 inner
199 interrupt
200 within

201 that (of yours)
202 so; thus
203 and so
204 likewise
205 judge
206 yoke; ridge
207 swear
208 oath
209 just
210 stone

211 width
212 side
213 embassy
214 book
215 it is permitted
216 letter; *pl.*, epistle
217 shore
218 talk; speak
219 more
220 magistrate, magistracy

221 maiōrēs
222 mālō
223 mandō
224 manus
225 maritimus
226 māteria
227 maximē
228 mercātor
229 mereō (mereor)
230 metus

231 minimē
232 minor
233 minuō
234 minus
235 modo
236 mora
237 morior
238 moror
239 mōs
240 mulier

241 mūnītiō
242 mūnus
243 mūrus
244 nancīscor
245 nāscor
246 nē
247 necesse
248 necō
249 neglegō
250 negō

251 nēmō
252 neuter
253 nēve or neu
254 nihil
255 nisi
256 nōbilitās
257 noceō
258 noctū
259 nocturnus
260 nōlō

261 nōnāgintā
262 nōndum
263 nōn nūllus
264 nūllus
265 obiciō
266 obses
267 obsidiō
268 occāsiō
269 occāsus
270 occīdō

271 occultus
272 occurrō
273 octōgintā
274 oculus
275 omnīnō
276 onus
277 opera
278 oportet
279 opprimō
280 oppugnātiō

281 ops; *pl.*, opēs
282 opus
283 orior
284 ōrō
285 ōs
286 pābulum
287 pācō
288 paene
289 palūs
290 pāreō

291 partim
292 passus
293 pateō
294 patior
295 paulātim
296 paulō
297 paulum
298 pecus
299 pedes
300 pereō

221 forefathers
222 prefer
223 entrust; order
224 hand; force
225 maritime; sea-
226 material; timber
227 very greatly; especially
228 trader
229 deserve
230 fear; anxiety

231 least; not at all
232 smaller; lesser
233 lessen
234 less
235 only
236 delay
237 die
238 delay
239 custom; habit
240 woman

241 fortification
242 gift; service
243 wall
244 obtain
245 be born
246 lest
247 necessary
248 kill
249 disregard
250 deny

251 no one
252 neither
253 or not, nor
254 nothing
255 unless
256 nobility
257 do harm
258 at night
259 by night, nocturnal
260 be unwilling

261 ninety
262 not yet
263 some
264 none, no
265 put against, oppose
266 hostage
267 siege
268 opportunity
269 setting
270 cut down, kill

271 concealed
272 run to meet; occur
273 eighty
274 eye
275 in all; only
276 burden
277 work, service
278 ought
279 overwhelm
280 storming; assault

281 aid; resources
282 work
283 rise
284 beg
285 mouth; face
286 fodder
287 pacify
288 almost
289 marsh
290 obey

291 partly
292 pace
293 be open, extend
294 suffer, allow
295 little by little
296 (by) a little
297 a little
298 cattle
299 foot-soldier
300 perish

301 perferō
302 perfuga
303 permittō
304 permoveō
305 perpetuus
306 perspiciō
307 persuādeō
308 pertineō
309 perturbō
310 pīlum

311 placeō
312 plānitiēs
313 plēbs
314 plēnus
315 plērīque
316 plērumque
317 plūrimum
318 plūs
319 polliceor
320 portus

321 poscō
322 posterus
323 postquam
324 postrīdiē
325 postulō
326 potēns
327 potior
328 potius
329 prae
330 praebeō

331 praecipiō
332 praeda
333 praefectus
334 praeficiō
335 praesēns
336 praesertim
337 praeter
338 praetereā
339 praetor
340 prex

341 prīdiē
342 prīmō
343 prīmum
344 prior
345 prīstinus
346 priusquam
347 procul
348 profectiō
349 proficīscor
350 prōgredior

351 prōnūntiō
352 prope
353 prōpōnō
354 propterea
355 proximus
356 quā (*adv.*)
357 quadrāgintā
358 quaestor
359 quantus
360 quā rē

361 queror
362 quīcumque
363 quīdam
364 quīnquāgintā
365 quisquam
366 quisque
367 quoniam
368 quoque
369 reddō
370 redeō

371 redigō
372 referō
373 reficiō
374 regiō
375 repente
376 repentīnus
377 reperiō
378 rēs
379 resistō
380 restituō

301 carry; endure
302 deserter
303 permit; entrust
304 alarm; arouse
305 perpetual
306 perceive
307 persuade
308 reach; pertain
309 disturb
310 pike

311 please
312 plain
313 common people
314 full
315 the majority
316 generally
317 most
318 more
319 promise
320 harbor

321 demand
322 following; next
323 after
324 on the next day
325 demand
326 powerful
327 get possession of
328 rather
329 before; ahead
330 furnish

331 order; instruct
332 booty
333 commander
334 put in charge
335 present
336 especially
337 beyond; except
338 besides
339 judge
340 prayer

341 the day before
342 at first
343 first
344 former; earlier
345 earlier; old-time
346 before
347 far off
348 departure
349 set out
350 advance

351 proclaim
352 near; almost
353 set forth; propose
354 for this reason
355 next; last
356 where
357 forty
358 treasurer
359 how great
360 therefore

361 complain
362 whoever
363 a certain
364 fifty
365 any one
366 each one
267 since
368 also
369 return; render
370 go back

371 drive back; render
372 bring back; report
373 repair
374 district
375 suddenly
376 sudden
377 find; learn
378 thing
379 resist
380 restore

381 retineō
382 revertor (revertō)
383 rīpa
384 rogō
385 rūrsus
386 saepe
387 sagitta
388 sagittārius
389 saxum
390 scientia

391 scūtum
392 secundus
393 semper
394 senātus
395 sententia
396 septuāgintā
397 sequor
398 serviō
399 sexāgintā
400 sīc

401 sīcut (sīcutī)
402 simul
403 singulī
404 sī quis
405 sīve or seu
406 sōl
407 sōlum
408 sōlus
409 solvō
410 speciēs

411 spēs
412 sponte (suā)
413 statiō
414 stīpendium
415 stō
416 studeō
417 studium
418 sub
419 subeō
420 subitō

421 subsequor
422 subsidium
423 succēdō
424 summa
425 super
426 superior
427 suprā
428 tam
429 tamen
430 tantus

431 tardō
432 tegō
433 tempestās
434 tendō
435 tergum
436 tollō
437 tot
438 tōtus
439 tribūnus
440 tribuō

441 trīduum
442 tueor
443 tumulus
444 turpis
445 tūtus
446 ūllus
447 ulterior
448 ultrā
449 ultrō
450 ūnā (*adv.*)

451 undique
452 ūniversus
453 ūsque
454 ūsus
455 ut
456 uter
457 uterque
458 ūtilis
459 ūtor
460 uxor

381 retain
382 return
383 bank
384 ask
385 again
386 often
387 arrow
388 bowman
389 rock
390 knowledge

391 shield
392 second; favorable
393 always
394 senate
395 opinion
396 seventy
397 follow
398 serve
399 sixty
400 thus, so

401 just as
402 at the same time
403 one by one
404 if any one
405 or if
406 sun
407 only
408 alone
409 loose; pay
410 appearance

411 hope
412 of one's own accord
413 outpost; picket
414 tribute; pay
415 stand
416 be eager
417 zeal
418 under; toward
419 go up; undergo
420 suddenly

421 follow closely
422 reserve; aid
423 come up; succeed
424 sum; command
425 over; concerning
426 upper; higher
427 above
428 so
429 nevertheless
430 so great

431 check
432 cover
433 weather; storm
434 stretch; extend
435 back
436 lift; take away
437 so many
438 whole of
439 tribune
440 assign; grant

441 three days
442 gaze at; protect
443 mound
444 disgraceful
445 safe
446 any
447 farther
448 beyond
449 voluntarily
450 together

451 from all sides
452 altogether; in a body
453 as far as; even
454 experience; need
455 that; as; when
456 which (of two)
457 both, each
458 useful
459 use
460 wife

461 vacuus
462 vadum
463 vagor
464 valeō
465 vallēs
466 vāllum
467 vehementer
468 vel
469 ventus
470 vereor
471 vetus
472 victor
473 vīcus
474 videor
475 vinculum
476 vītō
477 vīvus
478 vix
479 volō
480 voluntās

461 empty; vacant
462 ford
463 roam
464 be strong
465 valley
466 wall
467 violently; exceedingly
468 or
469 wind
470 fear; respect
471 old
472 victor
473 village
474 seem
475 chain
476 avoid
477 alive
478 scarcely
479 wish
480 purpose; wish

BOOKS FOR READING AND REFERENCE

ROMAN LIFE

The Private Life of the Romans by *H. W. Johnston*, Scott, Foresman and Co., Chicago.
Roman Antiquities by *A. S. Wilkins*, American Book Co., New York.
Two Thousand Years Ago by *A. J. Church*, Dodd, Mead and Co., New York.
Pictures from Roman Life and Story by *A. J. Church*, D. Appleton and Co., New York.
The Unwilling Vestal by *E. L. White*, E. P. Dutton and Co., New York.
Buried Cities by *Jennie Hall*, The Macmillan Co., New York.
Last Days of Pompeii by *Bulwer-Lytton*, The Macmillan Co., New York.

ROMAN LEGENDS AND HISTORY

Stories from Livy by *A. J. Church*, Dodd, Mead and Co., New York.
Old World Hero Stories by *Eva March Tappan*, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston.
Roman Historical Tales by *Charles Morris*, J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia.
The Story of the Romans by *H. A. Guerber*, American Book Co., New York.
The Story of the Roman People by *Eva Marsh Tappan*, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston.
Famous Men of Rome by *Haaren* and *Poland*, American Book Co., New York.
History of Rome by *M. Creighton*, American Book Co., New York.
First History of Rome by *W. S. Robinson*, Longmans, Green and Co., New York.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar by *W. W. Fowler*, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York.
Caesar's Conquest of Gaul by *T. Rice Holmes*, Oxford University Press, New York.
Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar by *T. Rice Holmes*, Oxford University Press, New York.
The Roman Republic and the Founder of the Empire by *T. Rice Holmes*, Oxford University Press, New York.
Warfare by Land and Sea (Our Debt to Greece and Rome) by *E. S. McCartney*, Marshall Jones Co., Boston.
With Caesar's Legions by *R. F. Wells*, Lothrop, Lee and Shepard Co., Boston.
A Friend of Caesar by *W. S. Davis*, The Macmillan Co., New York.
The Standard Bearer by *A. C. Whitehead*, American Book Co., New York.

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. . . . . = *ablative.*
abs. . . . . = *absolute.*
acc. . . . . = *accusative.*
adj. . . . . = *adjective.*
adv. . . . . = *adverb.*
c. . . . . = *common.*
comp. . . . . = *comparative.*
conj. . . . . = *conjunction.*
dat. . . . . = *dative.*
decl. . . . . = *declension.*
def. . . . . = *defective.*
desid. . . . . = *desiderative.*
dim. . . . . = *diminutive.*
f. . . . . = *feminine.*
freq. . . . . = *frequentative.*
fut. . . . . = *future.*
gen. . . . . = *genitive.*
imper. . . . . = *imperative.*
impers. . . . . = *impersonal.*
impf. . . . . = *imperfect.*
incep. . . . . = *inceptive.*
indecl. . . . . = *indeclinable.*
indic. . . . . = *indicative.*
infin. . . . . = *infinitive.*
insep. . . . . = *inseparable.*
inter. . . . . = *interrogative.*
intens. . . . . = *intensive.*
interj. . . . . = *interjection.*
intr. . . . . = *intransitive.*
lit. . . . . = *literally.*
loc. . . . . = *locative.*
m. . . . . = *masculine.*
n. . . . . = *neuter.*
p., pp. . . . . = *page, pages.*
part. . . . . = *participle.*
pass. . . . . = *passive.*
pl. . . . . = *plural.*
poss. . . . . = *possessive.*
prep. . . . . = *preposition.*
pres. . . . . = *present.*
pron. . . . . = *pronoun.*
rel. . . . . = *relative.*
sc. (*scilicet*) . . = *supply.*
semi-dep. . . = *semi-deponent.*
sing. . . . . = *singular.*
subst. . . . . = *substantive.*
sup. . . . . = *superlative.*
trans. . . . . = *transitive.*
voc. . . . . = *vocative.*

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Direct and indirect derivatives from the Latin (as well as cognate words), which are also definitions, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS. Derivatives and cognates which are not definitions are printed in SMALL CAPITALS and included within parentheses.

A

A., abbreviation for **Aulus.**

a. d. = **ante diem.**

ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl., *from, away from, out of; on; by;* of time, *from, since, after.* **ab utrōque latere,** *on both sides.* **ab mīlibus passuum octō,** *eight miles off.*

abacus, -ī, m., *the* ABACUS, a counting board.

ab-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, refuse;* **sē abdicāre,** *to resign.* (ABDICATE)

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put away; conceal, hide.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, withdraw; take off.* (ABDUCT)

ab-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, —,** *go away, depart.*

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw away, throw down, throw, cast.* (ABJECT)

abiēs, -ietis, f., *spruce, fir.*

ab-nuō, -ere, -nuī, -nuitus or **-nūtus,** [nuō, *nod*], *refuse, deny.*

abs-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *withdraw, depart.*

abs-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [caedō], *cut off.*

ab-sēns, -sentis, [**ab-sum**], ABSENT, *in one's* ABSENCE.

ab-similis, -e, *unlike.*

ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *withdraw; de-*SIST.

abs-tergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersus, [tergeō, *wipe*], *wipe off.*

abs-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [teneō], *keep back, hold off; keep away, refrain from,* ABSTAIN; *absent oneself.*

abs-tulī, see **au-ferō.**

ab-sum, -esse, ā-fuī, ă-futūrus, *be absent, be distant; be free from, be exempt from; be wanting.* **longē abesse,** *to be far away.*

Absyrtus, -ī, m., ABSYRTUS, Medea's brother.

ab-ūtor, -ī, -ūsus, *waste, squander.* (ABUSE)

ac, see **atque.**

Acastus, -ī, m., ACASTUS, son of Pelias.

Acca, -ae, f., ACCA *Larentia,* wife of Faustulus.

ac-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**ad**], *go to, draw near, approach, advance; be added; undertake.* (ACCEDE)

ac-celerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad** + **celerō,** from **celer**], *hasten.* (ACCELERATE)

ac-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [**ad**], *kindle, set on fire, light.*

ac-ceptus, [**ac-cipiō**], ACCEPTABLE, *welcome.*

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, [**ad** + **cadō**], *fall, befall, happen, occur, fall to the lot of.* Impers., **accidit,** *it happens.* (ACCIDENT)

ac-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ad** + **caedō**], *cut into.*

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**ad** + **capiō**], *take to oneself, receive,* ACCEPT; *learn, listen to.*

ac-clīvis, -e, [**ad** + **clīvus**], *sloping upwards, rising, up-hill.*

ac-clīvitās, -ātis, f., [**ac-clīvis**], *slope, ascent.* (ACCLIVITY)

ac-commodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad** + **commodus,** *fit*], *fit to, put on, adjust;* ACCOMMODATE *to.*

ac-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [**ad** + **cumbō,** *lie*], *recline* (at the table).

ac-cūrātē, [**ad** + **cūra**], adv., *carefully.* (ACCURATELY)

ac-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursus,** [**ad**], *run to, hasten to.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp; bitter; eager, keen, fierce, vigorous.* (ACRID)

ācerrimē, [sup. of **ācriter**], adv., *most fiercely.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *edge; line of battle, battle.*

ācriter, [**ācer**], adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

āctiō, -ōnis, f., [**agō**], *act,* ACTION.

āctus, see **agō.**

acūtus, -a, -um, [**acuō,** *sharpen*], *sharpened, sharp; pointed.* (ACUTE)

ad, prep. w. acc., *to; toward, up to;* of place, *at, near by, in the presence of, among, on;* of time, *up to, until;* of purpose, especially with the gerundive constr., *in order to, for the purpose of;* of other relations, *with regard to, according to, as to, in;* with words of number, *about.* **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night.*

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *equal.* **adaequāre cursum,** *to keep up with.* (ADEQUATE)

ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, ADD.

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, bring to; draw, haul taut; induce, influence.* (ADDUCE)

ad-ēmptus, see **ad-imō.**

ad-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** *go to, approach, reach, visit.*

ad-eō, adv., *so, so much, to such a degree; even, indeed.*

ad-eptus, see **ad-ipīscor.**

ad-haerēscō, -ere, -haesī, —, [incep. of **haereō**], *cling to.* (ADHESIVE)

Adherbal, -is, m., ADHERBAL, a Numidian prince, who was slain by Jugurtha.

ad-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**habeō**], *apply; bring forward, offer, summon, admit; use; invite* to a dinner.

ad-hortātiō, -ōnis, f., [**hortor**], *ex-*HORTATION, *encouragement.*

ad-hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *encourage; rally.*

ad-hūc, adv., *heretofore, hitherto, as yet, still.*

ad-iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie near, be* ADJACENT.

ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**iaciō**], *throw; pile up; add, join to.*

ad-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**agō**], *drive (to), push up (to); move up; cast, hurl.*

ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**emō**], *take to oneself, take away; cut off.*

ad-ipīscor, -ī, -eptus, [**apīscor,** *reach*], *arrive at; gain, secure, obtain, win.* (ADEPT)

ad-itus, -ūs, m., [eō], *approach, access, entrance; way of approach.*

ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join to, attach; add to; win over.* (ADJUNCT)

ad-iūtor, -ōris, m., [ad-iuvō], *helper; advocate.* (ADJUTANT)

ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *help, aid, assist, support; render assistance, be of assistance.*

ad-minister, -trī, m., *assistant; officiating priest,* MINISTER.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *render assistance; manage,* ADMINISTER; *arrange for;* of orders, *carry out.*

ad-mīrātiō, -ōnis, f., [mīrōr], *wonder, surprise;* ADMIRATION.

ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus, *wonder at;* ADMIRE.

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go;* ADMIT, *receive; be guilty of,* *com-*MIT. **equō admissō,** *with his horse at full speed.*

ad-modum, adv., (to the limit); *quite, very, exceedingly; fully, at least.*

ad-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind,* ADMONISH, *warn.*

ad-monitus, -ūs, m., [ad-moneō], *advice,* ADMONITION.

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, MOVE *to, apply; bring near.*

ad-oleō, -ēre, -uī, -ultus, *increase, magnify.*

ad-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, [olēscō, *grow*], *grow up.* (ADOLESCENT)

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus, *rise against, fall upon, assail, attack.*

ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *honor, worship,* ADORE.

ad-stō, -āre, -stitī, —, STAND *near* or *by.*

ad-sum, -esse, af-fuī, —, *be at hand, come, be present; help; take part in.*

ad-surgō, -ere, -sur-rēxī, -sur-rēctus, [sub + regō], *rise, stand up.*

Aduatucī, -ōrum, m., *the* ADUATUCI, a warlike people on the left bank of the Meuse.

ad-ulēscēns, -entis, [adōlēscō, *grow*], *young.* As noun, c., *a youth, young man.* (ADOLESCENT)

ad-ulēscentia, -ae, f., [ad-ulēscēns], *youth.* (ADOLESCENCE)

adulēscentulus, m., **-ī,** [dim. of adulēscēns], *very young man, youth.*

ad-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come to, arrive.*

ad-ventus, -ūs, m., [ad-veniō], *coming, arrival.* (ADVENT)

ad-versārius, -a, -um, [versor], *opposed.* As noun, **ad-versārius, -ī,** m., *enemy,* ADVERSARY.

adversum, see **adversus,** prep.

ad-versus, -a, -um, [vertō], *turned towards, facing, in front, face to face, opposite;* ADVERSE, *unfavorable, unsuccessful.* **adversō colle,** *up the hill.* **in adversum ōs,** *full in the face.*

ad-versus and **ad-versum,** [ad-vertō], prep. with acc., *opposite to, against.*

ad-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn to, direct, turn.* (ADVERT)

ad-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, summon.* (ADVOCATE)

ad-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly to; dash up to.*

aedēs, see **aedis.**

aedi-ficium, -ī, n., [aedi-ficō], *building, house.* (EDIFICE)

aedi-ficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aedis + faciō], *build, construct.*

aedīlicius, -a, -um, [aedīlis], *of*

AEDILE *rank.* As noun, **aedīlicius, -ī,** m., *ex-*AEDILE.

aedīlis, -is, m., [**aedis**], AEDILE, *commissioner of buildings, trade, health and games.*

aedis or **aedēs, -is,** f., *building; temple;* pl., *house, dwelling.*

Aeduus, -a, -um, AEDUAN. As noun, **Aeduus, -ī,** m., *an* AEDUAN; pl., AEDUANS, *the* AEDUI, a powerful Gallic people, in alliance with the Romans before Caesar's arrival in Gaul.

Aeētēs, -ae, (acc., **Aeētem**), m., AEETES, king of Colchis.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick.* As noun, **aegrī, -ōrum,** m., *the sick.*

aegerrimē, sup. of **aegrē.**

Aegīna, -ae, f., AEGINA, an island and city in the Saronic Gulf, south of Athens.

aegrē, [**aeger**], adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely; reluctantly.* **aegrē ferre,** *to dislike, to be annoyed at.*

Aemilius, -ī, m., (1) *L.* AEMILIUS *Paulus,* who fell in the battle of Cannae, 216 B.C. (2) *L.* AEMILIUS *Paulus,* who defeated Perseus, king of Macedon, at Pydna. (3) *Lucius* AEMILIUS, a decurion of a squad of Gallic cavalry.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, f., [**aemulor,** *rival*], *rivalry,* EMULATION.

Aenēās, -ae, m., AENEAS, a Trojan hero.

aēneus, -a, -um, [**aes**], *of copper, of bronze, bronze.*

aequālis, -e, [**aequus**], EQUAL.

aequāliter, [**aequālis**], adv., *evenly, uniformly.*

Aequī, -ōrum, m., *the* AEQUIANS, a people dwelling to the east of Rome.

aequi-noctium, -ī, n., [**aequus** + **nox**], *the* EQUINOX.

aequitās, -ātis, f., [**aequus**], *justice,* EQUITY, *fairness.* **animī aequitās,** *calmness,* EQUANIMITY; *contentment.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**aequus**], EQUALIZE, *make* EQUAL.

aequus, -a, -um, *level, even; fair, just, equitable; like,* EQUAL; *favorable.* **aequō animō,** *with* EQUANIMITY, *calmly.*

āēr, āeris, (acc., **aera**), m., AIR.

aes, aeris, n., *copper; bronze; bell; money.* **aes aliēnum,** (another's money), *debt.*

Aesōn, -ōnis, m., AESON, a prince of Thessaly.

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., [**aestimō**], *valuation.* (ESTIMATION)

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**aes**], ESTIMATE, *value.*

aestuārium, -ī, n., [**aestus**], *tidal marsh, marsh.* (ESTUARY)

aestus, -ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

aetās, -ātis, f., *age, time of life; time.* **prīmā aetāte,** *from early youth.*

aeternus, -a, -um, [**aevi-ternus** from **aevum,** *age*], *everlasting, perpetual;* ETERNAL.

af-ferō, -ferre, at-tulī, al-lātus, [**ad**], *bring to* or *near, bring; cause; present; allege, assign.* **vim af-ferre,** *offer violence, do violence.*

af-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**ad** + **faciō**], *do something to,* AFFECT, *treat; visit with, trouble, afflict, weaken.*

af-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**ad**], *fasten to.* (AFFIX)

af-fīnis, -is, [**ad**], c., *relation* (by marriage). (AFFINITY)

af-flīctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of **af-flīgō**], *shatter, damage, wreck.*

af-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *dash at; throw down; overthrow;* AFFLICT, *damage, shatter.*

af-fore = af-futūrus esse, fut. infin. of **ad-sum.**

af-fuī, see **ad-sum.**

Āfrānius, -ī, m., *L.* AFRANIUS, one of Pompey's officers.

Āfrica, -ae, f., AFRICA; the Roman province of AFRICA.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, [**Āfrica**], AFRICAN. As noun, m., surname of *Scipio,* the conqueror of Hannibal in AFRICA, 202 B.C., and also of *Scipio Aemilianus,* who destroyed Carthage in 146 B.C.

Āfricus, -a, -um [**Āfrica**], AFRICAN; as noun, **Āfricus, -ī,** (sc. **ventus**), m., *the southwest wind.*

ā-futūrus, fut. part. of **ab-sum.**

ager, agrī, m., *land* under cultivation, *field, territory;* pl., *lands, country, the country.* **agrī cultūra,** *farming,* AGRICULTURE.

ag-ger, -is, m., [**ad** + **gerō**], *rampart,* AGGER; *material for an embankment* (earth, timber).

ag-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [**ad** + **gradiōr,** *step*], *approach; attack, fall upon; attempt, undertake, begin.* (AGGRESSIVE)

ag-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad** + **gregō,** from **grex,** *herd*], *collect; join.* (AGGREGATE)

agmen, -inis, n., [**agō**], *army on the march, marching column; line of march; line, procession.* **agmen claudere,** *to bring up the rear.* **novissimum agmen,** *the rear-guard.* **prīmum agmen,** *the vanguard.*

ag-nōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, [**ad**], *recognize, acknowledge.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *set in motion, drive, lead, conduct, guide; incite, urge; pursue; drive off* as plunder, *rob; do,* ACT, *perform; carry on, accomplish; confer, plead with;* of time, *spend, pass; have.* **conventūs agere,** *to hold court.* **grātiās agere,** *to thank.* Of sheds, towers, testudoes, *to bring up.*

agri-cola, -ae, m., [**ager** + **colō**], *farmer.*

agrī cultūra, see **ager.**

Agrigentum, -ī, n., AGRIGENTUM, a city on the south coast of Sicily.

Agrippa, -ae, m., *Menenius* AGRIPPA, who persuaded the plebs to return to Rome.

aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, impf. **aiēbam,** def., *say.*

āla, -ae, f., *wing; squadron* of cavalry.

alacer, -cris, -cre, *eager, spirited.*

alacritās, -ātis, f., [**alacer**], *eagerness, ardor,* ALACRITY.

ālārius, -a, -um, [**āla**], *of the wing.* As noun, **ālāriī, -ōrum,** m., *auxiliary troops,* posted on the *wings* of the army.

Alba longa, -ae, f., [**albus**], ALBA LONGA, 'the long white city,' a town in Latium.

Albānus, -a, -um, *of* ALBA, ALBAN. As noun, **Albānī, -ōrum,** m., *inhabitants of* ALBA, ALBANS.

albus, -a, -um, *white.* (ALBUM)

alcēs, -cis, f., *moose,* European ELK.

ālea, -ae, f., *game of dice; die.*

Alesia, -ae, f., ALESIA, chief city in the territory of the Mandubii.

Alexander, -drī, m., *Alexander III,* surnamed the Great, king of Macedonia from 336 to 323 B.C.

Algidus, -ī, m., [**algeō,** *be cold*], *Mt.* ALGIDUS, seventeen miles southeast of Rome.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [**alius**], *of another, another's; foreign, strange;* ALIEN; *unfavorable.*

aliēnus, -ī, m., [**alius**], *stranger, foreigner.* (ALIEN)

aliō, [**alius**], adv., *to another place, elsewhere.*

ali-quam-diū, adv., *for some time.*

ali-quandō, [**alius**], adv., *at some time or other, at any time, ever, once; at last.*

ali-quantum, -ī, [**ali-quantus,** *somewhat*], n., *a little, something, considerable.*

ali-quī, ali-qua, ali-quod, pron. adj., *some, any, some other.*

ali-quis, ali-quid, [**alius**], indef. pron., *some one, any one, anybody;* pl., *some, any.* Neut., **aliquid,** *something, anything.*

ali-quot, [**alius**], indecl., *some, several.* (ALIQUOT)

ali-ter, [**alius**], adv., *in any other way, otherwise, differently.* **aliter ac,** *otherwise than.*

alius, -a, -ud, gen. **alīus,** *another, other, different, else.* **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another, the one . . . the other;* pl., **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . other;* often as noun, **alius,** *another,* **aliī,** *others.* **longē alius atque,** *very different from.*

al-lātus, see **af-ferō.**

Allia, -ae, f., *the* ALLIA, a tributary of the Tiber.

Allobrogēs, -um, m., *the* ALLOBROGIANS, a Gallic people in the northeastern part of the Province.

al-loquor, -ī, -locūtus, [**ad**], *speak to, address.*

alō, -ere, -uī, altus, *nourish, sustain; increase; maintain, keep; raise.*

Alpēs, -ium, f., *the* ALPS.

Alpīnus, -a, -um, [**Alpēs**], ALPINE.

altē, [**altus**], adv., *high, on high; far.*

alter, -era, -erum, gen., **alterĭus,** *one of two, the other, another; second.* **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other.* **alterī . . . alterī,** *the one party, the one division . . . the other.*

alter-uter, -tra, -trum, *either of two.*

altitūdō, -inis, f., [**altus**], *height,* ALTITUDE; *depth.*

altus, -a, -um, [**alō**], *high, lofty, tall; deep.* As noun, **altum, -ī,** n., *the deep, the sea.*

alveus, -ī, m., *bathing tank.*

amābilis, -e, [**amō**], *worthy to be loved,* AMIABLE.

am—, see **amb—.**

amb—, am—, an—, inseparable prefix, *round about, around.*

ambactus, -ī, m., *vassal, dependent.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., *the* AMBARRI, a people on both sides of the Arar (*Saône*), near its junction with the Rhone.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., *the* AMBIANI, a small state in Belgic Gaul.

Ambibariī, -ōrum, m., *the* AMBIBARII, a people of northwestern Gaul.

Ambiorīx, -īgis, m., AMBIORIX, a chief of the Eburones.

amb-itiō, -ōnis, f., [**eō**], *a going around; desire for favor,* AMBITION.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., *the* AMBIVARETI, a people in central Gaul, clients of the Aeduans.

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both.*

ambulātōrius, -a, -um, [**ambulō,** *walk*], *movable.* (AMBULATORY)

ā-mentia, -ae, f., [**ā-mēns**], *madness, folly.*

āmentum, -ī, n., *thong, strap* for hurling a dart.

Americānus, -a, -um, [**America**], AMERICAN.

amīcitia, -ae, f., [**amīcus**], *friendship; alliance.*

amīcus, -a, -um, [**amō**], *friendly, well-disposed.* (AMICABLE)

amīcus, -ī, m., [**amō**], *friend, ally.*

ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send away; let go, lose.*

amnis, -is, m., *river, stream.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, be fond of.* (AMIABLE)

amor, -ōris, m., [amō], *love, affection.*

amphi-theātrum, -ī, n., AMPHITHEATRE.

ampliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [amplus], *enlarge.* (AMPLI-fy)

amplitūdō, -inis, f., [amplus], *breadth, size; greatness, extent; importance; dignity.*

amplius, [comp. of amplē], indecl. noun, adj., and adv., *more, further; besides, more than.*

amplus, -a, -um, *great, large,* AMPLE; *splendid, distinguished.*

Amūlius, Amūlī, m., AMULIUS, younger son of Proca.

an, conj., *or.*

an—, see **amb—.**

Anartēs, -ium, m., *the* ANARTES, a people of Dacia (*Hungary*).

an-ceps, -cipitis, [ambō + caput], *two-headed; two-fold.* **anceps proelium,** *battle on two fronts.*

Anchīsēs, -ae, m., ANCHISES, father of Aeneas. See (8).

ancora, -ae, f., ANCHOR. **in ancorīs,** *at* ANCHOR.

Ancus, see **Mārcius.**

Andēs, -ium, or **Andī, -ōrum,** m., *the* ANDES, a Gallic people north of the Liger (*Loire*). The name survives in ANJOU.

Āndriscus, see **Pseudo-Philippus.**

angulus, -ī, m., ANGLE, *corner.*

angustē, [angustus], adv., *closely, in close quarters.*

angustiae, -ārum, f., [angustus], *narrow place, defile; mountain pass; strait, difficulties; scarcity; narrowness.*

angustus, -a, -um, *contracted, narrow, close; steep.* As noun, **angustum, -ī,** n., *crisis.*

anima, -ae, f., *breath; life, soul.* (ANIMATE)

anim-ad-vertō, or **animum advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus,** [animus], *turn the mind to, attend to; notice, observe; censure, punish.* **in eum animadvertere,** *to punish him, attend to him.*

animal, -ālis, n., [anima], *living being,* ANIMAL.

animus, -ī, m., *soul, life; mind; courage, spirit; purpose; disposition, feelings.* **esse in animō,** *to intend.*

Aniō, -ēnis, m., *the* ANIO, a tributary of the Tiber in Latium.

annōtinus, -a, -um, [annus], *of the preceding year.*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um, [annus], *for a year,* ANNUAL.

ānser, -is, m., *goose.*

ante, adv., and prep., *before.*
(1) As adv., *in front; previously.* See **ante quam.**
(2) As prep. with acc., *before, in front of.*

ant-eā, [ante], adv., *before this, before, formerly.*

**ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *go before, pre-*CEDE; *excel, surpass.* (ANTECEDENT)

ante-cursor, -ōris, m., [currō], (fore-runner), *scout;* pl., *vanguard.*

ante-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, —,** *go before, go ahead, precede; surpass.*

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *place before, pre-*FER.

ante-hāc, adv., *before this.*

antemna, -ae, f., *yard* of a ship. (ANTENNAE)

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set before; prefer.*

ante quam, conj., *sooner than, before; until;* often separated by intervening words.

ante-signānus, -ī, m., [**signum**], *skirmisher.*

Antiochus, -ī, m., ANTIOCHUS III, surnamed *the Great,* king of Syria.

antīquitus, [**antīquus**], adv., *in former times, anciently.*

antīquus, -a, -um, [**ante**], *old, ancient, former, old-time, early.* (ANTIQUE)

Antistius, see **Rēgīnus.**

Antōnius, -ī, m., *Marcus* ANTONIUS, Mark Antony, the triumvir with Augustus and Lepidus.

ānulus, -ī, m., *ring, finger-ring.*

anxius, -a, -um, ANXIOUS.

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *uncover; open, show; disclose, reveal.*

apertē, [**apertus**], *openly, clearly.*

apertus, -a, -um, [**aperiō**], *open, uncovered; exposed, unprotected; clear, manifest.*

apodyterium, -ī, n., *the* APODYTERIUM, *undressing room.*

Apollō, -inis, m., APOLLO, god of light, of divination and oracles, of poetry and music.

Apollōnius, see **Molō.**

ap-parātus, -ūs, m., [**ap-parō**], *pre-*PARATION; *equipment, supplies.* (APPARATUS)

ap-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, [**ad**], APPEAR; *be plain, be manifest.* (APPARENT)

ap-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad**], *pre-*PARE, *make ready.*

ap-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, [**ad**], *bring to; land.*

ap-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad**], *address, call, name.* (APPELLATION)

Appennīnus, -ī, m., *the* APENNINES, a mountain chain running the length of Italy.

ap-petītus, -ūs, m., [**ad** + **petō**], APPETITE.

ap-petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, [**ad**], *desire, seek; draw near.* (APPETITE)

Appius, -ī, m., APPIUS, a Roman forename.

ap-plicō, -āre, -āvī or **-uī, -ātus,** (**ad** + **plicō,** *fold*), APPLY *to.* **sē applicāre,** *to lean against.* (APPLICATION)

ap-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [**ad**], *place near, set before.* (APPOSITION)

ap-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [**ad**], *seize, grasp.* (APPREHEND)

ap-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad**], *approach, come near.*

ap-pulsus, see **ap-pellō.**

Apr. = **Aprīlis.**

Aprīlis, -e, *of* APRIL.

apte, [**aptus**], adv., *neatly.*

aptus, -a, -um, *fitted, suitable,* APT.

apud, prep. with acc., *at, on, with, near, close to, by; among, in the presence of; at the house of; in the camp of; in the works of; in command of.*

Āpūlia, -ae, f., APULIA, a district in Southeastern Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquae-ductus, -ūs, m., [**dūcō**], AQUEDUCT.

Aquae Sextiae, -ārum, f., AQUAE SEXTIAE, a town in Southern Gaul (modern *Aix*).

aquārium, -ī, n., [**aqua**], *watering place.* (AQUARIUM)

aquāticus, -a, -um, [**aqua**], AQUATIC.

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle; a silver eagle,* carried on a pole as the *standard* of a legion. (AQUILINE)

Aquileia, -ae, f., AQUILEIA, a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

aquili-fer, -ī, m., [**aquila** + **ferō**],

bearer of the eagle, standard-bearer.

Aquītānia, -ae, f., AQUITANIA, one of the three main divisions of Gaul.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *of* AQUITANIA. As noun, **Aquītānus, -ī,** m., AQUITANIAN; pl., AQUITANIANS, inhabitants of Aquitania.

aquor, -ārī, —, [**aqua**], *get water.*

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

Arar, -is, (acc., **-im**), m., *the* ARAR, now *the Saône.*

arātrum, -ī, n., [**arō**], *plough.*

arbitrium, -ī, n., [**arbiter,** *judge*], *choice, judgment, decision; authority.* (ARBITER)

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, [**arbiter,** *judge*], *think, consider, believe.* (ARBITRATE)

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.* (ARBOR)

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *cause to come, fetch; summon, invite.*

Ardea, -ae, f., ARDEA, a town twenty miles south of Rome.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *be on fire, burn; blaze; desire eagerly.* (ARDENT)

ārdor, -ōris, m., [**ārdeō**], *fire;* ARDOR.

Aremoricus, -a, -um, AREMORICAN, a name applied to a group of small states on the northwest coast of Gaul.

arēna, -ae, f., *sand;* ARENA.

argentāria, -ae, f., [**argentum**], *bank.*

argenteus, -a, -um, [**argentum**], *of silver, silver.*

argentum, -ī, n., *silver; money.*

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.* (ARGILLACEOUS)

Argo-nauta, -ae, m., *an* ARGONAUT, one of the crew of the ARGO.

Argos, (only nom. and acc.), n., also **Argī, -ōrum,** m. pl., ARGOS, capital of Argolis, in the Peloponnesus.

Argus, -ī, m., ARGUS, the builder of the ARGO.

āridus, -a, -um, *dry,* ARID; as noun, **āridum, -ī,** n., *dry land, shore, beach.*

ariēs, -ietis, m., *ram; battering-ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., ARIOVISTUS, a German king.

arma, -ōrum, n., *implements;* ARMS, ARMOR, *weapons.* **ad arma concurrere,** *to rush to* ARMS.

armāmenta, -ōrum, n., [**armō**], *implements, equipment, rigging.* (ARMAMENT)

armātūra, -ae, f., [**armō**], ARMOR, *equipment.* **levis armātūrae peditēs,** *light infantry.*

armātus, -a, -um, [**armō**], ARMED, *equipped.* As noun, **armātī, -ōrum,** m., ARMED *men, soldiers.*

Armenia, -ae, f., ARMENIA.

armi-ger, -a, -um, [**arma** + **gerō**], *bearing arms.* As noun, **armiger, -ī,** m., *armor-bearer.*

armilla, -ae, f., [**armus,** *shoulder,* ARM], *bracelet,* ARM-*let.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**arma**], ARM; *equip.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough.* (ARABLE)

ar-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [**ad** + **rapiō**], *seize, snatch.*

Arrūns, -untis, m., ARRUNS, son of Tarquinius Superbus.

ars, artis, f., ART, *skill; knowledge; science.*

ārsī, see **ārdeō.**

articulus, -ī, m., *joint.* (ARTICLE)

arti-ficium, -ī, n., (**ars** + **faciō**), ART, *trade; trick.* (ARTIFICE)

Arvernus, -a, -um, *of the* ARVERNI, ARVERNIAN. As noun, **Arvernī,**

-ōrum, m., ARVERNIANS, *the* ARVERNI, a powerful people on the upper Elaver (*Allier*), whose chief city, Gergovia, was unsuccessfully besieged by Caesar.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold.*

Ascanius, -ī, m., ASCANIUS, son of Aeneas.

a-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [**ad** + **-scandō,** *climb*], ASCEND; *climb, mount, scale; embark.*

a-scēnsus, -ūs, m., [**a-scendō**], ASCENT; *way up, approach.*

Asia, -ae, f., ASIA; in Roman times ASIA *Minor.*

Asiāticus, -ī, m., [**Asia**], surname of *L. Scipio* ASIATICUS, the conqueror of Antiochus the Great in ASIA.

Asina, -ae, m., *Cn. Cornelius* ASINA, consul in 260 B.C.

asparagus, -ī, m., ASPARAGUS.

a-spectus, -ūs, m., [**a-spiciō**], *appearance,* ASPECT ; *sight.*

asper, -a, -um, *rough, harsh, rugged; severe, desperate.*

ā-spernor, -ārī, -ātus, *disdain, despise.*

a-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [**ad** + **-speciō,** *look*], *look on; see, behold, regard.* (ASPECT)

as-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —, [**ad** + **sedeō**], SIT *down, take one's* SEAT.

as-siduē, [**as-siduus**], adv., *constantly, continually.* (ASSIDUOUSLY)

as-siduus, -a, -um, [**ad** + **sedeō**], *continually present; continual, constant.* (ASSIDUITY)

as-sistō, -ere, a-stitī, —, [**ad**], *stand near, appear before.* (ASSIST)

as-suē-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [**ad** + **suētus** + **faciō**], *accustom, train.*

as-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, [**ad** + **suēscō,** *become accustomed*], *become accustomed to.*

as-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, [**ad**], *take to, adopt,* ASSUME.

asȳlum, -ī, n., *place of refuge,* ASYLUM.

at, conj., *but* (introducing a contrast to what precedes), *yet, but yet; at least.*

Athēnae, -ārum, f., ATHENS, chief city of Greece, situated in Attica, in the southeastern part of central Greece.

Athēniēnsis, -e, [**Athēnae**], *of* ATHENS, ATHENIAN. As noun, m., *an* ATHENIAN.

Atīlius, see **Rēgulus.**

atque or **ac,** [**ad** + **-que**], conj., *and, and also, and even, and in particular.* After words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than.* **idem atque, pār atque,** *the same as.* **simul atque,** *as soon as.*

ātrāmentum, -ī, n., [**āter,** *black*], *ink.*

Atrebās, -ātis, m., *an* ATREBATIAN; pl., ATREBATIANS, *the* ATREBATES, a Belgic people.

ātriolum, -ī, n., [**ātrium**], *small hall.*

ātrium, -ī, n., [**āter,** *black*], *the* ATRIUM, *forecourt.*

Ātrius, -ī, m., *Q.* ATRIUS, an officer in Caesar's army.

atrōx, -ōcis, *fierce, savage,* ATROCIOUS.

at-tenuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad** + **tenuis**], *thin out, diminish.* (ATTENUATE)

at-texō, -ere, -uī, -textus, [**ad**], (weave on), *add, join on.*

at-tingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, [**ad** + **tangō**], *touch upon, touch; reach;* of territorial divisions, *border on, adjoin.*

at-tonitus, -a, -um, [**ad** + **tonō**], (thunderstruck), ASTONISHED.

at-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [ad], *assign, allot.* (ATTRIBUTE)

at-tulī, see **af-ferō.**

auctiō, -ōnis, f., [augeō], AUCTION.

auctor, -ōris, m., [augeō], AUTHORity; *advocate, originator, instigator.* (AUTHOR)

auctōritās, -ātis, f., [auctor], AUTHORITY, *power, influence; dignity; weight, prestige, importance.*

audācia, -ae, f., [audāx], *daring, boldness;* AUDACITY, *rashness; recklessness.*

audācter, [audāx], adv., *boldly, courageously, fearlessly.*

audāx, -ācis, [audeō], *daring, bold,* AUDACIOUS.

audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep., *dare, risk; attempt.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus,** *hear, listen to; hear of.* **dictō audiēns esse,** *to obey.* (AUDIENCE)

audītōrium, -ī, n., [audiō], *lecture room,* AUDITORIUM.

au-ferō, -ferre, abs-tulī, ab-lātus, [ab], *bear away, carry off, remove; steal.*

au-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, [ab], *flee away, escape.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, (transitive verb), *increase, enlarge; add to.* (AUGMENT)

augur, -is, m., [avis], *diviner,* AUGUR.

augurium, -ī, n., [augur], *divination,* AUGURY; *omen.*

Aulercus, -ī, m., *an* AULERCAN; pl., *the* AULERCI, a people of Central Gaul with several branches. See **Brannovīcēs, Cēnomanī,** and **Eburovīcēs.**

Aulus, see **Postumius.**

aureus, -a, -um, [aurum], *of gold, golden.* (ORIOLE)

aurīga, -ae, m., *charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, f., [audiō], *ear.* (AURAL)

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.* (AURIFEROUS)

Aurunculeius, -ī, m., *Lucius* AURUNCULEIUS *Cotta,* a lieutenant of Caesar, killed by the Eburones.

au-spicium, -ī, n., [avis + -speciō, *look*], *divination* (by the flight of birds); pl., **auspicia,** AUSPICES.

au-spicor, -ārī, -ātus, [avis + -speciō, *look*], *take the* AUSPICES.

ausus, see **audeō.**

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, post-positive conj., *but, however, on the contrary; and now, moreover.*

autumnus, -ī, m., AUTUMN.

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, [auxilium], *help, aid.*

auxilium, -ī, n., *help, aid, assistance; relief.* Pl., **auxilia,** AUXILIARIES.

avāritia, -ae, f., [avārus], *greed,* AVARICE, *covetousness.*

avārus, -a, -um, AVARICIOUS.

ā-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry off.*

ā-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, *tear away.*

ā-versus, -a, -um, [ā-vertō], *turned away; behind, in the rear.* **āversum hostem,** *a retreating enemy.* (AVERSE)

ā-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn aside,* AVERT; *alienate.*

aviārium, -ī, n., [avis], AVIARY.

avidus, -a, -um, *eager, desirous.* (AVIDITY)

avis, -is, f., *bird; sign, omen.* (AVIATION)

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

B

Baculus, -ī, m., [**baculus,** *staff*], *Publius Sextius* BACULUS, one of the bravest of Caesar's centurions.

ballista, -ae, f., BALLISTA, a military engine, which hurled huge stones.

balneae, -ārum, f., *baths.*

balneāticum, -ī, n., [**balneae**], *entrance fee* for the Roman baths.

balteus, -ī, m., BELT.

Balventius, -ī, m., *T.* BALVENTIUS, a brave centurion.

barbarus, -a, -um, *foreign;* BARBAROUS, *uncivilized.* As noun, **barbarī, -ōrum,** m., *foreigners; natives,* BARBARIANS.

barbātus, -a, -um, [**barba,** *beard*], *bearded.*

basilica, -ae, f., BASILICA, a double-colonnaded hall used for merchants' exchange and for the courts.

Basilus, -ī, m., *L. Minucius* BASILUS, one of Caesar's officers.

Belgae, -ārum, m., *the* BELGIANS, inhabitants of the most northern division of Gaul.

Belgium, -ī, n., BELGIUM, the country of the BELGAE.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, [**bellicus**], *warlike, fierce.* (BELLICOSE)

bellicus, -a, -um, [**bellum**], *of war, military.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**bellum**], *wage war, fight.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., *the* BELLOVACI, a powerful Belgic people.

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

bene, [**bonus**], adv., *well, ably, successfully.*

bene-ficiāriī, -ōrum, [**bene-ficium**], m., *privileged soldiers.*

bene-ficium, -ī, n., [**faciō**], *kindness, favor, service,* BENEFIT.

bene-volentia, -ae, f., [**volō**], *goodwill,* BENEVOLENCE.

benignē, [**benignus**], adv., *kindly, courteously.* (BENIGNLY)

bēstia, -ae, f., BEAST, *animal.*

Bēstia, -ae, m., *L. Calpurnius* BESTIA, consul 111 B.C.

bibliothēca, -ae, f., *library.*

bibō, -ere, bibī, —, *drink.* (IMBIBE)

Bibracte, -is, n., BIBRACTE, capital of the Aedui, situated on a mountain now called *Mont Beuvray* (2690 ft.).

Bibulus, -ī, m., *L. Calpurnius* BIBULUS, Caesar's colleague in his consulship.

bī-duum, -ī, n., [**bis** + **diēs**], (space of) *two days.*

bi-ennium, -ī, n., [**bis** + **annus**], (period of) *two years.* (BIENNIAL)

bīnī, -ae, -a, [**bis**], *two by two, two at a time.*

bi-pertītō, [**partītus**], adv., *in two divisions.*

bis, adv., *twice, on two occasions.*

Biturīgēs, -um, m., *the* BITURIGES, a people in central Gaul.

Boduognātus, -ī, m., BODUOGNATUS, a leader of the Nervii.

Boiī, -ōrum, m., *the* BOIANS, a Celtic people once widely diffused over central Europe. The name survives in Bo-hemia, *Home of the Boii.*

bonitās, -ātis, f., [**bonus**], *goodness; excellence;* of land, *fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, *good, advantageous; well disposed, friendly.* **bonō animō esse,** *to be favorably disposed.* As noun, **bonum, -ī,** n., *good thing, the good; profit, advantage;* pl., **bona, -ōrum,** *goods, possessions.* **bonī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *the*

good, good men, a term applied to themselves by the *optimātēs,* or aristocracy.

boreās, -ae, m., also **boreās ventus,** *the north wind.* (BOREAS)

bōs, bovis, gen. pl., **boum,** dat. **bōbus** or **būbus,** c., *ox, bull, cow.* (BOVINE)

bracchium, -ī, n., *forearm, arm.*

Brannovīcēs, -um, m., *the* BRANNOVICES, a *branch* of the Aulerci.

brevī, [**brevis**], adv., *in a short time, soon, quickly.*

brevis, -e, *short,* BRIEF.

brevitās, -ātis, f., [**brevis**], *shortness;* BREVITY.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *the inhabitants of* BRITAIN, BRITONS.

Britannicus, -a, -um, [**Britannia**], BRITISH.

Britannia, -ae, f., BRITAIN.

brūma, -ae, f., (for **brevuma,** sup. of **brevis,** sc. **diēs**), *shortest day* of the year; *winter solstice; winter.*

Brundisium, -ī, n., BRUNDISIUM, a seaport in Calabria in southeastern Italy. Modern BRINDISI.

Bruttiī, -ōrum, m., *the* BRUTTII, *inhabitants of* BRUTTIUM.

Bruttium, -ī, n., BRUTTIUM, a district in the extreme south of Italy.

Brūtus, -ī, m., [**brūtus,** *dull*], (1) *L. Iunius* BRUTUS, who expelled the Tarquins. (2) *M. Iunius* BRUTUS, one of the assassins of Julius Caesar. (3) *Decimus Iunius Brutus Albinus,* one of Caesar's officers.

būcina, -ae, f., *bugle.*

C

C., abbreviation for **Gaius.**

Cabillōnum, -ī, n., CABILLONUM, a city of the Aeduans.

cacūmen, -inis, n., *top.*

cadāver, -is, n., [**cadō**], *corpse.* (CADAVER)

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, *fall; be slain, die.*

Cadūrcī, -ōrum, m., *the* CADURCI, a people of Aquitania.

Caecilius, see **Metellus.**

caecus, -a, -um, *blind.*

caedēs, -is, f., [**caedō**], *killing, murder; slaughter, massacre.*

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, cut down; cut to pieces, slay.*

caelestis, -e, [**caelum**], *heavenly.* As noun, **caelestēs, -ium,** m., *gods.* (CELESTIAL)

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven, heavens.*

Caepiō, -ōnis, m., *Cn. Servilius* CAEPIO, consul in 140 B.C.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *sacred rite;* CEREMONY.

caeruleus, -a, -um, [**caelum**], *sky-blue, dark blue.* (CERULEAN)

Caesar, -aris, m., *C. Julius* CAESAR, the Roman general, statesman, and author.

caespes, -itis, m., *sod, turf.*

Calais, —, m., CALAIS, one of the Argonauts.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *loss, damage, injury, harm, misfortune, disaster, defeat.* (CALAMITY)

calamus, -ī, m., a reed *pen* with split point.

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe.*

caldārium, -ī, n., [**calidus**], *the* CALDARIUM, a hot bathing room.

Caletī, -ōrum, also **Caletēs, -um,** m., *the* CALETI, a people near the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*).

calidus, -a, -um, *warm, hot.*

caliga, -ae, f., heavy leather *sandal.*

cālō, -ōnis, m., *camp servant.*

Calpurnia, -ae, f., CALPURNIA, wife of Julius Caesar.

Calpurnius, see **Bēstia** and **Bibulus.**

calvitium, -ī, n., [**calvus**], *baldness.*

calvus, -a, -um, *bald.*

Calvus, -ī, m., *C. Licinius Macer* CALVUS, Roman orator and poet.

Camillus, -ī, m., *M. Furius* CAMILLUS, who captured Veii, and delivered Rome from the Gauls in 390 B.C.

Campānia, -ae, f., [**campus**], CAMPANIA, a district between Latium and Lucania.

Campānus, -a, -um, *of* CAMPANIA, CAMPANIAN.

campester, -tris, -tre, [**campus**], *of level ground, flat, level.*

campus, -ī, m., *plain, level field.* **Campus Mārtius,** the CAMPUS MARTIUS, a grassy plain in Rome lying along the Tiber, the place where reviews and the elections were held. (CAMPUS)

candēlābrum, -ī, n., *lamp-stand,* CANDELABRUM.

candidus, -a, -um, [**candeō,** *shine*], *shining white, bright, shining, glittering.* (CANDID)

Canīnius, -ī, m., *C.* CANINIUS REBILUS, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

canis, -is, c., *dog.* (CANINE)

Cannae, -ārum, f., CANNAE, a town in Apulia, where Hannibal disastrously defeated the Romans in 216 B.C.

Cannēnsis, -e, [**Cannae**], *of* CANNAE, *at* CANNAE.

canō, -ere, cecinī, —, *sing, play; prophesy, foretell.*

Cantium, -ī, n., CANTIUM, KENT, a district in the southeast part of Britain.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **canō**], *chant, sing, play, recite.* (in-CANTATION)

cantor, -ōris, m., [**canō**], *singer, poet.*

cantus, -ūs, m., [**canō**], *song, singing,* CHANT.

capessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, [desid. of **capiō**], *seize, take.*

capillus, -ī, m., [**caput**], *hair.* (CAPILLARY)

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize;* CAPTURE; *take possession of; reach; captivate, please, charm; select; affect, influence; receive, obtain.* **initium capere,** *to begin.* **cōnsilium capere,** *to form a plan.*

Capitōlium, -ī, n., [**caput**], *the* CAPITOL, a temple on the Capitoline Hill, dedicated to Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva; often *the* CAPITOLINE *Hill* in Rome, on which the CAPITOL stood.

capra, -ae, f., *she-goat.*

captīva, -ae, f., [**capiō**], (female) *prisoner,* CAPTIVE.

captīvus, -a, -um, [**capiō**], CAPTIVE. As noun, c., *prisoner,* CAPTIVE.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **capiō**], *seize* (eagerly); CAPTURE.

caput, -itis, n., *head; person, soul, life;* of a river, *mouth.* **capitis poena,** CAPITAL *punishment.* **capite dēmissō,** *with head bowed down.* **duo mīlia capitum,** *two thousand souls.*

carcer, -is, m., *prison, dungeon; barrier, starting place* (in a race course). (in-CARCERATE.)

carmen, -inis, n., [**canō**], *song;* CHARM; *prayer, incantation.*

Carnutēs, -um, m., *the* CARNUTES, a people in central Gaul.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.* (CARNAL, CARNIVOROUS)

carpentum, -ī, n., (two-wheeled, covered) *carriage.*

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, [Carthāgō], *of* CARTHAGE, CARTHAGINIAN. As noun, **Carthāginiēnsis, -is,** m., *a* CARTHAGINIAN.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., CARTHAGE, a city on the north coast of Africa, near modern Tunis.

Carthāgō Nova, NEW CARTHAGE, a town on the southeastern coast of Spain.

cārus, -a, -um, *dear, precious.*

Carvilius, -ī, m., CARVILIUS, a chief of the Britons.

casa, -ae, f., *hut, cottage;* pl., *barracks.*

Casca, -ae, m., CASCA, one of Caesar's assassins.

cāseus, -ī, m., CHEESE.

Cassius, -ī, m., (1) *C.* CASSIUS *Longinus,* one of the conspirators against Caesar. (2) *Lucius* CASSIUS *Longinus,* consul in 107 B.C. (3) *Q.* CASSIUS *Longinus,* tribune of the commons in 49 B.C.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., CASSIVELLAUNUS, CASWALLON, a chief of the Britons.

castellum, -ī, [dim. of **castrum**], n., *redoubt; stronghold, citadel.* (CASTLE)

Casticus, -ī, m., CASTICUS, a prominent Sequanian.

Castor, -is, m., CASTOR, a hero famed for his skill in taming horses.

castrum, -ī, n., *fort; fortress, castle;* pl., **castra, -ōrum,** *camp, encampment.* **castra movēre,** *to break camp.* **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., [cadō], *fall; occurrence; chance, fortune; emergency; overthrow; accident, misfortune, calamity, fate.* (CASUAL)

Catamantāloedis, -is, m., CATAMANTALOEDIS, a leader of the Sequani before Caesar's time.

catapulta, -ae, f., CATAPULT, a military engine which shot large arrows horizontally.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain; fetter.*

catēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [catēna], *chain together.*

cathedra, -ae, f., easy *chair.*

Catō, -ōnis, m., [**catus,** *shrewd*], (1) *M. Porcius* CATO, the Censor. (2) *M. Porcius* CATO *Uticensis,* grandson of Cato the Censor.

Catullus, -ī, m., *C. Valerius* CATULLUS, a Roman poet (84–54 B.C.).

Catulus, -ī, m., (1) *C. Lutatius* CATULUS, who defeated the Carthaginians in the final battle of the First Punic War. (2) *C. Lutatius* CATULUS, who aided Marius in defeating the Cimbri in 101 B.C.

Caturīgēs, -um, m., *the* CATURIGES, a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail.* (CAUDAL)

Caudīnus, -a, -um, [**Caudium**], CAUDINE, *of* CAUDIUM, a town in the center of Samnium.

causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, *reason; opportunity; pretext, excuse; condition, situation, state;* Abl., **causā,** with preceding gen., *for the sake, for the purpose, on account.*

cautē, [**cautus,** *cautious*], adv., CAUTIOUSLY.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard, beware of.* (CAUTION)

Cebenna, -ae, f., the *Cévennes,* a mountain range in southern Gaul.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, *go*

away, go, withdraw, retire, fall back, retreat; yield, give up to; abandon; happen. (CON-CEDE)

celeber, -bris, -bre, *renowned, famous,* CELEBRATED.

celer, -eris, -ere, *quick, swift, speedy.*

celeritās, -ātis, f., [**celer**], *speed, quickness, swiftness, rapidity, despatch.* (CELERITY)

celeriter, [**celer**], adv., *quickly; at once, immediately.*

cella, -ae, f., *store-room; small room.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *con-*CEAL, *hide, keep secret.*

Celtae, -ārum, m., *the* CELTS, inhabitants of central Gaul.

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner.*

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -atus, [**cēna**], *dine.*

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m., *the* CENOMANI, a branch of the *Aulerci.*

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsus, *estimate; think, judge; decree, determine; vote for, favor.*

Cēnsōrīnus, -ī, [**cēnsor,** *censor*], m., *L. Marcius* CENSORINUS, consul in 149 B.C.

cēnsus, -ūs, m., [**cēnseō**], *registration* of citizens and property by the censors; CENSUS; *enumeration.*

centaurus, -ī, m., CENTAUR, half man, half horse.

centēnī, -ae, -a, [**centum**], *one hundred each.*

centum, indecl., *a hundred.* (CENT)

centuria, -ae, f., [**centum**], *century,* a company of 100-60 men in the legion.

centuriō, -ōnis, m., [**centuria**], CENTURION, *captain* of a company of 100-60 men.

cērātus, -a, -um, [**cēra,** *wax*], *waxed.*

Cerēs, -eris, f., CERES, goddess of agriculture.

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *separate; see; dis-*CERN.

certāmen, -inis, n., [**certō**], *contest, battle; trial* of strength or skill; *competition.*

certē, [**certus**], adv., *assuredly,* CERTAINLY.

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**certus**], *vie with; contend; rival.*

certus, -a, -um, [old part. of **cernō**], *determined; definite, fixed, specified;* CERTAIN, *assured; trustworthy.* **certiōrem facere,** *to inform.* **certior fierī,** *to be informed.*

cervīcal, -ālis, n., [**cervīx,** *neck*], *pillow, bolster.*

cervus, -ī, m., *stag; forked branches,* called "stag's horns" by the soldiers.

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **cēdō**], *be remiss; delay, be inactive.*

cēterus, -a, -um, *other, the other, the rest;* pl., *the rest, the others, the other.* As noun, **cēterī, -ōrum,** m., *the others, all the rest;* **cētera, -ōrum,** n., *the rest, everything else.* (et CETERA)

Ceutronēs, -um, m., *the* CEUTRONES; (1) A people in the eastern part of the Province. (2) A Belgic people subject to the Nervii.

Christus, -ī, m., CHRIST. **ante Christum nātum,** *before the birth of* CHRIST, B.C.

cibāria, -ōrum, n., [**cibus**], *provisions, rations.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., [**cicer,** *chickpea*], (1) *M. Tullius* CICERO, the orator and statesman. (2) *Q. Tullius* CICERO, brother of the

orator and one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Ciliciēnsis, -e, [Cilicia], CILICIAN, *of* CILICIA, a country of southeastern Asia Minor.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., *the* CIMBRI, a powerful Germanic tribe.

Cincinnātus, -ī, [cincinnus, *curled hair*], m., *L. Quinctius* CINCINNATUS, who was called from his farm to be dictator of Rome.

Cīneās, -ae, m., CINEAS, counselor and envoy of Pyrrhus.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, m., CINGETORIX, a chief among the Britons.

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround, encircle; invest.* (CINCTURE)

cingulum, -ī, n., [cingō], *girdle.*

Cinna, -ae, m., *L. Cornelius* CINNA, associate of Marius, and leader of the popular party.

cippus, -ī, m., *stake, post; boundary post.*

circēnsis, -e, [circus], *of the* CIRCUS.

circiter, [circus, *circle*], adv., and prep. with acc., *about.*

circu-itus, -ūs, m., [circum-eō], CIRCUIT, *way around;* CIRCUMference.

circum, [acc. of **circus,** *circle*], adv., and prep. with acc., *about, around.*

circum-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [caedō], *cut around, cut out.*

circum-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [claudō], *encircle.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround; border; envelop.*

circum-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** *go around, surround.* (CIRCUIT)

circum-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry round.* (CIRCUMFERENCE)

circum-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour around, surround;* pass., *crowd around.*

circum-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send around.*

circum-mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *surround with walls, fortify; hem in.*

circum-plector, -ī, —, *embrace, encompass, surround.*

circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī or **-stitī, —,** *stand around, surround, beset.*

circum-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look about* or *around, look over.*

circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, —, STAND *around, surround; besiege.*

circum-vāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vāllum], *surround with a* WALL, *blockade, invest.*

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, go around; surround.* (CIRCUMVENT)

circus, -ī, m., CIRCUS, an enclosure for races, athletic games, and contests; **Circus Maximus,** an oval CIRCUS between the Palatine and Aventine hills, with seats for 150,000 spectators.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

Cis-alpīnus, -a, -um, *lying on this side of the Alps,* CISALPINE.

citerior, -ius, [cis], *on this side, hither; nearer, next.* **Gallia citerior,** *Cisalpine Gaul.*

citharīzō, -āre, —, —, [κιθαρίζω], *play on the cithara* or *lyre.*

citharoedus, -ī, m., *singer,* who sings to the accompaniment of the *cithara* or *lyre.*

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of cieō, *set in motion*], *urge on.*

cito, sup., **citissimē,** [citus, *swift*], adv., *swiftly.*

citrā, [cis], prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

cīvicus, -a, -um, [cīvis], *civil,* CIVIC.

cīvīlis, -e, [cīvis], CIVIC, CIVIL; *courteous, polite.*

cīvis, -is, c., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, f., [**cīvis**], *body of citizens, state, nation; city state; citizenship.*

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, defeat.*

clam, adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **clāmō**], *cry aloud, keep shouting.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry, shout;* PRO-CLAIM.

clāmor, -ōris, m., [**clāmō**], *outcry, shout, din,* CLAMOR.

clārē, [**clārus**], adv., CLEARLY, *loudly.*

clārus, -a, -um, CLEAR, *bright; loud, distinct; celebrated, famous.*

classis, -is, f., CLASS; *division of the people; fleet.*

Claudius, -ī, m., *Appius* CLAUDIUS *Caecus,* one of the decemvirs. See **Mārcellus, Nerō.**

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *shut,* CLOSE; *shut up; besiege.* **agmen claudere,** *to bring up the rear.*

clāvus, -ī, m., *nail, spike;* a purple *stripe* on the tunic.

clēmēns, -entis, *mild, gentle, compassionate.* (CLEMENT)

clēmenter, [**clēmēns**], adv., *quietly, mildly, moderately.*

cliēns, -entis, m., *dependent,* CLIENT, *follower.*

clipeus, -ī, m., (round, metal) *shield.*

cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer.*

Clōdius, -ī, m., *A.* CLODIUS, a mutual friend of Caesar and Scipio.

Cluentius, -ī, m., CLUENTIUS, who was defeated by Sulla in the war with the Italian allies.

Clūsium, -ī, n., CLUSIUM, capital of Etruria.

Cn., abbreviation for **Gnaeus.**

co-, see **com-.**

co-acervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *heap up, pile up.*

co-āctus, part. of **cō-gō.**

co-artō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**artō,** *compress*], *crowd together.*

Cocles, -itis, m., *Horatius* COCLES, who defended the **Pōns Sublicius.**

co-emō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *buy up.*

co-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** *come together, unite.*

coepī, -isse, coeptus, def., *begin, commence.*

co-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**arceō**], *confine; restrain, check.* (COERCE)

cō-gitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**agitō**], *consider, reflect on, think; design, plan.* (COGITATE)

co-gnātiō, -ōnis, f., [**(g)nāscōr**], *blood-relations; group of kinsmen; kindred.*

co-gnōmen, -ōnis, n., [**(g)nōmen**], *surname, family name; name.* (COGNOMEN)

co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, [**(g)nōscō**], *become acquainted with, learn, learn of, ascertain; know, recognize; examine, investigate; take* COGNIZANCE *of.*

cō-gō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**agō**], *drive together, collect, gather; force, compel, oblige.* (COGENT)

co-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**habeō**], *hold, keep back, restrain.*

cohors, -hortis, f., COHORT, the tenth part of a legion.

co-hortātiō, -ōnis, f., [**co-hortor**] *encouraging, exhortation.*

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *encourage, exhort, address.*

Colchī, -ōrum, m., [**Colchis**], *inhabitants of* COLCHIS, COLCHIANS.

Colchis, -idis, (acc., **-ida**), f. COLCHIS, a province of Asia, east of the Black Sea.

col-, see **com-.**

Collātīnus, -ī, m., [**Collātia**], *L. Tarquinius* COLLATINUS, husband of Lucretia, and colleague of Brutus in his consulship.

col-lātus, see **cōn-ferō.**

col-laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise highly.*

col-lēga, -ae, m., [lēgō], COLLEAGUE.

col-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind together, fasten together.*

col-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [legō], COLLECT, *assemble; obtain, get.* **sē colligere,** *to gather themselves together, form in battle array; to recover themselves, to rally.*

collis, -is, m., *hill, height, elevation.*

col-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, set, post, station; settle; set in order, arrange.* (COLLOCATION)

col-loquium, -ī, n., [col-loquor], *conference, interview.* (COLLOQUY)

col-loquor, -ī, -locūtus, *talk with, hold a conference, hold a parley.*

colō, -ere, -uī, cultus, *till,* CULTIVATE; *dwell in, inhabit; honor, worship; observe.*

colōnia, -ae, f., [colōnus, COLONIST], COLONY.

color, -ōris, m., COLOR; *complexion.*

columba, -ae, f., *dove, pigeon.*

columna, -ae, f., COLUMN.

com-, (primitive form of **cum,** used in compounds, and changed to **col-, con-, cor-,** or **co-,** before certain consonants), (1) *together with;* (2) *thoroughly, completely.*

coma, -ae, f., *hair.*

com-būrō, -ere, -bussī, -būstus, [būrō, *burn*], *burn up, consume.* (COMBUSTION)

com-es, -itis, m., [eō], *companion, comrade; retainer.*

com-issā-tiō, -ōnis, f., [edō], *drinking.*

comitātus, -a, -um, [comitō from **comes**], *accompanied.*

comitātus, -ūs, m., [comitor], *escort, retinue.*

com-itia, -ōrum, n., [eō], *assemblies* (of Roman citizens); *election.*

Com-itium, -ī, n., [eō], *the* COMITIUM, a place in the Forum where certain elections were held.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [comes], *attend, accompany.*

com-meātus, -ūs, m., [meō, *go*], *passing to and fro, trip, voyage; supplies,* often including grain (**frūmentum**).

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mention, relate.* (COMMEMORATE)

com-mendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mandō], *intrust;* COMMEND, *recommend, defend.*

com-mentārius, -ī, m., [mēns], *note-book;* COMMENTARY.

com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go to and fro, visit, resort to.*

com-mīlitō, -ōnis, m., [mīles], *fellow-soldier.*

com-minus, [manus], adv., *hand to hand.*

com-missūra, -ae, f., [com-mittō], *joint.*

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *bring together, unite; engage in, begin; intrust,* COMMIT; *cause, do, be guilty of.* **proelium committere,** *to join battle, fight.*

Commius, -ī, m., COMMIUS, an Atrebatian, a friend of Caesar.

com-modē, [com-modus], adv., *conveniently, to advantage; properly, suitably; well, skillfully.*

com-modus, -a, -um, *fitting, de-*

sirable, convenient, comfortable, advantageous, easy; favorable; suitable. As noun, **commodum, -ī,** n., *convenience, advantage, profit.* (COMMODIOUS)

com-moror, -ārī, -ātus, *delay, stay, remain, linger.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *disturb, alarm;* MOVE, *stir up, begin; excite, rouse, influence.* (COMMOTION)

com-mūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**cōmmūnis**], *share, divide with; unite with;* COMMUNICATE, *impart; consult.*

com-mūniō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus,** *strongly fortify, intrench.*

com-mūnis, -e, [**mūnus**], COMMON, *general, public.* **commūnī cōnsiliō,** *by common consent.* **in commūnī conciliō,** *at a general council.* **ex commūnī cōnsēnsū,** *by general agreement.*

com-mūtātiō, -ōnis, f., [**commūtō**], *change.* (COMMUTATION)

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change, alter; exchange.*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, PREPARE, *get together; secure, get.*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pār**], *match,* COMPARE.

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive together, collect; force,* COMPEL.

com-periō, -īre, -perī, -pertus, *find out, learn; discover, find guilty.*

com-plector, -ī, -plexus, [**plectō,** *braid*], *embrace, encircle; include.*

com-plementum, -ī, n., [**compleō**], (the means of filling up), COMPLEMENT.

com-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill;* COMPLETE, *fill up.*

com-plexus, -ūs, m., [**plector,** *embrace*], *embrace.*

com-plūrēs, -a, *several, a number of, many.* As noun, **complūrēs, -ium,** m., *a great many, quite a number, many.*

com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put together; arrange;* COMPOSE, *settle, conclude.*

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in, carry, convey; collect.*

com-prehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsus, [**prehendō,** *grasp*], (take hold of), *catch, seize, arrest;* COMPREHEND.

com-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reckon, compute.*

con-, see **com-.**

cōnātus, -ūs, m., [**cōnor**], *attempt.*

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *withdraw; give up, submit; allow, grant,* CONCEDE; *permit.*

con-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, [**cadō**], *fall down, fall; perish, be slain.*

con-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**caedō**], *cut to pieces, kill, destroy.*

con-ciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**concilium**], *win over,* CONCILIATE, *reconcile; win, gain, procure.*

con-cilium, -ī, n., [**calō,** *call*], *meeting, assembly;* COUNCIL.

con-cinō, -ere, -cinuī, —, [**canō**], *sound together.*

con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **cieō,** *set in motion*], *urge on, spur; rouse; instigate.*

con-citor, -ōris, m., [**con-citō**], *ex-*CITER, *instigator.*

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry aloud, shout.*

con-cordia, -ae, f., [**cor,** *heart*], *harmony,* CONCORD; **Templum Concordiae,** TEMPLE OF CONCORD in the Forum.

con-cupīscō, -ere, -cupīvī, -cupītus, [incep. of **cupiō**], *greatly desire.*

con-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī,**

-cursus, *run* or *rush together; assemble; meet; fight.* (CONCUR)

con-cursō, -āre, —, —, [freq. of **con-currō**], *rush to and fro, run about.*

con-cursus, -ūs, m., [**currō**], *running together, assembling, onset;* CONCOURSE; *attack, meeting, collision, shock.*

con-diciō, -ōnis, f., [dīcō], CONDITION, *situation, state; terms.*

con-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, (put together), *found; store, conceal.*

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together, collect.* (CONDUCE)

cōn-ferō, -ferre, con-tulī, col-lātus, *bring together, collect, convey; ascribe, refer, lay.* **sē cōnferre,** *to betake one's self, proceed.*

cōn-fertus, -a, -um, [cōn-ferciō, *press together*], *crowded together, dense, compact, in close array.*

cōn-festim, adv., *at once, speedily.*

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**faciō**], *do thoroughly, perform, finish, complete, accomplish, make; compose; wear out, exhaust.* (CONFECTION)

cōn-fīdō, -ere, -fīsus, semi-dep., *rely upon, have confidence in; be confident.* (CONFIDE)

cōn-fīrmātus, -a, -um, [cōn-fīrmō], *encouraged, confident.*

cōn-fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**fīrmus**], CONFIRM, *strengthen; set, establish; encourage; declare; assure.*

cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**flagrō,** *blaze*], *be on fire, burn up.* (CONFLAGRATION)

cōn-flictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **cōn-flīgō**], *harm, assail.* (CONFLICT)

cōn-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus, *dash together, collide; contend, fight.* (CONFLICT)

cōn-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (blow up); *kindle, arouse; bring together; cause; heap up, contract.*

cōn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, FLOW *together, assemble.* (CONFLUENCE)

cōn-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *stab, assassinate.*

cōn-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee, take refuge.*

cōn-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *mass together, bring together.* (CONFOUND, CONFUSION)

con-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**grex,** *flock*], *collect, assemble,* CONGREGATE.

con-gressus, -ūs, m., [**gradior,** *step*], *meeting, encounter, engagement.* (CONGRESS)

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**iaciō**], *throw* (forcibly), *cast, hurl, drive, strike; throw up, place, put.* **conicere in fugam,** *to put to flight.* (CONJECTURE)

con-iūnctim, [con-iungō], adv., *jointly, in common.*

con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join, unite.* (CONJUNCTION)

con-iūnx, or **con-iux, -ugis,** [**iungō**], c., *husband, wife.* (CONJUGAL)

con-iūrātiō, -ōnis, f., [iūrō], *sworn union; conspiracy, plot.*

con-iūrātus, -a, -um, [part. of **con-iūrō**], *conspiring.* As noun, pl. m., *conspirators.*

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (swear together), *form a conspiracy, conspire, plot.* (CONJURE)

con-iux, see **con-iūnx.**

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *attempt, try, endeavor, undertake.* (CONATIVE)

con-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus, [**quiēs**], *rest, be* QUIET, *pause, take a nap.*

con-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [**quaerō**], *seek out, hunt up; bring together, collect.*

cōn-salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hail.* (SALUTATION)

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, [sanguis], *of the same blood.* As noun, c., *relative, kinsman;* pl., *blood relations, kinsfolk.* (CONSANGUINITY)

cōn-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [scandō, *climb*], *mount, ascend; embark, go on board* a ship.

cōn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write; enroll.* (CONSCRIPT)

cōn-secrātus, -a, -um, [sacer], CONSECRATED, *holy, sacred.*

cōn-sector, -ārī, -ātus, [freq. of cōn-sequor], *pursue, overtake.*

cōn-secūtus, see **cōn-sequor.**

cōn-senēscō, -ere, -senuī, —, [senex], *grow old.*

cōn-sēnsiō, -ōnis, f., [cōn-sentiō], *common feeling, agreement, unity.*

cōn-sēnsus, -ūs, m., [cōn-sentiō], *agreement, unanimity;* CONSENT. (CONSENSUS)

cōn-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *think together, agree, unite; conspire, plot.*

cōn-senuī, see **cōn-senēscō.**

cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up; pursue, overtake; acquire, gain; accomplish; arise, ensue.* (CONSEQUENCE)

cōn-serō, -ere, -uī, -sertus, *connect; join.*

cōn-servātōrium, -ī, n., [servō, *keep*], *greenhouse.*

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *preserve, save, spare; keep, observe.* (CONSERVATION)

cōn-sīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *examine;* CONSIDER, *reflect upon.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., *Publius* CONSIDIUS, an officer in Caesar's army.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, [sedeō], *sit down; encamp; establish one's self, settle; hold a sitting.*

cōn-silium, -ī, n., [cōn-sulō], *consultation,* COUNSEL; *gathering for deliberation, council; advice; plan, purpose; conduct; judgment, discretion; consent.*

cōn-similis, -e, *very like, exactly like.*

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *stand, stop, halt; take a position, fall in, form, make a stand; stay, remain; sojourn, settle; endure, continue;* CONSIST (*in*), *depend* (*on*).

cōn-sobrīnus, -ī, m., [soror], COUSIN.

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus, [sōlor, *comfort*], *comfort, cheer,* CONSOLE.

cōn-spectus, -ūs, m., [cōn-spiciō], *sight; view.*

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *observe, catch sight of, see, perceive, notice;* pass., *be* CONSPICUOUS.

cōn-spicor, -ārī, -ātus, [-speciō, *look*], *get sight of, see.*

cōn-stāns, -antis, [cōn-stō], CONSTANT.

cōn-stantia, -ae, f., [cōn-stāns], *steadiness, courage; firmness, perseverance.* (CONSTANCY)

cōn-sternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātus, [sternō], *strew, cover; lay.*

cōn-stīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [stīpō, *press*], *crowd together.*

cōn-stitī, see **cōn-stō** and **cōn-sistō.**

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [statuō], *put, place; draw up, form; found, construct; make, establish; fix, appoint, determine, decide;* CONSTITUTE.

cōn-stō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, *agree; stand firm; depend on.* Impers., **cōn-stat,** *it is agreed;*

it is well known, certain, evident, clear.

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *accustom; accustom one's self, be accustomed.*

cōn-suētūdō, -inis, f., [suēscō], *custom, habit, mode of life, usage; practice.*

cōn-suētus, see **cōn-suēscō.**

cōn-sul, -ulis, m., [cōn-sulō], CONSUL, one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.

cōn-sulāris, -e, [cōnsul], CONSULAR, *of* CONSULAR *rank.* As noun, **cōnsulāris, -is,** m., *ex-*CONSUL.

cōn-sulātus, -ūs, m., [cōnsul], *consulship.*

cōn-sulō, -ere, -uī, -sultus, *take counsel,* CONSULT, *deliberate;* with dat., *have regard for, look out for.*

cōn-sultō, [cōn-sulō], adv., *on purpose, purposely.*

cōn-sultum, -ī, n., [cōn-sulō], *deliberation; resolution, decision, decree.* See **senātus.**

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, (use up), *devour,* CONSUME; *burn up, destroy;* pass., CONSUME; *spend.*

cōn-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus, *rise, stand up.*

con-tabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**tabula,** *board*], *board over; lay floors, build* (in stories), *build up.*

con-tagiō, -ōnis, f., [con-tingō], *contact.* (CONTAGION)

con-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover, cover up.*

con-temnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptus, *hold in* CONTEMPT, *disdain, despise, scorn.*

con-temptiō, -tiōnis, f., [con-temnō], CONTEMPT.

con-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *make effort, strive; demand; urge; hasten, push forward; struggle,* CONTEND, *vie; maintain, insist.*

con-tentiō, -ōnis, f., [**tendō**], *effort; struggle,* CONTENTION, *contest; controversy.*

con-tentus, -a, -um, [con-tineō], *satisfied,* CONTENT.

con-texō, -ere, -uī, -textus, *weave; make of wicker-work; join, construct.* (CONTEXT)

con-tinēns, -entis, [con-tineō], *bordering, adjacent; subsequent; continuous.* As noun, f., *the mainland.* (CONTINENT)

con-tinenter, [con-tinēns], adv., *constantly,* CONTINUALLY, *incessantly.*

con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold together,* CONTAIN; *hold; hold back, keep, shut in; embrace, include; curb, rule;* of places and regions, *hem in, bound;* **sē continēre,** *to remain.*

con-tingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, [**tangō**], *touch, be near, border on, reach; happen.* (CONTACT)

con-tinuō, [con-tinuus], adv., *forthwith, straightway, immediately.*

con-tinuus, -a, -um, [con-tineō], CONTINUOUS, *successive.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, f., [for **co-ventiō,** from **veniō**], *meeting, assembly; speech.*

cōntiōnor, -ārī, -ātus, [cōntiō], dep., *address an assembly, make a speech.*

contrā, [com-], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *opposite, on the other side, face to face; on the contrary.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *opposite, facing; off; contrary to; against, to the disadvantage of, in spite of; in reply to.* (CONTRARY)

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *bring together, assemble, collect; draw in,* CONTRACT, *make smaller.*

contrārius, -a, -um, [**contrā**], *opposite,* CONTRARY.

contrō-versia, -ae, f., [**contrā** + **vertō**], *dispute, debate,* CONTROVERSY, *strife.*

con-tulī, see **cōn-ferō.**

con-valēscō, -ere, -valuī, —, [incep. of **valeō**], *recover, grow strong.* (CONVALESCENT)

con-vallis, -is, f., VALLEY, *ravine.*

con-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *bring together, collect.*

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, assemble; meet,* CONVENE; *be fitting, belong; be agreed, be settled.* Impers., **convenit,** *it is agreed.*

con-ventus, -ūs, m., [**con-veniō**], *assembly, meeting.* **conventūs agere,** *to hold court.* (CONVENTION)

con-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn, direct, turn about, wheel about; change.* **conversa signa īnferre,** *to face about and advance.* (CONVERT)

con-vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victus, *conquer; establish;* CONVICT, *refute; prove.*

con-vīva, -ae, c., [**vīvō**], (table companion), *guest.*

con-vīvium, -ī, n., [**vīvō**], *feast, banquet, entertainment.* (CONVIVIAL)

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon,* CONVOKE.

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus, *arise, appear.*

cophinus, -ī, m., *basket.*

cōpia, -ae, f., [**com-** + **ops**], *quantity, supply, abundance, plenty.* Pl., **cōpiae, -ārum,** *means, resources, wealth; forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [**cōpia**], *well supplied, wealthy, rich.* (COPIOUS)

cor-, see **com-.**

cor, cordis, n., *heart.* (CORDIAL)

cōram, [**co-** + **ōs**], adv., *before, face to face, in person, with one's own eyes.*

Corinthus, -ī, f., CORINTH, a city of Greece.

Corinthius, -a, -um, [**Corinthus**], *of* or *belonging to* CORINTH, CORINTHIAN. As noun, **Corinthius, -ī,** m., *a* CORINTHIAN.

Coriolānus, -ī, m., [**Coriolī**], *C. Marcius* CORIOLANUS, who in response to his mother's appeal gave up his attack upon Rome.

Coriolī, -ōrum, m., CORIOLI, a town southeast of Rome.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., *the* CORIOSOLITES, a people along the northwest coast of Gaul.

Cornēlia, -ae, f., CORNELIA, daughter of Cinna and first wife of Caesar.

Cornēlius, -ī, m., CORNELIUS, name of a Roman *gens.*

corni-cen, -inis, m., [**cornū** + **canō**], *horn-blower.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn;* of an army, *wing.* (CORNU-copia)

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, wreath; continuous line.* **sub corōnā vēndere,** *to sell as slaves.* (CORONET)

corōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**corōna**], *wreathe, garland.*

corpus, -oris, n., *body.*

cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**regō**], *set* RIGHT, CORRECT, *discipline, improve; restore, calm.*

cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *destroy, ruin;* CORRUPT, *mislead, bribe.*

cor-ruptus, -a, -um, [**rumpō**], CORRUPT.

Corvīnus, -ī, m., [**corvus**], CORVINUS, who with the aid of a raven slew a Gallic champion in single combat.

corvus, -ī, m., *raven.*
coss., = **cōnsulibus.**
cotī-diānus, -a, -um, [**cotī-diē**], *daily; ordinary, usual.*
cotī-diē, [**quot**], adv., *daily, every day.*
Cotta, see **Aurunculeius.**
crassitūdō, -dinis, f., [**crassus,** *thick*], *thickness.*
Crassus, -ī, m., [**crassus,** *thick*], (1) *Marcus Licinius* CRASSUS, the triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. (2) *Publius Licinius* CRASSUS, younger son of the triumvir; lieutenant of Caesar, in Gaul, 58–56 B.C. (3) *Marcus Licinius* CRASSUS, elder son of the triumvir, quaestor in Caesar's army after his brother Publius left Gaul.
Crāstinus, -ī, m., CRASTINUS, a veteran centurion in Caesar's army.
crātēra, -ae, f., *mixing bowl.*
crātēs, -is, f., *wattle, wicker-work; hurdle, fagot; bundles of brush; fascine.*
crēber, -bra, -brum, *thick, frequent, numerous, repeated, abundant.*
crēbrō, [**crēber**], adv., *frequently.*
crēdibilis, -e, [**crēdō**], *credible.*
crēdō, -ere, -idī, -itus, *trust, believe, think, suppose; intrust, consign.* (CREDIT)
cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn, burn to death.* (CREMATE)
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, CREATE, *make; elect, appoint.*
Creon, -ontis, m., CREON, king of Corinth.
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, [incep. of **creō**], intrans., *grow, increase; become great.*
crīmen, -inis, n., [**cernō**], *accusation, charge;* CRIME, *offense.*
crīnis, -is, m., *hair, lock of hair.*
Critognātus, -ī, m., CRITOGNATUS, a prominent man among the Arverni.
Croesus, -ī, m., CROESUS, king of Lydia, famous for his riches.
cruciātus, -ūs, m., [**cruciō**], *torture, cruelty, suffering.* (EX-CRUCIATING)
cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**crux**], *torture, torment.*
crūdēlis, -e, CRUEL.
crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*
crux, crucis, f., *gallows, cross.* (CRUX)
cubiculāris, -e, [**cubiculum**], *of a sleeping chamber* or *bed-room.*
cubiculum, -ī, n., [**-cumbō,** *recline*], *sleeping-chamber, bedroom.*
cubīle, -is, n., [**cubō,** *lie down*], *bed, resting place.*
culīna, -ae, f., *kitchen.*
culpa, -ae, f., *fault, error; blame.* (CULPABLE)
culter, -trī, m., *knife.*
cultūra, -ae, f., [**colō**], CULTIVATION. (CULTURE) See **ager.**
cultus, -ūs, m., [**colō**], *care, cultivation; civilization, refinement,* CULTURE, *luxury; dress, attire.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with; along with; together with.*
cum, conj., temporal, *when; while, as long as, after; whenever, as often as;* causal, *since, inasmuch as;* adversative, *although.* **cum . . . tum,** *both . . . and, not only . . . but also, while . . . especially.* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.*
cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, *delay, hesitate.*
cūnctus, -a, -um, [**con-iūnctus**], *altogether; the whole, all.*
cupidē, [**cupidus**], adv., *eagerly, earnestly.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f., [**cupidus**], *eagerness, desire, ambition.* (CUPIDITY)

cupidus, -a, -um, [**cupiō**], *desirous, eager for, fond of.*

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *long for, desire; wish.*

cūr, [**quī** + **rēs**], inter. adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety, trouble.*

Curēs, -ium, f., CURES, a Sabine town.

cūria, -ae, f., CURIA, *association of families;* **cūria,** *the senate-house;* in Rome the senate usually met in the **Cūria Hostīlia,** built by Tullus HOSTILIUS.

Curiātius, -ī, m., CURIATIUS; pl., CURIATII, who fought with the Horatii.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**cūra**], *take care, provide for, take care of, arrange;* with gerundive, *see to.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *run.* (CURRENT)

currus, -ūs, m., [**currō**], *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs, m., [**currō**], *running,* COURSE; *speed.*

curūlis, -e, CURULE. **sella curūlis,** *the* CURULE *chair,* occupied only by the higher Roman magistrates.

curvus, -a, -um, *bent,* CURVED.

cuspis, -idis, f., *point.*

cūstōdia, -ae, f., [**cūstōs**], *guard, watch;* CUSTODY.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**cūstōs**], *watch, guard.*

Cursor, -ōris, [**currō**], m., CURSOR. See **Papīrius.**

cūstōs, -ōdis, c., *a guard, keeper, watch.*

Cynos-cephalae, -ārum, f., [Greek for 'Dog's-heads'], CYNOSCEPHALAE, hills in Thessaly, where Flamininus defeated Philip.

Cȳrus, -ī, m., CYRUS *the Great,* King of Persia.

Cyzicus, -ī, m., CYZICUS, an island and city on the Propontis (*Sea of Marmora*).

D

D., abbreviation for **Decimus.**

d., see **a. d.**

Dācī, -ōrum, m., *the* DACIANS, living north of the Danube.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn, sentence.*

Dānuvius, -ī, m., *the* DANUBE.

datīvus, -a, -um, [**dō**], *belonging to giving.* (DATIVE)

dator, -ōris, m., [**dō**], *giver, patron.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from; away from, out of; sprung from; from among; on account of, for, through, by; concerning, about, over; after, during, in the course of, in.*

dē-, in composition, *down; utterly.*

dē-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**habeō**], *owe, be in* DEBT, *be under obligation;* pass., *be due;* followed by infin., *ought, must, should.* (DEBIT)

dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go away, retire, withdraw; avoid, shun; die.*

decem, indecl., *ten.* (DECIMAL)

decem-virī, -ōrum, m., a board of *ten men* with consular power, DECEMVIRS.

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide; resolve, decree; intrust; contend, fight.*

dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight to a finish, fight a decisive battle.*

deciēs, [**decem**], adv., *ten times.*

decimus, -a, -um, [**decem**], *tenth.* (DECIMAL)

Decimus, -ī, m., [**decimus**], *Deci-*

mus, a Roman forename. See **Brūtus.**

Decius, -ī, m., DECIUS, a Roman forename.

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make* CLEAR, DECLARE, *announce.*

dē-clīvis, -e, [clīvus], *sloping, descending:* As noun, **dē-clīvia, -ium,** n., *slopes,* DECLIVITIES.

dē-clīvitās, -ātis, f., [dē-clīvis], DECLIVITY, *descent, slope.*

dē-crētum, -ī, n., [dē-cernō], DECREE, *decision.*

decumānus, -a, -um, [decimus], *of a tenth part,* DECUMAN. **decumāna porta,** *rear gate* of the Roman camp, opposite the **porta praetōria.**

decuria, -ae, f., [decem], DECURIA, *a cavalry squad* of ten men.

decuriō, -ōnis, m., [decem], DECURION, a cavalry officer in charge of a *decuria* (10 horsemen).

dē-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursus,** *run down, rush down, hasten.*

dē-decus, -oris, n., *dishonor, disgrace.*

dē-ditīcius, -a, -um, [dē-dō], *surrendered, subject.* As noun, **dē-ditīciī, -ōrum,** m., *prisoners of war, captives.*

dē-ditiō, -ōnis, f., [dē-dō], *surrender.*

dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender.*

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down; launch; lead away, withdraw; induce; bring, conduct; attend.* (DEDUCE)

dē-fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fatīgō, *weary*], *tire out, exhaust.* (FATIGUE)

dē-fectiō, -ōnis, f., [dē-ficiō], *desertion, revolt,* DEFECTION.

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *ward off, repel;* DEFEND, *guard, protect.*

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m., [dē-fendō], DEFENDER, *protector.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry down* or *off, remove; fall; deliver; confer upon, bestow; give, offer; report, submit.* (DEFER)

dē-fessus, -a, -um, *wearied, exhausted.* As noun, **dē-fessus, -ī,** m., *one exhausted;* pl., *the exhausted.*

dē-fetīscor, -ī, -fessus, [fatiscor], *become exhausted.*

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], *fail, be lacking; be exhausted; fall away, revolt, rebel.* (DEFICIENT)

dē-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *drive in.*

dē-fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, DEFINE, *fix; assign.*

dē-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, [fodiō, *dig*], *bury.*

dē-fōrmitās, -ātis, f., [fōrma], *ugliness, blemish, disfigurement.* (DEFORMITY)

dē-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee; avoid.*

dē-fungor, -ī, -fūnctus, *have done with, finish; die.* (DEFUNCT)

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw down, lay down; dislodge, rout; drive; kill, destroy; disappoint.* (DEJECTED)

dē-iectus, -ūs, m., [dē-iciō], *slope, declivity.*

de-in, see **de-inde.**

dein-ceps, [capiō], adv., *one after another, in succession; continuously.*

de-inde, or **de-in,** [dē], adv., *then, thereafter, afterwards, next.*

dē-lābor, -ī, -lāpsus, *slip down.*

dē-lātus, see **dē-ferō.**

dē-lectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, DELIGHT, *please.*

dē-lēctus, -a, -um, [dē-ligō], *picked, select, chosen.* As noun, **dē-lēctī, -ōrum,** m., (a group of) *picked men, advisory staff.*

dē-leō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *wipe out, erase; blot out, destroy, overthrow.* (DELETE)

dē-līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lībra, *balance*], *weigh, consider,* DELIBERATE.

dē-librō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [liber, *bark*], *remove the bark, peel.*

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [legō], *choose, pick out, se-*LECT.

dē-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind fast, tie, fasten.*

dē-litēscō, -ere, -lituī, —, [latēscō, incep. of **lateō**], *hide oneself, lie in wait.*

Dēlos, -ī, f., DELOS, a small island in the Aegean Sea, famous for its magnificent temple of Apollo.

Delphī, -ōrum, m., DELPHI, a city in Greece, famed for its oracle of Apollo.

Delphicus, -a, -um, [Delphī], DELPHIC, *of* DELPHI.

dē-lu-brum, -ī, n., [dē-luō], (place of washing away one's sins), *shrine.*

dē-luō, -ere, —, —, *wash away.*

Dēmarātus, -ī, m., DEMARATUS, the father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dē-metō, -ere, -messuī, -messus, *reap, cut.*

Dēmētrius, -ī, m., (1) DEMETRIUS, father of Philip V., king of Macedon. (2) DEMETRIUS, son of Philip V., king of Macedon.

dē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, MIGRATE, *depart, withdraw.*

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *lessen,* DIMINISH; *weaken, impair.*

dē-missus, -a, -um, [dē-mittō], *dropped; downcast, low.*

dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send down, let fall, drop; let down, lower.* **sē dēmittere,** *to go down, descend.*

dē-mō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, [dē + emō, *take*], *take down.*

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show; mention; explain,* DEMONSTRATE.

dēmum, adv., *at length, at last, finally.*

dēnique, adv., *at length, at last, finally.*

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.* (DENTIST)

dēnsus, -a, -um, *thick,* DENSE, *crowded.*

dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *an-*NOUNCE, *declare; threaten; urge, admonish; order.* (DENOUNCE)

dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out, ex-*PEL; *avert, remove.*

dē-pendeō, -ēre, —, —, *hang from,* DEPEND.

dē-pereō, -īre, -iī, -peritūrus, PERISH; *be lost.*

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *lay down, place; lay aside, give up, resign.* (DEPOSE)

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, ravage.* Part., **dēpopulātus,** pass., *devastated.* (DEPOPULATE)

dē-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry off; bring home; obtain.* (DEPORT)

dē-poscō, -ere, -poposcī, —, *demand.*

dē-precātor, -ōris, m., [dē-precor], *intercessor.* **eō dēprecātōre,** *by his intercession.*

dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus, *plead, pray, intercede.* (DEPRECATE)

dē-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *seize, catch; surprise.*

dē-rēctus, -a, -um, [dē-rigō, *lay straight*], *straight, perpendicular.* (DIRECT)

dē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch away, tear off.*

dē-rīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *draw off.* (DERIVE)

dē-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *withdraw, take away.* (DEROGATORY)

dē-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [scandō, *climb*], *climb down,* DESCEND, *march down; dismount;* DESCEND *to, resort to.*

dē-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *divide, distribute;* DESCRIBE, *define.*

dē-serō, -ere, -uī, -sertus, *leave, abandon,* DESERT.

dē-sertor, -ōris, m., [dē-serō], DESERTER.

dē-sertus, -a, -um, [dē-serō], DESERTED, *solitary; lonely.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *long for, want; ask, need; miss, lack, lose.* (DESIDERATUM)

dē-sidia, -ae, f., [sedeō], *indolence, idleness.*

dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [signō, *mark*], *point out, indicate,* DESIGNATE.

dē-siliō, -īre, -uī, -sultus, [saliō, *leap*], *leap down, dismount.* (DESULTORY)

dē-sinō, -ere, -siī, -situs, *cease.*

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *leave off, cease,* DESIST *from, give up.*

dē-spectus, -ūs, m., [-speciō, *look*], *view downward.*

dē-spērātiō, -ōnis, f., [dē-spērō], DESPERATION, DESPAIR.

dē-spērātus, -a, -um, [dē-spērō], *without hope,* DESPERATE, *abandoned.*

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *despair of, give up hope of; give up.*

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look down upon, look down; disdain; disparage.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make fast, bind, stay, assign, devote.* (DESTINATION)

dē-stitī, see **dē-sistō.**

dē-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [statuō], *desert, abandon, leave.* (DESTITUTE)

dē-strictārium, -ī, n., [dē-stringō], *scraping room.*

dē-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *strip off; scrape;* of a sword, *draw.*

dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fuī, dē-futūrus, *be away; be wanting, be lacking; fail, desert.*

dē-super, adv., *from above.*

dē-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *uncover, expose; reveal.* (DETECT)

dē-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsus, *unstretch;* of a tent, *strike.*

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off, prevent,* DETER.

dē-testābilis, -e, [testor], *abominable,* DETESTABLE.

dē-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [teneō], *hold off; hinder,* DETAIN.

dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw off, drag off, remove; take from; disparage,* DETRACT.

dē-trīmentum, -ī, n., [terō, *wear away*], *loss, damage, injury; repulse, defeat.* (DETRIMENT)

dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *drive off, dislodge.*

deus, -ī, m., *god,* DEITY.

dē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry away, remove, con-*VEY.

dē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come to, reach.*

dē-vexus, -a, -um, [dē-vehō], *sloping.* As noun, **dēvexa, -ōrum,** n., *slopes.*

dē-vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victus, *conquer, subdue.*

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, DEVOTE, *consecrate.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right; skilful.*

dextra, -ae, f., (sc. **manus**], *right hand.*

diadēma, -atis, n., DIADEM, *royal crown.*

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *de-*DICATE, *devote, offer.*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, talk, speak; tell, call, name; talk, appoint, set; plead; administer.* (DICTION)

dictātor, -ōris, m., [dictō], DICTATOR, a *chief* magistrate with unlimited powers, appointed in great emergencies to govern for six months.

dictātūra, -ae, f., [dictātor], *office of* DICTATOR, DICTATORSHIP.

dictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of dīcō], *say repeatedly,* DICTATE.

diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day; time.* **multō diē,** *late in the day.* **in diēs,** *day by day, every day.*

dif-ferō, -ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātus, [dis-], *spread, scatter; put off, delay;* DIFFER, *be different.*

dif-ficilis, -e, [dis- + facilis], *hard,* DIFFICULT; *troublesome.*

dif-ficilius, [comp. of difficulter], adv., *with greater* DIFFICULTY.

dif-ficultās, -ātis, f., [dif-ficilis], DIFFICULTY, *trouble, distress.*

dif-fīdō, -ere, -fīsus, [dis-], semi-dep., *distrust; despair of.*

dif-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [dis-], *pour out, spread out.* (DIFFUSE)

digitus, -ī, m., *finger.* (DIGIT)

dignitās, -ātis, f., [dignus], *worth, merit,* DIGNITY; *position, rank; grandeur, reputation, honor.*

dignor, -ārī, -ātus, [dignus], *deem worthy,* DEIGN, *condescend.*

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy, deserving.*

dī-iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *decide.*

dī-lēctus, -ūs, m., [dī-ligō], *levy, enlistment, draft.*

dī-ligēns, -entis, [dī-ligō], *industrious, attentive,* DILIGENT.

dī-ligenter, [dī-ligēns], adv., *industriously, carefully,* DILIGENTLY, *punctually.*

dī-ligentia, -ae, f., [dī-ligēns], *activity,* DILIGENCE, *industry.*

dī-ligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [legō], *single out; value, prize, love.*

dī-lūtus, -a, -um, [luō, *wash*], DILUTED, *weakened.*

dī-mētior, -īrī, -mēnsus, *measure, measure off;* of work, *lay out.* (DIMENSION)

dī-micātiō, -ōnis, f., [dī-micō], *fight; struggle; contest.*

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [micō, *shake*], *fight, contend, struggle.*

dī-midius, -a, -um, [dis- + medius], *half;* as noun, **dī-midium, -ī,** n., *half.*

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send apart;* DISMISS, *send off; let go, release, let slip, lose; throw away; abandon, leave.*

dī-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [dis-+ regō], DIRECT, *steer.*

dī-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [rapiō], *plunder, pillage.*

dī-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *overthrow, demolish, destroy.*

dīrus, -a, -um, *frightful, dreadful,* DIRE.

dis- or **dī-,** inseparable prefix, meaning *apart, in different directions; not, un-; utterly, entirely.*

Dīs, Dītis, m., DIS, god of the underworld; *Pluto.*

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *disperse; go away, depart, withdraw; remain; give up, resign.* **victor dis-cēdō,** *come off victorious.* **ab armīs discēdere,** *to lay down one's arms.*

dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *distinguish,* DISCERN.

disciplīna, -ae, f., [discipulus], *instruction, teaching, training, system, education; learning.* (DISCIPLINE)

discipulus, -ī, m., [discō], *scholar, pupil, follower.* (DISCIPLE)

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn; learn how.*

dis-crīmen, -inis, n., *crisis.* (DISCRIMINATION)

dis-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursus,** *run in different directions.* (DISCURSIVE)

dis-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, [quatiō, *beat*], *strike down, clear away.*

dis-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *drive apart, open; disperse, scatter; rout.*

dis-pār, -paris, *unequal.* (DISPARITY)

di-spergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersus, [spargō, *scatter*], *scatter,* DISPERSE.

dis-pliceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [placeō], DISPLEASE.

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place here and there, distribute; form, array, arrange; station, post; adjust,* DISPOSE.

dis-putātiō, -ōnis, f., [dis-putō], *discussion, debate,* DISPUTE. (DISPUTATION)

dis-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *weigh, examine, discuss; argue,* DISPUTE.

dis-sēnsiō, -ōnis, f., [dis- + sentiō], *disagreement,* DISSENSION.

dis-serō, -ere, —, —, [serō, *sow*], *plant at intervals.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *scatter, disperse.* (DISSIPATE)

dis-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *stretch out, spread apart.* (DISTEND)

dis-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [teneō], *keep apart, separate.*

di-stō, -stāre, —, —, *stand apart, be apart, be* DISTANT.

dis-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw apart; fall into disorder.* (DISTRACT)

dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *divide,* DISTRIBUTE, *apportion, assign.*

dītissimus, see **dīves.**

diū, comp., **diūtius,** sup., **diūtissimē,** adv., *long, for a long time.* **quam diū,** *as long as.*

diurnus, -a, -um, [diēs], *of the day, by day.* (DIURNAL)

diūtinus, -a, -um, [diū], *long-continued, lasting, long.*

diūturnitās, -ātis, f., [diūturnus, *long*], *long duration.*

dī-versus, -a, -um, [dī-vertō], *opposite; separate, apart; different.* (DIVERSE)

dī-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *separate.* (DIVERT)

dīves, -itis, comp., **dītior,** sup., **dītissimus,** *rich, wealthy.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., DIVICIACUS, an Aeduan of great influence, loyal to Caesar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix.

dī-vidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, [videō], *separate,* DIVIDE, *part; distribute, share.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, [dīvus], *of a god, godlike,* DIVINE; *prophetic.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, give up, grant; surrender; offer, furnish, allow; put.* **poenās dare,** *to suffer punishment.* **negōtium dare,** *to commission, direct.* **in fugam dare,** *to put to flight.* (DATA)

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *teach; inform; point out; show, tell.*

docilis, -e, [doceō], (easily taught), DOCILE.

doctor, -ōris, m., [doceō], *teacher, instructor.* (DOCTOR)

doctrīna, -ae, f., [**doceō**], *teaching, instruction; learning;* DOCTRINE.

documentum, -ī, n., [**doceō**], *lesson, warning.* (DOCUMENT)

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *suffer; be annoyed.*

dolor, -ōris, m., [**doleō**], *pain; grief, distress; annoyance.* (DOLOROUS)

dolus, -ī, m., *cunning, fraud, deceit.*

domesticus, -a, -um, [**domus**], *of the household;* DOMESTIC; *home, native, one's own; civil, internal.*

domina, -ae, f., [**domō**], *mistress.*

dominātiō, -ōnis, [**dominor**], f., *mastery, absolute power, despotism.* (DOMINATION)

dominus, -ī, m., [**domō**], *master.* (DOMINIE)

Domitius, -ī, m., (1) *L.* DOMITIUS *Ahenobarbus,* consul in 54 B.C. (2) *Cn.* DOMITIUS, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

domō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *subdue, master, conquer.* (*in-*DOMITABLE)

domus, -ūs, f., *house, dwelling, home.* Loc., **domī,** *at home.* Acc., **domum,** *homewards, home.*

dōnec, conj., *as long as, while; until.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dōnum**], *give, present, bestow; grant; endow.* (DONATION, DONOR)

dōnum, -ī, n., [**dō**], *gift, present, reward.*

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *sleep.* (DORMITORY)

dorsum, -ī, n., *back; range, ridge.* (DORSAL)

dōs, dōtis, f., [**dō**], DOWRY, DOWER.

dracō, -ōnis, m., DRAGON.

Druidēs, -um, m., DRUIDS, a Gallic priesthood.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f., [**dubitō**], *doubt, hesitation.* (DUBITATION)

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dubius**], *doubt; hesitate, delay; be uncertain.* (DUBITATIVE)

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertain; critical.* (DUBIOUS)

du-centī, -ae, -a, [**duo** + **centum**], *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, guide, conduct;* of a trench, *make; protract, prolong, put off; think, consider, reckon.* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *to marry.*

Duīlius, -ī, m., *C.* DUILIUS, who defeated the Carthaginians off Mylae in 260 B.C.

dulcis, -e, *sweet; agreeable, pleasant.* n. pl., **dulcia,** "*sweets,*" *sweet cakes.* (DULCET)

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until.*

dum modo, conj., *provided, if only.*

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., DUMNORIX, an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus, and son-in-law of Orgetorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar.

duo, -ae, -o, *two; both.* (DUAL)

duo-decim, [**decem**], indecl., *twelve.* (DUODECIMAL)

duo-decimus, -a, -um, [**duo-decim**], *twelfth.*

duo-dēnī, -ae, -a, [**duo-decim**], *twelve each.*

duo-dē-quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, *thirty-eighth.*

duo-dē-septuāgintā, indecl., *sixty-eight.*

duo-dē-vīgintī, indecl., *eighteen.*

du-plex, -icis, [**duo** + **plicō,** *fold*], *twofold, double.* (DUPLEX)

du-plicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**duplex**], *make double, double.* (DUPLICATE)

dūritia, -ae, f., [**dūrus**], *hardness; hardship; severe mode of life.*

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**dūrus**],

harden; last. (*en-*DURE, DURATION)

Dūrus, -ī, m., *Q. Laberius* DURUS, one of Caesar's military tribunes.

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard; harsh, severe, difficult; rough; cruel.*

dux, ducis, m., [dūcō], *leader; guide; commander, general.*

Dyrrachīnus, -a, -um, [Dyrrachium], *of* or *at* DYRRACHIUM.

Dyrrachium, -ī, n., DYRRACHIUM, a seaport on the west coast of Illyria.

E

ē, prep., see **ex.**

eā, [sc. viā], adv., *on that side, there; in that way.*

eburneus, -a, -um, [ebur, IVORY], *of* IVORY, IVORY.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., *the* EBURONES, a Belgic people north of the Treveri.

Eburovīcēs, -um, m., *the* EBUROVICES, a branch of the Aulerci.

ec-ce, interj., *behold! see! here is* or *are.*

Ecnomus, -ī, m., ECNOMUS, a town on the south coast of Sicily.

ec-quid, inter. adv., *at all.*

ē-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *proclaim, appoint.* (EDICT)

ē-dictum, -ī, n., [ē-dīcō], *proclamation.* (EDICT)

ē-discō, -ere, -didicī, —, *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ē-ditus, -a, -um, [ē-dō], *elevated, high; rising.*

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, EAT.

ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give forth, put forth, exhibit; publish, announce; perform, cause; inflict.* (EDIT)

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, draw out; draw up; bring up, rear.*

ē-ducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dux], *bring up, rear;* EDUCATE.

ef-fēmino, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + fēmina], *make* EFFEMINATE, *weaken, enervate.*

ef-ferō, -ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātus, [ex], *carry out; spread abroad, publish; raise, praise, extol;* ELATE.

ef-fervēscō, -ere, -ferbuī, —, [fervēscō, incep. of ferveō], *boil up,* EFFERVESCE.

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex + faciō], *work out; bring to pass;* EFFECT, *accomplish; make, cause, produce, render; build, construct.* (EFFICIENT)

ef-fingō, -ere, -fīnxī, -fictus, *fashion, form.*

ef-flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex], *earnestly request, insist.*

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, [ex], *flee; escape.*

ef-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [ex], *pour out; pour forth, spread; squander, waste.* (EFFUSIVE)

Ēgeria, -ae, f., EGERIA, a prophetic nymph, who was consulted by Numa.

egestās, -tātis, f., [egeō, *need*], *privation, need.*

ēgī, see **agō.**

ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.* (EGO)

ē-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [gradior, *step*], *go forth, leave;* from a ship, *land, disembark.*

ē-gregiē, [ē-gregius], adv., *excellently, admirably, splendidly, remarkably.*

ē-gregius, -a, -um, [grex, *herd, crowd*], *eminent, distinguished, remarkable, excellent.* (EGREGIOUS)

ē-gressus, -ūs, m., [ē-gredior], *landing-place.* (EGRESS)

ēheu, interj., *alas!*

ē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *cast out; cast up; drive out, expel.* **sē ēicere,** *rush out.*

ē-lābor, -ī, ēlāpsus, *slip away; escape.* (ELAPSE)

ē-lātus, see **ef-ferō.**

ē-lēctus, -a, -um, [ē-ligō, *pick out*], *chosen, picked.* (ELECT)

elephantus, -ī, m., ELEPHANT.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, m., *the* ELEUTETI, a people of central Gaul.

ē-liciō, -ere, -uī, -itus, [laciō, *entice*], *draw out, entice.* (ELICIT)

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *stand out, project; be prominent, be conspicuous.* (EMINENT)

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send forth; drive, hurl, discharge; let loose, set free; let go, drop.* (EMIT)

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy, purchase; acquire, obtain; take.*

enim, [nam], postpositive conj., *for, for in fact.* **neque enim,** *and (with good reason) for . . . not, for in fact . . . not.*

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *speak out; disclose, reveal, report.* (ENUNCIATE)

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** *go, ride, march, move, pass, advance.*

eō, [is], adv., *on this account; to that place, thither; to that degree, so far;* with comp., *the;* **eō magis,** *the more.*

eōdem, [īdem], adv., *to the same place.*

epigramma, -atis, n., EPIGRAM.

Ēpīrus, -ī, m., EPIRUS, a country northwest of Greece, on the eastern shore of the Adriatic Sea.

epistula, -ae, f., *letter,* EPISTLE.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., EPOREDORIX, a prominent Aeduan.

epulae, -ārum, f., (viands), *feast, banquet.*

eques, -itis, m., [equus], *horseman; cavalryman;* (pl. *cavalry*); *Knight,* member of the wealthy *Equestrian Order,* ranking between the *Senatorial Order* and the *Plebs.*

equester, -tris, -tre, [eques], *of a horseman,* EQUESTRIAN; *of cavalry, cavalry; of the Knights.*

e-quidem, adv., *truly, indeed; for my part.*

equitātus, -ūs, m., [equitō], *cavalry.*

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [eques], *ride.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse, steed.* (EQUINE)

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., ERATOSTHENES, a Greek of the third century B.C., librarian of the great library at Alexandria in Egypt, and famous as a geographer, mathematician, historian, and grammarian.

ē-rēctus, -a, -um, [ē-rigō], *raised, elevated, high;* ERECT.

ergastulum, -ī, n., *dungeon;* pl., *barracks.*

ergō, adv., *consequently, therefore.*

Ēridanus, -ī, m., ERIDANUS, mythical name of the **Padus,** the river *Po.*

ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [regō], *raise,* ERECT.

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch away, take away, remove; deprive; rescue, save.* **sē ēripere,** *to rescue oneself, make one's escape.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander; be in* ERROR, *be mistaken,* ERR.

error, -ōris, m., [errō], *wandering;* ERROR, *mistake.*

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break out, burst forth.* (ERUPT)

ē-ruptiō, -ōnis, f., [ē-rumpō], *sortie; rush.* (ERUPTION)

essedārius, -ī, m., [essedum], *chariot-fighter, charioteer.*

essedum, -ī, n., (two-wheeled) *war-chariot.*

es-tō, [fut. imperative, 3d sing. of sum], *shall be.*

et, (1) conj., *and.* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.* (2) adv., *also, too, even.*

et-iam, adv. and conj., *and also, also, even.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

Etrūria, -ae, f., ETRURIA, a country northwest of Rome.

Etrūscus, -a, -um, ETRUSCAN, *of* ETRURIA.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., *the* ETRUSCANS, *inhabitants of* ETRURIA.

et-sī, conj., *although, even if.*

Eurīpidēs, -is, m., EURIPIDES, a famous tragic poet of Athens.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., EUROPE.

ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *go forth; get away, escape,* EVADE.

ē-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, *pull out.*

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come out; turn out, happen.*

ē-ventus, -ūs, m., [ē-veniō], *outcome, issue, result; chance, fortune; fate, accident.* (EVENT)

ē-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *overturn; destroy, ruin.*

ē-vocātus, -ī, m., [ē-vocō], *veteran volunteer,* one who reënlisted after serving for twenty years.

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call forth, summon,* EVOKE.

ē-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly away, fly up.*

ex, (often before consonants **ē**), prep. with abl., *out of, of; from, down from; since, after; by reason of, by, because of, in consequence of; according to, with, in, on.* **ex ūnā parte,** *on one side.*

In composition **ex-** becomes **ef-** before **f, ē-** before **b, d, g, i** consonant, **l, m, n,** and **v.**

ex-āctus, see **ex-igō.**

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [exāmen, *tongue of a balance*], *weigh,* EXAMINE.

ex-animō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [anima, *breath*], *put out of breath, deprive of life, kill.* Pass., *be exhausted, be out of breath.*

ex-ārdēscō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsus, [incep. of ārdeō], *blaze out; break out; be provoked, rage.*

ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear clearly, distinguish; discern, hear* (from afar).

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go out, go forth, depart, withdraw, leave; go beyond, surpass,* EXCEDE.

ex-cellēns, -entis, [ex-cellō], *distinguished,* EXCELLENT.

ex-cellō, -ere, —, -celsus, *be eminent,* EXCEL.

ex-celsus, -a, -um, [ex-cellō], *lofty, high.*

ex-cidium, -ī, n., [cadō], *overthrow; fall, ruin, destruction.*

ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], *take out; take up; receive; withstand, ward off; capture, take; encounter; succeed, follow, relieve.* (EXCEPT)

ex-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of ex-cieō, *arouse*], *call forth; arouse, stir,* EXCITE; *erect.*

ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, cry aloud,* EXCLAIM.

ex-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**claudō**], *shut out,* EXCLUDE; *hinder, prevent.*

ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *torture.* (EXCRUCIATING)

ex-cubitor, -ōris, m., [**cubō,** *lie down*], *sentinel.*

ex-culcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**calcō,** *trample*], *trample down.*

ex-cursus, -ūs, m., [**currō**], *running forth, onset, charge.* (EXCURSUS)

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**causa**], *excuse, make excuse for.*

ex-emplum, -ī, n., [**ex-imō**], *specimen, copy,* EXAMPLE, *precedent.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out, go forth; march out; withdraw, leave; pass away, perish; turn out, result.* (EXIT)

ex-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**arceō**], EXERCISE, *employ, drill, train, discipline; administer; enforce.*

ex-ercitātiō, -ōnis, f., [**ex-ercitō,** freq. of **ex-erceō**], *exercise, training, discipline.*

ex-ercitātus, -a, -um, [**ex-ercitō,** freq. of **ex-erceō**], *exercised, trained, disciplined.*

ex-ercitus, -ūs, m., [**ex-erceō**], (disciplined body of men), *army.*

ex-hauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, (draw out), *empty,* EXHAUST; *take out, carry; impoverish.*

ex-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**agō**], *drive out, expel.* (EXACT)

ex-iguē, [**ex-iguus**], adv., *scantily, barely, hardly.*

ex-iguitās, -ātis, f., [**ex-iguus**], *smallness; small number, fewness; shortness.*

ex-iguus, -a, -um, [**ex-igō**], *scanty, small, little, short, brief.*

ex-imius, -a, -um, [**ex-imō**], *select; excellent, remarkable, extraordinary.*

ex-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**emō**], *take out, remove; free.*

ex-īstimātiō, -ōnis, f., [**ex-īstimō**], *opinion, judgment; reputation.*

ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**aestimō**], *value,* ESTIMATE; *suppose, think, regard.*

ex-itium, -ī, n., [**eō**], *destruction, ruin; death.*

ex-itus, -ūs, m., [**eō**], *end, mouth* (of river); *departure; conclusion, result; end of life, death.* (EXIT)

ex-orior, -īrī, -ortus, *come forth, rise; begin.*

ex-pediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**pēs**], *disengage, loose, extricate, set free; prepare, obtain, procure; be* EXPEDIENT. (EXPEDITE)

ex-pedītiō, -ōnis, f., *rapid march,* EXPEDITION.

ex-pedītus, -a, -um, [**ex-pediō**], *unencumbered, without baggage; light-armed; ready, easy, convenient, free.* As noun, **ex-pedītus, -ī,** m., *light-armed soldier.*

ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out, remove,* EXPEL.

ex-perior, -īrī, -pertus, *try, prove, test;* EXPERIENCE; *find; try, attempt.* (EXPERIMENT)

ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**piō,** *appease*], EXPIATE, *atone for.*

ex-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, com-*PLETE; *make good.*

ex-plicō, -āre, -plicāvī or **-plicuī, -plicātus** or **-plicitus,** [**plicō,** *fold*], *unfold; extend, deploy; set forth, explain.* (EXPLICIT)

ex-plōrātor, -ōris, m., [**ex-plōrō**], *spy, scout.* (EXPLORATION)

ex-plōrātus, -a, -um, [**ex-plōrō**], *established, certain, sure.*

ex-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *search out,* EXPLORE; *spy out, reconnoitre; test; gain, secure.*

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, array, exhibit; set on land, disembark;* EXPOSE; *set forth, relate, explain.*

ex-poscō, -ere, -poposcī, —, *request, demand.*

ex-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, [premō], PRESS *out, force out;* EXPRESS.

ex-pugnātiō, -ōnis, f., [ex-pugnō], *storming; assault.*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by assault, storm, capture; overcome, win over.*

ex-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [quaerō], *seek out, search out; hunt up; ask for, inquire into.* (EXQUISITE)

ex-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up, maintain, enforce.* (EXECUTE)

ex-silium, -ī, n., [ex-sul], EXILE.

ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *come forth; stand out, project; arise, become;* EXIST, *be.*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look out for, await; look to see,* EXPECT.

ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spīrō, *breathe*], *breathe out, exhale;* EXPIRE.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, *put out,* EXTINGUISH; *blot out, kill, destroy.*

ex-stitī, see **ex-sistō.**

ex-stō, -stāre, —, —, *stand forth; exist; be* EXTANT.

ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *pile up, heap up, build, con-*STRUCT.

ex-sul, -is, m., EXILE.

exta, -ōrum, n., (internal organs of the body), *entrails.*

ex-ter or **ex-terus, -a, -um,** [ex], *outward, outer.* Comp., **exterior, -ius,** *outer,* EXTERIOR. Sup., **ex-trēmus** or **ex-timus,** *farthest, last, last part of, at the end;* EXTREME, *uttermost.* As noun, **extrēmī, -ōrum,** m., *the last, the rear.*

exterior, see **exter.**

ex-ternus, -a, -um, [ex-ter], *outward,* EXTERNAL; *foreign.*

ex-trā, [ex-ter], prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond, without.* (EXTRA)

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw out; protract, prolong.* (EXTRACT)

extrēmus, see **ex-ter.**

ex-uō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *draw out, pull off; undress; strip, dèspoil.*

ex-ūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ūstus, *burn up.*

F

faber, fabrī, m., *workman,* MECHANIC, *artisan.*

Fabius, -ī, m., (1) *Q.* FABIUS *Rullianus,* master of the horse in the Second Samnite war. (2) *Q.* FABIUS *Maximus,* called '**Cunctātor,** the Delayer,' because of his policy of delay against Hannibal. (3) *C.* FABIUS, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Fabricius, -ī, m., *C.* FABRICIUS *Luscinus,* who was admired by Pyrrhus for his integrity.

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [faber], *build, construct.* (FABRICATE)

fābula, -ae, f., [fārī, *to speak*], *story;* FABLE.

facile, [facilis], adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, -e, [faciō], *easy; slight, little.* (FACILE)

facillimus, -a, -um, [sup. of facilis], *very easy.*

facinus, -oris, n., [faciō], *action, deed; misdeed, crime.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make; do, perform, accomplish, form;*

bring about, cause; obtain; incur, suffer; act; choose, appoint; grant, furnish, give. See **fīō.** **certiōrem facere,** *to inform.* **iter facere,** *to march.* **vim facere,** *to use violence.* **imperāta facere,** *to obey commands.*

factiō, -ōnis, f., [**faciō**], *party, political party,* FACTION.

factum, -ī, n., [**faciō**], *deed, action, achievement.* (FACT)

facultās, -ātis, f., [**facilis**], *ability, capability; opportunity, chance; abundance, supply;* pl., *resources.* (FACULTY)

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech tree, beech.*

Falēriī, -ōrum, m., FALERII, an Etruscan city north of Rome.

Falernus, -a, -um, [**Falēriī**], FALERNIAN; **Falernum** (*sc.* **vīnum**), **-ī,** n., *Falernian wine.*

Faliscus, -ī, m., [**Falēriī**], *an inhabitant of* FALERII, *a* FALISCAN.

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, cheat; escape notice; fail, disappoint.* (FALLACIOUS)

falsus, -a, -um, [**fallō**], *feigned,* FALSE.

falx, falcis, f., *sickle;* (sickle-shaped) *hook;* large *hooks* for tearing down walls.

fāma, -ae, f., [**fārī,** *to speak*], *report, rumor, tradition;* FAME, *reputation.*

famēs, -is, (abl., **famē**), f., *hunger;* FAMINE, *want.*

familia, -ae, f., [**famulus,** *servant*], *body of slaves* in one household, *family servants; household,* FAMILY; including the whole body of serfs and retainers under the authority of a nobleman, *retinue.* **mātrēs familiae,** *matrons.*

familiāris, -e, [**familia**], *of the* FAMILY *or household;* FAMILIAR, *intimate.* **rēs familiāris,** *private property, estate.* As noun, **familiāris, -is,** m., *friend, intimate acquaintance.*

familiāritās, -ātis, f., [**familiāris**], FAMILIARITY, *intimacy, friendship.*

fāmōsus, -a, -um, [**fāma**], FAMOUS.

famula, -ae, f., [**famulus,** *servant*], *maid-servant, handmaid.*

farreus, -a, -um, [**far,** *spelt*], (made of) *spelt.*

fās, (only nom. and acc. sing. in use), n., [**fārī,** *to speak*], indecl., *right, allowable, lawful,* according to the laws of God and nature.

fascis, -is, m., *bundle, fagot;* pl., *the* FASCES, a bundle of rods tied about an ax, a symbol of authority.

fāstī, -ōrum, m., [**fāstī diēs,** *court days*], *calendar.*

fastīgium, -ī, n., *peak, summit, top; slope, descent, declivity.*

fātālis, -e, [**fātum**], FATED; FATAL; *deadly, destructive.*

fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *weary,* FATIGUE.

fātum, -ī, n., [**fārī,** *to speak*], FATE, *destiny.*

faucēs, -ium, f., *jaws, throat; narrow way, pass; narrow passage.*

Faustulus, -ī, m., FAUSTULUS, a shepherd.

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, FAVOR, *be propitious.*

favor, -ōris, m., [**faveō**], FAVOR, *good-will, applause.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

febris, -is, f., FEVER, *ague.*

fēlīciter, [**fēlīx**], adv., *luckily, happily; successfully;* **fēlīciter dīcō,** *offer congratulations.*

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman; female.* (FEMININE)

femur, -oris or **-inis,** n., *thigh.*

fera, -ae, f., [**ferus,** *wild*], *wild beast, wild animal.*

ferculum, -ī, n., [**ferō**], *dish,* (dinner) *course.*

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly;* with words denoting time, *about; for the most part, usually, generally, as a rule.*

fēriae, -ārum, f., *holidays.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, bring, offer; lead, drive; impel, urge; bring forth, produce; withstand, sustain, endure, suffer; obtain, receive; assert, report, say.* **signa ferre,** *to advance.* **lēgem ferre,** *to pass a law.*

ferrāmentum, -ī, n., [**ferrum**], *tool* of iron.

ferreus, -a, -um, [**ferrum**], *made of iron, iron.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron; sword.*

fertilis, -e, [**ferō**], FERTILE.

ferula, -ae, f., *stick, rod.* (FERULE)

ferve-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [**ferveō**], *make hot, heat, heat red-hot.*

fervēns, -entis, [**ferveō**], *red-hot.* (FERVENT)

ferveō, -ēre, —, —, *be hot.* (FERVID)

fervidus, -a, -um, [**ferveō**], *glowing.* (FERVID)

fēstum, -ī, n., [**fēstus**], *holiday,* FESTIVAL.

fēstus, -a, -um, FESTAL.

fictilis, -e, [**fingō**], *of clay* or *pottery, earthen.*

fidēlis, -e, [**fidēs**], *faithful, trustworthy.* (FIDELITY)

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, belief; good faith, loyalty; pledge, promise; credit; confidence, trust; protection, alliance.*

fīdūcia, -ae, f., [**fīdus**], *trust, confidence, reliance, assurance.*

fīdus, -a, -um, [**fīdō,** *trust*], *faithful, trusty.*

fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, *fasten,* FIX.

figūra, -ae, f., [**fingō**], *shape, form,* FIGURE.

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*

fīliola, -ae, f., [**fīlia**], *little daughter.*

fīliolus, -ī, m., [**fīlius**], *little son.*

fīlius, -ī, (voc. sing. **fīlī**), m., *son.* (FILIAL)

fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictus, *form, shape; conceive, imagine; invent, devise.* (FICTION)

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**fīnis**], *limit, bound, define; end;* FINISH.

fīnis, -is, m., *limit, boundary, end, extent.* Pl., *con-*FINES, *territory, country.* (FINIS)

fīnitimus, -a, -um, [**fīnis**], *bordering on, neighboring, adjoining.* As noun, **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** m., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus, (pass. of **faciō**), *be made, be done; become, happen; come about, come to pass.* **certior fierī,** *to be informed.*

fīrmē, [**fīrmus**], adv., FIRMLY, *strongly.*

fīrmiter, [**fīrmus**], adv., *solidly,* FIRMLY.

fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong,* FIRM; *steadfast, powerful.*

flagellum, -ī, n., *whip, scourge.* (FLAGELLATION)

flāgitiōsus, -a, -um, [**flāgitium,** *disgrace*], *shameful, disgraceful.*

flāmen, -inis, m., *priest,* FLAMEN.

Flāminīnus, -ī, m., (1) *T. Quinctius* FLAMININUS, who was sent against the Gauls in 360 B.C. (2) *T. Quinctius* FLAMININUS, the conqueror of Philip, king of Macedon, in 197 B.C.

Flāminius, -ī, m., [**flāmen**], *C.* FLAMINIUS, defeated and slain at Trasumenus.

flamma, -ae, f., *blaze,* FLAME.
flammeum, -ī, n., [**flamma**], (a FLAME-colored) *veil.*
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn; persuade, influence.* (FLEXIBLE)
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep.*
flētus, -ūs, m., [**fleō**], *weeping.*
flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, [**flōs**], FLOURISH, *be prosperous.*
flōs, flōris, m., FLOWER. (FLORIST)
flūctus, -ūs, m., [**fluō**], *flood, wave.* (FLUCTUATE)
flūmen, -inis, n., [**fluō**], *stream, river.*
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus, FLOW. (FLUENT)
fluvius, -ī, m., [**fluō**], *river, stream.*
focus, -ī, m., *fireplace, hearth.* (FOCUS)
fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, *dig.*
foedus, -eris, n., *treaty; agreement.*
follis, -is, m., (a large leather) *hand-ball.*
fōns, fontis, m., *spring,* FOUNTAIN; *source.*
foras, (acc. place whither), adv., *out of* DOORS.
fore = **futūrus esse.**
forem = essem.
foris, (abl. place where), adv., *out of* DOORS.
fōrma, -ae, f., FORM, *figure, appearance; beauty.*
fors, fortis, f., *chance, luck, accident.*
forte, [abl. of **fors**], adv., *by chance; perchance, perhaps.*
fortis, -e, *strong; brave, valiant.*
fortiter, [**fortis**], adv., *bravely, boldly.*
fortitūdō, -inis, f., [**fortis**], *strength, courage, bravery.* (FORTITUDE)
fortūna, -ae, f., [**fors**], *chance, luck,* FORTUNE; *lot, rank, circumstances; possessions; good fortune; ill fortune;* personified, *the goddess Fortune.*
forum, -ī, n., *market-place;* **Forum (Rōmānum),** *the* FORUM in Rome.
fossa, -ae, f., [**fodiō**], *ditch, trench, intrenchment.* (FOSSE)
fovea, -ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*
fragmentum, -ī, n., [**frangō**], FRAGMENT.
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, break down, dishearten, subdue, overcome.* (FRACTURE)
frāter, -tris, m., BROTHER. (FRATERNITY)
frāternus, -a, -um, [**frāter**], *of a brother, brotherly.* (FRATERNAL)
fremitus, -ūs, m., [**fremō,** *roar*], *roaring, shouting; roar, noise, din.*
frīgidārium, -ī, n., [**frīgidus**], *cold room* in a Roman bath.
frīgidus, -a, -um, *cold, cool.* (FRIGID)
frīgus, -oris, n., *cold, cold weather.* Pl., *cold spells; cold season.*
frōns, frontis, f., *forehead;* FRONT.
frūctus, -ūs, m., [**fruor**], *enjoyment;* FRUIT; *profit; income.*
frūgēs, -um, f., *produce, crops, products of the soil, fruits.* (FRUGAL)
frūmentārius, -a, -um, [**frūmentum**], *having to do with grain* or *supplies; grain-producing.* **rēs frūmentāria,** *supply of grain, supplies.*
frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, [**frūmentum**], *get grain, forage.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., [**fruor**], *grain, standing grain.* Pl. often, *grain crops.*
fruor, -ī, frūctus, *enjoy.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
Fūfetius, -ī, m., *Mettius* FUFETIUS, who was killed by Tullus Hostilius on account of treachery.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.* **in fugam dare,** *to put to flight, rout.*

fugiēns, -entis, [fugiō], *fleeing.* As noun, m., *a fugitive.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *run away, flee, make off, flee from; escape.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um, [fugiō], *fleeing.* As noun, **fugitīvus, -ī,** m., *runaway,* FUGITIVE.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fuga], *put to flight, rout.*

fulmen, -inis, n., [fulgeō], *lightning flash, thunderbolt.* (FULMINATE)

fūmō, -āre, —, —, [fūmus], *smoke.* (FUMES)

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.* (FUME)

fūnāle, -is, n., [fūnis], *torch.*

funda, -ae, f., [fundō], *sling.*

funditor, -ōris, m., [funda], *slinger.*

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour; scatter, rout.* (*con*-FUSE)

fūnebris, -e, [fūnus], FUNERAL. As noun, **fūnebria, -ium,** n., FUNERAL *rites.*

fūnestus, -a, -um, [fūnus], *deadly, destructive, fatal.*

fungor, -ī, fūnctus, *be engaged in, perform, finish; do, administer.* (FUNCTION)

fūnis, fūnis, m., *rope; cable;* pl., *halyards.*

funus, -eris, n., FUNERAL.

Furculae, -ārum, [furcula, dim. of furca, FORK], **Furculae Caudīnae,** the CAUDINE FORKS, a narrow pass in the mountains near Caudium, a town in Samnium.

Fūrius, see **Camillus.**

furō, -ere, —, —, *rage, rave.* (FURY)

furor, -ōris, m., [furō], *rage, madness,* FURY. (FUROR)

furtum, -ī, n., [fūr, *thief*], *theft.*

fūsilis, -e, [fundō], *molded.* (FUSILE)

fūsus, -a, -um, [fundō], (spread out), *broad, flowing.* (dif-FUSE)

futūrus, -a, -um, [fut. part. of **sum**], *about to be;* as adj., *coming,* FUTURE.

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, m., *the* GABALI, a people in Southern Gaul.

Gabīnius, -ī, m., *Aulus* GABINIUS, consul with *L.* Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

Gādēs, -ium, f., GADES, a city on the south coast of Spain (modern *Cadiz*).

Gaia, -ae, f., GAIA, feminine form of **Gaius.**

Gaius, (abbreviated **C.**), **-ī,** m., GAIUS, a Roman forename.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, -ae, f., GAUL.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallus], *of* GAUL, GALLIC.

gallīna, -ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, -a, -um, GALLIC. As noun, m., *a* GAUL; pl., **Gallī, -ōrum,** GAULS.

Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garonne,* a large river in southwestern France.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus, semi-dep., *be glad, rejoice.*

gaudium, -ī, n., [gaudeō], *joy, gladness.*

gāvīsus, see **gaudeō.**

Geidumnī, -ōrum, m., *the* GEIDUMNI, a Belgic people near the Nervii.

geminus, -a, -um, *twin.*

Genava, -ae, f., GENEVA, a city of the Allobroges, on the **lacus Lemannus.**

gener, -ī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, [genus], adv., *by peoples, by tribes, nation by nation.*

genitus, see **gignō.**

gēns, gentis, f., *clan,* GENS; *tribe, people, nation.*

genuī, see **gignō.**

genū, -ūs, n., KNEE.

genus, -eris, n., *race, birth; kind, class, rank; mode, method, nature; sort, style.* (GENUS)

Germānī, -ōrum, m., *the* GERMANS.

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *bear, carry; manage, transact, do, carry on; wear; perform, accomplish; complete;* of an office, *fill;* of war, *wage.* **sē gerere,** *to act, behave.* **rēs gestae,** *exploits, deeds.*

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **gerō**], *bear, carry, wield; wear.*

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, *give birth to;* pass., *be born.* (PROGENITOR)

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.* (GLADIATOR)

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; bullet* thrown from a sling.

globulus, -ī, m., [**globus**], GLOBULE.

globus, -ī, m., *ball,* GLOBE.

Glaucē, -ēs, (acc. **-ēn**), f., GLAUCE, daughter of Creon, king of Corinth.

glōria, -ae, f., GLORY, *fame.*

glōriōsus, -a, -um, [**glōria**], GLORIOUS, *famous; honorable.*

Gnaeus, (abbreviated **Cn.**), **-ī,** m., GNAEUS, a Roman forename.

gradus, -ūs, m., *step; station, position;* pl., *steps, stairs.* (GRADE)

Graecia, -ae, f., GREECE; **Magna Graecia,** Southern Italy, so called because it was colonized by Greeks.

Graecus, -a, -um, [**Graecia**], GRECIAN, GREEK. As noun, **Graecus, -ī,** m., *a* GREEK.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m., *the* GRAIOCELI, a Gallic people in the Alps.

grammaticus, -ī, m., GRAMMARIAN. (GRAMMATICAL)

grandis, -e, *large, great.* (GRAND)

grānulum, -ī, n., [**grānum**], GRANULE.

grānum, -ī, n., GRAIN.

graphium, -ī, n., **stylus,** a sharp-pointed iron or bronze instrument, used for writing on wax tablets.

grātia, -ae, f., [**grātus**], *favor, grace,* GRATITUDE, *regard, credit, friendship; influence.* Pl., **grātiae, -ārum,** *thanks.* **grātiā,** with preceding gen., *for the sake.* **grātiam habēre,** *to feel gratitude.* **grātiās agere,** *give thanks, to thank.* **grātiam referre,** *to requite.*

grātitūdō, -inis, f., [**grātus**], GRATITUDE.

grātuītus, -a, -um, [**grātiā**], (without pay), *free,* GRATUITOUS.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., [**grātulor,** *con-*GRATULATE], *rejoicing, con-*GRATULATION.

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, acceptable; thankful,* GRATEFUL. **grātum facere,** *to do a favor.*

gravis, -e, *heavy; severe, serious, difficult; disagreeable, irksome; strong, great; of weight, of authority.* (GRAVE) **graviōre aetāte,** *of greater age.*

gravitās, -ātis, f., [**gravis**], *weight; importance, dignity, influence.* (GRAVITY)

graviter, [**gravis**], adv., *heavily; severely, bitterly; seriously, with displeasure.* **graviter ferre,** *to be annoyed.*

grex, gregis, m., *flock, herd.*

Grudiī, -ōrum, m., *the* GRUDII, a Belgic people near the Nervians.

gubernātor, -ōris, [**gubernō,** *steer*], m., *helmsman.* (GUBERNATORIAL)

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

gustus, -ūs, m., *appetizer.* (DISGUST)

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, possess, keep; regard, consider, think; reckon, render.* **cēnsum habēre,** *to take a census.* **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *to make a speech.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **habeō**], *dwell, reside; live,* INHABIT.

Hamilcar, -aris, m., HAMILCAR, father of Hannibal.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook; spike.*

Hannibal, -alis, m., HANNIBAL, the famous Carthaginian general.

Hannō, -ōnis, m., HANNO, a Carthaginian general.

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *grappling-iron; grappling-hook,* a pole with an iron hook on the end.

Harpȳia, -ae, f., *Harpy,* half bird and half woman.

Harūdēs, -um, m., *the* HARUDES, a German people between the Danube and the upper Rhine.

haru-spex, -icis, m., [**-speciō,** *look*], *soothsayer.*

Hasdrubal, -alis, m., HASDRUBAL, (1) brother of Hannibal. (2) general in command during the siege of Carthage.

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

haud, adv., *not, not at all, by no means.*

hedera, -ae, f., *ivy.*

Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *the* HELVETIANS.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *of the* HELVETII, HELVETIAN.

herba, -ae, f., HERB; *grass.*

Herculēs, -is, m., HERCULES, a hero of great strength.

Hercynius, -a, -um, HERCYNIAN, a name applied to a great forest in southern Germany.

hērēditās, -ātis, f., [**hērēs**], *inheritance.* (HEREDITY)

Hērennius, -ī, m., HERENNIUS, father of Pontius, the Samnite general.

heus! interj., *halloo!*

Hibernia, -ae, f., HIBERNIA; *Ireland.*

hīberna, -ōrum, (sc. **castra**), n., *winter quarters.*

hic, haec, hoc, gen. **huius,** *this, the following; he, she, it.*

hīc, [**hic**], adv., *here, at this place; at this point.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**hiems**], *pass the winter, winter.*

Hiempsal, -is, m., HIEMPSAL, a Numidian prince, who was slain by Jugurtha.

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter; wintry storm, stormy weather.*

Hierō, -ōnis, m., HIERO, king of Syracuse during the First Punic war.

hinc, [**hic**], adv., *from this place, from here; hence, on this account, from this; henceforth; next, afterwards.* **hinc . . . hinc,** *on this side . . . on that.*

Hispānī, -ōrum, m., *the* SPANIARDS.

Hispānia, -ae, f., SPAIN.

Hispāniēnsis, -e, [**Hispānia**], *of* SPAIN, SPANISH.

ho-diē, [**hōc** + **diē**], adv., *to-day.*

Homērus, -ī, m., HOMER, the celebrated Greek poet.

homō, hominis, c., *human being, man.*

honestās, -ātis, f., [**honor**], HONOR, *reputation; uprightness, integrity.* (HONESTY)

honestus, -a, -um, [**honor**], HONORABLE, *upright, noble.* (HONEST)

honōri-ficē, [**honōri-ficus**], adv., HONOR-*ably, with* HONOR.

honōs, or **honor, -ōris,** m., HONOR, *esteem, dignity; public office, post.*

honōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**honor**], *respect,* HONOR.

hōra, -ae, f., HOUR, a twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, the Roman hours varying in length with the season of the year.

Horātius, -ī, m., (1) HORATIUS *Cocles,* who defended the bridge against the Etruscans. (2) *Q.* HORATIUS *Flaccus,* the famous Roman poet *Horace.* (3) *The* HORATII, triplets, who fought with the Curiatii. (4) *M.* HORATIUS *Pulvillus,* consul 509 B.C.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tremble at, shudder at, dread.* (HORRID)

horribilis, -e, [**horreō**], *awful,* HORRIBLE.

horridus, -a, -um, [**horreō**], *wild, frightful.* (HORRID)

hortātus, -ūs, m., [**hortor**], *encouragement, urging.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *encourage, ex-*HORT.

hortus, -ī, m., *garden.* (HORTI-culture)

hospes, -itis, m., *host; guest; friend* bound by HOSPITALITY, *guest-friend.*

hospitium, -ī, n., [**hospes**], HOSPITALITY; *friendship.*

hostia, -ae, f., *victim, sacrifice.*

hostīlis, -e, [**hostis**], HOSTILE.

hostīliter, [**hostīlis**], adv., *in a hostile manner.*

Hostīlius, -ī, m., *Tullus* HOSTILIUS, third king of Rome. See **Mancīnus.**

Hostīlius, -a, -um, *of an* HOSTILIUS. See **Cūria.**

hostis, -is, m., *stranger,* public *enemy, foe;* pl., **hostēs, -ium,** *the enemy.*

hūc, [**hīc**], adv., *hither; here; to this place; besides.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., [**hūmānus**], HUMANITY; *refinement, culture.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, [**homō**], HUMAN; *civilized; refined.*

humilis, -e, [**humus**], *low; lowly; small, slight; common,* HUMBLE; *mean.*

humus, -ī, f., *ground.*

Hylās, -ae, m., HYLAS, one of the Argonauts, companion of Hercules.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie, be prostrate; lie dead.* Pres. part. as noun, **iacentēs, -ium,** m., *the fallen.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, cast; hurl.*

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **iaciō**], *throw, cast; jerk about.*

iaculum, -ī, n., [**iaciō**], *javelin.*

iam, adv., *already, now; immediately; soon; at length; still; actually; in fact, indeed.* **nōn iam,** *no longer.* **iam prīdem,** *long ago, long since.*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., [**Iānus**], *the* JANICULUM, a hill across the Tiber, west of Rome.

iānitor, -ōris, m., [**iānua**], *door-keeper, porter.* (JANITOR)

iānua, -ae, f., *door; entrance.* (JANUARY)

Iāsōn, -onis, m., JASON, leader of the Argonauts.

ībat, (impf. 3d. sing of **eō**), *he used to go.*

Ibērus, -ī, m., *the Iberus,* a river in Spain, now the EBRO.

ibi, adv., *there; thereupon.*

icō, -ere, īcī, ictus, *hit, strike;* **foedus icere,** *to make a league, make a treaty.*

ictus, -ūs, m., [icō], *blow, stroke.*

Id., abbreviation for **Īdūs.**

ī-dem, ea-dem, i-dem, gen. **eius-dem,** [is], *the same;* often with the force of an adv., *also, besides.* (IDENTITY)

iden-t-idem, [**idem et idem**], adv., *repeatedly, again and again.* (IDENTICAL)

id-eō, adv., *for that reason, therefore.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable, convenient; competent.*

Īdūs, -uum, f., *the Ides,* the 15th day of March, May, July, and October; 13th day of other months.

igitur, post-positive conj. and adv., *then, therefore.*

ignāvia, -ae, f., [**ignāvus**], *inactivity, idleness, laziness.*

ignāvus, -a, -um, *slothful, lazy, spiritless, cowardly.*

īgnis, -is, m., *fire.* Pl., **īgnēs,** *watchfires.* (IGNITE)

ignōbilis, -e, [**in-** + (g)**nōbilis**], IGNOBLE.

ignōminia, -ae, f., [**in-** + (g)**nōmen**], *disgrace,* IGNOMINY.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ignōscō**], *be* IGNORANT *of, not know, be unaware; overlook.* (IGNORE)

ignōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtus, [**in-** + (g)**nōscō**], *pardon, forgive, excuse.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, [**in-** + (g)**nōtus**], adj., *unknown, untried, strange; unfamiliar, unacquainted with.*

il-, see **in-.**

ī-licō, [**in** + **locō**], adv., *on the spot; immediately.*

il-lātus, see **īn-ferō.**

ille, illa, illud, gen. **illīus,** *that; he, she, it; the well-known.*

illīc, [**ille**], adv., *in that place, there.*

il-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**in**], *bind, fasten.*

illō, [**ille**], adv., *thither, to that place, there.*

illūc, [**ille**], adv., *to that place, thither, there.*

il-lūstris, -e, [**in** + **lūx**], *bright;* ILLUSTRIOUS, *renowned.*

Illyricum, -ī, n., ILLYRICUM, a region along the east coast of the Adriatic Sea.

im-, see **in-.**

imāgō, -inis, f., *likeness,* IMAGE, *representation; statue, bust.*

imber, -bris, m., *rain, shower.*

imitātiō, -ōnis, f., [**imitor,** *imitate*], IMITATION.

immānis, -e, *monstrous, huge.*

im-mēnsus, -a, -um, [**mētior,** *measure*], *immeasurable,* IMMENSE, *vast.*

im-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in, hurl in* or *upon.*

immō, adv., *no indeed, by no means, nay.*

im-molō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**mola**], *sprinkle with sacred meal; sacrifice,* IMMOLATE.

im-mortālis, -e, IMMORTAL, *eternal.*

im-mūnis, -e, [**in-** + **mūnus**], *free from taxes,* etc. (IMMUNE)

im-mūnitās, -ātis, f., [**im-mūnis**], IMMUNITY, *freedom* from taxes, etc.

im-patiēns, -entis, *intolerant,* IMPATIENT.

im-pedīmentum, -ī, n., [**impediō**], *hindrance, interference,* IMPEDIMENT. Pl., **impedīmenta, -ōrum,** *heavy baggage, baggage.*

im-pediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**pēs**],

hinder, obstruct, hamper, interfere with, disorder. (IMPEDE)

im-pedītus, -a, -um, [**im-pediō**], *encumbered, hindered, obstructed, hampered, embarrassed; difficult, hard;* of places, *hard to reach, inaccessible.*

im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *strike against; set in motion,* IMPEL; *urge on, persuade.*

im-pendeō, -ēre, —, —, *overhang;* IMPEND, *threaten.*

im-pēnsa, -ae, f., [**pendō**], *expense.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., [**imperō**], *commander-in-chief, commander, general.* **Imperātor,** EMPEROR.

imperātorius, -a, -um, [**imperātor**], *of a commander, general's.*

imperātum, -ī, n., [**imperō**], *command, order.*

im-per-fectus, -a, -um, *unfinished, incomplete.* (IMPERFECT)

im-perītus, -a, -um, *inexperienced, unskilled, unacquainted with.*

imperium, -ī, n., [**imperō**], *command, order; power, authority, government; rule; military authority; the state;* EMPIRE; **Imperium Rōmānum,** *the* ROMAN EMPIRE.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, order; rule, exercise authority; levy, draft, demand.* (IMPERATIVE)

im-petrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**patrō,** *effect*], *obtain* by request, *procure, accomplish; gain one's end.*

im-petus, -ūs, m., [**petō**], *attack, charge, rush;* IMPETUS, *onset, fury,* IMPETUOSITY, *force.*

im-pius, -a, -um, *wicked,* IMPIOUS. As noun, **impiī, -ōrum,** m., *the wicked.*

im-plicātus, -a, -um, [**plicō,** *fold*], *entangled.* (IMPLICATED)

im-plicō, -āre, -āvī or **-uī, -ātus** or **-itus,** [**plicō,** *fold*], *interweave; involve,* IMPLICATE.

im-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**plōrō,** *cry out*], *beseech,* IMPLORE.

im-pluvium, -ī, n., [**pluvia,** *rain*], *the* IMPLUVIUM, a cistern in the atrium, into which the rain fell through the opening in the roof.

im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place on; put into;* IMPOSE *upon; mount.*

im-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in,* IMPORT.

im-prīmīs, adv., (in the first place), *especially.*

im-probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disapprove of, reject.*

im-prō-vīsus, -a, -um, [**prō-videō**], *unforeseen, unexpected.* Neut. as noun in **dē improvīsō,** *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

im-prūdēns, -entis, *unforeseeing, unawares, off one's guard.* (IMPRUDENT)

im-prūdentia, -ae, f., [**im-prūdēns**], IMPRUDENCE, *ignorance.*

im-pudīcus, -a, -um, [**pudet,** *it shames*], *shameless.*

im-pūnītus, -a, -um, [**in-** + **pūnītus**], adj., *unpunished, secure.*

īmus, see **īnfimus.**

in, prep., (1) with acc., (motion toward), *into, to, in, on, upon, against; toward, for, till, until; respecting, concerning; after, over.* (2) with abl., (place where), IN, *on, upon, among; within, during; in case of, in relation to.*

in-, inseparable prefix, (changing to **im-** before **b, m,** and **p;** to **il-** before **l;** to **ir-** before **r**), (1) with verbs, IN, *into, on, against;* (2) with adjectives, *not, un-,* IN-.

inānis, -e, *empty.* (INANE)

in-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *advance, march, walk; approach.*

in-cendium, -ī, n., [in-cendō], *burning, fire.* (INCENDIARY)

in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn; rouse, excite;* INCENSE.

in-certus, -a, -um, UNCERTAIN.

in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, [cadō], *fall in* or *into, fall in with, happen upon, come upon, meet; happen, occur;* of war, *break out.* (INCIDENT)

in-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [caedō], *cut into.* (INCISION)

in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], *begin, undertake.* (INCIPIENT)

in-citātiō, -ōnis, f., [in-citō], *ardor, enthusiasm.*

in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *urge, urge on,* INCITE, *hurry, quicken; rouse, spur on.*

in-clementer, adv., *harshly, severely.* (INCLEMENT)

in-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [claudō], *shut up, imprison;* INCLUDE; INCLOSE.

in-cognitus, -a, -um, *unknown.* (INCOGNITO)

incohō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *begin, commence.* (INCHOATIVE)

in-cola, -ae, c., [in-colō], *inhabitant.*

in-colō, -ere, -uī, —, *live, dwell; inhabit.*

incolumis, -e, *safe, unharmed.*

in-com-modē, [com-modus], adv., *unfortunately, disastrously.*

in-com-modum, -ī, n., [com-modus], *inconvenience, disadvantage; disaster, injury, defeat.*

in-crēdibilis, -e, *extraordinary,* INCREDIBLE.

in-crepō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [crepō, *rattle*], *resound, chide, upbraid, scold.*

in-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, *press upon; devote one's self to.* (INCUMBENT)

in-cursiō, -ōnis, f., [currō], *onrush, attack; invasion,* INCURSION, *raid.*

in-cursus, -ūs, m., [currō], *assault, attack; onrush.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; from that time; after that, then, thereupon.*

in-dicātīvus, -a, -um, [in-dicō], INDICATIVE.

in-dicium, -ī, n., [in-dicō], *sign;* INDICATION, *proof; information.*

in-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, inform; show,* INDICATE, *make known, reveal.* (INDICATIVE)

in-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *declare, proclaim, announce; convoke, call, appoint.* (INDICT)

in-dignus, -a, -um, *unworthy, unbecoming.*

in-dīligēns, -entis, *negligent, careless, remiss.*

in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead in, bring in; intro-*DUCE; INDUCE, *influence.*

in-duō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [in(d) + uō, *put*], *put on, dress in; clothe, cover.* **sē induere,** *impale oneself on.* (INDUE)

industria, -ae, f., *diligence,* INDUSTRY, *activity.*

industriē, adv., *vigorously,* INDUSTRIOUSLY, *diligently.*

in-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** *go into; begin; undertake; form; make; take; adopt.* **initā aestāte,** *in the beginning of summer.*

in-ermis, -e, [arma], UNARMED, *defenceless.*

īn-fāmia, -ae, f., [īn-fāmis], *disgrace, dishonor.* (INFAMY)

īn-fāmis, -e, [**fāma**], *notorious,* INFAMOUS.

īn-fandus, -a, -um, [**fārī,** *to speak*], *unspeakable, monstrous.*

īn-fectus, -a, -um, [**faciō**], *not done, unaccomplished.*

īn-fēlīx, -īcis, *unfortunate, unhappy.* (INFELICITOUS)

īn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, il-lātus, *bring in, import; inflict; inspire; make, give; obtain.* **bellum īnferre,** *to make war.* **signa īnferre,** *to advance.* (INFERENCE)

īnferior, -ius, [comp. of **īnferus**], *lower,* INFERIOR.

īnferus, -a, -um, (comp., **īnferior,** sup., **īnfimus** or **īmus**), *below, underneath.*

īnfestus, -a, -um, *unsafe; hostile, threatening; leveled.* (INFEST)

īn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**faciō**], *stain, dye; anoint.* (INFECT)

īn-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, FIX *in, drive in.* (INFIX)

īnfimus or **īmus, -a, -um,** [sup. of **īnferus**], *lowest, at the bottom.* **ab īnfimō,** *at the bottom.*

īn-fīnītus, -a, -um, [**fīniō**], *boundless, endless.* (INFINITE)

īn-fīrmus, -a, -um, *weak.* (INFIRM)

īn-flectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexus, *bend.* (INFLECT)

īn-flātus, -a, -um, [**flō,** *blow*], INFLATED.

īn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, *blow into, flow.* (INFLUX)

īn-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *bury.*

īnfrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *below.*

īn-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [**frangō**], *break off; break; lessen; overcome.* (INFRINGE, INFRACTION)

īnfula, -ae, f., (woolen) *band,* (white and red) *fillet.*

īn-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour on.*

in-gemō, -ere, -uī, —, *sigh deeply.*

in-genium, -ī, n., [**gignō**], *nature; character, disposition; talents, ability.*

ingēns, -entis, *vast, huge, great, immense; mighty; remarkable.*

in-genuus, -a, -um, [**gignō**], *free-born, noble.* (INGENUOUS)

in-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [**gradior,** *step*], *advance; go into, enter; undertake.* (INGREDIENT)

in-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**iaciō**], *throw in; lay on; put in* or *on; inspire, cause; strike into; infuse,* INJECT.

in-imīcus, -a, -um, [**amīcus**], *unfriendly, hostile.* As noun, **inimīcus, -ī,** m., *personal enemy* as distinguished from **hostis,** *a public enemy.* (INIMICAL)

in-īquē, [**in-īquus**], adv., UNEQUALLY, *unjustly, unfairly.*

in-īquitās, -ātis, f., [**in-īquus**], *unevenness; unfairness.*

in-īquus, -a, -um, [**aequus**], *uneven; sloping; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unjust.* (INIQUITY)

in-itium, -ī, n., [**in-eō**], *beginning, commencement.* **initiō,** *in the beginning, at first.* (INITIATE)

in-itus, see **in-eō.**

in-iūria, -ae, f., [**iūs**], *wrong, outrage, injustice,* INJURY.

in-iussus, -ūs, m., [**iubeō**], (only abl. in use), *without command, without orders.*

in-iūstus, -a, -um, UNJUST.

in-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, *be born in.* (INNATE)

in-nītor, -ī, -nīxus, *lean upon, rest* or *lie on.*

in-nocēns, -entis, *blameless,* INNOCENT. As noun, **in-nocentēs, -ium,** m., INNOCENT *men.*

in-numerābilis, -e, INNUMERABLE.

in-opia, -ae, f., [**in-ops,** *needy*], *want, lack; need, shortage, scarcity.*

in-opīnāns, -antis, *not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.*

in-opīnātus, -a, -um, *unexpected, surprising.*

inquam, inquis, inquit, def., (always postpositive), *say.*

in-rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at,* RIDI*-cule.*

īn-sānus, -a, -um, *unsound, mad,* INSANE.

īn-sciēns, -entis, [sciō], *not knowing, unaware.* **īnsciente Caesare,** *without Caesar's knowledge.*

īn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write upon,* INSCRIBE.

īn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up, pursue.*

īn-serō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *plant;* INSERT.

īn-sidiae, -ārum, f., [sedeō], *ambush, ambuscade; plot, artifice, trap, pitfall, snare, stratagem.* (INSIDIOUS)

īn-signe, -is, n., [**īn-signis**], *mark, emblem, signal, indication; badge, decoration,* ENSIGN; *honor; illustrious deed, exploit.*

īn-signis, -e, [signum], *conspicuous; remarkable, noteworthy; eminent, prominent, distinguished.*

īn-siliō, -īre, -uī, —, [saliō, *leap*], *leap upon.*

īn-sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sinuō, *curve*], *push in.* **sē īnsinuāre,** *force one's way in.* (INSINUATE)

īn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *stand upon, stand; press on; follow, pursue; adopt.* (INSIST)

īn-solēns, -entis, [soleō], *haughty, arrogant,* INSOLENT.

īn-solenter, [**īn-solēns**], adv., *haughtily,* INSOLENTLY.

īn-solitus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed.*

īn-spergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersus, [spargō], *sprinkle upon.*

īn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look into,* INSPECT.

īn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [statuō], of troops, *draw up; build, construct; make; make ready, furnish; purpose, resolve; establish,* INSTITUTE; *undertake, begin; teach, instruct.*

īn-stitūtum, -ī, n., [**īn-stituō**], *plan; arrangement; custom;* INSTITUTION.

īn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *be near at hand, approach; press on, press forward.*

īn-strūmentum, -ī, n., [**īn-struō**], *tool; outfit, equipment.* (INSTRUMENT)

īn-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *build, build up, construct, make ready, provide;* of troops, *draw up; equip.* (INSTRUCT)

Īnsubrēs, -ium, m., *the* INSUBRIANS, Gauls dwelling between the Alps and the river Po.

īn-suē-factus, -a, -um, [**īn-suēscō** + **faciō**], *well trained.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.* (INSULAR)

īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be in.*

in-teger, -gra, -grum, [tangō], *untouched, whole; uninjured; fresh, vigorous.* As noun, **in-tegrī, -ōrum,** m., *fresh troops.* (INTEGER, INTEGRAL)

in-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover over.*

intel-legentia, -ae, f., [intel-legō], INTELLIGENCE.

intel-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter], *understand, perceive, comprehend, know; ascertain.* (INTELLECT)

in-tentus, -a, -um, [tendō], *eager,* INTENT.

inter, prep. with acc., *between,*

among, in the midst of, amid; in; of time, *between, during, within.* **inter sē,** (*with* or *from*) *each other,* (*with* or *from*) *one another.* **inter iocum,** *in joke, jestingly.*

inter-calārius, -a, -um, [**inter-calō**], INTERCALARY.

inter-calō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *insert in the* CALENDAR, INTERCALATE.

inter-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go between; lie; pass between;* of time, *intervene, take place.* (INTERCEDE)

inter-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**capiō**], *cut off;* INTERCEPT; *seize, usurp.*

inter-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [**claudō**], *shut off, cut off; blockade, block up, hinder.*

inter-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *forbid,* INTERDICT, *prohibit, exclude.*

inter-diū, adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

inter-dum, adv., *sometimes, now and then.*

inter-eā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

inter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *perish, die.*

inter-fector, -ōris, m., [**interficiō**], *slayer, assassin.*

inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**faciō**], (put out of the way), *destroy, kill.*

inter-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**iaciō**], *put between; interpose, intervene.* **interiectus,** *lying between, intervening.*

inter-im, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.* (INTERIM)

inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**emō**], *take away; kill, destroy.*

interior, -ius, gen. -ōris, [**inter**], *inner,* INTERIOR (*of*), *middle; more hidden; more intimate, more confidential.* As noun, **interiōrēs, -um,** m., *those within.*

inter-itus, -ūs, m., [**inter-eō**], *destruction, death.*

inter-missiō, -ōnis, f., INTERMISSION.

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send between; leave an interval, allow to elapse, leave vacant; leave off, stop, cease, discontinue; interrupt, suspend;* pass., of fire, *abate;* of wind, *be* INTERMITTENT. **nocte intermissā,** *night intervening.*

inter-neciō, -ōnis, f., [**necō**], *slaughter, massacre, annihilation.* (INTERNECINE)

inter-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place between,* INTERPOSE; *present; pledge;* of time, *allow to elapse.*

inter-pres, -pretis, m., INTERPRETER.

inter-pretor, -ārī, -ātus, *explain,* INTERPRET.

inter-rēgnum, -ī, n., (interval between two reigns), INTERREGNUM.

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question,* INTERROGATE.

inter-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut down; cut through.*

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be between; be present at, take part in.* Impers., **interest,** *it concerns; it makes a difference.* **magnī interesse,** *to be of great importance.* (INTEREST)

inter-vāllum, -ī, n., INTERVAL, *space, distance.*

inter-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come between,* INTERVENE.

inter-ventus, -ūs, m., INTERVENTION.

intrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *within, inside;* of time, *during.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intrā], *go into,* ENTER; *penetrate, reach.*

intrō, adv., *within, inside.*

intro-eō, -īre, -īvī, —, *go in, enter into.*

intro-itus, -ūs, m., [eō], ENTRANCE.

intrōrsus, [intrō + **versus**], adv., *within, inside.*

intrō-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break in.*

in-tueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum, *look upon; regard.*

in-tulī, see **īn-ferō.**

in-tumēscō, -ere, -tumuī, —, [incep. of **tumeō,** *swell*], *swell up, rise.*

intus, adv., *within, on the inside.*

in-ūsitātus, -a, -um, [ūsitor, freq. of **ūtor**], *un-*USUAL, *unfamiliar, strange, extraordinary.*

in-ūtilis, -e, *useless.*

in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *go into; advance upon, rush upon, attack,* INVADE.

in-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry in;* pass., *ride into; sail to; attack.*

in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, meet with; discover,* INVENT; *learn.*

in-ventor, -ōris, m., [**in-veniō**], *originator,* INVENTOR.

in-veterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, —, [vetus], *grow old; become established; establish one's self.* (INVETERATE)

in-vicem, adv., *in turn.*

in-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *look askance at; envy.*

in-vīsus, -a, -um, [in + videō, *to look askance at*], *hated, hateful.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, INVITE; *entice, allure, attract.*

invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling.* **sē invītō,** *against one's will.*

in-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call upon,* INVOKE.

Iō! interj., *hurrah!*

iocus, -ī, m., *jest,* JOKE.

Iovis, see **Iuppiter.**

ipse, -a, -um, gen. **ipsīus,** intens. pron., *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, they* (emphatic); *very;* often best rendered freely, *just, mere, in person.*

ir-, see **in-.**

īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath, rage.* (IRE)

īrātus, -a, -um, [**īrāscor,** *be angry*], *angered, enraged, furious.* (IRATE)

ir-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break into, rush into.*

ir-ruō, -ere, -ruī, —, *rush upon, attack.*

ir-ruptiō, -ōnis, f., [**ir-rumpō**], *attack.* (IRRUPTION)

is, ea, id, gen., **eius,** dat., **eī,** *he, she, it; that, this, the, the one;* before **ut, is** = **tālis,** *such;* after **et,** *and that too;* after **neque,** *and that not;* with comparatives abl. **eō** = *the, all the;* **as eō magis,** *all the more.*

iste, ista, istud, gen., **istīus,** *that of yours, that, this; he, she, it; such.*

ita, [is], adv., *in this way, thus, in the following manner, in such a way, accordingly; of this kind.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., ITALY.

Ītalicus, -a, -um, *of* ITALY, ITALIAN. As noun, **Ītalicī, -ōrum,** m., *the* ITALIANS, as distinguished from the Roman citizens.

Ītalus, -a, -um, [Ītalia], *of* ITALY, ITALIAN. As noun, **Ītalus, -ī,** m., *an* ITALIAN.

ita-que, adv., *and so, and thus, accordingly, therefore.*

item, adv., *also, farther; just so, in like manner, likewise.* (ITEM)

iter, itineris, n., [eō], *journey, line of march, march; road, route.* **magnum iter,** *forced march.* **ex itinere,** *on the march.* (ITINERARY)

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.* (ITERATE)

Iuba, -ae, m., JUBA, king of Numidia.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command; bid; decree.* (JUSSIVE)

iūdex, -icis, c., [iūs + dīcō], JUDGE; *juror.*

iūdicium, -ī, n., [iūdex], legal *judgment, decision, decree; court, trial; opinion.* (JUDICIAL)

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūdex], JUDGE, *decide; think, infer; proclaim, declare, conclude.*

iūgerum, -ī, (gen. pl., iūgerum), n., IUGERUM, $\frac{5}{8}$ of an acre.

iugulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iugulum], *cut the throat.*

iugulum, -ī, n., [dim. of iugum], *throat, neck.* (JUGULAR)

iugum, -ī, n., [iungō], *yoke;* of mountains, *ridge, summit, chain.*

Iugurtha, -ae, m., JUGURTHA, king of Numidia.

Iūlia, -ae, f., JULIA, daughter of Caesar and wife of Pompey.

Iūliī, -ōrum, m., *the* JULIANS, members of the **gēns Iūlia.**

Iūlius, see **Caesar.**

iūmentum, -ī, n., [iugum], *yoke-animal, pack-animal, beast of burden.*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, JOIN, *connect, span, unite; yoke.* (JUNCTION)

Iūnius, see **Brūtus.**

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., JUNO, queen of heaven, sister and wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., JUPITER, the chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, -ae, m., JURA, a range of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūs], *take oath; swear.* (JURY)

iūs, iūris, n., *right,* JUSTICE; *legal right, privilege; law;* abl., **iūre,** *justly.*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., [iūrō], *oath.*

iussus, -ūs, (only abl. sing. in use), m., [iubeō], *order, command.*

iūstitia, -ae, f., [iūs], JUSTICE, *uprightness.*

iūstus, -a, -um, [iūs], JUST, *fair; proper, suitable, due, regular.*

iuvenis, -is, comp., **iūnior,** *young, youthful.* As noun, **iuvenis, -is,** c., *young man, young person, youth.* (JUNIOR)

Iuventius, -ī, m., *P.* IUVENTIUS, a Roman general who was defeated by Pseudo-Philip.

iuventūs, -tūtis, f., [iuvenis], *youth; young men.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid, assist.*

iūxtā, adv., and prep. w. acc., *close to, near, close by, by the side of.* (JUXTA-position)

K

Kal. = **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, -ārum, f., CALENDS, the first day of the month. (CALENDAR)

L

L., abbreviation for **Lūcius.**

Laberius, see **Dūrus.**

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus* LABIENUS, the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War.

In the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed little ability as a commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

labor, -ōris, m., LABOR, *toil; hardship, work; task.*

labōriōsē, [labor], adv., LABORIOUSLY.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [labor], LABOR, *toil; strive, struggle; suffer, be afflicted; be hard pressed.*

labrum, -ī, n., *lip; rim; edge.* (LABIAL)

lac, lactis, n., *milk.* (LACTEAL)

Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m., [Lacedaemon], *the* LACEDAEMONIANS, inhabitants of LACEDAEMON or Sparta, the chief city of the Peloponnesus.

lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lacer, *torn to pieces*], *slander.* (LACERATE)

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *provoke, challenge; assail, attack.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.* (LACHRYMOSE)

lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE, *pond.*

laetitia, -ae, f., [laetus], *joy, gladness, exultation, rejoicing.*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyful, glad, happy.*

Laevinus, -ī, m., [laevus], (1) *P. Valerius* LAEVINUS, consul in 280 B.C., at the beginning of the war with Pyrrhus. (2) *M. Valerius* LAEVINUS, Roman general in command against Philip V. in 215 B.C.

lāna, -ae, f., *wool.*

lapis, -idis, m., *stone.* (LAPIDARY)

Lārentia, see **Acca.**

Larēs, -um, m., *the* LARES, deified spirits of ancestors, protecting the home; household gods.

largior, -īrī, -ītus, [largus, *abundant*], *give freely, supply, bestow; bribe.*

largītiō, -ōnis, f., [largior], *generosity, lavish giving; bribery.*

Lārīsa, -ae, f., LARISA, a city in Thessaly, modern *Larissa.*

lassitūdō, -inis, f., [lassus, *weak*], *weariness, exhaustion.* (LASSITUDE)

lātē, [lātus], adv., *widely, extensively.* **longē lātēque,** *far and wide.*

latebra, -ae, f., [lateō], usually pl., *hiding place, retreat.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie hid, be concealed; escape notice.* (LATENT)

Latīnus, -a, -um, [Latium], *of* LATIUM, LATIN. As noun, **Latīnī, -ōrum,** m., *the* LATINS.

Latīnus, -ī, m., LATINUS, king of LATIUM.

lātitūdō, -inis, f., [lātus], *width, breadth.* (LATITUDE)

Latium, -ī, n., LATIUM, a district in Italy, south of the Tiber.

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m., *the* LATOBRIGI, a people near the Helvetians.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber, brigand.*

latrōcinium, -ī, n., [latrō], *robbery, brigandage.*

lātus, see **ferō.**

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide; extensive.*

latus, -eris, n., *side;* of an army, *flank.* **latus apertum,** *exposed flank.* **ab latere,** *on the flank.* (LATERAL)

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laus], *praise, extol,* LAUD.

laurea, -ae, f., LAUREL *tree, bay;* LAUREL *crown* or *wreath.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, renown; merit, excellency.*

Lāvīnia, -ae, f., LAVINIA, daughter of King Latinus.

Lāvīnium, -ī, n., [Lāvīnia], LAVINIUM, a town in Latium.

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus or **lotus,** *wash, bathe,* LAVE.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *loosen, spread out, widen, open, extend.* (re-LAX)

lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., [lēgō], *embassy,* LEGATION; *deputation, envoys.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, envoy;* of the army, *lieutenant general, deputy.* (LEGATE)

legiō, -ōnis, f., [legō], LEGION, a Roman army division, containing 3000–6000 soldiers.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [legiō], *of a legion,* LEGIONARY.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *bring together, gather, col-*LECT; *choose, appoint; read.*

lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lēx], *leave by will, bequeathe.*

Lemannus, -ī, m., with **lacus,** *Lake Geneva.*

Lemovīcēs, -um, m., *the* LEMOVICES, a people of central Gaul.

lēnis, -e, *gentle, light; smooth.* (LENIENT)

lēnitās, -ātis, f., [lēnis], *smoothness, gentleness,* LENIENCE.

lēniter, [lēnis], adv., *mildly; gently, slightly.* Comp., **lēnius,** *less vigorously.*

Lentulus, -ī, m., *L.* LENTULUS, consul in 49 B.C., a partisan of Pompey.

lentus, -a, -um, [lēnis], *slow, sluggish; easy.*

lepus, -oris, m., *hare.*

lētālis, -e, [lētum, *death*], *deadly, fatal.* (LETHAL)

Levācī, -ōrum, m., *the* LEVACI, a Belgic people near the Nervii.

levis, -e, *light, slight; trivial, unimportant.*

leviter, [levis], adv., *lightly.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law, rule; condition.* (LEGAL)

Lexoviī, -ōrum, m., *the* LEXOVII, a Gallic people on the coast west of the Sequana (*Seine*).

libēns, -entis, [**libet,** *it is fitting*], *willing, with pleasure, glad.*

libenter, [libēns], adv., *willingly, gladly.*

Līber, -ī, m., [libō], LIBER, an ancient Italian god of fruits.

līber, -a, -um, *free.* (LIBERAL)

liber, -brī, m., *book.* (LIBRARY)

līberāliter, [līberālis], adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly.* (LIBERALLY)

līberē, [līber], adv., *freely; boldly; openly.*

līberī, -ōrum, m., [līber], *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [līber], *set free, free,* LIBERATE.

lībertās, -ātis, f., [līber], *freedom,* LIBERTY.

lībertus, -ī, m., [līber], *freedman.*

Libō, -ōnis, m., *L. Scribonius* LIBO, a partisan of Pompey in the Civil War.

librārium, -ī, n., [liber], *book case.* (LIBRARY)

lībrālis, -e, [**lībra,** *pound*], *weighing a pound.*

lībum, -ī, n., *cake.*

licet, -ēre, licuit and **licitum est,** impers., *it is allowed, lawful, permitted.*

Licinius, -ī, m., *P.* LICINIUS *Crassus,* consul in 171 B.C.

līctor, -ōris, m., LICTOR, an attendant upon a Roman magistrate.

Liger, -eris, m., the principal river of central Gaul, the *Loire.*

lignātiō, -ōnis, f., [lignum], *getting wood.*

ligneus, -a, -um, [lignum, *wood*], *of wood, wooden.* (LIGNITE)

Ligurēs, -um, m., *the* LIGURIANS, a people of northwestern Italy, south of the Po.

līlium, -ī, n., LILY; 'LILY,' soldiers' name for a trap.

Lilybaeum, -ī, n., LILYBAEUM, a promontory on the west coast of Sicily.

limbus, -ī, m., *border, edge.*

līmen, -inis, n., *threshold.*

līnea, -ae, f., *string,* LINE; **alba līnea,** *white* LINE (drawn across the arena, marking the end of the race-course).

Lingonēs, -um, (acc., **-ēs** or **-as**), m., *the* LINGONES, a Gallic state west of the Sequanians.

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue;* LANGUAGE. (LINGUIST)

linter, -tris, f., *boat, skiff.*

linteus, -a, -um, [**līnum**], (made of) LINEN.

līnum, -ī, n., *flax,* LINEN.

littera, -ae, f., LETTER of the alphabet. Pl., **litterae, -ārum,** *writing; letter;* LITERATURE.

litterārius, -a, -um, [**littera**], *of* or *belonging to reading and writing.* **lūdus litterārius,** *an elementary school.*

lītus, -oris, n., *shore; coast.* (LITTORAL)

Līvius, -ī, m., *Titus* LIVY, the celebrated Roman historian.

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, put; arrange.* (LOCATE)

locus, -ī, m., *place, ground; position, situation; condition; room; station, post; position, rank; opportunity.* Pl., **loca, -ōrum,** n., *region,* LOCALITY.

locūtus, see **loquor.**

Londinium, -ī, n., LONDON.

longē, adv., *a* LONG *way off, at a distance; far; by far.*

longinquus, -a, -um, [**longus**], *remote, distant; long-continued, lasting.*

longitūdō, -inis, f., [**longus**], *length.* (LONGITUDE)

longius, [comp. of **longē**], *farther;* LONGER.

longurius, -ī, m., [**longus**], *long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, LONG, *extended; lasting; remote.*

Longus, see **Semprōnius.**

loquor, -ī, locūtus, *speak, talk; say, tell.* (LOCUTION)

lōrīca, -ae, f., [**lōrum,** *thong*], (leather) *coat of mail; breastwork, fortification.*

Lūcānius, -ī, m., *Q.* LUCANIUS, a brave centurion.

lucerna, -ae, f., [**luceō,** *shine*], *lamp.*

Lūcius, -ī, m., LUCIUS, a Roman forename.

Lucrētia, -ae, f., LUCRETIA, wife of Tarquinius Collatinus.

Lucrētius, -ī, m., *Spurius* LUCRETIUS, father of Lucretia.

lūcus, -ī, m., *sacred grove; grove.*

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, *play.*

lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play; school; public game; sport, jest.* (INTERLUDE)

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *grieve, mourn, lament; deplore.*

Lugotorīx, -īgis, m., LUGOTORIX, a British chieftain.

lūmen, -inis, n., [**luceō,** *shine*], *light; eye; glory, ornament.* (ILLUMINATION)

lūna, -ae, f., [**luceō,** *shine*], *the moon.* (LUNATIC)

lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf.*

Lūsītānia, -ae, f., LUSITANIA, a province on the west coast of Spain.

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**lūstrum**], *review, inspect.* (IL-LUSTRATE)

Lutātius, see **Catulus.**

lūx, lūcis, f., [**luceō,** *shine*], *light, daylight.* **prīmā lūce, ortā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

lūxī, see **lūgeō.**

lūxuria, -ae, f., [**lūxus,** *excess*], LUXURY; *extravagance.*

M

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus,** a Roman forename.

M'., abbreviation for **Manius,** a Roman forename.

Macedonia, -ae, f., MACEDONIA, a country north of Greece.

Macedonicus, -a, -um, [**Macedonia**], MACEDONIAN.

māceria, -ae, f., *wall.*

maestus, -a, -um, *sad, gloomy, dejected.*

magicus, -a, -um, MAGIC.

magis, [comp. of **multō**], adv., *more, rather.* **eō magis,** *all the more.*

magister, -trī, m., MASTER, *teacher.* **magister equitum,** *master of the horse.*

magistrātus, -ūs, m., [**magister**], MAGISTRACY; MAGISTRATE.

Magnēsia, -ae, f., MAGNESIA, a city in western Asia Minor.

magnī, Gen. of Indefinite Value, *of great importance.*

magni-ficus, -a, -um, [**faciō**], *splendid,* MAGNIFICENT.

magnificentissimē, [sup. of **magnificē**], adv., *most splendidly, most* MAGNIFICENTLY.

magnitūdō, -inis, f., [**magnus**], *greatness; size,* MAGNITUDE, *great number; violence.*

magn-opere, [**magnum** + **opus**], adv., *very much, greatly, specially, deeply; earnestly, urgently.*

magnus, -a, -um, *great, large, powerful; noble; mighty, loud; violent, important.* (MAGNATE) **Magnus, -ī,** m., *the Great,* surname of *Cn. Pompeius* and of *Alexander of Macedon.*

maior, -ius, gen., **-iōris,** [comp. of **magnus**], *greater.* As noun, **maiōrēs, -um,** m., *forefathers, ancestors.* **maiōrēs nātū,** (lit., those greater by birth), *the old men, the elders.*

malacia, -ae, f., *calm* at sea.

male, [**malus**], adv., *badly.* (MALE-factor)

male-ficium, -ī, n., [**male** + **faciō**], *mischief, harm.*

malitia, -ae, f., [**malus**], *ill-will,* MALICE.

malleus, -ī, m., MALLET.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, [**magis** + **volō**], (choose rather), *prefer.*

malum, -ī, n., [**malus**], *evil, mischief, misfortune; evil deed.*

mālum, -ī, n., *apple, fruit.*

mālus, -ī, m., *mast.*

malus, -a, -um, *bad, evil, wicked.*

Mancīnus, -ī, m., *C. Hostilius* MANCINUS, consul in 137 B.C.

mandātum, -ī, n., [**mandō**], *order, com-*MAND, MANDATE, *injunction, instruction.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**manus** + **dō**], *commit, consign; order, com-*MAND, *direct.*

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m., *the* MANDUBII, a Gallic people north of the Aeduans.

māne, adv., *early in the morning.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *stay,* REMAIN, *continue.*

manicae, -ārum, f., [**manus**], *sleeves.*

Mānīlius, -ī, m., *M'.* MANILIUS, consul in 149 B.C.

manipulāris, -is, m., [**manipulus**],

comrade (member of the same MANIPLE).

manipulus, -ī, m., *company* of soldiers, MANIPLE, one third of a cohort.

Mānlius, -ī, m., (1) *T.* MANLIUS *Torquatus,* who slew a Gallic champion in single combat. (2) *Cn.* MANLIUS *Volso,* consul in 189 B.C.

mān-suē-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [manus + suēscō + faciō], *tame.*

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., [mān-suētus, *tame*], *tameness, gentleness, compassion.*

mantēle, -is, n., [manus + tēla, *cloth*], *towel.*

manū-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *release, set free.* (MANUMISSION)

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; skill; force; band* (of men), *forces, troops.* (MANUAL)

mappa, -ae, f., *white cloth; napkin; handkerchief.*

Mārcellus, -ī, m., [dim. of **Mārcus**], (1) *M. Claudius* MARCELLUS, the 'Sword of Rome,' who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C. (2) *M. Claudius* MARCELLUS, consul in 183 B.C.

Mārcius, -ī, m., *Ancus* MARCIUS, fourth king of Rome. See **Coriolānus** and **Cēnsōrīnus.**

Marcomanī, -ōrum, m., *the* MARCOMANI, a Germanic people.

Mārcus, -ī, m., MARCUS, a Roman forename.

mare, maris, n., *sea.* **Mare Superum,** *the Upper Sea, the Adriatic.*

maritimus, -a, -um, [mare], *of the sea, by the sea, near the sea;* MARITIME, *sea —, sea-coast.*

marīnus, -a, -um, [mare], *belonging to the sea, sea —,* MARINE.

marītus, -a, -um, *of marriage, nuptial.* As noun, **marītus, -ī,** m., *married man, husband:* **novus marītus,** *bridegroom;* **novī marītī,** *bridal couple.* (MARITAL)

Marius, -ī, m., *C.* MARIUS, who defeated Jugurtha and the Cimbri and Teutones; seven times consul; the bitter opponent of Sulla.

marmor, -oris, n., MARBLE.

marmoreus, -a, -um, [marmor], *of* MARBLE, MARBLE.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., MARS, the Roman god of war; *war, battle.* **dubiō Mārte,** *in an indecisive contest.*

Mārsī, -ōrum, m., *the* MARSI, a people east of Latium.

Mārtius, -a, -um, *of* MARS, (dedicated) *to* MARS, *martial; of* MARCH.

mās, maris, m., *male.* (MASCULINE)

Massilia, -ae, f., MASSILIA, a city in southern Gaul, now *Marseilles.*

Massiliēnsis, -e, [Massilia], *of* MASSILIA, modern *Marseilles.* As noun, **Massiliēnsēs, -ium,** m., *the* MASSILIANS.

matara, -ae, f., *javelin, spear.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.* **mātrēs familiae,** *matrons.* (MATERNAL)

māteria, -ae, f., [māter], MATERIAL; *timber, wood.*

māterior, -ārī, -ātus, [māteria], *get timber.*

māternus, -a, -um, [māter], *belonging to a mother,* MATERNAL.

Matiscō, -ōnis, m., MATISCO, a city of the Aeduans, the modern *Mâcon.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, n., [māter], *marriage,* MATRIMONY. **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *to marry.*

Matrona, -ae, m., *the* MARNE, a tributary of the Seine.

mātrōna, -ae, f., [māter], *wife,* MATRON.

mātūrē, comp., **mātūrius,** sup., **mātūrrimē,** [**mātūrus**], adv., *early.* (MATURELY)

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**mātūrus**], *make haste; hasten.* (MATURE)

mātūrus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup., **mātūrrimus,** *ripe; early.* (MATURE)

Maurētānia, -ae, f., MAURETANIA, in north Africa, modern *Morocco.*

maximē, [**maximus**], adv., *very greatly, especially, most.*

maximus, -a, -um, [sup. of **magnus**], *greatest, very great, largest.*

Maximus, see **Fabius.**

Mēdēa, -ae, f., MEDEA, daughter of Aeetes, king of Colchis; wife of Jason.

medicīna, -ae, f., [**medicus**], MEDICINE.

medicus, -ī, m., [**medeor,** *heal*], *doctor, physician.* (MEDICAL)

mediocris, -cre, [**medius**], *moderate; ordinary, common; small, slight,* MEDIOCRE.

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, m., *the* MEDIOMATRICI, a Gallic people near the Rhine.

medi-terrāneus, -a, -um, [**medius** + **terra**], *inland.* (MEDITERRANEAN)

meditor, -ārī, -ātus, *consider,* MEDITATE; *plan.*

medium, -ī, n., [**medius**], *middle, center, intervening space.* (MEDIUM)

medius, -a, -um, *in-the-middle-of, middle, mid-; moderate.* **in colle mediō,** *half way up the hill.* **media nox,** *midnight.* **dē mediā nocte,** *just after midnight.*

melior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** [comp. of **bonus**], *better.*

melius, [comp. of **bene**], adv., *better.*

membrum, -ī, n., MEMBER (of the body), *limb.*

Memmius, -ī, m., *C.* MEMMIUS *Gemellus,* consul in 54 B.C.

memorābilis, -e, [**memorō,** *mention*], *worth mentioning,* MEMORABLE; *remarkable.*

memoria, -ae, f., [**memor,** *mindful*], MEMORY, *recollection, remembrance.* **memoriā tenēre,** *to recollect.* **nostrā memoriā,** *in our own day.* **memoriā prōditum,** *handed down by tradition.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, m., *the* MENAPII, a people in the northeast part of Belgic Gaul.

Menēnius, see **Agrippa.**

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, intellect; feeling; intelligence; purpose, plan.* (MENTAL)

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table; course* at dinner; **secunda mēnsa,** *dessert.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, -ae, f., [**mētior**], MEASURE.

mentiō, -ōnis, f., [**mēns**], *calling to mind,* MENTION.

mercātor, -ōris, m., [**mercor,** *trade*], *trader,* MERCHANT.

mercātūra, -ae, f., [**mercor,** *trade*], *trade.*

Mercurius, -ī, m., MERCURY.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, and **mereor, -ērī, -itus,** *deserve, be worthy of,* MERIT; *earn; render service.*

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *dip, plunge in; sink, overwhelm.* (sub-MERGE, im-MERSE.)

meridiānus, -a, -um, [**merī-diēs**], *of mid-day, mid-day.* (MERIDIAN)

merī-diātiō, -ōnis, f., [**merī-diēs**], *mid-day nap, siesta.*

merī-diēs, -ēī, m., *mid-day; south.*

meritum, -ī, n., [**mereō**], MERIT, *service; worth, value.*

meritus, see **mereor.**

merx, mercis, f., MERCHANDISE.

Messāla, -ae, m., *Marcus Valerius* MESSALA, consul 61 B.C.

mēta, -ae, f., *goal.*

Metaurus, -ī, m., *the* METAURUS, a river in Umbria, emptying into the Adriatic Sea.

Metellus, -ī, m., (1) *Q. Caecilius* METELLUS *Macedonicus*, who defeated Pseudo-Philip in 148 B.C. (2) *Q. Caecilius* METELLUS *Numidicus*, consul in 109 B.C.

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, *measure, measure out, distribute.* (MENSURATION)

Metius, -ī, m., *Marcus* METIUS, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.

Mettius, see **Fūfetius.**

metō, -ere, messuī, messus, *reap.*

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread; apprehension.* (METICULOUS)

mī, voc. masc. sing. of **meus.**

micāns, -antis, [micō, *gleam*], *flashing.*

Micipsa, -ae, m., MICIPSA, king of Numidia.

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *depart, remove, move.* (MIGRATE)

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier, foot-soldier.*

Mīlētus, -ī, f., MILETUS, a city on the southwest coast of Asia Minor.

mīlia, -ium, n., [pl. of **mīlle**], noun, *thousands;* **mīlia passuum,** MILES.

mīliārium, -ī, n., [**mīlle**], *milestone.*

mīliēs, [mīlle], adv., *a thousand times.*

mīlitāris, -e, [mīles], *of a soldier; of war,* MILITARY. **rēs mīlitāris,** *art of war.*

mīlitia, -ae, f., [mīles], *military service.* (MILITIA)

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mīles], *be a soldier, perform* MILITARY *service, make war, serve.* (MILITANT)

mīlle, indecl., adj., *a thousand.* **mīlle passūs,** *a* MILE. See **mīlia.**

Minerva, -ae, f., MINERVA, goddess of wisdom and the arts.

minimē, [sup. of **parum**], *least, by no means, not at all, no, no indeed.*

minimus, -a, -um, [sup. of **parvus**], *smallest.*

minister, -trī, m., *attendant.* (MINISTER)

minor, -ārī, -ātus, *threaten, menace.*

minor, -us, gen., **minōris,** [comp. of **parvus**], *smaller, less, lesser.* (MINOR)

Minucius, see **Basilus.**

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *di-*MINISH, *reduce; settle, put an end to.*

minus, [comp. of **parum**], adv., *less.*

mīrāculum, -ī, [mīror], *wonder;* MIRACLE.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, [mīrus], *wonder at, marvel; wonder; ad-*MIRE, *esteem.*

mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, extraordinary; strange, remarkable.*

miser, -era, -erum, *wretched,* MISERABLE, *unfortunate, pitiable; poor.* As noun, **miserī, -ōrum,** m., *the wretched.*

miseria, -ae, f., [miser], *wretchedness,* MISERY.

miseri-cordia, -ae, f., [miser + **cor,** *heart*], *compassion, mercy.*

missiō, -ōnis, f., [mittō], *sending; release; discharge* from service, *dis-*MISSAL. (MISSION)

Mithridātēs, -is, m., MITHRIDATES VI, surnamed *the Great,* king of Pontus.

Mithridāticus, -a, -um, *of* MITHRIDATES, MITHRIDATIC.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send, despatch; release, dismiss;* of weapons, *hurl, throw.*

Mitylēnae, -ārum, f., MITYLENE, chief city of Lesbos, an island in the Aegean Sea.

mōbilis, -e, [moveō], MOVABLE, *nimble,* MOBILE.

mōbilitās, -ātis, f., [mōbilis], MOBILITY, *speed.*

moderātiō, -ōnis, f., [moderor, *control*], MODERATION, *self-control.*

moderātus, -a, -um, [moderor], *restrained, controlled,* MODERATE.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, [modus], *check, slow down, control.* (MODERATE)

modius, -ī, m., [modus], *grain-measure,* MODIUS, *peck.*

modo, [modus], adv., *only, merely, just;* of time, *just now, but now.* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure; limit; manner, fashion, way;* MODE. **ad hunc modum,** *after this manner.* **quem ad modum,** *in what way, how, just as.* **eius modī,** *of such a kind.*

moenia, -ium, n., (city) *walls; fortifications.*

mola, -ae, f., *meal;* **salsa mola,** *salted meal,* grains of spelt mixed with salt, which was sprinkled on the heads of victims at sacrifices.

molestia, -ae, f., *trouble, annoyance.*

mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, [mōlēs, *mass*], *struggle; construct; undertake.*

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [mollis], *soften; civilize.* (E-MOLLIENT)

mollis, -e, *soft, smooth, gentle, weak.* (MOLLI-fy)

Molō, -ōnis, m., *Apollonius* MOLO, a famous teacher of oratory at Rhodes.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *grind.*

mōmentum, -ī, n., [moveō], *movement, motion;* MOMENT; *influence; cause, circumstance.* (MOMENTUM)

Mona, -ae, f., MONA, the Isle of MAN, in the Irish Sea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, ad-*MONISH; *advise, warn; teach; predict, foretell.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mountain-range; hill, height.*

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show.* (de-MONSTRATE)

mōnstrum, -ī, n., [moneō], MONSTER.

monumentum, -ī, n., [moneō], *memorial,* MONUMENT.

mora, -ae, f., *delay.*

morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.* (MORBID)

Morinī, -ōrum, m., *the* MORINI, a Belgic people on the seacoast opposite Kent.

morior, -ī, mortuus, [mors], *die.* (MORTUARY)

moror, -ārī, -ātus, [mora], *delay, linger; hinder.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.* (MORTAL)

mortālis, -e, [mors], MORTAL. As noun, **mortālis, -is,** c., *a* MORTAL, *human being.*

mortuus, -a, -um, [morior], *dead.*

mōs, mōris, m., *habit, custom, manner;* pl., *customs, manners, conduct; character.*

mōtus, -ūs, m., [moveō], MOTION, *movement; uprising, revolt.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, MOVE, *drive; stir up; re-*MOVE; *influence.* **castra movēre,** *to break camp.*

mox, adv., *soon, presently, next.*

Mūcius, see **Scaevola.**

mulier, -is, f., *woman; wife.*

mūliō, -ōnis, m., MULE-*teer.*

multitūdō, -inis, f., [**multus**], *large number,* MULTITUDE, *crowd.*

multō, [multus], adv., *by much, much, far.*

multum, [multus], adv., *greatly, much.* **multum posse** or **valēre,** *to have great power* or *influence.*

multus, -a, -um, *much;* pl. *many.* As noun, m., **multī, -ōrum,** *many people.* **multō diē,** *late in the day.*

Mummius, -ī, m., *L.* MUMMIUS *Achaicus,* who plundered Corinth in 146 B.C.

mundus, -ī, m., *world, universe.* (MUNDANE)

mūnīmentum, -ī, n., [mūniō], *fortification, defence, barrier.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [moenia], *fortify, protect; guard;* of roads, *construct.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., [mūniō], *a fortifying; fortification, defences; protection.* (MUNITIONS)

mūnītus, -a, -um, [mūniō], *fortified, protected.*

mūnus, -eris, n., *duty, service; gift; spectacle, exhibition.* (REMUNERATE)

mūrālis, -e, [mūrus], *of a wall, wall.* (MURAL)

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall; rampart.*

mūs, mūris, c., *mouse.*

Mūs, Mūris, m., [mūs], *Decius* MUS, who sacrificed his life in the battle of Asculum.

mūsculus, -ī, m., [mūs], *little mouse;* as a military term, *long shed,* called by soldiers '*mousie.*'

mutilus, -a, -um, *broken,* MUTILATED.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change, exchange.* (MUTUAL)

Mysia, -ae, f., MYSIA, a country of Asia Minor, south of the Propontis (*Sea of Marmora*).

N

Nābis, -idis, m., NABIS, a tyrant of Lacedaemon.

nactus, see **nancīscor.**

nam, conj., *for.*

nam-que, conj., *for, and in fact.*

nancīscor, -ī, nactus or **nanctus,** *obtain, get; meet with, find, incur.*

Narbō, -ōnis, m., NARBO, chief city of 'the Province,' modern *Narbonne.*

nāre, see **nō.**

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell; recount, describe,* NARRATE.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, *be born; arise, grow; be found; begin.* (NATAL)

Nāsīca, see **Scipiō.**

nātālis, -e, [nātus], *of birth,* NATAL. **nātālis diēs,** *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., [nāscor], *birth; race;* NATION, *people.*

natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **nō**], *swim, float.* (NATATORIUM)

nātūra, -ae, f., [nāscor], NATURE, *character; situation.*

nātūrālis, -e, [nātūra], NATURAL.

nātūrāliter, [nātūrālis], adv., NATURALLY, *by* NATURE.

nātus, -a, -um, [nāscor], *born, arisen;* with words denoting time, *old.* As noun, **nātus, -ī,** m., *son.*

nātus, -ūs, m., [nāscor], *birth;* **minor nātū,** *younger;* **minimus nātū,** *youngest.* **maior nātū,** *elder.*

nau-fragium, -ī, n., [nāvis + frangō], *shipwreck.*

nauta, -ae, m., [for nāvita from nāvis], *sailor.*

nauticus, -a, -um, NAUTICAL, *naval.*

nāvālis, -e, [nāvis], *of ships,* NAVAL.

nāvicula, -ae, f., [dim. of nāvis], *small vessel, boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., [nāvigō], *sailing,* NAVIGATION; *voyage.*

nāvi-gium, -ī, n., [nāvis + agō], *vessel, ship, boat.*

nāv-igō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nāvis + agō], *sail.* (NAVIGATE)

nāvis, -is, f., *ship.* **nāvis longa,** *battle-ship, galley.* **nāvis onerāria,** *transport.*

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [(g)nāvus, *busy*], *do with zeal.* **operam nāvāre,** *do one's best.*

nē, adv., *not.* **nē . . . quidem,** *not even* (emphasizing the word between **nē** and **quidem**).

nē, conj., *that . . . not, lest, not to;* after verbs of fearing, *that.* See **nē quis.**

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, used in asking questions simply for information. **-ne . . . an,** or **-ne . . . -ne,** *whether . . . or.*

nec, see **neque.**

necessāriō, [necessārius], adv., *of* NECESSITY, *unavoidably.*

necessārius, -a, -um, [necesse], *unavoidable,* NECESSARY; *urgent, pressing; related.* As noun, **necessārius, -ī,** m., *kinsman, relative.*

necesse, n., indecl. adj., NECESSARY; as noun, NECESSITY.

necessitās, -ātis, f., [necesse], NECESSITY, *urgency; advantage.*

nec-ne, conj., *or not.*

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill, destroy.*

nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus, *tie, bind.* (con-NECT)

ne-fārius, -a, -um, [ne-fās, *crime*], *wicked, abominable, infamous,* NEFARIOUS.

neg-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [nec], *disregard,* NEGLECT; *overlook.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, say . . . not, say no, refuse.* (NEGATIVE)

neg-ōtium, -ī, n., [nec], *business; task; effort, trouble, difficulty.* (NEGOTIATION)

Nemetēs, -um, m., *the* NEMETES, a Germanic people west of the Rhine.

nē-mō, -inis, [nē + homō], pl. and gen. and abl. sing. not in use, being replaced by forms from **nūllus,** c., *no one, nobody.*

nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.* (NEPOTISM)

Neptūnus, -ī, m., NEPTUNE, a god of the sea, brother of Jupiter.

nē-quā-quam, adv., *by no means.*

ne-que or **nec,** [nē + que], adv., *and not, nor, not, but . . . not.* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*

nē . . . quidem, see **nē.**

nē-quī-quam, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

nē quis, nē quid, *that no one, that nothing.*

Nervius, -ī, m., *a* NERVIAN. Pl., **Nerviī, -ōrum,** *the* NERVII, a warlike people of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, muscle;* pl., *power, force.* (NERVE)

nē-sciō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, —,** *not know, be ignorant.* **nēsciō quis** or **quid,** *I know not who = some one; I know not what = something; some.*

neu, see **nē-ve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen., **neutrīus,** [nē + uter], *neither.* As noun, **neutrī, -ōrum,** m., *neither side.* (NEUTER)

nē-ve or **neu,** conj., *and not, nor, and that . . . not, and lest.*

nex, necis, f., [necō], *violent death, murder; death.*

niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*

nihil or **nīl,** n., indecl., *nothing;* acc. often with adverbial force, *not at all, by no means.* (NIHILIST)

nihil-dum, n., indecl., *nothing as yet.*

nihilō sētius, see **sētius.**

nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing.* **nihilō,** abl., (lit. *by nothing*); *not at all, in no way.* **nihilō minus,** *none the less.*

nimium, -ī, n., *too much.*

nimius, -a, -um, *excessive, too great.*

ni-si, [**nē** + **sī**], conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobrogēs, -um, m., *the* NITIOBROGES, a people in Northern Aquitania.

nītor, nītī, nīxus or **nīsus,** *lean, support one's self; strive, struggle.*

nō, nāre, nāvī, —, *swim, float.*

nōbilis, -e, [nōscō], *noted, renowned; of high rank;* NOBLE. As noun, **nōbilēs, -um,** m., NOBLES, *men of rank;* **nōbilissimus, -ī,** m., *man of highest rank.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, f., [**nōbilis**], NOBILITY; *rank;* NOBLES.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, nocitūrus, (with dat.) *do harm, injure.* (NOXIOUS)

noctū, [**nox**], adv., *by night, at night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, [**nox**], *of* or *for the night, by night,* NOCTURNAL.

nōdus, -ī, m., *knot,* NODE, on the joints of an animal.

Nōla, -ae, f., NOLA, a town in Campania.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, [**nē** + **volō**], *not wish, be unwilling.* **nōlī, nōlīte,** with infin., *do not.*

nōmen, -inis, n., [nōscō], *name, title; fame, renown; account.* (NOMINAL)

nōminātim, [nōminō], adv., *by name.*

nōminātīvus, -a, -um, [nōminō], *belonging to naming,* NOMINATIVE.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nōmen**], *call, name; mention.* (NOMINATE)

nōn, adv., *not, no.* See **nōn nūllus** and **nōn numquam.**

nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um, [nōnāgintā], the *ninetieth.*

nōnāgintā, indecl., *ninety.*

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*

nōn-ne, inter. adv., (expects the answer '*Yes*'), *not?*

nōn nūllus, -a, -um, (not none), *some, several.*

nōn numquam, (not never), *sometimes.*

nōnus, -a, -um, [for **novēnus,** from **novem**], *ninth.* (NONES)

Nōreia, -ae, f., NOREIA, chief city of the *Norici,* a people living south of the Danube, now *Neumarkt.*

Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the* NORICI, NORICAN. As noun, **Nōrica, -ae,** f., *Norican woman.*

nōs, pl. of **ego.**

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, KNOW, *learn.*

noster, -tra, -trum, [nōs], *our, our own.* As noun, **nostrī, -ōrum,** m., *our men, our side.*

nōtitia, -ae, f., [nōtus], *acquaintance.* (NOTICE)

nōtus, -a, -um, [nōscō], *well known, familiar.*

novem, indecl., *nine.* (NOVEMBER)

novitās, -ātis, f., [novus], *newness,* NOVELTY.

novus, -a, -um, *new, fresh, strange.* (NOVEL) Sup., **novissimus,** *last,*

at the rear. As noun, **novissimī, -ōrum,** m., *those at the rear, the rear.* **novissimum agmen,** *the rear.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.* **prīmā nocte,** *early in the night.* **multā nocte,** *late at night.* (equi-NOX)

noxia, -ae, f., [**noceō**], *crime, offence.*

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *be married; marry, wed.*

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nūdus**], *strip; expose, leave unprotected.*

nūdus, -a, -um, *bare,* NUDE; *unprotected.*

nūllus, -a, -um, gen., **nūllīus,** [**nē** + **ūllus**], *not any, none, no.* As noun, **nūllus, -īus,** m., *no one.*

num, inter. adv., (expects the answer '*No*'); *not so . . . is it?* in Indirect Questions, *whether, if.*

Numa, -ae, m., NUMA *Pompilius,* second king of Rome.

Numantia, -ae, f., NUMANTIA, a strongly fortified city in the north of Spain.

Numantīnī, -ōrum, [**Numantia**], m., *inhabitants of* NUMANTIA, *the* NUMANTINES.

nūmen, -inis, n., [**nuō**, *nod*], *divine will; divine power; divinity, god.*

numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**numerus**], *count, number; count out, pay down.* (e-NUMERATE)

numerus, -ī, m., NUMBER, *quantity; position, rank; importance.* (NUMERAL)

Numidae, -ārum, m., *inhabitants of* NUMIDIA, NUMIDIANS; famous as bowmen, and employed by the Romans as light-armed troops. (NOMAD)

Numidia, -ae, f., NUMIDIA, a country west of the Carthaginian territory.

Numitor, -ōris, m., NUMITOR, elder son of Proca.

nummus, -ī, m., (piece of) *money, coin.*

n-umquam, [**nē**], adv., *never.*

num quis, *anyone? any?*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nundinae, -ārum, f., [**novem** + **diēs**], (the ninth day); *the market day,* on which country people came into the city to buy and sell.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nūntius**], *announce, report; give orders.* **nūntiātur,** *word is brought, it is reported.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger; message, news.* (e-NUNCIATE)

nuō, -ere, nuī, nūtus, NOD.

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūpta, -ae, f., [**nūbō**], *bride.*

nūptiae, -ārum, f., [**nūbō**], *wedding,* NUPTIALS.

n-ūsquam, [**nē**], adv., *nowhere, in no place.*

nūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **nuō**, *nod*], *waver, give way.*

nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *nourish, feed.* (NUTRIMENT)

nūtus, -ūs, m., [**nuō**, *nod*], *nod; command;* **ad nūtum,** *instantly.*

nux, nucis, f., *nut.*

nympha, -ae, f., NYMPH.

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.*

ob-, in composition (1) *towards;* (2) *down.*

ob-aerātus, -a, -um, [**aes**], *in debt.* As noun, **ob-aerātus, -ī,** m., *debtor.*

ob-eō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, *go to meet; attend to; fall, die.* (OBITUARY)

ob-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw before* or *to, cast; place, offer; oppose;* OBJECT; *taunt, upbraid with.*

ob-iectus, -a, -um, [ob-iciō], *opposite.*

ob-lātus, part. of **of-ferō.**

ob-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind, lay under* OBLIGATION, OBLIGE.

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvī, -litus, *smear over.*

oblīquus, -a, -um, *slanting.* (OBLIQUE)

oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, *forget.* (OBLIVION)

ob-noxius, -a, -um, [noceō], *liable, guilty; exposed.* (OBNOXIOUS)

ob-oedientia, -ae, f., [audiō], OBEDIENCE.

ob-oediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [audiō], *give ear, listen;* OBEY, *be* OBEDIENT, *be subject.*

ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *overwhelm, bury, crush; destroy.*

obscurus, -a, -um, *dark,* OBSCURE.

ob-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sacrō, from **sacer**], *beseech* in the name of all that is *sacred, implore.*

ob-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *watch,* OBSERVE; *keep track of; heed.*

ob-ses, -idis, c., [sedeō], *hostage; security, pledge.*

ob-sessiō, -ōnis, f., [sedeō], *blockade, siege.* (OBSESSION)

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [sedeō], *besiege, blockade; block.*

ob-sidiō, -ōnis, f., [ob-sideō], *siege, blockade.*

ob-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *take one's place before; resist, withstand, oppose.*

ob-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *bind, lay under obligation.*

ob-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up, barricade, stop up.* (OBSTRUCT)

ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obey.*

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus, *call as witness, appeal to; implore.*

ob-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [teneō], *hold fast, keep, hold; get possession of,* OBTAIN; *prevail; occupy, inhabit.*

ob-tingō, -ere, -tigī, —, [tangō], *fall to the lot of, befall, occur; be assigned.*

ob-trectātor, -ōris, m., [tractō], *disparager, critic.*

ob-tulī, see **of-ferō.**

ob-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *meet; come* or *fall* (by lot).

ob-viam, adv., *in the way; against, to meet.* **obviam īre,** *go to meet.*

ob-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus, *wrap up, muffle, cover.*

oc-cāsiō, -ōnis, f., [ob + cadō], *opportunity,* OCCASION.

oc-cāsus, -ūs, m., [oc-cidō], *setting.* **sōlis occāsus,** *sunset; west.*

oc-cidēns, -entis, [oc-cidō], *setting.* **occidēns sōl,** *the west.*

oc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ob + caedō], *kill, slay.*

oc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus, [ob + cadō], *fall; perish; go down, set.* (OCCIDENT)

oc-cultē, [oc-cultus], adv., *secretly.*

oc-cultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **oc-culō,** *cover*], *hide, conceal; keep secret.*

oc-cultus, -a, -um, [oc-culō, *cover*], *hidden, secret.* As noun, in **occultō,** *in concealment, in secret.* (OCCULT)

oc-cupātiō, -ōnis, f., [oc-cupō], OCCUPATION, *employment;* pl., *business.*

oc-cupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + capiō], *seize, capture, take possession of; fill,* OCCUPY; *attack;* of the attention, *engage.*

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, [**ob**], *run to meet; meet, fall in with, find, encounter; resist, oppose; come to mind,* OCCUR.

Ōceanus, -ī, m., the OCEAN, looked upon by Caesar as one body of water, including the Atlantic Ocean, the English Channel, and the North Sea; *the sea.*

Ocelum, -ī, n., a city of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin.

octāvus, -a, -um, [**octō**], *eighth.* (OCTAVE)

octin-gentī, -ae, -a, [**octō** + **centum**], *eight hundred.*

octō, indecl., *eight.* (OCTOBER)

octōgintā, [**octō**], indecl., *eighty.*

octōnī, -ae, -a, [**octō**], *eight apiece, eight at a time.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.* (OCULIST)

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, def., (pf. translated as if present), *hate.*

odium, -ī, n., [**ōdī**], *hatred,* ODIUM. (ODIOUS)

of-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [**ob** + **fendō**, *ward off*], OFFEND, *be* OFFENSIVE.

of-ferō, -ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātus, *bring before, present,* OFFER; *bestow.*

of-ficium, -ī, n., [**opus** + **faciō**], *service, favor; duty; allegiance; employment,* OFFICE.

oleum, -ī, n., OIL.

ōlim, adv., *formerly; once, once upon a time.*

olus, -eris, n., *vegetables.*

ōmen, -inis, n., *sign,* OMEN.

o-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [**ob**], *send aside, let go; lay aside; neglect, disregard.* (OMIT)

omnīnō, [**omnis**], adv., *altogether;* after negatives, *at all;* with numerals, *in all, only.*

omnis, -e, *every, all.* As noun, pl., **omnēs, -ium,** m., *all men, all.* **omnia, -ium,** n., *all things, everything.* (OMNIBUS)

onerārius, -a, -um, [**onus**], *of burden.* **nāvis onerāria,** *transport.*

onus, -eris, n., *load, burden; cargo.* (ONEROUS)

onustus, -a, -um, [**onus**], *laden.*

opera, -ae, f., [**opus**], *service, work, labor, toil; assistance, aid; attention; means, agency.*

opīmus, -a, -um, *rich;* **spōlia opīma,** *spoils of honor.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., [**opīnor**, *think*], *idea, belief; good* OPINION, *reputation; expectation; impression.*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it is necessary, it behooves; ought; is proper; ought, must.*

oppidānī, -ōrum, m., [**oppidum**], *townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, n., fortified *town, city;* fortified *inclosure, stronghold.*

op-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place opposite,* OPPOSE.

opportūnē, [**opportūnus**], adv., OPPORTUNELY, *advantageously.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, *fit, favorable, advantageous, convenient, suitable,* OPPORTUNE.

op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, [**ob** + **premō**], PRESS *against; overwhelm, crush, destroy; weigh down, burden, overcome; fall upon, surprise.* (OPPRESS)

op-pugnātiō, -ōnis, f., [**op-pugnō**], *assault, attack, siege; storming.*

op-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ob**], *attack, assault; storm, besiege.*

(ops), opis, f., *help; power; wealth.* Pl., **opēs, -um,** *resources, means, riches, wealth; influence; power.*

optimās, -ātis, m., [**optimus**], *aristocrat.* (OPTIMATE)

optimē, [sup. of **bene**], *very well, best.*

optimus, -a, -um, [sup. of **bonus**], *best, very good, most favorable.* (OPTIMIST)

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wish, desire.* (OPTATIVE)

opulēns, -entis, [**ops**], *rich, wealthy,* OPULENT.

opus, n., (used only in nom. and acc.), *necessity, need.* **opus est,** *it is necessary.*

opus, operis, n., *work, labor; structure, works, fortification.* (OPUS)

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., [ōrō], ORACLE; *prophecy; oracle,* the place where oracular responses were given.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., [ōrō], *speech, language;* ORATION, *address; argument, plea; eloquence.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., [ōrō], *speaker,* ORATOR; *envoy.*

ōrātōrius, -a, -um, [ōrātor], *of an* ORATOR, ORATORICAL.

Orbilius, -ī, m., ORBILIUS, teacher of the poet Horace.

orbis, -is, m., *circle,* ORBIT; *world.* **orbis mēnsae,** *round table.* **orbis terrae** or **terrārum,** *the whole earth.*

Orcynia, -ae, f., another name for Hercynia.

ōrdinārius, -a, -um, [ōrdō], *regular,* ORDINARY.

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ōrdō], *set in order, arrange; appoint, establish; record.* (CO-ORDINATE)

ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus, [ōrdō], *begin, undertake; describe.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *row, series,* ORDER, *arrangement; bank* (of oars); *company; class, rank.*

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., ORGETORIX, a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize supreme power in his state.

Ōricum, -ī, n., ORICUM, a seaport on the east coast of the Adriatic Sea.

oriēns, -entis, [orior], *rising.* **oriēns sōl,** *the rising sun = the east.* (ORIENT)

orior, -īrī, ortus, *arise, rise; be descended; originate, spring from; start from.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., [ōrnō], *equipment; decoration,* ORNAMENT, *distinction.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um, [ōrnō], *equipped; adorned, embellished; distinguished.* (ORNATE)

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, equip;* ADORN, *decorate, beautify.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ōs], *speak; argue, plead; beg, entreat, beseech.*

Orpheus, -ī, m., ORPHEUS, a Thracian bard.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face, features; mouth of a river.* (ORAL)

Osismī, -ōrum, m., *the* OSISMI, people in the northwest corner of Gaul.

os-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, [ob], *show, display; point out, declare; disclose, make known.* (OSTENSIBLE)

os-tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of **os-tendō**], *display.*

Ōstia, -ae, f., [ōstium], OSTIA, the seaport of Rome at the mouth of the Tiber.

ōstium, -ī, n., [ōs], *door, doorway; mouth, entrance.*

ostrea, -ae, f., OYSTER.

ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure; peace, quiet.*

ovō, -āre, —, **-ātus,** *rejoice.* (OVATION)

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.* (OVAL)

P

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius.**

pābulātor, -ōris, m., [pābulor], *forager.*

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, [**pābulum**], *forage.*

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder, forage.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pāx**], PACI-*fy, subdue.*

pactum, -ī, n., [**pacīscor,** *bargain*], *agreement; manner, way.* (COMPACT)

paedagōgus, -ī, m., PAEDAGOGUS, a slave who accompanied the children to school and had charge of them at home. (PEDAGOGUE)

Paelignī, -ōrum, m., *the* PAELIGNI, a people of central Italy.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it* REPENTS, *it grieves.* (PENITENT)

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton.* (PAGAN)

palaestra, -ae, f., PALAESTRA, *wrestling school, gymnasium.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

Palātīnus, -a, -um, [**Palātium**], PALATINE.

Palātium, -ī, n., *the* PALATINE *hill.* (PALACE)

Pales, -is, f., PALES, deity of shepherds and cattle.

palla, -ae, f., *the* PALLA, a Roman lady's outer garment.

palma, -ae, f., PALM of the hand, *hand;* PALM-*tree;* PALM-*branch.*

palmātus, -a, -um, [**palma,** *palm*], *embroidered with* PALM *branches.*

palūdāmentum, -ī, n., *general's cloak* of scarlet color.

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pandō, -ere, pandī, passus, *spread out.* **passīs manibus,** *with hands outstretched.* (EX-PAND)

pānis, -is, m., *bread; loaf.*

Papīrius, -ī, m., *L.* PAPIRIUS *Cursor,* general in the Second Samnite war.

papȳrus, -ī, c., PAPYRUS, PAPER made out of the pith of the papyrus reed.

pār, paris, *equal, like, similar, same; well-matched.* **pār atque,** *same as.* As noun, *an equal.* (PAR)

parātus, -a, -um, [**parō**], *prepared; equipped, provided.*

parcē, [**parcus**], adv., *sparingly.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī and **parsī, parsus,** *be sparing; spare.* (PARSIMONY)

parcus, -a, -um, [**parcō**], *sparing, moderate, frugal, temperate.*

parēns, -entis, c., [**pariō**], PARENT.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *obey; submit to, be subject to.*

pariēs, -etis, m., *wall* (in a house).

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bear, bring forth, produce; effect; acquire, obtain.*

Parīsiī, -ōrum, m., *the* PARISII, a Gallic people on the river Sequana (*Seine*). The name survives in PARIS.

pariter, [**pār**], adv., *equally, alike; together.* (PARITY)

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pre-*PARE, *make ready for; obtain, secure.*

pars, partis, f., PART, *share, number; region, district, division; side, direction;* PARTY, *faction; account;* pl., *party.* **pars maior,** *the majority.* **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side.* **in omnēs partēs,** *in every direction.*

Parthī, -ōrum, m., *the* PARTHIANS, inhabitants of PARTHIA, a country southeast of the Caspian Sea.

partim, [**pars**], adv., PARTLY, *in* PART.

partus, see **pariō.**

parum, comp., **minus,** sup., **minimē,** adv., *too little, not enough.*

parvulus, -a, -um, [dim. of **par-**

vus], *very small, very young; trifling, unimportant.* As noun, **parvulus, -ī,** m., *little child, infant.*

parvus, -a, -um, *small, little; trifling, insignificant.* As noun, **parvus, -ī,** m., *a little one, child.*

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed.* In pass., reflexive with dep. force, *graze, feed.* (PASTURE)

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace.* See **mīlle** and **mīlia.**

passus, see **pandō** and **patior.**

pāstor, -ōris, m., [**pāscō**], *herdsman, shepherd.* (PASTOR)

pate-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [**pateō**], *open; disclose.*

patēns, -entis, [**pateō**], *open, accessible.* (PATENT)

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, stand open; extend; be accessible.*

pater, -tris, m., *father.* Pl., **patrēs, -um,** *fathers, forefathers.* **patrēs** or **patrēs cōnscrīptī,** *senators.*

patiēns, -entis, [**patior**], *bearing, enduring,* PATIENT.

patientia, -ae, f., [**patior**], *endurance,* PATIENCE.

patior, -ī, passus, *suffer, endure; allow, permit.* (PASSION)

patria, -ae, f., [**pater**], *fatherland, native land.* (PATRIOT)

patrius, -a, -um, [**pater**], *of a father, fatherly; ancestral.*

patrimōnium, -ī, n., [**pater**], *inheritance* (from a father), PATRIMONY.

patruēlis, -e, [**patruus**], *of a father's brother, of a cousin.* As noun, **patruēlis, -is,** m., *a cousin.*

paucitās, -ātis, f., [**paucus**], *fewness, small number.* (PAUCITY)

paucus, -a, -um, *little;* pl., *few, only a few.* As noun, **paucī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *few, only a few;* **pauca, -ōrum,** n., (*sc.* **verba**), *a few words.*

paulātim, [**paulus**], adv., *little by little; gradually; by degrees; one by one.*

paulis-per, [**paulus**], adv., *for a short time.*

paulō, [abl. of **paulus**], adv., (by) *a little, somewhat.*

paulum, [acc. of **paulus**], adv., *a little, somewhat.*

Paulus, see **Aemilius.**

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor.* As noun, m., *poor man.* (PAUPER)

pavīmentum, -ī, n., PAVEMENT.

pāx, pācis, f., PEACE.

pecūnia, -ae, f., [**pecus**], (wealth in cattle); *property, money.* (PECUNIARY)

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle.*

pedes, -itis, m., [**pēs**], *foot-soldier.* Pl., **peditēs, -um,** *infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, [**pēs**], *on foot,* PEDESTRIAN; *on land, land.* **pedestrēs cōpiae,** *infantry.*

peditātus, -ūs, m., [**pedes**], *infantry.*

peior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** [comp. of **malus**], *worse.*

peius, [comp. of **male**], adv., *worse.*

Peliās, -ae, m., PELIAS, King of Thessaly.

pel-liciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectus, [**per** + **laciō,** *entice*], *allure, entice.*

pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide.* (PELT)

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *strike; drive away; defeat, rout.* (REPEL)

Pelopon-nēsus, -ī, f., [(Greek), *Island of Pelops*], *the* PELOPONNESUS, *Southern Greece.*

Penātēs, -ium, m., the PENATES, *household gods,* guardian gods of the family.

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —, *hang, hang down,* de-PEND.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *weigh out; pay, pay out.* (EXPEND)

penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter,* PENETRATE.

pepercī, see **parcō.**

peperī, see **pariō.**

per, prep. with acc., *through; across, along, over, among; during, in the course of; by, by the hands of, by means of, under pretence of; by reason of; in the name of, by.*

In composition, **per-** adds the force of *through, thoroughly, perfectly, completely, very.*

per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *agitate; go through with, finish; carry out, execute; relate.*

per-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**capiō**], *get, secure, gain; experience, feel.* (PERCEPTION)

per-contātiō, -ōnis, f., [**per-contor,** *inquire*], *questioning, inquiry.*

per-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursus,** *run through, run along.*

per-cussor, -ōris, m., [**per-cutiō**], *murderer, assassin.*

per-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, [**quatiō,** *beat*], *beat, strike, thrust through, pierce; shock.* (PERCUSSION)

per-discō, -ere, -didicī, —, *learn thoroughly.*

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *destroy, ruin; lose.* (PERDITION)

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring through, lead, conduct, bring; win over; prolong; construct, make.*

per-egrīnus, -a, -um, [**ager**], *foreign.* (PEREGRINATION)

perendinus, -a, -um, *after tomorrow;* **perendinō diē,** *day after to-morrow.*

per-ennis, -e, [**annus**], PERENNIAL; *continual, lasting, undying, perpetual.*

per-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** PERISH; *be lost.*

per-equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ride through; ride about.*

per-exiguus, -a, -um, *very small.*

per-facilis, -e, *very easy.*

per-fectus, -a, -um, [**faciō**], *finished, wrought.* (PERFECT)

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry through; carry, bring, report; endure; suffer, submit to.*

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**faciō**], *do thoroughly, finish, perform, carry out, accomplish; cause, effect; bring about, arrange.* (PERFECT)

per-fidia, -ae, f., [**per-fidus**], *faithlessness, treachery,* PERFIDY.

per-frīgēscō, -ere, -frixī, —, [incep. of **frigeō,** *be cold*], *catch cold.*

per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [**frangō**], *break through.*

per-fuga, -ae, m., [**per-fugiō**], *deserter.*

per-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee for refuge; desert.*

per-gō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**regō**], *go on, proceed, advance.*

pergula, -ae, f., (verandah) *school.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, [**perīculum**], *dangerous,* PERILOUS.

perīculum, -ī, n., [**-perior,** *try*], *trial; attempt, risk, danger,* PERIL.

peri-stȳlum, -ī, n., PERISTYLE, an open court surrounded by a colonnade.

perītus, -a, -um, [**-perior,** *try*], *experienced, skilled, skilful; acquainted with.*

per-lātus, see **per-ferō.**

per-legō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *read through.*

per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mān-

sūrus, *continue, re-*MAIN. (PERMANENT)

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let pass; entrust; surrender;* PERMIT, *allow.*

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *deeply move, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce.*

per-multus, -a, -um, *very much;* pl., *very many.*

per-mūtātiō, -ōnis, f., [mūtō], *change, exchange.* (PERMUTATION)

per-niciēs, -ēī, f., [nex], *destruction.*

per-niciōsus, -a, -um, [per-niciēs], *destructive, dangerous,* PERNICIOUS.

pernīcitās, -ātis, f., [pernīx, *nimble*], *swiftness, speed.*

per-paucī, -ae, -a, *very few.* As noun, **per-paucī, -ōrum,** m., *a very few.*

per-petuō, [per-petuus], adv., *continually.*

per-petuus, -a, -um, [petō], *continuous, constant, unbroken,* PERPETUAL. **in perpetuum** (tempus), *forever; for life.*

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through, force a passage.*

Persae, -ārum, m., *the* PERSIANS.

per-saepe, adv., *very often.*

per-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write fully, report.*

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up, pursue; assail, attack; overtake; accomplish.*

Perseus, -ī, m., PERSEUS, the last king of Macedonia.

per-sevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sevērus], *persist,* PERSEVERE, *keep on.*

per-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, *pay in full, pay.*

per-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *see, look; inspect, reconnoitre; perceive, observe; ascertain.* (PERSPECTIVE)

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *convince,* PERSUADE, *prevail upon, induce.* **mihi persuādētur,** *I am convinced.*

per-taedet, -ēre, -taesum, impers., *it wearies, it disgusts.*

per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten thoroughly,* TERRI-fy.

per-territus, -a, -um, [per-terreō], *thoroughly frightened,* TERRI-*fied, panic-stricken.*

per-tinācia, -ae, f., [per-tināx], *perseverance; obstinacy.* (PERTINACITY)

per-tināciter, [per-tināx], adv., *persistently, obstinately.* (PERTINACIOUSLY)

per-tināx, -ācis, [tenāx], *persevering, obstinate.* (PERTINACIOUS)

per-tineō, -ēre, -uī, —, [teneō], *stretch out, extend; reach;* PERTAIN, *concern, belong.*

per-turbātiō, -ōnis, f., [per-turbō], *disturbance, commotion.* (PERTURBATION)

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb greatly, confuse, throw into confusion.*

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *reach, come to; arrive at; attain.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.* **pedibus,** *on foot.* **pedem referre,** *to retreat.* (PEDAL)

pessimus, -a, -um, [sup. of malus], *worst, very bad.* (PESSIMIST)

pestilentia, -ae, f., *plague,* PESTILENCE; *fever.*

petītiō, -ōnis, f., [petō], *candidacy;* PETITION.

petō, -ere, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus,** *seek; go to; make for; get, secure; attack; demand, ask, request; be a candidate for.* **petere ut liceat,** *to ask permission.*

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m., *the* PETROCORII, a Gallic people north of the Garumna (*Garonne*) River.

Petrosidius, -ī, m., *L.* PETROSIDIUS, a brave standard-bearer.

phalanx, -angis, (acc., **phalanga**), f., *compact host, mass,* PHALANX.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., PHARNACES, son of Mithridates, king of Pontus.

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, [**Pharsālia**], *of* PHARSALIA, a town in Thessaly.

Phāsis, -idos, (acc., **Phasim**), *the* PHASIS, a river of Colchis.

Philippus, -ī, m., *Philip V.*, king of Macedon.

Phīneus, -ī, (acc., **Phīnea**), m., PHINEUS, king of Salmydessus in Thrace.

Phrixus, -ī, m., PHRIXUS, son of Athamas.

Pīcentēs, -ium, m., [**Pīcēnum**], *the* PICENES, *inhabitants of* PICENUM, a district in Central Italy.

Pictonēs, -um, m., *the* PICTONES, a Gallic people living on the Atlantic coast, south of the Liger (*Loire*).

pīctūra, -ae, f., [**pingō**, *paint*], *painting,* PICTURE.

pictus, -a, -um, [**pingō**, *paint*], *decorated, embroidered.* (de-PICT)

pietās, -ātis, f., [**pius**], *dutiful conduct, devotion, justice,* PIETY; *loyalty.*

pigmentum, -ī, n., [**pingō**, *paint*], *color, paint,* PIGMENT.

pilleus, -ī, m., (a cone-shaped felt) *cap.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin, pike.*

pīlus, -ī, m., [**pīlum**], with **prīmus,** a division in the army containing the most experienced soldiers. **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** *first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii,* the first centurion of the legion in rank; **prīmum pīlum dūcere,** *to hold the rank of first centurion.*

pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus, *paint.* (de-PICT)

pinna, -ae, f., *feather;* in military language, *battlement.* (PEN)

pīrāta, -ae, m., PIRATE.

piscīna, -ae, f., [**piscis**, *fish*], *pool.*

piscis, -is, m., *fish.* (PISCATORIAL)

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., (1) *Lucius Calpurnius* PISO *Caesoninus,* consul 112 B.C. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius* PISO *Caesoninus,* consul with *Aulus Gabinius,* 58 B.C.; father-in-law of Caesar. (3) *Marcus Pupius* PISO *Calpurnianus,* consul with *M. Valerius Messala,* 61 B.C.

pius, -a, -um, *dutiful,* PIOUS.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, PLEASE, *be agreeable, be welcome to.* Impers., **placet,** *it* PLEASES, *it is agreed, it seems good; it is resolved, it is decided.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**placeō**], *appease; conciliate.* (PLACATE)

plāga, -ae, f., *stroke, blow.*

plāgōsus, -a, -um, [**plāga**], (full of blows), *fond of flogging.*

plānitiēs, -ae, f., [**plānus**], PLAIN.

plānus, -a, -um, *level, flat.* (PLAIN)

plausus, -ūs, m., [**plaudō**, *clap*], *applause.*

plēbēius, -a, -um, [**plēbs**], PLEBEIAN.

plēbs, plēbis, and **plēbēs, -eī** or **-is,** f., *common people,* PLEBEIANS, *populace.*

plēnus, -a, -um, [**pleō**], *full, filled.*

plērum-que, adv., *generally, usually, for the most part.*

plērus-que, -a-que, -um-que, [**plērus,** *very many*], *very many, most.* As noun, **plērī-que, -ōrum-que,**

m., *the greater part, the majority, most.*

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic people near the Nervii.

Plīnius, -ī, m., **Plīnius Maior,** PLINY *the Elder*, a Roman historian and scientist.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album,** *tin.* (PLUMBER)

plūrēs, plūra, gen., **-ium,** *more, several, many.* (PLURAL)

plūrimum, [sup. of **multum**], adv., *very much, most, especially.* See **possum.**

plūrimus, -a, -um, [sup. of **multus**], *most;* pl., *very many, most.*

plūs, plūris, [comp. of **multus**], *more.* **plūs valēre,** *to have more power.* (PLURALITY)

pluteus, -ī, m., *movable screen,* to protect advancing besiegers; *breastwork.*

pluvia, -ae, f., *rain, shower.*

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup.*

poena, -ae, f., *fine, punishment,* PENALTY. **poenās dare,** *to pay the penalty.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m., *the Carthaginians,* so named because they came originally from PHOENICIA.

Poenus, -ī, m., *T. Quinctius* POENUS, dictator in the war with the Gauls, 360 B.C.

poēta, -ae, m., POET.

pol-liceor, -ērī, -itus, [**prō** + **liceor,** *bid*], *promise, offer.*

Polyphemus, -ī, m., POLYPHEMUS, one of the Argonauts.

pompa, -ae, f., *public procession; parade, display.* (POMP)

Pompeiānus, -a, -um, [POMPEIUS], *of* POMPEY, POMPEIAN. As noun, **Pompeiānī, -ōrum,** m., *soldiers of* POMPEY; POMPEY'S *men.*

Pompeius, -ī, m., (1) POMPEIUS, consul in 141 B.C. (2) *Cn.* POMPEIUS *Magnus,* POMPEY *the Great.* (3) *Cn.* POMPEIUS, interpreter for Titurius Sabinus.

Pompilius, see **Numa.**

Pomptīnus, -a, -um, POMPTINE. **Pomptīnae palūdēs,** *the* POMPTINE *Marshes* on the coast of Latium.

pondus, -eris, n., [**pendō**], *weight; quantity.* (PONDEROUS)

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *place, put.* Pass., often *be situated; be dependent, depend on.* **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp.* (POSITION)

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.* (PONTOON)

ponticulus, -ī, m., [dim. of **pōns**], *little bridge.*

Ponticus, -a, -um, [**Pontus**], *of* PONTUS, PONTIC.

ponti-fex, -icis, m., a Roman *high priest.* (PONTIFF)

Pontius, -ī, m., *C.* PONTIUS, general of the Samnites in the Second Samnite war.

Pontus, -ī, m., PONTUS, a country north of the Black Sea.

popa, -ae, m., *the priest's assistant.*

poposcī, see **poscō.**

populāris, -e, [**populus**], *belonging to the* PEOPLE, POPULAR.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate.* (de-POPULATE)

populus, -ī, m., PEOPLE, *nation; the people, the citizens;* POPULACE.

por-, in composition, *forth, forward.*

por-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [**regō**], *stretch out, extend.*

Porsena, -ae, m., *Lars* PORSENA, king of Clusium.

porta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance, passage.* (PORTAL)

por-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, [tendō], *point out, indicate; predict, foretell.* (PORTEND)

por-tentum, -ī, n., [por-tendō], *omen,* PORTENT.

porticus, -ūs, f., [porta], *colonnade,* PORTICO.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, carry, bring.*

portōrium, -ī, n., [portō], *tax, duty.*

portus, -ūs, m., [porta], *harbor,* PORT.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *ask, demand, beg.*

positus, -a, -um, see **pōnō.**

pos-sessiō, -ōnis, f., [pos-sīdō], POSSESSION.

pos-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [por- + sedeō], *hold, occupy,* POSSESS.

pos-sīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus, [por- + sīdō], *take* POSSESSION *of, occupy, seize.*

pos-sum, posse, potuī, —, [potis, *able,* + sum], irr., *be able; can.* **multum (plūrimum) posse,** *to have great (very great) power* or *influence.*

post, adv., *afterwards, after;* often with abl. of degree of difference. **annō post,** *a year later, the following year;* **paucīs post diēbus,** *a few days later.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

post-eā, adv., *afterwards.*

post-eā-quam, conj., *after.*

posterior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** [comp. of posterus], *later.*

posterus, -a, -um, [post], *next, following.* **in posterum,** *for the future.* As noun, **posterī, -ōrum,** m., *descendants,* POSTERITY.

post-hāc, adv., *hereafter, in future.*

postis, -is, m., *door-*POST.

post-quam, conj., *after, when.* **post** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

postrēmō, [abl. of postrēmus], adv., *at last, finally.*

postrēmus, or **postumus,** [sup. of posterus], *last.* **ad postrēmum,** *finally.*

postrī-diē, [posterō diē], adv., *on the day after, next day.* **postrīdiē eius diēī,** *on the following day.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, ask, request;* of things, *require.* (POSTULATE)

Postumius, -ī, m., (1) *Aulus* POSTUMIUS, Roman commander at the battle of Lake Regillus. (2) *Spurius* POSTUMIUS, consul in 321 B.C. (3) *A.* POSTUMIUS, consul in 242 B.C.

potēns, -entis, [part. of possum], *powerful; influential.* (POTENT)

potentia, -ae, f., [potēns], *might, power; influence.* (POTENTIAL)

potentior, -ōris, [comp. of pōtēns], m., *a more powerful man;* pl., *the more powerful.*

potentissimus, -ī, [sup. of potēns], m., *a most powerful man;* pl., *the most powerful.*

potestās, -ātis, f., [potis, *able*], *ability, power, capacity; rule; office, magistracy; opportunity.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus, [potis, *able*], *obtain possession of, acquire, obtain.*

potius, [comp. of potis], adv., *rather, preferably, more.* **potius quam,** *rather than.*

prae, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; in comparison with; on account of.* In composition **prae-** denotes *before, at the head of; very.*

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, [acuō, *sharpen*], *sharpened, pointed; very sharp.*

prae-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [habeō], *hold forth, offer, present; grant, supply; furnish, provide, give; show, exhibit.*

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go before,* PRECEDE; *surpass, excel.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, [caput], *headlong; steep,* PRECIPITOUS.

prae-ceptum, -ī, n., [prae-cipiō], *maxim, wise saying; rule, order; direction, command.* (PRECEPT)

prae-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [capiō], *anticipate; admonish, inform, direct; bid, order; instruct.*

prae-cipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae-ceps], *throw headlong, cast down.* (PRECIPITATE)

prae-cipuē, [prae-cipuus], adv., *especially.*

prae-cipuus, -a, -um, [capiō], *particular, especial.*

prae-clārē, [prae-clārus], adv., *gloriously.*

prae-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [claudō], CLOSE *up, block.* (PRECLUDE)

praecō, -ōnis, m., *herald, crier.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoil, plunder.* (de-PREDATION)

prae-dicātiō, -ōnis, f., [dicō], *praise, boast; assertion, statement.* (PREDICATION)

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, make known, proclaim, declare, report; commend; boast.* (PREDICATE)

prae-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *say beforehand, warn, admonish.* PREDICT, *foretell.*

praedium, -ī, n., *farm, estate.*

praedō, -ōnis, m., [praeda], *robber; pirate.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, [praeda], *pillage, plunder.*

prae-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *extend; construct.*

prae-fectus, -ī, m., [prae-ficiō], *commander;* **praefectus equitum,** *cavalry* PREFECT.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry before, display;* PREFER; *reveal.* **sē praeferre,** *to show one's self superior to.*

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], *place over, place in command of.*

prae-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *fix in front, set in front.* (PREFIX)

prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send forward* or *ahead, send in advance.*

prae-mium, -ī, n., [emō], *reward, recompense; distinction; prize, booty.* (PREMIUM)

prae-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *forewarn.* (PREMONITION)

Praeneste, -is, n., PRAENESTE, strongly fortified town east of Rome.

prae-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prefer.*

prae-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get ready,* PREPARE.

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set over, place in command of; prefer.*

prae-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break off.*

prae-ruptus, -a, -um, [prae-rumpō], *steep.*

prae-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *direct,* PRESCRIBE.

prae-sēns, -entis, [part. of prae-sum], PRESENT, *at hand, in person; immediate; propitious.* **in praesentia,** [sc. tempora], *for the present.*

prae-sentia, -ae, f., [prae-sēns], PRESENCE; *present time.*

prae-sertim, [serō], adv., *especially.*

prae-sidium, -ī, n., [sedeō], *defence, guard, protection, support, aid; garrison, station; fortress.*

prae-stāns, -antis, [stō], *excellent, distinguished, remarkable.*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, (stand before), *be superior, excel; fulfil, perform; show, manifest; furnish, give.* Impers., **praestat,** *it is preferable, it is better.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *have command of, rule, govern; be in charge of, be at the head of.*

praeter, [prae], prep. with acc., *past, beyond; more than; against; except, besides.* In composition, *past, beyond.* (PRETERNATURAL)

praeter-eā, adv., *further, besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** *pass by; disregard; surpass.*

praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let pass, disregard, let go; pass over, overlook.*

praeter-vehor, -ī, -vectus (be borne past), *sail by.*

prae-textus, -a, -um, [texō, *weave*], *bordered;* **toga praetexta,** *purple bordered toga,* worn only by the higher magistrates and the dictator.

praetor, -ōris, m., [prae + eō], *leader, chief; general, commander; judge,* PRAETOR, a magistrate at Rome, next to the consul in rank, charged with the administration of justice.

praetōrium, -ī, n., [praetor], *general's tent, headquarters.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, [praetor], *of the commander,* PRAETORIAN; *of* PRAETORIAN *rank.* **praetōria porta,** *the* PRAETORIAN *gate,* the front gate of a camp, near the **praetōrium.** As noun, **praetōrius, -ōrī,** m., *ex-*PRAETOR.

prae-ūstus, -a, -um, [ūrō], *burnt at the end, hardened by burning.*

prae-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come before, outstrip, anticipate.*

prandium, -ī, n., *lunch, mid-day meal.*

prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *take, grasp.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, PRESS; PRESS *hard; oppress; overwhelm; drive;* pass., *be hard pressed, be in need, be in danger.*

pretium, -ī, n., *price, value; recompense, reward.* (PRECIOUS)

prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse,* im-PRECATION.

prīdem, see **iam.**

prī-diē, adv., *the day before.*

prīmi-pīlus, -ī, m., = **prīmus pīlus,** *first centurion;* see **pīlus.**

prīmō, [abl. of **prīmus**], adv., *at first, first.*

prīmum, [acc. of **prīmus**], adv., *at first, in the first place, for the first time.* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.* See **quam prīmum.**

prīmus, -a, -um, [sup. of **prior**], *first, the first; earliest; foremost.* As noun, **prīmī, -ōrum,** m., *the foremost men; chiefs, nobles.* **prīma, -ōrum,** n., in the phrase **in prīmīs,** *especially.* (PRIME)

prīn-ceps, -ipis, [**prīmus** + **capiō**], *leading, first, chief.* As noun, m., *leader, chief;* PRINCE.

prīn-cipālis, -e, [**prīn-ceps**], *chief, main,* PRINCIPAL.

prīn-cipātus, -ūs, m., [**prīn-ceps**], *supremacy, leadership; chief command.* (PRINCIPATE)

prīn-cipium, -ī, n., [**prīmus** + **capiō**], *beginning.*

prior, -us, gen., **priōris,** comp. adj., [prō], *former,* PRIOR; *first.* As

noun, **priōrēs, -um,** m., *those in advance.*

prīstinus, -a, -um, [prius], *former, old-time, previous, original.* (PRISTINE)

prius, adv., *before, earlier; first; rather.*

prius-quam, conj., *sooner than, before, until.* **prius** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

prīvātus, -a, -um, [prīvō], *personal,* PRIVATE. As noun, **prīvātus, -ī,** m., PRIVATE *citizen.*

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bereave, de-*PRIVE, *rob.*

prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before; for, in behalf of; instead of, as; on account of, in return for; in proportion to, considering, in accordance with.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probus, *honest*], *ap-*PROVE, *think highly of; show to be worthy;* PROVE, *demonstrate.*

Proca, -ae, m., *Silvius* PROCA, king of Alba Longa, the father of Numitor and Amulius.

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go forward, march on; advance;* PROCEED.

Procillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius* PROCILLUS, who was sent by Caesar as an envoy to Ariovistus.

procul, adv., *at a distance, far, afar off.*

prō-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [cumbō, *lie*], *sink down; be beaten down; lie down; lean forward.*

prō-cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take care of, attend to.* (PROCURE)

prō-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-curri, -cursus,** *run* or *rush forward,* ADVANCE.

prōd-eō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itus,** [prō + eō], *come forth, advance.*

prōd-esse, see **prō-sum.**

prōdigium, -ī, n., *omen, portent;* PRODIGY, *wonder.*

prō-ditiō, -ōnis, f., [prō-dō], *betrayal, treason, treachery.*

prō-ditor, -ōris, m., [prō-dō], *traitor.*

prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put forth; hand down; reveal, disclose; transmit; surrender, abandon; betray.*

prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead forth, bring out; prolong, extend.* (PRODUCE)

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, [proelium], *fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

pro-fectiō, -ōnis, f., [pro-ficīscor], *departure, setting out.*

pro-fectus, see **proficīscor.**

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring forth; put forth; mention.*

prō-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], *effect, accomplish, make.* (PROFICIENT)

pro-ficīscor, -ī, -fectus, [incep. of prō-ficiō], *set out, proceed, march.*

pro-fiteor, -ērī, -fessus, [fateor], *declare publicly,* PROFESS; **nōmen profitērī,** *offer, promise, volunteer.*

prō-flīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [flīgō, *dash*], *overthrow, overcome, rout.* (PROFLIGATE)

pro-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee, escape; take refuge.*

prō-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour forth.* **sē profundere,** *rush forward.* (PROFUSE)

prō-gnātus, -a, -um, [prō + (g)nātus, from (g)nāscor], *sprung, descended.*

prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [gradior, *step*], *go forward; advance, make* PROGRESS, *proceed.*

pro-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [habeō], *hold back, check; keep away, hinder, prevent, stop; forbid,* PROHIBIT; *cut off, shut off; protect.*

prō-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw forward; throw, fling, cast, prostrate;* of arms, *throw down; abandon, lose.* (PROJECT)

prō-missum, -ī, n., [prō-mittō], *a* PROMISE.

prō-missus, -a, -um, [prō-mittō], of hair, *hanging down, flowing.*

prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *put forth;* PROMISE.

prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move forward, push forward.* (PROMOTE)

prō-munturium, -ī, n., [mōns], PROMONTORY, *headland, cape.*

prō-nuba, -ae, f., [nūbō], *bridesmaid.*

prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, declare.* (PRONOUNCE)

prō-nus, -a, -um, *bending* or *leaning forward.* (PRONE)

prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost;* prep. with acc., *near.*

prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive forward; drive away, put to flight, defeat.* (PROPEL)

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hurry, hasten.*

propinquitās, -ātis, f., [propinquus], *nearness, vicinity; relationship.* (PROPINQUITY)

propinquus, -a, -um, [prope], *near, neighboring.* As noun, **propinquus, -ī,** m., *relative;* pl., **propinquī, -ōrum,** m., *relatives, kinsfolk.*

propior, -us, gen., **propiōris,** adj. in comp. degree, sup., **proximus,** [prope], *nearer.*

propius, [comp. of **prope**], adv., *nearer.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, put forward, present; declare, explain;* PROPOSE, *offer; raise, display.*

prō-positum, -ī, n., [prō-pōnō], *plan, purpose;* PROPOSITION.

proprius, -a, -um, [prope], *one's own; characteristic, particular.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of, in consequence of.*

propter-eā, adv., *for this reason, therefore.* **propterea quod,** *because.*

prō-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *come forth to fight, fight* on the defensive.

prō-pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **prō-pellō**], *drive off, drive back; ward off, repel.*

prōra, -ae, f., PROW.

prō-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *make public; post, publish, announce; offer for sale;* PROSCRIBE.

prō-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow after; follow up, pursue.* (PROSECUTE)

prō-siliō, -īre, -uī, —, [saliō, *leap*], *leap forward.*

prō-spectus, -ūs, m., [prō-spiciō], *view, sight.* (PROSPECT)

prō-sperē, [prō-sperus], adv., *favorably,* PROSPEROUSLY, *propitiously.*

prō-sperus, -a, -um, [spēs], *favorable, fortunate,* PROSPEROUS; *propitious.*

prō-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [-speciō, *look*], *look forward, look; provide for.*

prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, *be a benefit, benefit, profit, avail.*

prō-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover,* PROTECT.

prō-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off.*

prō-tinus, [**tenus,** *as far as*], adv., *immediately, at once.*

prō-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *produce;* PROTRACT, *prolong.*

prō-tulī, see **prō-ferō.**

prō-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *drive away; repulse.*

prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry forward;* pass., *be carried; ride, drive; put out* (to sea), *sail.*

prō-ventus, -ūs, m., [**prō-veniō**], *outcome; issue, result; success.*

prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *foresee;* PROVIDE *for, look out for, prepare.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., PROVINCE; conquered territory formed into a Roman PROVINCE.

prō-vocātiō, -ōnis, f., [**prō-vocō**], *challenge.* (PROVOCATION)

prō-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call forth, summon; challenge.* (PROVOKE)

prō-volō, -āre, -āvī, —, *fly forward, dash forth.*

proximē, [sup. of **prope**], adv., *nearest; next, last.*

proximus, -a, -um, [sup. of **propior**], *nearest, next, last.*

prūdēns, -entis, [**prō-vidēns**], *foreseeing; experienced,* PRUDENT.

prūdentia, -ae, f., [**prūdēns**], *foresight; knowledge, skill; good sense,* PRUDENCE.

Pseudo-philippus, -ī, m., *the False* PHILIP, PSEUDO-PHILIP, a pretender named Andriscus, who claimed the throne of Macedonia.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, m., PTOLEMY, king of Egypt.

pūblicē, [**pūblicus**], adv., *in the name of the state, as a state,* PUBLICLY.

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pūblicus**], *open to the* PUBLIC; PUBLISH.

Pūbli-cola, -ae, m., [**populus** + **colō**], *Valerius* PUBLICOLA, consul in 509 B.C.

pūblicus, -a, -um, [**populicus**], *of the people, of the state,* PUBLIC, *common.* As noun, **pūblicum, -ī,** n., *public place.* See **rēs pūblica.**

Pūblius, -ī, m., PUBLIUS, a Roman forename.

puella, -ae, f., [**puera**], *girl.*

puer, -ī, m., *child, boy;* **ā puerō,** *from boyhood.*

puerīlis, -e, [**puer**], *boyish, childish,* PUERILE.

pueritia, -ae, f., [**puer**], *boyhood, childhood.*

puerulus, -ī, m., [dim. of **puer**], *little boy.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m., *dagger, poniard.*

pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle; fighting; dispute.*

pugnāx, -ācis, [**pugnō**], *fond of fighting,* PUGNACIOUS.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pugna**], *fight, contend; engage* in battle. **pugnātum est,** *the battle raged.* (PUGNACIOUS)

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful, handsome; fair; noble, illustrious.*

Pullō, -ōnis, m., PULLO, a brave centurion.

pullus, -ī, m., *young fowl, chicken.*

puls, pultis, f., *meal,* PULSE.

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *beat, paw.* (PULSATE)

pulsus, see **pellō.**

Pulvillus, -ī, m., *Horatius* PULVILLUS, consul in 509 B.C.

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust.* (PULVERIZE)

Pūnicus, -a, -um, [**Poenī**], PUNIC, *Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**poena**], *punish, chastise.* (PUNITIVE)

pūpillus, -ī, m., *orphan, ward.* (PUPIL)

puppis, -is, f., *stern; ship.*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pūrus** + **agō**], *make clean; free from blame, excuse.* (PURGE)

purpureus, -a, -um, [**purpura,** PURPLE], PURPLE.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider, believe, judge.* (PUTATIVE)

Pydna, -ae, f., PYDNA, a town near the coast in Macedonia, north of Mt. Olympus.

Pyrēnaeī (**montēs**), *the* PYRENEES *Mountains,* between Spain and France.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., PYRRHUS, king of Epirus.

Pȳthia, -ae, f., PYTHIA, the priestess who uttered the responses of the Delphic Apollo.

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus.**

quā, [abl. fem. of **quī,** originally sc. **viā** or **parte**], adv., *where.*

quadra, -ae, f., [**quattuor**], *square table.* (QUADRATIC)

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, [**quadrāgintā**], *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā, [**quattuor**], indecl., *forty.*

quadrāns, -antis, m., [**quattuor**], *farthing,* a small copper coin worth less than a cent. (QUADRANT)

quadrīgae, -ārum, f., [**quattuor** + **iugum**], *four-horse chariot.*

quadrin-gentēsimus, -a, -um, [**quadrin-gentī**], *the four hundredth.*

quadrin-gentī, -ae, -a, [**quattuor** + **centum**], *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek, look for; desire, require; inquire, ask.* (QUERY)

quaestiō, -ōnis, f., [**quaerō**], *investigation,* QUESTIONING, *inquiry.*

quaestor, -ōris, m., [**quaerō**], QUAESTOR, a *state-treasurer;* of the army, *quartermaster general.*

quaestus, -ūs, m., [**quaerō**], *gain, profit.*

quālis, -e, [**quī**], inter., *of what kind? what kind of?* rel., *of such a kind, such as, as.* (QUALITY)

quam, [**quī**], adv. and conj., *how much, how;* with superlatives (with or without **possum**), *as possible;* after comparatives and comparative expressions, *than, as;* with expressions of time, *after.* **tam . . . quam,** *so . . . as.* **quam diū,** *as long as.*

quam diū, see **quam.**

quam ob rem, (1) inter., *on what account? why?* (2) rel., *on account of which, why.*

quam prīmum, adv., *as soon as possible.*

quam-quam, conj., *although.*

quam-vīs, [**volō**], conj. (as much as you will), *however much, although.*

quandō, (1) inter. adv., *at what time? when?* (2) indef. adv., *at any time, ever;* (3) conj., *when, since.*

quantō, [**quantus**], adv., *by how much, how much.*

quantō opere, see **quantus.**

quantum, [**quantus**], adv., rel., *so much as, to as great an extent;* inter., *how much? how far?*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., rel., *as great as, as;* inter., *how great? how much?* **tantum . . . quantum,** *so much, so far . . . as.*

As noun, (with Gen. of the Whole), **quantum bonī,** *how much advantage.* **quantō opere,** *how much, how deeply.* **quantus . . . tantus,** *as much . . . as, as great . . . as.*

quā rē, *from which thing, therefore.*

quārtānus, -a, -um, [**quārtus**], *of the fourth.*

quārtus, -a, -um, [**quattuor**], *fourth.*

qua-si, adv. and conj., *as if, as though.*

quattuor, indecl., *four.* (QUADRUped)

quattuor-decim, [**quattuor** + **decem**], indecl., *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and, but.*

quem ad modum, *in what way, how.*

queror, -ī, questus, *complain, lament; complain of.* (QUERULOUS)

quī, quae, quod, gen., **cuius,** inter. adj. pron., *which? what? what kind of?*

quī, quae, quod, gen., **cuius,** rel. pron., *who, which, that;* at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a personal or demonstrative pronoun.

quī, quae or **qua, quod,** indef. pron., *any, any one,* or *anything,* used both as subst. and as adj. **sī quī,** *if any one.*

quia, conj., *because, since.*

quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quid, inter. pron., *what?* See **quis.**

uī-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam, and **quod-dam,** indef. pron., *a certain one, a certain thing.* As adj., **quī-dam, quae-dam, quod-dam,** *a certain, some, certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least.* **nē . . . quidem,** *not even;* the word emphasized is always placed between **nē** and **quidem.**

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest,* QUIET; *sleep.*

quiētus, -a, -um, [**quiēscō,** *rest*], *at rest, inactive;* QUIET.

quī-n, [old abl. **quī** + **-ne**], conj., *that not, but that, without;* after words expressing doubt or suspicion, *that;* after **dēterreō, retineō,** etc., trans. by *from* with a participle. **quīn etiam,** *moreover.*

Quīnctius, see **Cincinnatus, Poenus,** and **Flāmininus.**

quīnc-ūnx, -uncis, [**quīnque** + **ūncia**], QUINCUNX, a figure like the five spot on dice.

quīn-decim, [**quīnque** + **decem**], indecl., *fifteen.*

quīn-gentēsimus, -a, -um, [**quīngentī**], *the five hundredth.*

quīn-gentī, -ae, -a, [**quīnque** + **centum**], *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, [**quīnque**], *five each, five at a time.*

quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, [**quīnquāgintā**], *fiftieth.*

quīnquāgintā, [**quīnque**], indecl., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl., *five.*

quīnquiēs, [**quīnque**], adv., *five times, for the fifth time.*

quīntum, [**quīntus**], adv., *for the fifth time.*

quīntus, -a, -um, [**quīnque**], *fifth.*

Quīntus, -ī, m., [**quīnque**], QUINTUS, a Roman forename.

Quirīnus, -ī, m., QUIRINUS, the name of Romulus when he was worshiped as a god after his death.

quis, quid, gen., **cuius,** inter. pron., *who? what?* Neut. **quid,** with Gen. of the Whole, **quid cōnsilī,** *what plan?*

quis, —, **quid,** indef. pron., often after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num,** *any one, anything.* As adj., **quī, quae** or **qua, quod,** *any.* **sī quis,** *if any one.* **nē quis,** *that not any one, that no one.*

quis-nam, —, **quid-nam,** inter., *who, pray? what, pray?* As adj., **quī-nam, quae-nam, quod-nam,** *of what kind, pray?*

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam or **quodpiam,** indef. pron., *any one, anything;* as adj., *any.*

quis-quam, —, **quid-quam,** indef. pron., *any one, anything.* As adj., *any.*

quis-que, quid-que, indef. pron., *each one, each thing.* As adj., **quis-que, quae-que, quod-que,** *each, every.*

quis-quis, ———, **quid-quid,** indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs, [**quī** + **vīs,** from **volō**], indef. pron., *any one, anything you please.* As adj., **quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quod-vīs,** *any whatever.*

quō, abl. of **quī** and **quis.**

quō, adv. and conj.: (1) **quō,** [dat. or abl. of **quī**], adv., inter., *whither? to what place? where?* rel., *whither, where, when.* Indefinite, after **sī** and **nē,** *to any place, to any point, anywhere.* (2) **quō,** [abl. of **quī**], conj., used especially with comparatives and followed by subj., *in order that, that, that thereby.* **quō minus,** *that not;* often best translated by *from* with a participle.

quo-ad, conj., *as long as, until, till.*

quod, (1) as adv., *with respect to which.* **quod sī,** *but if, and yet if.* (2) conj., *that, in that; because, inasmuch as; as to the fact that, so far as.* **propterea quod,** *because.*

quō minus, see **quō.**

quō modo, inter. adv., *in what manner? in what way? how?*

quon-dam, [**quom,** old form of **cum**], adv., *at some time, at one time; once, formerly;* of the future, *some day, hereafter.*

quon-iam, [**quom,** old form of **cum**], conj., *since, as, because, whereas.*

quo-que, post-positive adv., *also, too.*

quō-que = **et quō.**

quōrsum, [**quō** + **versus**], adv., *to what place? whither?*

quot, indecl., *how many? as many as.*

quot-annīs, adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotiēs, [**quot**], adv., *as often as; how often;* inter., *how often?*

quotus, -a, -um, [**quot**], *of what number, what;* **quota hōra,** *what o'clock?*

R

rabies, (gen. lacking), f., *madness.*

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root;* of an elevation, *foot, base.* (RADICAL)

raeda, -ae, f., (four-wheeled) *wagon.*

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough.* (RAMIFICATION)

rapāx, -ācis, [**rapiō**], *grasping,* RAPACIOUS.

rapidus, -a, -um, [**rapiō**], *swift,* RAPID.

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize and carry off, seize, snatch; hasten, hurry; destroy, pillage.* (RAPINE)

raptor, -ōris, m., [**rapiō**], *robber, plunderer.*

rārus, -a, -um, *thin;* RARE, *few; scattered, in small parties.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., [**reor**], *reckoning, enumeration, calculation, account, sum; plan, nature, manner, method, means; science; reason, ground, judgment; regard, consideration, transaction.* (RATIO, RATIONAL)

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

ratus, see **reor.**

Rauracī, -ōrum, m., *the* RAURACI, a people along the Rhine, north of the Helvetii.

re-, red-, inseparable particle, *again, back.*

re-belliō, -ōnis, f., [**bellum**], *uprising, revolt,* REBELLION.

re-bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *revolt,* REBEL, *renew the struggle.*

Rebilus, see **Canīnius.**

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go back,* RECEDE, *withdraw, retreat; retire; desist.*

recēns, -entis, *fresh;* RECENT, *late.* As noun, **recentēs, -ium,** m., *the unwearied.*

re-cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, —, *review.* (RECENSION)

receptus, -ūs, m., [**recipiō**], *retreat.*

re-cessus, -ūs, m., [**re-cēdō**], *retreat; means of retreat.* (RECESS)

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**capiō**], *take back, recover, win;* RECEIVE, *admit.* **sē recipere,** *to withdraw, retreat; recover.*

re-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**citō,** *quote*], *read aloud,* RECITE.

re-clīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**clīnō,** *bend*], *bend back.* **sē reclīnāre,** *lean back,* RECLINE.

rēctē, [**rēctus**], adv., *rightly, properly; nobly.*

rēctus, -a, -um, [**regō**], *straight.* (RECTI-fy)

re-cuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**capiō**], *recover, regain.* (RECUPERATE)

re-cūsātiō, -ōnis, f., [**re-cūsō**], *refusal.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**causa**], *refuse, decline; raise objections to.*

red-, see **re-.**

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, restore, return; pay back; make,* RENDER; *proclaim; hand over, deliver.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go back, return, resort; be reduced.*

red-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**agō**], *drive back; reduce; render, make.* (REDACTION)

red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [**emō**], *buy back, purchase; ransom.* (REDEMPTION)

red-integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**integer,** *whole*], *renew; revive.*

red-itiō, -ōnis, f., [**eō**], *a going back, returning.*

red-itus, -ūs, m., [**eō**], *return.*

Redonēs, -um, m., *the* REDONES, a people in northwestern Gaul.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *draw back; lead back, bring back; accompany; restore;* REDUCE.

re-ferō, -ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātus, *carry back, bring back; bring, carry, convey* to a person or place; *pay back, return, requite; ascribe,* REFER; RELATE. **sē referre,** *go back, return.* **pedem referre,** *to retreat.* **grātiam referre,** *to make return, requite.* **ad senātum referre,** *to lay a matter before the senate.*

re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**faciō**], *reconstruct, repair, restore; refresh; recruit, reënforce.*

re-fluō, -ere, —, —, *flow back, recede.*

re-foveō, -ēre, -fōvī, -fōtus, *warm again; refresh, revive.*

re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee back, flee; escape.* (REFUGE)

re-fulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī, —, *flash back, reflect light, glitter, gleam.* (REFULGENT)

rēgālis, -e, [**rēx**], *of a king, royal,* REGAL.

rēgia, -ae, f., [**rēgius**], *palace.*

rēgīna, -ae, f., [**rēx**], *queen.*

Rēgīnus, -ī, m., *C. Antistius* REGINUS, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

regiō, -ōnis, f., [**regō,** *keep straight*], *direction, line;* REGION, *country, district.*

rēgius, -a, -um, [**rēx**], *of a king, kingly,* REGAL, *royal; magnificent.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**rēgnum**], REIGN, *be king; be supreme.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., [**rēx**], *kingship, royalty; dominion, sovereignty, kingdom, throne.* (REIGN)

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *direct, control, rule.*

re-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [**gradior,** *step*], *go back, return; retreat.* (REGRESSION)

rēgulus, -ī, m., [dim. of **rēx**], *petty king, prince.*

Rēgulus, -ī, m., [dim. of **rēx**], *M. Atilius* REGULUS, Roman general in the First Punic War.

re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**iaciō**], *throw back, hurl back;* of ships, *carry back; drive back, repulse; throw away, cast aside; refuse,* REJECT.

re-lātus, see **re-ferō.**

re-lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *banish, remove.* (RELEGATE)

re-līctus, see **re-linquō.**

re-ligiō, -ōnis, f., [**legō**], *sense of right, duty; religious scruple; fear of the gods;* RELIGION, *worship, religious rite.*

re-linquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctus, *leave, leave behind; desert, abandon;* of a siege or attack, *give up; bequeath.* (RELINQUISH)

re-liquiae, -ārum, f., [**linquō**], *remnant, rest.* (RELIQUARY)

re-liquus, -a, -um, [**linquō**], *remaining, the rest.* As noun, **reliquī, -ōrum,** m., *the rest.* **reliquum, -ī,** n., *remainder, rest.* **nihil reliquī,** *nothing left.*

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, —, *stay behind,* REMAIN.

rēmex, -igis, m., [**rēmus** + **agō**], *oarsman, rower.*

Rēmī, -ōrum, m., *the* REMI, a Gallic people, about the head waters of the Axona (*Aisne*); chief city, Durocortorum, now *Rheims.*

rēmigō, -āre, —, —, [**rēmex**], *row.*

re-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *move back, go back.* (REMIGRATE)

re-missus, -a, -um, [**re-mittō**], *relaxed; mild;* REMISS.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back; throw back; relax, diminish;* REMIT.

re-mōtus, -a, -um, [**re-moveō**], *far off,* REMOTE.

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move back,* REMOVE, *draw away, drive away.*

Remus, -ī, m., REMUS, twin brother of Romulus.

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the* REMI.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**novus**], *renew, restore; revive.* (RENOVATE)

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back word, report.* (RENOUNCE)

reor, rērī, ratus, *believe, think, suppose; reckon.* (RATI-fy)

re-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare again, renew, revive.* (REPARATION)

re-pellō, -ere, rep-pulī, re-pulsus, *drive back,* REPULSE, REPEL; *disappoint; reject, refuse.*

repēns, -entis, *sudden, unexpected.*

repente, [**repēns,** *sudden*], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, [**repēns,** *sudden*], *sudden, hasty, unexpected.*

re-periō, -īre, rep-perī or **re-perī, re-pertus,** *find out; discover, find; learn.*

re-petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *seek again; demand; exact.* **repetundae** (sc. **pecūniae**), *extortion.* (REPEAT, REPETITION)

re-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill again, fill up; com-*PLETE. (REPLETE)

re-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put back, replace, restore; renew.* (REPOSE)

re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry back.* (REPORT)

re-potia, -ōrum, n., [**potō,** *drink*], *return banquet.*

re-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *seize, catch; blame, find fault with, reprove; criticise,* REPREHEND.

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, [**premō**], PRESS *back; check, prevent; confine, restrain,* REPRESS.

re-pudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pudet**], *put away, divorce; reject, scorn,* REPUDIATE.

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be opposed, oppose, fight back, resist.*

re-pulsus, see **re-pellō.**

re-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think over; meditate, reflect.* (REPUTE)

re-quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest.* (REQUIEM)

re-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus, *rest.* (REQUIEM)

re-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [**quaerō**], REQUIRE.

rēs, reī, f., *thing, object; matter, respect; affair, event, success; circumstance, consideration, fact; condition, lot; property, possessions; object, project, business; campaign.* **rēs mīlitāris,** *warfare, military science.* **rēs novae,** *a revolution.* **quā rē,** *therefore, and for this reason.* **rē vērā,** *indeed, in truth.* See **rēs pūblica.**

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut off, cut down, break up, destroy; annul, repeal.* (RESCIND)

re-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī or **-sciī, -scītus,** [**scīscō,** *inquire*], *learn, find out, discover.*

re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep back,* RESERVE, *keep.*

re-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *remain; halt, stop, stand still;* RESIST, *oppose, withstand.*

re-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [**-speciō,** *look*], *look back, look back upon, gaze at; consider,* RESPECT.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply,* RESPOND.

re-spōnsum, -ī, n., [**re-spondeō**], *answer, reply;* RESPONSE of oracle.

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *commonwealth, state,* REPUBLIC; *public interest, government.*

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [**statuō**], *replace, rebuild; put back, restore, revive.* (RESTITUTION)

rēte, -is, n., *net, snare.*

rēticulum, -ī, n., [**rēte**], *little net, net-work bag.* (RETICULE)

re-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [**teneō**], *hold back, keep,* RETAIN; *restrain, de-*TAIN; *preserve, main-*TAIN.

ret-tulī, see **re-ferō.**

re-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, [**vellō,** *pull*], *pull back; tear away.* (REVULSION)

re-verentia, -ae, f., [**vereor**], *respect, regard,* REVERENCE.

re-vertō, -ere, -vertī, (only in tenses from pf. stem), and **re-vertor, -ī, -versus,** *return, come back, go back;* REVERT.

re-vinciō, -īre, -vinxī, -vinctus, *bind fast, bind, fasten.*

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *recall, take back; call off.* (REVOKE)

rēx, rēgis, m., [**regō**], *king, monarch, ruler, chieftain.*

Rhea, -ae, f., RHEA *Silvia,* daughter of Numitor.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the* RHINE *river.*

rhētor, -ōris, m., RHETORICIAN, teacher of rhetoric or oratory.

rhētoricus, -a, -um, [**rhētor**], *of a* RHETORICIAN, RHETORICAL.

Rhodanus, -ī., m., *the* RHONE *river.*

Rhodus, -ī, f., RHODES, a city in the island of RHODES south of Asia Minor.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh; laugh at, mock, de-*RIDE. (RIDICULOUS)

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* of a river. (RIPARIAN)

rīte, [**rītus**], adv., *with proper ceremonies, duly, rightly, fitly.*

rītus, -ūs, m., *religious ceremony,* RITE.

rīvus, -ī, m., *stream.* (RIVULET)

rōbur, -oris, n., *hard wood, oak; strength, vigor.*

rōdō, -ere, rōsī, rōsus, *gnaw, peck.*

rogitō, -āre, -āvī, —, [freq. of **rogō**], *ask* or *inquire* (eagerly).

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question; beg, request.*

Rōma, -ae, f., ROME.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [**Rōma**], ROMAN. As noun, **Rōmānus, -ī,** m., *a* ROMAN; pl., *the* ROMANS.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., ROMULUS, founder and first king of Rome. See **Silvius.**

rōstrum, -ī, n., [**rōdō,** *gnaw*], *beak, bill; ship's beak, prow;* pl., **Rōstra,** *the* ROSTRA, a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.* (ROTATE)

Rubicō, -ōnis, m., *the* RUBICON, a small river, which formed the boundary between Caesar's province and Italy.

rubus, -ī, m., *bramble, brier.*

Rūfus, -ī, m., [**rūfus,** *reddish*], *Publius Sulpicius* RUFUS, a lieutenant of Caesar.

ruīna, -ae, f., [**ruō**], *rushing down, falling;* RUIN, *destruction; fallen building,* RUIN.

Rulliānus, see **Fabius.**

rūmor, -ōris, m., RUMOR, *report.*

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, *break, break down; rend; destroy.*

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus, *fall, go to* RUIN; *overthrow; hasten.*

rūpēs, -is, f., [**rumpō**], *cliff; rock.*

rūrsus or **rūrsum,** [= **re-vorsus** or **re-vorsum**], adv., *turned back; back; in turn; on the contrary, again, anew.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country; lands, fields, estate.* (RURAL)

rūsticus, -a, -um, [**rūs**], *of the country,* RURAL, RUSTIC. As noun, **rūsticus, -ī,** m., *countryman,* RUSTIC.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., *the* RUTENI, a Gallic people, west of the Cévennes; part of them were within the limits of 'the Province,' and were hence called **Rutēnī prōvinciālēs.**

Rutīlius, -ī, m., *P.* RUTILIUS *Lupus,* consul in 90 B.C.

Rutilus, -ī, m., *M. Sempronius* RUTILUS, one of Caesar's officers.

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, *of the* SABINES, SABINE. As noun, **Sabīnī, -ōrum,** m., *the* SABINES, dwelling in central Italy north of Latium.

Sabīnus, see **Titurius.**

Sabis, -is, m., *the* SABIS, *the Sambre,* a river in the central part of Belgic Gaul, flowing northeast into the Mosa (*Meuse*).

sacer, -cra, -crum, *consecrated,* SACRED; *accursed.* **Via Sacra,** the principal street in Rome. See **sacrum.**

sacerdōs, -ōtis, c., [**sacer**], *priest, priestess.* (SACERDOTAL)

sacerdōtium, -ī, n., [**sacerdōs**], *priesthood.*

sacrārium, -ī, n., [**sacrum**], *shrine, sanctuary.*

sacri-ficāns, -antis, m., [**sacrificō**], *person offering a* SACRIFICE.

sacri-ficium, -ī, n., [**sacrum** + **faciō**], SACRIFICE.

sacri-ficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sacrum** + **faciō**], SACRIFICE.

sacrum, -ī, n., [**sacer**], *something* SACRED; SACRI-*fice; sacred vessel;* pl., *religious rites.*

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.* **saepe numerō,** *oftentimes, repeatedly.*

saepēs, -is, f., *hedge.*

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, [**saevus**], *be fierce, rage, rave.*

saevus, -a, -um, *raging, fierce,* SAVAGE; *cruel, harsh.*

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, -ī, m., [**sagitta**], *bowman.*

sagulum, -ī, n., [dim. of **sagum**], (military) *cloak; traveling-cloak.*

sagum, -ī, n., (a thick woolen) *cloak.*

Saguntīnī, -ōrum, [**Saguntum**], m., *the* SAGUNTINES, *inhabitants of* SAGUNTUM.

Saguntīnus, -a, -um, [**Saguntum**], *of* or *belonging to* SAGUNTUM.

Saguntum, -ī, n., SAGUNTUM, a town on the east coast of Spain.

salīnum, -ī, n., [**sal,** SALT], SALT-*cellar.*

Salmydessus, -ī, m., SALMYDESSUS, a town in Thrace.

salsus, -a, -um, [**salīre,** *to salt*], SALTED.

saltā-trīx, -īcis, f., [**saltō,** *dance* + fem. suffix **-trīx** = *agent*], *dancing girl.*

saltem, adv., *at least, even.*

salūs, -ūtis, f., [**salvus,** *well*], *health, welfare; safety.*

salūtātis, -e, [**salūs**], *pertaining to health, healthful, wholesome,* SALUTARY.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**salūs**], *greet, hail,* SALUTE.

Salvē, [imperative of **salveō,** *be well*], *"Welcome."*

salvus, -a, -um, *well, sound, safe.* (SALVATION)

Samarobrīva, -ae, f., SAMAROBRIVA, a city of the Ambiani; now *Amiens.*

Samnītēs, -ium, m., *the* SAMNITES, a people on the south and east of Latium.

sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus, *render sacred, confirm, ratify.* (SANCTI-fy)

sānctus, -a, -um, [**sanciō**], *sacred, solemn; ordained.*

sānē, [**sānus**], adv., *soundly, reasonably; by all means, truly, certainly, of course.* (SANELY)

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood, bloodshed.* (SANGUINARY)

Santonēs, -um, or **Santonī, -ōrum,** m., *the* SANTONES, a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garonne.

sānus, -a, -um, *sound, whole, healthy, sober,* SANE.

sapiēns, -entis, [sapiō], *wise, sensible, discreet.* As noun, m., *man of wisdom, sage.*

sapienter, [sapiēns], adv., *wisely.*

sapiō, -ere, -īvī, —, *taste; be sensible, understand.*

sarcinae, -ārum, f., *baggage, pack* that each soldier carried.

satelles, -itis, c., *attendant; courtier.* (SATELLITE)

satis, adj., n., indecl., *enough, sufficient,* SATIS-*factory.* As noun, *enough, sufficiency.* As adv., *enough, sufficiently, quite; somewhat;* often used as adj. with Gen. of the Whole, as **satis causae,** *sufficient reason.* Comp., **satius,** *better, preferable.*

satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, SATISFY; *make restitution; appease, placate; apologize.*

Sāturnia, -ae, f., [**Sāturnus**], SATURNIA, citadel built by SATURNUS.

Sāturnus, -ī, m., [serō], SATURNUS, ancient king of Latium; afterwards Roman god of agriculture.

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded; ill, sick.*

saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*

Scaevola, -ae, m., [**scaevus,** *left*], *C. Mucius* SCAEVOLA, who burned off his right hand, and received the surname **Scaevola,** *left-handed.*

scālae, -ārum, f., *ladder,* SCALING-*ladder.*

scamnum, -ī, n., *stool, step.*

scapha, -ae, f., *light boat,* SKIFF.

scelerātus, -a, -um, [scelus], *wicked, criminal; desecrated.* As noun, **scelerātus, -ī,** m., *a criminal.*

scelestus, -a, -um, [scelus], *infamous, impious, wicked.*

scelus, -eris, n., *wicked deed, crime; sin, wickedness.*

scēptrum, -ī, n., SCEPTRE.

schola, -ae, f., SCHOOL.

sciēns, -entis, [sciō], *knowing, understanding; skilled, expert.*

scientia, -ae, f., [sciēns], *knowledge, skill,* SCIENCE.

scī-licet, [scīre licet], adv., *you may know, of course, forsooth, evidently.*

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, *tear; tear down, break down.* (RESCIND)

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know, know how; understand, perceive.*

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., [scīpiō, *staff*], (1) *Cn. Cornelius* SCIPIO, consul in 222 B.C. (2) *P. Cornelius* SCIPIO, defeated by Hannibal at the Ticinus; killed in battle in Spain, 212 B.C. (3) *P. Cornelius* SCIPIO *Africanus Maior,* conqueror of Hannibal in Africa. (4) *L. Cornelius* SCIPIO *Asiaticus,* conqueror of Antiochus in *Asia.* (5) *Cn. Cornelius* SCIPIO, consul in 222 B.C. (6) *P. Cornelius* SCIPIO *Aemilianus Africanus Minor,* destroyer of Carthage in 146 B.C. (7) *P. Cornelius* SCIPIO *Nasica,* consul in 111 B.C. (8) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius* SCIPIO, Pompey's father-in-law.

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., "*scorpion,*" a small catapult. See **catapulta.**

scrība, -ae, m., [scrībō], SCRIBE, *clerk, secretary.*

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write; communicate.* (SCRIPT)

scrīnium, -ī, n., *case, box.*

scrīptor, -ōris, m., [scrībō], SCRIBE, *copyist, clerk; writer, author.*

scrīptūra, -ae, f., [scrībō], *a writing, composition.* (SCRIPTURE)

scrobis, -is, c., *ditch.*

scrūpulōsē, [scrūpulōsus], adv., *carefully, accurately,* SCRUPULOUSLY.

scurra, -ae, m., *buffoon, jester.* (SCURRILOUS)

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

sē, sēsē, see suī.

sē- or **sēd-,** inseparable prefix, *apart, away from.*

sē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go apart, withdraw, separate, retire; rebel, revolt,* SECEDE.

sē-cessiō, -ōnis, f., [sē-cēdō], *revolt,* SECESSION.

sē-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [claudō], *shut apart* or *off.* (SECLUDE)

secundum, [sequor], prep. with acc., *along, next to, by the side of; according to.*

secundus, -a, -um, [sequor], SECOND, *next; propitious, favorable.*

secūris, -is, f., [secō], *ax; power, authority.*

sē-cūrus, -a, -um, [cūra], *careless,* SECURE.

sed, conj., *but; yet, but yet.*

sēd-, see sē-.

sē-decim, [sex + decem], indecl., *sixteen.*

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, *sit; be encamped; settle, be established.* (SESSION)

sēdēs, -is, f., [sedeō], *seat, chair; throne; habitation, settlement.*

sedīle, -is, n., [sedeō], *chair, seat.*

sēd-itiō, -ōnis, f., [eō], *dissension, civil discord, rebellion; strife, riot, quarrel,* SEDITION.

sē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, lead astray,* SEDUCE.

Sedulius, -ī, m., SEDULIUS, a chief of the Lemovices.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., *the* SEDUSII, a German tribe.

Segovax, -actis, m., SEGOVAX, a British chieftain.

sē-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [gregō, from grex], (flock apart), *remove, separate.* (SEGREGATE)

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., *the* SEGUSIAVI, a Gallic people, subject to the Aedui.

sella, -ae, f., [sedeō], *seat, chair.*

semel, adv., *once.*

sēmen, -inis, n., [serō], *seed.* (dis-SEMINATE)

sēmentis, -is, f., [sēmen], *sowing; seeding.*

sēmināriu̇m, -ī, n., [sēmen], SEMINARY.

sēmita, -ae, f., *path.*

semper, adv., *always, continually, ever.*

Semprōnius, -ī, m., (1) *Ti.* SEMPRONIUS *Longus,* consul in 218 B.C.; defeated at the river Trebia. (2) *M.* SEMPRONIUS *Rutilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

Sēna, -ae, f., *Sena,* a town in Umbria in northeastern Italy, near which Hasdrubal was defeated and killed in 207 B.C.

senātor, -ōris, m., [senex], SENATOR.

senātōrius, -a, -um, [senātor], *of a senator,* SENATORIAL.

senātus, -ūs, m., [senex], *council of elders,* SENATE. **senātūs cōnsultum,** *decree of the* SENATE.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., [senex], *old age.*

seneō, -ēre, —, —, [senex], *be old.*

senex, senis, comp., **senior,** *old, aged.* As noun, m., *old man.* Comp. as noun, **senior, -ōris,** m., *elder, elderly man.* (SENIOR)

sēnī, -ae, -a, [**sex**], *six each.*

senior, see **senex.**

Senonēs, -um, m., *the* SENONES, a people of Central Gaul.

sēnsus, -ūs, m., [**sentiō**], *feeling, inclination,* SENSE.

sententia, -ae, f., [**sentiō**], *opinion, judgment, will, desire; thought, purpose; purport;* SENTENCE, *saying, sentiment, vote.* **sententiam dīcere,** *to express an opinion.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *perceive, feel; hear, see, perceive; think, believe; know; agree in opinion.* (SENSE)

sentis, -is, m., *thorn, brier.*

sē-parātim, [**parātus**], adv., SEPARATELY, *apart.*

sē-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (put apart), SEPARATE, *divide.*

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultus, *bury.*

septem, indecl., SEVEN.

septen-decim, [**septem** + **decem**], indecl., *seventeen.*

septen-triō, -ōnis, m., [**septem** + **triō,** *plow-ox*]; generally pl., **septen-triōnēs, -um,** (lit., *the seven plow-oxen*), the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear, hence *the North.*

septi-collis, -e, [**septem**], *seven-hilled.*

septiēs, [**septem**], adv., *seven times.*

septimus, -a, -um, [**septem**], *seventh.*

septin-gentēsimus, -a, -um, [**septin-gentī**], *seven hundredth.*

septin-gentī, -ae, -a, [**septem** + **centum**], *seven hundred.*

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, [**septuāgintā**], *seventieth.*

septuāgintā, indecl., *seventy.*

sepulcrum, -ī, n., [**sepeliō**], *burial-place, grave, tomb,* SEPULCHRE.

sepultūra, -ae, f., [**sepeliō**], *burial; funeral.*

Sēquana, -ae, m., *the Seine,* the principal river of northern France.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m., *the* SEQUANIANS, a Gallic people west of the Jura; chief city Vesontio, now *Besançon.*

Sēquanus, -a, -um, SEQUANIAN, *of the* SEQUANI. As noun, **Sēquanus, -ī,** m., *a* SEQUANIAN.

sequentia, -ae, f., [**sequor**], (that which follows), SEQUENCE.

sequor, -ī, secūtus, *follow, attend; come after, come next; pursue; comply with, adopt, conform to; hold to.* (SEQUENCE)

Ser., = **Servius,** a Roman forename.

seriēs, (gen. lacking), f., [**serō**], *row, series.*

sēriō, [**sērius**], adv., *in earnest,* SERIOUSLY.

sērius, [comp. of **sērō,** *late*], adv., *later, too late.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *speech, talk, conversation; remark; discussion; language.* (SERMON)

serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, *sow, plant.*

serpēns, -entis, m., [**serpō,** *crawl*], SERPENT, *snake.*

serva, -ae, f., (female) *slave.*

servīlis, -e, [**servus**], SERVILE, *of slaves.*

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**servus**], SERVE.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., [**servus**], *slavery,* SERVITUDE.

Servius, -ī, m., SERVIUS. See **Tullius.**

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save,* PRESERVE; *keep, retain; guard, watch.*

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant.*
ses-centēsimus, -a, -um, [**sex** + **centum**], *six hundredth.*
ses-centī, -ae, -a, [**sex** + **centum**], *six hundred;* often used indefinitely, *hundreds.*
sē-sē, acc. and abl. of **suī.**
sessiō, -ōnis, f., [**sedeō**], *a sitting,* SESSION.
sēs-tertius, -ī, m., [**sēmis** + **tertius**], SESTERCE, a small silver coin worth about 5 cents.
sētius, comp. adv., *less.* **nihilō sētius,** *none the less, nevertheless.*
seu, see **sī-ve.**
sevērē, [**sevērus**], adv., *gravely, sternly,* SEVERELY.
sevērus, -a, -um, *serious, grave, stern,* SEVERE.
sex, indecl., SIX.
sexāgēsimus, -a, -um, [**sexāgintā**], *sixtieth.*
sexāgintā, indecl., *sixty.*
Sextiae, see **Aquae Sextiae.**
Sextius, -ī, m., *T.* SEXTIUS *Baculus,* one of Caesar's officers.
sextus, -a, -um, [**sex**], SIXTH.
sī, conj., *if, whether.* **quod sī,** *but if, now if.* See **sī quis.**
sibi, see **suī.**
sīc, adv., *so, in this way, thus.* **ut . . . sīc,** *as . . . so.* **sīc . . . ut,** *so . . . that; just as.*
siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**siccus**], *dry, drain; exhaust.* (de-SICCATE)
siccus, -a, -um, *dry.* As noun, **siccum, -ī,** n., *dry land, a dry place.*
Sicilia, -ae, f., SICILY.
Siculus, -a, -um, SICILIAN. As noun, **Siculī, -ōrum,** m., *the* SICILIANS.
sīc-ut or **sīc-utī,** adv., *just as, as; just as if.*
sīdus, sīderis, n., *constellation; star.* (SIDERIAL)
signi-fer, -ferī, m., [**signum** + **ferō**], *standard bearer.*
signi-ficātiō, -ōnis, f., [**signi-ficō**], SIGN, SIGNAL. (SIGNIFICATION)
signi-ficō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**signum,** + **faciō**], *show, intimate, announce; mean,* SIGNIFY.
signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**signum**], *mark,* de-SIGNATE; *mark with a seal, seal; indicate,* SIGN.
signum, -ī, n., *mark,* SIGN; *military standard,* en-SIGN; SIGNAL; *seal of a letter; statue, figure.*
silentium, -ī, n., [**sileō,** *be* SILENT], SILENCE.
silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest.* (SILVAN)
silvestris, -e, [**silva**], *wooded.*
Silvia, -ae, f., SILVIA. See **Rhea.**
Silvius, -ī, m., (1) SILVIUS, stepbrother of Ascanius. (2) *Romulus* SILVIUS, who was killed for presuming to be greater than Jove. (3) SILVIUS *Proca,* king of Alba Longa, father of Numitor and Amulius.
similis, -e, *like, resembling,* SIMILAR.
similitūdō, -dinis, f., [**similis**], SIMILARITY, *resemblance.* (SIMILITUDE)
simul, adv., *at the same time, at once, together; as soon as.* **simul . . . simul,** *both . . . and, partly . . . partly.* **simul atque (ac),** *as soon as.*
simulācrum, -ī, n., [**simulō**], *likeness, image, statue.*
simulātiō, -ōnis, f., [**simulō**], *pretense, deceit.* (SIMULATION)
simul atque, see **simul.**
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**similis**], *make like, imitate, copy; pretend,* SIMULATE.
simultās, -ātis, f., [**simul**], *encounter, enmity; rivalry, hatred.*

sī-n, [sī + nē], conj., *if however, but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singillātim, [singulī], adv., *one by one, individually,* SINGLY.

singulāris, -e, [singulī], *one by one, single;* SINGULAR; *remarkable, extraordinary.*

singulī, -ae, -a, *one to each, one by one, one apiece; separate,* SINGLE; *individual.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left, on the left;* in the language of the Roman augurs, *favorable, auspicious;* of the Greek augurs, *perverse, unlucky.* (SINISTER)

sinistra, -ae, [sc. **manus**], f., *left hand.* **sub sinistrā,** *on the left.*

sinistrōrsus, [sinister + vorsus = versus], adv., (turned) *to the left.*

sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, *allow, permit.*

sī quis, sī quid, *if anyone, if anything.*

situs, -ūs, m., [sinō], *situation, location,* SITE.

sī-ve or **seu,** conj., *or if.* **sīve** (seu) . . . **sīve** (seu), *if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

sōbrius, -a, -um, [sē- + ēbrius, *drunk*], SOBER.

socer, -ī, m., *father-in-law.*

sociālis, -e, [socius], *allied, confederate.* (SOCIAL)

societās, -ātis, f., [socius], SOCIETY; *alliance, confederacy.*

socius, -ī, m., *companion, comrade; ally.* (AS-SOCIATE)

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.* (SOLAR)

solea, -ae, f., *sandal.* (SOLE)

soleō, -ēre, -itus, semi-dep., *be wont, be accustomed.*

solidus, -ī, m., SOLIDUS, a gold coin in imperial times, worth about $3.00.

sōlitūdō, -inis, f., [sōlus], SOLITUDE, *wilderness, waste land.*

soll-emnis, -e, [sollus, *whole* + annus], *appointed;* SOLEMN.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sollicitus, *agitated*], *disturb; rouse, excite, urge;* SOLICIT, *tempt.*

solum, -ī, n., *lowest part, bottom; ground.* **agrī solum,** *the bare ground.*

sōlum, [sōlus], adv., *only.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

sōlus, -a, -um, gen., **sōlīus,** *alone, only,* SOLE.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, [sē- + luō, *loose*], *loose; pay.* **nāvem solvere,** or **solvere,** *to set sail.* (SOLVE)

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.* (SOMN-ambulist)

sonō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [sonus], SOUND, *re-*SOUND.

sonus, -ī, m., *noise,* SOUND.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.* (SORORITY)

sors, sortis, f., *lot, fate.* (SORT)

Sp. = **Spurius,** a Roman forename.

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *strew, sprinkle, scatter.* (SPARSE)

spatior, -ārī, -ātus, [spatium], *take a walk, promenade.*

spatium, -ī, n., SPACE, *room, distance; race-course, track; time; interval, period, duration.*

speciēs, (-eī), f., [-speciō, *look*], *look, appearance, show; semblance, pretense.* **ad speciem,** *for show.* (SPECIES)

spectāculum, -ī, n., [spectō], *show,* SPECTACLE, *exhibition, amusement, entertainment.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of -speciō, *look*], *look at, behold, watch, see; look to, aim at; tend, face, lie.* (SPECTACLE)

speculātor, -ōris, m., [**speculor,** *spy*], *spy, scout.* (SPECULATOR)

speculātōrius, -a, -um, [**speculātor**], *spying, scouting;* **speculātōrium nāvigium,** *spy-boat.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**spēs**], *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*

spīna, -ae, f., SPINA, a low wall in the middle of the Circus, around which the races were run.

splendidus, -a, -um, [**splendeō,** *shine*], SPLENDID, *magnificent, glittering.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**spolium**], *strip; rob, pillage, plunder,* de-SPOIL.

spolium, -ī, n., *skin, hide;* pl., *arms* stripped from an enemy, *booty,* SPOILS.

sponda, -ae, f., *bed* or *couch frame.*

spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsus, *promise.* (SPONSOR)

spōnsa, -ae, f., [**spondeō**], (betrothed woman), *bride.*

spōnsus, -ī, m., [**spondeō**], (betrothed man), *bridegroom.*

sponte, (abl., of an obsolete nom. **spōns**), f., *of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily, by one's own influence.*

Spūrinna, -ae, m., SPURINNA, a soothsayer who warned Caesar to beware of the Ides of March.

Spurius, -ī, m., SPURIUS, a Roman forename.

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**stabilis,** *firm*], *make steady; make fast.*

stabilitās, -ātis, f., [**stabilis,** *firm*], *steadiness,* STABILITY.

stabulum, -ī, n., [**stō**], *stall,* STABLE.

stadium, -ī, n., STADE, a distance of 625 Roman feet or about 607 English feet.

statim, [**stō**], adv., *forthwith, immediately, instantly.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., [**stō**], *outpost, picket, guard, reserve.* (STATION)

statua, -ae, f., [**sistō**], *image,* STATUE.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *set, place; build; decide, determine, resolve; judge, think; appoint.* (STATUTE)

statūra, -ae, f., [**stō**], *height,* STATURE.

status, -ūs, m., [**stō**], *standing, position, place; condition, rank,* STATUS.

stella, -ae, f., *star.* (STELLAR)

stellātus, -a, -um, [**stella**], *starry.*

stercus, -oris, n., *filth, manure.*

stilus, -ī, m., *the* STYLE, a pencil-shaped instrument for writing on wax tablets.

stimulus, -ī, m., *goad; trap* called *goad* by the soldiers. (STIMULUS)

stīpendium, -ī, n., [**stips,** *gift* + **pendō**], *tribute;* STIPEND, *pay; military service, campaign.* Pl., **stīpendia facere,** *to serve* in the army.

stīpes, -itis, m., *post, stake.*

stō, stāre, stetī, status, STAND, *abide by, remain.*

stola, -ae, f., *the* STOLA, the Roman matron's outer garment or house-dress.

strāgulus, -a, -um, *for covering;* **strāgula vestis,** *covering, spread, blanket.*

strāmentum, -ī, n., [**sternō,** *strew*], *thatch.*

strangulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, STRANGLE.

strēnuē, [**strēnuus**], adv., *vigorously,* STRENUOUSLY.

strēnuus, -a, -um, *active, vigorous,* STRENUOUS.

strepitus, -ūs, m., *din, clash, crash; applause.*

strigilis, -is, f., [**stringō,** *graze*], STRIGIL, an instrument to scrape the flesh during the bath.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, *draw tight; graze; strip off;* of a sword, *draw.* (STRICT)

struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, *build,* CON-STRUCT.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager for, strive for, give attention to,* STUDY; *eagerly desire, strive.*

studiōsē, [**studiōsus**], adv., *eagerly, diligently, zealously,* STUDIOUSLY.

studiōsus, -a, -um, [**studium**], *eager,* STUDIOUS.

studium, -ī, n., [**studeō**], *zeal, eagerness;* STUDY, *pursuit.*

stultitia, -ae, f., [**stultus,** *foolish*], *folly, stupidity.* (STULTI-fy)

stupeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be astounded, amazed.* (STUPE-fy)

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *advise, urge, per-*SUADE.

sub, prep., (1) with acc., after verbs of motion, *under, towards, close to, up to; until; just before.* (2) With abl., *under, beneath, at the foot of; during.* In composition, (1) *under, beneath;* (2) *from beneath, up;* (3) *secretly;* (4) *slightly.*

sub-acidus, -a, -um, *slightly* ACID.

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead up, lead away, carry off, draw off, transfer; haul up.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under; come up, go up (to), ascend, approach, enter; encounter, undergo; submit to.*

sub-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**iaciō**], *throw from beneath; place near; expose; make* SUBJECT.

sub-iectus, -a, -um, [**sub-iciō**], *lying near, adjacent.* (SUBJECT)

sub-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**agō**], *conquer, subjugate; compel.*

sub-itō, [**sub-itus**], adv., *suddenly.*

sub-itus, -a, -um, [**eō**], *sudden, unexpected, surprising.*

sub-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *make subordinate,* SUBJOIN. (SUBJUNCTIVE)

sub-lātus, part. of **tollō.**

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**levō,** *lighten*], *lift up, support, raise; lighten.*

sub-licius, -a, -um, [**sub-lica,** *pile*], *resting on piles;* **Pōns Sublicius,** "*the Pile Bridge*" across the Tiber.

sub-ligāculum, -ī, n., [**ligō,** *bind*], *loin-cloth, short drawers.*

sub-luō, -ere, —, **-lūtus,** *wash, flow at the base of.*

sub-mergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus, *plunge under,* SUBMERGE.

sub-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send under, submit.*

sub-rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, —, (laugh slightly), *smile.*

sub-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [**rapiō**], *snatch away, filch, steal.* (SURREPTITIOUS)

sub-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, [**ruō,** *fall*], *undermine.*

sub-rūsticus, -a, -um, *somewhat clownish.*

sub-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write below,* SUBSCRIBE.

sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow close upon, follow after, follow up.* (SUBSEQUENT)

sub-sidium, -ī, n., [**sub-sīdō,** *remain behind*], *reserve, auxiliaries; reinforcing, relief, help, aid, resource, remedy.* (SUBSIDIARY)

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *halt,*

stop for a moment, pause; remain; hold; oppose. (SUBSIST)

sub-sum, -esse, —, *be near; be at hand; be in reserve.*

sub-tendō, -ere, —, tentus, *extend beneath,* SUBTEND.

subter, prep., (1) with acc., after verbs of motion, *underneath, beneath;* (2) with abl., to denote place where, *underneath.*

sub-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *carry off; withdraw, take away.* (SUBTRACT)

sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come to help, assist, relieve.* (SUBVENTION)

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, [**sub**], *come up;* SUCCEED to another's place, *relieve; approach, draw near, advance.*

suc-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [**sub** + **candeō,** *glow*], *set on fire.*

suc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**sub** + **caedō**], *cut down.*

suc-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, —, [**sub**], *lie down; submit, yield,* SUCCUMB.

suc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, [**sub**], *run toward, run to the help of, aid.* (SUCCOR)

sucus, -ī, m., *juice.* (SUCCULENT)

sudis, sudis, f., *stake; log.*

sūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *perspire, sweat.*

sūdor, -ōris, m., *sweat; hard labor.*

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., *the Swabians,* a powerful German people.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., *the* SUESSIONES, a Belgic people north of the Matrona (*Marne*); the name survives in *Soissons.*

suf-ferō, -ferre, sus-tulī, sub-lātus, *bear up, endure,* SUFFER.

suf-fīgō, -fīgere, —, fīxus, [**sub**], *fasten, attach, af-*FIX. **crucī suffigere,** *to crucify.* (SUFFIX)

suffrāgātor, -ōris, m., [**suffrāgium**], (political) *favorer, supporter.*

suffrāgium, -ī, n., *vote.* (SUFFRAGE)

sug-gerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus, *lay under, furnish,* SUGGEST.

suī, sibī, sē or **sēsē,** reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her, it, them.*

Sulla, -ae, m., (1) *L. Cornelius* SULLA, leader of the aristocratic party in the civil wars against Marius and Cinna; he defeated Mithridates; was dictator of Rome, 81-70 B.C. (2) *P. Cornelius* SULLA, nephew of the dictator, one of Caesar's officers.

Sulpicius, -ī, m., *Publius* SULPICIUS, consul in 279 B.C. See also **Rūfus.**

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist, consist.*

summa, -ae, f., [**summus**], *total, whole;* SUM *of money; administration, control; supremacy;* **summa imperī,** *the chief command.*

sum-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sub** + **ministrō,** *serve*], *supply, provide, furnish.*

sum-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [**sub**], *let down, lower; furnish, supply; send secretly; send as reënforcement.*

sum-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [**sub**], *drive back, force back, dislodge.*

summus, -a, -um, [sup. of **superus**], *highest; top of; greatest; most important, chief.* As noun, **summum, -ī,** n., *top,* SUMMIT, *end.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, [**sub** + **emō**], *take; take on, put on,* ASSUME. **dē aliquō sup-**

plicium sūmere, *to inflict punishment on any one.*

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, [sūmptus], *relating to expense,* SUMPTUARY.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [sūmptus], *expensive, costly,* SUMPTUOUS.

supellex, -lectilis, f., *furniture.*

super, (1) prep. with acc., (to denote motion toward), *over, above, upon;* (2) with abl., (to denote place where), *over, upon, beyond, in addition to.*

superbia, -ae, f., [superbus], *haughtiness, arrogance, pride.*

superbus, -a, -um, [super], *proud, haughty.* (SUPERB)

Superbus, -ī, m., [super], *Tarquinius* SUPERBUS, the seventh and last king of Rome; *Tarquin the Proud.*

superior, -ius, [comp. of superus], gen., **-ōris,** *higher, upper part of; former; previous;* SUPERIOR. As noun, *a* SUPERIOR.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [superus], *rise above, overtop; exceed; be left over; overcome, conquer, defeat, excel, surpass.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be left, remain; survive.*

superus, -a, -um, [super], *above, high, upper.* **Mare Superum,** *the Adriatic Sea.*

super-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come up, arrive.*

super-vīvō, -ere, -vīxī, —, *outlive,* SURVIVE.

sup-petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, [sub], *be at hand, be available; hold out.*

sup-plex, -icis, [sub + plicō, *fold*], *kneeling in entreaty,* SUPPLIANT. As noun, m., *a* SUPPLIANT.

sup-plicātiō, -ōnis, [sub + plicō, *fold*], f., *thanksgiving.* (SUPPLICATION)

sup-plicium, -ī, n., [sup-plex], *punishment, torture.* (SUPPLICATION)

sup-plicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + plicō, *fold*], (bend down), *pray humbly,* SUPPLICATE.

sup-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [sub], *place under* or *beneath; substitute;* SUPPOSE.

sup-portō, -āre, -āvī, —, [sub], *carry up, transport, convey.* (SUPPORT)

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., (1) As adv., *above; before, formerly.* (2) As prep. with acc., *above, over; before, beyond, more than.*

suprēmus, sup. of **superus.**

surgō, -ere, -rēxī, —, [sub + regō], *lift up, rise; grow.* (SURGE)

sur-repticius, -a, -um, [sub + rapiō], SURREPTITIOUS.

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [sub + capiō], *undertake, take up; take upon one's self, assume; enter upon, begin.*

sus-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + freq. of cieō], *rouse, stir, awaken.*

su-spectus, -a, -um, [su-spiciō], *object of suspicion, mistrusted,* SUSPECTED.

sus-pendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus, [sub], *hang up,* SUSPEND.

su-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [sub + -speciō, *look*], *look up at; admire.*

su-spīciō, -ōnis, f., [sub + -speciō, *look*], *mistrust,* SUSPICION.

su-spicor, -ārī, -ātus, [sub + -speciō, *look*], *mistrust,* SUSPECT; *suppose, surmise.*

sus-tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of sus-tineō], *endure, hold out.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [sub + teneō], *hold up, keep up,* SUSTAIN; *hold in check, control,*

restrain; support; hold out, endure; withstand.

sus-tulī, see **tollō.**

suus, -a, -um, [suī], *his, her, its, their; characteristic, peculiar; due, appropriate; favorable, advantageous.* As noun, **suī,** m., *his* or *their men, friends, people, party, side, subjects.* **sua,** n. pl., *his, her, their property, possessions.* **sē suaque,** *themselves and their possessions.*

Symplēgades, -um, (acc., **-as**), f., *the* SYMPLEGADES, two small rocky islands in the Black Sea, which closed upon ships and crushed them.

Syphāx, -ācis, m., SYPHAX, King of Numidia.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., SYRACUSE, largest city of Sicily, on the east coast.

Syria, -ae, f., SYRIA, a country in Asia between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean Sea.

Syriacus, -a, -um, [**Syria**], SYRIAN, *of* SYRIA.

Syrius, -a, -um, [**Syria**], SYRIAN.

T

T., abbreviation for **Titus,** a Roman forename.

taberna, -ae, f., *shop.* (TAVERN)

tabernāculum, -ī, n., [**taberna**], *tent.* (TABERNACLE)

tablīnum, -ī, n., [**tabula**], TABLINUM, a room between the atrium and peristyle, where the **tabulae** or family records were kept.

tabula, -ae, f., *writing-*TABLET; *record;* TABLE, *paper, documents.* **pīcta tabula,** *a painted tablet, painting, picture.*

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *be silent.* (TACITURN)

tacitus, -a, -um, [taceō], *silent.* (TACIT)

Talassiō! wedding salutation, perhaps the name of a god of marriage.

talea, -ae, f., *block; bar.*

talentum, -ī, n., TALENT, equivalent to about $1132 in gold.

tālis, -e, *such, of such a kind; the following.* **tālis . . . quālis,** *of such a kind . . . as.*

tam, adv., *so, so much; so very.*

tamen, conj. and adv., *notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however, but, still.*

Tamesis, -is, m., *the* THAMES.

tam-etsī, [**tamen**], conj., *although, though.*

Tanaquil, -is, f., TANAQUIL, wife of Tarquinius Priscus.

tandem, [**tam**], adv., *at length, at last, finally.* (TANDEM)

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.* (TANGIBLE)

tantopere, [**tantō opere**], adv., *so greatly, so earnestly, with so great effort.*

tantulus, -a, -um, [dim. of **tantus**], *so very small, so slight, so trifling, such trivial.* As noun, **tantulum, -ī,** n., *so little, such a trifle.*

tantum, [**tantus**], adv., *so much; only so much, only, merely.*

tantun-dem, [**tantus**], adv., *just as much.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so large, such, so important.* **tantus . . . quantus,** *so great, so much, only so much . . . as.* As noun, **tantum, -ī,** n., *so much;* in Gen. of Indefinite Value, **tantī,** *of such value, worth so much, worth while;* **tantō,** Abl. of Degree of Difference, *by so much, so much.*

tardē, [**tardus**], adv., *slowly,* TARDILY.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tardus], *check, re-*TARD, *impede, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, *slow, sluggish,* TARDY, *late.*

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m., [Tarentum], *inhabitants of* TARENTUM, TARENTINES.

Tarentum, -ī, n., TARENTUM, a large city in Southern Italy.

Tarpeia, -ae, f., TARPEIA, a Roman maiden who betrayed the citadel to the Sabines.

Tarpeius, -a, -um, [Tarpeia], *of* TARPEIA, TARPEIAN.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., TARQUINIUS, (1) TARQUINIUS *Priscus,* TARQUIN *the Elder,* the fifth king of Rome. (2) TARQUINIUS *Superbus,* TARQUIN *the Proud,* the seventh king of Rome. (3) TARQUINIUS *Collatīnus,* see **Collatīnus.**

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m., TARQUINII, a town in southern Etruria.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull.*

Taurus, -ī, m., *the* TAURUS *Mts.* in southeastern Asia Minor.

Taximagulus, -ī, m., TAXIMAGULUS, a British chieftain.

Tectosagēs, -um, m., *the* TECTOSAGES, a division of the **Volcae** in the Province, a branch of which settled near the Hercynian forest.

tēctum, -ī, n., [tegō], *building, house; covering, roof.*

tegimentum, -ī, n., [tegō], *covering.*

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover; hide, conceal; defend, guard, pro-*TECT.

tēlum, -ī, n., *dart, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um, [temere], *rash, heedless, reckless.*

temere, adv., *blindly, rashly; without good reason.*

temeritās, -ātis, f., [temere], *rashness.* (TEMERITY)

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* of a chariot.

temperantia, -ae, f., [temperāns, *temperate*], *moderation, self-control.* (TEMPERANCE)

temperātus, -a, -um, [temperō], TEMPERATE, *mild.*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tempus], *control one's self; refrain.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., [tempus], *weather; storm,* TEMPEST.

templum, -ī, n., TEMPLE, *shrine.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of tendō], *try, at-*TEMPT; *test; attack, assail;* TEMPT, *bribe, tamper with.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, period; opportunity, season; occasion, circumstances.* **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future.* **ad tempus,** *promptly.* **omnī tempore,** *always.* (TEMPORAL)

tenāx, -ācis, [teneō], *holding fast,* TENACIOUS.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, *spread out;* of a snare, *lay; offer; march; aim, strive; stretch, ex-*TEND, *reach.*

tenebrae, -ārum, f., *darkness, gloom.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold, grasp; catch; keep in, restrain, stop; bind; regard; take in, understand; keep; occupy, possess;* of a course, *keep, hold.* **sē tenēre,** *to keep one's self, to remain.* **memoriā tenēre,** *to remember.*

tener, -era, -erum, TENDER, *young.*

tenuis, -e, *thin, poor, feeble, delicate; slight, trifling.* (TENUOUS)

tepidārium, -ī, n., [tepidus], *the* TEPIDARIUM, *warm bathing room.*

ter, adv., *three times, thrice.* (TER-centenary)

Terentius, see **Varrō.**

teres, -etis, [terō, *rub*], *smooth; tapering.*

tergo, -ere, tersī, tersus, *rub.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back.* **ā tergō, post tergum,** *behind, in the rear,* **terga vertere,** *to flee.*

terminus, -ī, m., *boundary, limit, end.* (TERMINUS)

ternī, -ae, -a, [ter], *three each, three apiece, three at a time.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth; land; territory, region, country.* (TERRACE)

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra], *of earth, earthy.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten, alarm,* TERRI-*fy; deter* by fear.

terribilis, -e, [terreō], *frightful, dreadful,* TERRIBLE.

territōrium, -ī, n., [terra], TERRITORY.

terror, -ōris, m., [terreō], TERROR, *panic, alarm, fear, object of fear.*

tertius, -a, -um, [ter], *third.* (TERTIARY)

tessellātus, -a, -um, [tessella, *small cube*], (made of small cubes), *mosaic.* (TESSELLATED)

testimōnium, -ī, n., [testis], *witness, proof, evidence,* TESTIMONY.

testis, -is, c., *witness.*

testor, -ārī, -ātus, [testis], *bear witness,* (sign as) *witness; make a will.*

testūdō, -inis, f., [testa, *potsherd*], *tortoise, tortoise-shell; tortoise-cover,* TESTUDO, a covering formed by the soldiers' shields held above their heads and overlapping; *tortoise-shed,* a movable shed, to protect soldiers at work near the enemy's wall.

Teutobodus, -ī, m., TEUTOBODUS, King of the *Teutones.*

Teutonēs, -um, or **Teutonī, -ōrum,** m., *the* TEUTONES, a powerful German tribe.

thermae, -ārum, f., *warm baths, baths.* (THERMO-meter)

Theseus, -ī, (dat., **Theseī,** acc., **Thesea**), m., THESEUS, most famous hero of Athens.

Thessalia, -ae, f., THESSALY, a country in northeastern Greece.

Thrācia, -ae, f., THRACE, a country northeast of Greece.

Thrācius, -a, -um, [Thrācia], *of* THRACE, THRACIAN.

Thrācēs, -um, m., THRACIANS, inhabitants of THRACE, east of Macedonia.

Ti., = Tiberius, a Roman forename.

Tiberis, -is, (acc., **Tiberim**), m., *the* TIBER.

tībia, -ae, f., *pipe, flute.*

tībī-cen, -inis, m., [tībia, *flute* + canō], *piper, flute-player.*

Tīcīnus, -ī, m., *the* TICINUS, a river flowing from the Alps into the Po.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, TIGURIAN. As noun, **Tigurīnī, -ōrum,** m., *the* TIGURIANS, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of; be afraid.*

timidē, [timidus], adv., TIMIDLY.

timidus, -a, -um, [timeō], *cowardly,* TIMID.

timor, -ōris, m., [timeō], *fear, dread, alarm, apprehension; panic.* (TIMOROUS)

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus, *dye.*

Titūrius, -ī, m., *Quintus* TITURIUS *Sabinus,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

titulus, -ī, m., *superscription, inscription,* TITLE; *banner, placard.*

Titus, -ī, m., TITUS, a Roman forename.

toga, -ae, f., TOGA, a flowing garment of white woolen cloth, the distinctive dress of Roman citizens in public. See **praetextus.**

togātus, -a, -um, [toga], *wearing the* TOGA, TOGAED.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, support, endure, sustain; maintain; hold out.* (TOLERATE)

tollō, -ere, sus-tulī, sub-lātus, *carry up, lift, raise; take on board; encourage, elate; take away, remove, bear away, make way with; kill, destroy.*

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., [Tolōsa], *the* TOLOSATES, a people in the territory of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Province near **Tolōsa** (modern *Toulouse*).

tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsus, *cut, clip short.*

tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder.*

tonō, -āre, -uī, —, *thunder.*

tōnsor, -ōris, m., [tondeō], *barber.* (TONSORIAL)

tōnstrīna, -ae, f., [tondeō], *barber's shop.*

tōnsūra, -ae, f., [tondeō], *clipping, shearing; pruning, trimming;* TONSURE.

tormentum, -ī, [torqueō, *twist*], n., *windlass;* as a military term, pl., *torsion-hurlers, engines of war, artillery.*

Torquātus, -ī, m., [torquis], TORQUATUS. See **Mānlius.**

torquis, -is, m., *necklace, collar.* (TORQUE)

torreō, -ēre, -uī, tostus, *roast, burn; scorch.* (TOAST)

tortuōsus, -a, -um, [torqueō, *twist*], *full of turns, twisting,* TORTUOUS.

torus, -ī, m., *mattress.*

tot, indecl., *so many.*

tot-idem, [tot], indecl., *just as many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen., **tōtīus,** *the whole, all, entire.*

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of trahō], *draw, pull; handle, manage; treat.*

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, [trāns + dō], *give over, hand over, deliver, surrender, entrust; betray; hand down, transmit, report, say; teach.* (TRADITION)

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trāns], *lead across, transport, transfer; win over.* (TRADUCE)

trāgula, -ae, f., *dart, javelin.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag.* (TRACTION)

trā-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [trāns + iaciō], *throw across, lead across; pierce, penetrate, transfix; go over, pass over.* (TRAJECTORY)

trā-iectus, -ūs, m., [trā-iciō], *crossing, passage.*

trā-nō, -āre, -āvī, —, [trāns], *swim across, swim over.*

tranquillitās, -ātis, [tranquillus, *quiet*], f., *calm, stillness.* (TRANQUILLITY)

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over; beyond.*

Trāns-alpīnus, -a, -um, TRANSALPINE, *beyond the* ALPS.

trān-scendō, -ere, -scendī, —, [trāns + scandō, *climb*], *climb across; board.* (TRANSCEND)

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī or **-īvī, -itus,** *go over, go across, cross; pass by, march through.* (TRANSIT)

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bear across, transport;* TRANSFER. (TRANSLATE)

trāns-fīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *pierce through,* TRANSFIX.

trāns-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *transfix, pierce, impale.*

trāns-fuga, -ae, m., *a deserter.*

trāns-gredior, -ī, -gressus, [**gradior,** *step*], *go over, cross.*

trāns-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**agō**], *finish, settle; perform,* TRANSACT: *end; pass, spend.*

trān-siliō, -īre, -uī, —, [**trāns** + **saliō,** *leap*], *leap across, jump over.*

trāns-lātus, see **trāns-ferō.**

trāns-marīnus, -a, -um, [**mare**], *beyond the sea,* TRANSMARINE.

trāns-missus, -ūs, m., [**trānsmittō**], *crossing, passage.*

trāns-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send across; go across, traverse.* (TRANSMIT)

Trāns-padānus, -a, -um, [**Padus**], *across the Po.*

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry over, take across,* TRANSPORT.

trāns-tulī, see **trāns-ferō.**

Trasumēnus, -ī, m., TRASUMENUS, a lake in Etruria.

Trebia, -ae, m., *the* TREBIA, a river flowing northwest into the Po.

Trebōnius, -ī, m., *C.* TREBONIUS, a lieutenant of Caesar.

tre-centēsimus, -a, -um, [**trecentī**], *three hundredth.*

tre-centī, -ae, -a, [**trēs** + **centum**], *three hundred.*

tre-decim, [**trēs** + **decem**], indecl., *thirteen.*

trepidātiō, -ōnis, f., [**trepidō**], *alarm, confusion,* TREPIDATION.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hurry about anxiously, be in confusion; be afraid, tremble, waver.*

trēs, tria, gen., **trium,** THREE.

Trēverī, -ōrum, m., *the* TREVERANS, a Belgic people near the Rhine.

Trēverus, -a, -um, TREVERAN, *of the* TREVERI.

Triārius, -ī, m., *C.* TRIARIUS, one of Pompey's officers.

Tribocēs, -um, or **Tribocī, -ōrum,** m., *the* TRIBOCES, a German people near the Rhine.

tribūnal, -ālis, n., [**tribūnus**], *judgment-seat,* TRIBUNAL.

tribūnātus, -ūs, m., [**tribūnus**], TRIBUNE-*ship.*

tribūnus, -ī, m., [**tribus,** *tribe*], TRIBUNE. (1) **tribūnus plēbis,** TRIBUNE *of the people,* whose duty it was to protect the common people; (2) **tribūnus mīlitum,** *military* TRIBUNE, an army officer *by appointment.*

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [**tribus**], *assign, ascribe; concede; grant; pay, render, give, bestow;* ATTRIBUTE; *devote.*

tribūtum, -ī, n., [**tribus**], *stated payment,* TRIBUTE.

trīcēsimus, -a, -um, [**trīgintā**], *thirtieth.*

trichila, -ae, f., *arbor, bower, summer-house.*

trī-clīniāris, -e, [**trī-clīnium**], *of a dining room.*

trī-clīnium, -ī, n., *dining room.*

trī-duum, -ī, n., [**trēs** + **diēs**], (space of) *three days.*

tri-ennium, -ī, n., [**trēs** + **annus**], (space of) *three years.* (TRIENNIAL)

tri-geminus, -a, -um, [**trēs** + **gignō**], *three* (born at one birth), triplets. As noun, **tri-geminī, -ōrum,** m., *triplets.*

trīgintā, indecl., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, [**trēs**], *three each, three; threefold, triple.*

Trinobantēs, -um, m., *the* TRINOBANTES, a tribe of Britain.

tri-pertītō, [tri- + partītus], adv., *in three divisions.*

tri-plex, -icis, [trēs + plicō, *fold*], *threefold,* TRIPLE.

tri-quetrus, -a, -um, *three-cornered, triangular.*

trīstis, -e, *sad, sorrowful.*

trīstitia, -ae, f., [trīstis], *sadness, dejection.*

triumphe (used in connection with Iō!) **Io triumphe,** *hurrah for the* TRIUMPH!

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [triumphus], *celebrate a* TRIUMPH, TRIUMPH.

triumphus, -ī, m., TRIUMPH, celebration of a victory by a triumphal entry into Rome.

trium-vir, -ī, m., [trēs + vir], TRIUMVIR, one of three men associated together.

Troia, -ae, f., TROY, a city of Phrygia in Asia Minor.

Troiānus, -a, -um, [Troia], *of* TROY, TROJAN. As noun, **Troiānus, -ī,** *a* TROJAN.

truncus, -ī, m., TRUNK of a tree.

trux, trucis, *wild, savage, fierce.*

tū, tuī, pers. pron., THOU, *you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.* (TUBE)

tubi-cen, -inis, m., [tuba + canō], *trumpeter.*

tueor, -ērī, tūtus, *look at, gaze at; defend, protect.*

tugurium, -ī, n., [tegō], *cottage.*

tulī, see **ferō.**

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., *the* TULINGI, a German people north of the Helvetii.

Tullia, -ae, f., TULLIA, the daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus.

Tullius, -ī, m., *Servius* TULLIUS, the sixth king of Rome. See **Cicerō.**

Tullus, -ī, m., TULLUS *Hostilius,* third king of Rome.

tum, adv., *then, at that time, in those times; thereupon; besides, moreover.* **cum . . . tum,** *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

tumulus, -ī, m., [tumeō, *swell*], *mound, hillock.* (TUMULUS)

tunc, [tum], adv., *then, at that time; accordingly.*

tunica, -ae, f., *under-garment,* TUNIC; **tunica rēcta,** a white woolen garment woven in one piece and falling to the feet.

turba, -ae, f., *commotion; crowd, throng.* (TURBULENT)

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [turba], *throw into confusion, dis-*TURB, *agitate.*

turma, -ae, f., *troop* of 30 horsemen, *squadron.*

turmātim, [turma], adv., *by squadrons.*

Turonī, -ōrum, m., *the* TURONI, a Gallic people on the Liger (*Loire*); the name survives in TOURS and TOURAINE.

turpis, -e, *ugly; disgraceful, shameful.*

turpiter, [turpis], *basely, disgracefully.*

turpitūdō, -inis, f., [turpis], *baseness, disgrace.* (TURPITUDE)

turris, -is, f., *tower;* often *movable tower,* built on wheels so that it could be moved up to the wall of a besieged city. (TURRET)

Tusculum, -ī, n., TUSCULUM, a town southeast of Rome.

tūtēla, -ae, f., [tueor], *guardianship;* TUTELAGE.

tūtor, -ōris, m., [tueor], *guardian,* TUTOR.

tūtus, -a, -um, [tueor], *safe, secure.*

tuus, -a, -um, [tū], *thy; your, yours.*

tyrannus, -ī, m., *monarch, absolute ruler; despot,* TYRANT.

U

ubi, (1) adv., *where; where? when;* (2) conj., *when; where.* **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, m., *the* UBII, a people of Germany.

ubī-que, adv., *anywhere, everywhere.* (UBIQUITOUS)

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, *avenge one's self on, punish; avenge.*

ūllus, -a, -um, gen., **ūllīus,** *any.* As noun, **ūllus, -īus,** m., *any one, anybody.*

ulterior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** [ultrā], *farther, beyond, more remote* or *distant.* **Ulterior Prōvincia,** *the Farther Province.*

ultimus, -a, -um, [sup. of **ulterior**], *farthest, last.* (ULTIMATE)

ultrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *beyond, more than, besides.*

ultrō, adv., *besides, moreover, also; of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

ultus, see **ulcīscor.**

ululātus, -ūs, m., *yell, shout.*

umbō, -ōnis, m., *boss* of a shield.

umerus, -ī, m., *upper arm, shoulder.* (HUMERUS)

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā, [ūnus], adv., *at the same time; together, in company, along.*

ūnctōrium, -ī, n., [unguō], *anointing room* in a bath.

unde, adv., (1) rel., *whence; where;* (2) inter., *whence? where? on which side?*

ūn-decim, [ūnus + **decem**], indecl., *eleven.*

ūn-decimus, -a, -um, [ūn-decim], *eleventh.*

ūn-dē-quīnquāgintā, [ūnus], indecl., *forty-nine.*

ūn-dē-trīcēsimus, -a, -um, [ūnus + dē + trīgintā], *the twenty-ninth.*

ūn-dē-vīcēsimus, -a, -um, [ūnus + dē + vīgintī], *the nineteenth.*

ūn-dē-vīgintī, [ūnus], indecl., *nineteen.*

undi-que, [unde], adv., *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.*

unguentum, -ī, n., [unguō], *ointment.* (UNGUENT)

unguis, -is, m., *nail, claw, talon.*

unguō, -ere, ūnxī, ūnctus, *anoint.*

ūni-versus, -a, -um, [ūnus], *all together, all, the whole of, entire; general,* UNIVERSAL. As noun, **ūniversī, -ōrum,** m., *the whole body, all together.*

ūnus, -a, -um, gen., **ūnīus,** *one; only one, only, sole; alone; one and the same.* Pl., **ūnī,** *alone, only.* **ad ūnum omnēs,** *all to a man.*

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbs], *of the city, in the city, in Rome.* As noun, **urbānī, -ōrum,** m., *the citizens.* (URBAN)

urbānus, -ī, m., [urbs], *city wit.* (URBANE)

urbs, urbis, f., *city;* often *the city, Rome.*

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, *press hard.* Pass., *be hard pressed.* (URGE)

ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstus, *burn.*

ūrus, -ī, m., *wild ox.*

ūsitātus, -a, -um, [ūsitor, freq. of **ūtor**], *usual, customary, common, ordinary.*

ūs-que, adv., *as far as; even.* **ūsque ad,** *all the way to, as far as;* of time, *up to, until.* **ūsque eō,** *even to this degree.*

ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ūsus + rapiō], *seize upon, assume,* USURP.

ūsus, -ūs, m., [ūtor], USE, *employment; experience, training, skill; practice; familiarity; control; need, necessity; advantage, benefit.*

ut or **utī,** adv. and conj.: (1) As adv., *as, just as; as for instance, as if; how; where.* **ut prīmum,** *as soon as.* **ut . . . ita,** *as . . . so, while . . . still.* (2) As conj., with Indic., *when, as soon as;* with Subj., *that, so that; in order that, that; though, although.*

ut-cumque, adv., *in one way or another, somehow.*

ūter, -tris, m., *skin.*

uter, utra, utrum, gen., **utrīus,** (1) rel., *which* (of two), *whichever, which.* (2) inter., *which* (of two)? *which?*

uter-que, -tra-que, -trum-que, gen., **utrīus-que,** *each, both.* As noun, **uter-que, utrīus-que,** m., *both, each.* Pl., **utrī-que,** *both sides, both forces, both peoples.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtilis, -e, [ūtor], *useful, serviceable, helpful; expedient.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, with abl., *make* USE *of, employ, observe, maintain; have, enjoy; exercise, show, display; find.*

utrim-que, [uter-que], adv., *from both sides, on both sides; on both ends.*

utrum, [uter], conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether.* **utrum . . . necne,** *whether . . . or not.*

ūva, -ae, f., *grape.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife, consort.* **uxōrem dūcere,** *to marry.* (UXORIOUS)

V

vacātiō, -ōnis, f., [vacō], *exemption.* (VACATION)

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be empty, be* VACANT; *be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um, [vacō], *empty, free,* VACANT, *unoccupied.*

vadum, -ī, n., *shallow spot, shoal; ford.*

vāgīna, -ae, f., *sheath, scabbard.*

vāgītus, -ūs, m., [vāgiō, *cry*], *crying*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, *wander about, roam about.* (VAGRANT)

valē, [imperative of **valeō**], *farewell, good-by.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, valitus, *be strong, be able; be well; have power, a-*VAIL, *have influence, pre-*VAIL; *extend; be worth.*

Valerius, -i, m., VALERIUS, name of a Roman gens.

valētūdō, -inis, f., [valeō], *good* or *bad health; illness.* (VALETUDINARIAN)

validus, -a, -um, [valeō], *strong, stout, powerful.* (VALID)

vallēs or **vallis, -is,** f., VALLEY.

vāllum, -ī, n., *line of palisades, intrenchment; wall, rampart.*

vāllus, -ī, m., *stake; rampart stake.*

valor, -ōris, m., [valeō], VALOR.

Vangionēs, -um, m., *the* VANGIONES, a German tribe.

vānus, -a, -um, *empty; ostentatious,* VAIN.

varietās, -ātis, f., [varius], VARIETY; *mottled appearance.*

varius, -a, -um, *different, several,* VARIOUS, *diverse.*

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *C. Terentius* VARRO, consul defeated by Hannibal at Cannae.

vās, vāsis, n., *vessel, dish;* pl., **vāsa, -ōrum,** *equipments.* (VASE)

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vāstus], *lay waste, ravage, de-*VASTATE.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f., [**vāticinor,** *predict*], *prediction, prophecy.* (VATICINATION)

Vatinius, -ī, m., *P.* VATINIUS, who, as tribune, was a loyal supporter of Caesar.

-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*

vectīgal, -ālis, n., [**vehō**], *tax, tribute; revenue; income.*

vectōrius, -a, -um, [**vehō**], *for carrying;* **vectōrium nāvigium,** *transport.*

vegetus, -a, -um, [**vegeō,** *move*], *lively, quick, bright.*

vehementer, [**vehemēns**], adv., VEHEMENTLY; *vigorously, actively, exceedingly, very much.*

vehiculum, -ī, n., [**vehō**], *carriage,* VEHICLE.

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, *bear, carry, convey, draw;* pass., *ride, sail.* (VEHICLE)

Veiēns, -entis, *of* VEII. As noun, m., *the inhabitants of* VEII.

Veientānus, -a, -um, [**Veiī**], *of* VEII, VEIENTIAN. As noun, **Veientānus, -ī,** m., *an inhabitant of* VEII, *a* VEIENTIAN.

Veiī, -ōrum, m., VEII, a city of Etruria.

vel, [**volō**], adv. and conj., *or, or even, indeed.* **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or.*

Veliocassēs, -ium, and **Veliocassī, -ōrum,** m., *the* VELIOCASSES, a small state north of the Sequana (*Seine*).

Vellaviī, -ōrum, m., *the* VELLAVII, a people of central Gaul.

vellus, -eris, n., *fleece.*

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vēlum**], VEIL.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f., [**vēlōx**], *swiftness, rapidity, speed,* VELOCITY.

vēlōciter, [**vēlōx**], adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift.*

vēlum, -ī, n., *sail;* **vēla ventīs dare,** *to make sail, sail away; curtain;* VEIL.

vel-ut or **vel-utī,** adv., *just as.* **velut sī,** *just as if.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., [**vēnor,** *hunt*], *hunting; hunting spectacle.*

vēnātor, -ōris, m., [**vēnor,** *hunt*], *hunter.*

vēn-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, [**vēnum,** *sale,* + **dō**], *sell.* (VEND)

Venellī, -orum, m., *the* VENELLI, a Gallic people on the northwest coast.

venēnum, -ī, n., *drug; poison.*

Venetī, -ōrum, m., *the* VENETANS, a seafaring Gallic people, on the west coast.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [**Venetī**], *of the* VENETANS, VENETAN.

venerātiō, -ōnis, f., [**veneror**], *reverence,* VENERATION; *cause of respect.*

venia, -ae, f., *favor, pardon; permission.* (VENIAL)

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*

venter, -tris, m., *belly, stomach.* (VENTRAL)

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of **veniō**], *keep coming, come frequently.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.* (VENTILATE)

verber, -is, n., *lash, whip; blow, flogging.*

verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**verber**], *beat, strike, whip, scourge, knock.* (re-VERBERATE)

Verbigenus, -ī, m., VERBIGEN, a canton of the Helvetians.

verbōsus, -a, -um, [**verbum**], *full of words, wordy,* VERBOSE.

verbum, -ī, n., *word; saying, epigram.* (VERBAL)

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., VERCASSIVELLAUNUS, a chief of the Arverni.

Vercellae, -ārum, f., VERCELLAE, a town in Northern Italy, where the Cimbri were defeated.

Vercingetorīx, -rīgis, m., VERCINGETORIX, a chief of the Arverni, commander-in-chief of the united forces of Gaul in 52 B.C.

verēcundia, -ae, f., [**vereor**], *shame; respect.*

vereor, -ērī, veritus, *re-*VERENCE, *respect; fear; dread.*

Vergilius, -ī, m., VERGIL, the Roman poet.

Verginia, -ae, f., VERGINIA, daughter of the centurion VERGINIUS.

Verginius, -ī, m., VERGINIUS, a centurion, who killed his own daughter to prevent her from falling into the hands of Appius Claudius.

vergō, -ere, —, —, *incline, lie, slope; be situated.* (VERGE)

vēritās, -ātis, f., [**vērus**], *truth, truthfulness.* (VERITY)

vērō, [**vērus**], adv. and conj., *in truth, truly, indeed; but, however.* (VERILY)

versiculus, -ī, m., [dim. of **versus**], (short) VERSE.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **vertō**], *turn often; shift, change about.*

versor, -ārī, -ātus, [freq. of **vertō**], (lit. *turn one's self about*), *move about* in any place; *dwell, live; be; be occupied, engaged, employed.*

versus, [vertō], adv., and prep., with acc., *toward, in the direction of.*

versus, -ūs, m., [**vertō**], (a turning), *line, row;* VERSE.

Verticō, -ōnis, m., VERTICO, one of the Nervii.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn, direct, change;* pass., *return.* **terga vertere,** *to turn and flee, to flee.*

vērum, -ī, n., [**vērus**], *the truth.*

vērus, -a, -um, *true.* **rē vērā,** see **rēs.**

verūtum, -ī, n., *dart.*

vesper, -erī and **-eris,** m., *evening.* (VESPERS)

vesperī, [**vesper**], adv., *in the evening.*

Vesta, -ae, f., VESTA, goddess of the hearth.

Vestālis, -e, [**Vesta**], *of* VESTA, VESTAL.

vester, -tra, -trum, [**vōs**], *your, yours.*

vestibulum, -ī, n., *entrance court,* VESTIBULE.

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *footstep, step, footprint; spot; track, trace, mark,* VESTIGE.

vestīmentum, -ī, n., [**vestis**], *garment.* (VESTMENT)

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**vestis**], *clothe.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothes, clothing; garment, robe.* (VESTMENT)

vestītus, -ūs, m., [**vestiō**], *clothing, apparel.*

vestītus, -a, -um, [**vestiō**], *clothed.*

veterānus, -a, -um, [**vetus**], *old,* VETERAN. As noun, **veterānī, -ōrum,** m., VETERAN *soldiers,* VETERANS.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *forbid.* (VETO)

Veturia, -ae, f., VETURIA, mother of Coriolanus.

Veturius, -ī, m., *T.* VETURIUS, consul in 321 B.C.

vetus, -eris, *old, former, long-standing, ancient.*

vēxillum, -ī, n., (small) *flag* or *banner,* the standard of the cavalry and the infantry auxiliaries.

via, -ae, f., WAY; *road, street; passage; march, journey.* (VIA)

viātor, -ōris, m., [**via**], *wayfarer, traveler.*

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, [**vīgintī**], *twenty each.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, [**vīgintī**], *twentieth.*

vīciēs, [**vīgintī**], adv., *twenty times.*

vīcīnus, -a, -um, [**vīcus**], *neighboring.* (VICINITY)

(vicis), -is, f., (nom., dat., and voc. sing., and gen. and voc. pl. not in use), *change, succession.* **in vicem,** *in turn.*

victima, -ae, f., VICTIM, *animal for sacrifice.*

victor, -ōris, m., [**vincō**], *conqueror,* VICTOR. As adj., *victorious, triumphant.*

victōria, -ae, f., [**victor**], VICTORY, *success.*

victus, see **vincō.**

victus, -ūs, m., [**vīvō**], *mode of life; food, provisions.* (VICTUALS)

vīcus, -ī, m., (row of houses), *street, quarter; village; hamlet.*

vidē-licet, [**vidēre licet,** *it is permitted to see*], (one may see), *clearly, evidently.* (VIZ.)

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, perceive, observe; understand.* Pass. as dep., **videor, vidērī, vīsus sum,** *be seen; seem, appear; seem good, seem best.* (VISION, VISIBLE)

vigilia, -ae, f., [**vigil,** *watchman*], *sleeplessness, wakefulness; watch,* one of the four divisions of the night. (VIGIL)

vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vigil,** *watchman*], *watch, be alert.* (VIGILANCE)

vīgintī, indecl., *twenty.*

vīlla, -ae, f., [dim. of **vīcus**], *country-house, farm,* VILLA.

vīmen, -inis, n., *pliant shoot, twig, withe.*

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind; fetter, confine, restrain.*

vinclum, see **vinculum.**

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat, subdue; exceed, surpass; have one's own way.*

vinculum or **vinclum, -ī,** n., [**vinciō**], *bond, fetter, chain;* pl., *fetters, bonds, prison.*

vindex, -icis, m., *defender, protector.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vindex**], *demand, claim; avenge, punish.* **in lībertātem vindicāre,** *to claim for liberty, set free, free.* (VINDICATE)

vīnea, -ae, f., VINEA, a movable shed; *sappers' hut.*

vīnum, -ī, n., WINE.

violēns, -entis, [**vīs**], *furious,* VIOLENT.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vīs**], *dishonor, outrage,* VIOLATE.

vir, virī, m., *man; husband.* (VIRILE)

vīrēs, -ium, f., [pl. of **vīs**], *strength.*

virga, -ae, f., *twig; switch, rod.*

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden,* VIRGIN.

virgultum, -ī, n., [**virga,** *twig*], *brushwood.*

Viriāthus, -ī, m., VIRIATHUS, leader of the Lusitanians in war against the Romans.

Viridomārus, -ī, m., VIRIDOMARUS: (1) A Gallic King who was slain by Marcellus. (2) An Aeduan leader.

virīlis, -e, [vir], *belonging to a man, manly,* VIRILE.

virītim, [vir], adv., *man by man, to each individually.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, m., *the* VIROMANDUI, a Belgic people.

virtūs, -ūtis, f., [vir], *manliness; courage, valor, vigor, energy, pluck; effort; worth, goodness, virtue.*

vīs, acc., **vim,** abl., **vī,** (pl., **vīrēs**), *force, power, energy, impetus, violence; influence; quantity, number.* See **vīrēs.** (VIM)

viscus, -eris, n., (often pl., **viscera**), *the flesh.*

vīsus, -ūs, m., [videō], *look; appearance, sight,* VISION.

vīta, -ae, f., [vīvō], *life.* (VITAL)

vītālis, -e, [vīta], VITAL.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shun, avoid.*

vitrum, -ī, n., *woad,* a blue dye used by the Britons.

vitta, -ae, f., *ribbon, band; headband, sacrificial fillet* (worn by brides and Vestal Virgins as a symbol of chastity; also bound around the head of victims led to sacrifice).

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus, *live, dwell.* (VIVACITY)

vīvus, -a, -um, [vīvō], *alive, living.* VIVACIOUS.

vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.*

vocābulum, -ī, n., [vocō], *name, word.* (VOCABULARY)

vocātiō, -ōnis, f., [vocō], *a calling.* (VOCATION)

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vōx], *call, summon; name; call for, demand.* (VOCATION)

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., *the* VOCONTII, a Gallic state in the Farther Province.

Volcae, -ārum, m., *the* VOLCAE, a Gallic people in the Province, having two branches, **Arecomicī** and **Tectosagēs.**

volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **volō**], *flit about, move, fly, hasten.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly.*

volō, velle, voluī, —, *will, wish, desire, be willing, consent; mean, intend.* (VOLUNTARY)

Volscī, -ōrum, m., *the* VOLSCIANS, a fierce highland tribe, dwelling southeast of Rome.

Volsō, see **Mānlius.**

volucer, -cris, -cre, *winged.* As noun, f., (sc. **avis**), *flying creature, bird.*

Volumnia, -ae, f., VOLUMNIA, wife of Coriolanus.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [voluntās], *willing,* VOLUNTARY, *serving as a volunteer.* As noun, **voluntāriī, -ōrum,** m., *volunteers.*

voluntās, -ātis, f., [volō], *will, wish, desire; good will, loyalty; consent.*

voluptās, -ātis, f., [volō], *pleasure, enjoyment, delight; desire, passion.* (VOLUPTUOUS)

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *C.* VOLUSENUS *Quadratus,* a tribune in Caesar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., VORENUS, a brave centurion.

vōtum, -ī, n., [voveō], *vow; wish, prayer.* (de-VOTE)

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, dedicate, consecrate.*

vōx, vōcis, f., VOICE; *utterance, cry, sound; word, saying.* Pl., **vōcēs,** *words, sayings, statements, appeals, calls.*

Vulcānus, -ī, m., VULCANUS or VULCAN, god of fire.

vulgō, [vulgus], adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere.* (VULGARLY)

vulgus, -ī, n., *common people, multitude, crowd.* (VULGAR)
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vulnus], *wound, hurt.* (VULNERABLE)
vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*
vultus, -ūs, m., *expression, countenance, looks, visage; face.*

X

Xanthippus, -ī, m., XANTHIPPUS, a Lacedaemonian general, who defeated Regulus.
Xenophōn, -ōntis, m., XENOPHON, a Greek general and historian.

Z

Zama, -ae, f., ZAMA, a town in Numidia, southwest of Carthage.
Zētēs, -ae, m., ZETES, one of the Argonauts.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the figure 1

A

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus.
ability, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
able, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
about, (*prep.*), dē, *w. abl.*; (*adv., w. numerals*), circiter.
absent, in one's absence, absēns, -entis.
accept, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
accomplish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
accordance, in accordance with, ad, *w. acc.*; *abl. case* (**82,** Note).
acquire, obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; nancīscor, -ī, nactus *and* nanctus.
across, trāns, *w. acc.*
act of injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
administer, administrō, 1.
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; prōgredior, -ī, -gressus.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Aedui, Aeduī, -ōrum, *m.*
Aeneas, Aenēās, -ae, *m.*
Aequi, Aequī, -ōrum, *m.*
affect, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
afraid, be afraid, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, *f.*
Africanus, Āfricānus, -ī, *m.*
after (*prep.*), post, *w. acc.*; (*conj.*), postquam
afterwards, posteā.
against, in, contrā, adversum, *preps. w. acc.*
age, aetās, -ātis, *f.*
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
alarm, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
Alba Longa, Alba Longa, -ae, *f.*
Alexander, Alexander, -drī, *m.*
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.*, -īus.
Allia, Allia, -ae, *f.*
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*
allow, patior, -ī, passus.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
almost, paene.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.*, -īus.
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *f.*
already, iam.
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
although, quamquam.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ambition, ambitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
ambush, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f.*
among, apud *or* inter, *preps. w. acc.*
Amulius, Amūlius, -ī, *m.*
Ancus, Ancus, -ī, *m.*
and, et, atque *or* ac, -que.
annihilate, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
another, alius, -a, -ud, *gen.*, -īus.
Antiochus, Antiochus, -ī, *m.*
any, ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, -īus.
Apollo, Apollō, -inis, *m.*
appear, appāreō, -ēre, -uī, —.

approach, appropinquō, 1; accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
Aquileia, Aquileia, -ae, *f.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around, circum, *w. acc.*
arouse, incitō, 1.
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus.
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *w.* ad *or* in *w. acc.*
Ascanius, Ascanius, -ī, *m.*
ascend, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus.
ascertain, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
ask, rogō, 1.
assassin, percussor, -ōris, *m.*
assemble, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
at, (*place where*), in, *w. abl.*; apud, *w. acc.*; (*place whither*), ad *or* in, *w. acc.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*
at once, statim.
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack, oppugnō, 1; aggredior, -ī, -gressus; faciō impetum in, *w. acc.*
attendant, satelles, -itis, *c.*
at that time, then, tum *or* tunc.
augur, augur, -is, *m.*
auspices, auspicia, -ōrum, *n.*
auxiliary forces, auxiliaries, auxilia, -ōrum, *n.*
avenge, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus.
await, exspectō, 1.
away, see **be.**

B

baggage (heavy), impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n.*
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus. **be away** *or* **distant,** absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod.
because of, ob *or* propter, *preps. w. acc.*
become, fīō, fierī, factus.
befall, obtingō, -ere, -tigī, —; accidō, -ere, -cidī, —.
before, ante, *w. acc.*
beg (for), ōrō, 1; petō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus; coepī, -isse, coeptus; **begin battle,** proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; arbitror, 1.
besiege, obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, melius, *gen.*, -ōris.
between, inter., *w. acc.*
beware (of), caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus.
Bibracte, Bibracte, -is, *n.*
Bibulus, Bibulus, -ī, *m.*
bind, vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus.
bitter, most bitter enemy, inimīcissimus, -ī, *m.*
boat, linter, -tris, *f.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
both . . . and, et . . . et.
both sides, utrīque, -ōrumque, *m.*
boundary, fīnis, -is, *m.*
boy, puer, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
break camp, castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

break through, perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus;
bribe, corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus.
bridegroom, spōnsus, -ī, *m.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; **bring to,** addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus; **bring forth,** prōferō, ferre, -tulī, -lātus; **bring upon,** īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
Brundisium, Brundisium, -ī, *n.*
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1.
burn up, combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ūstus.
business, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
but, sed.
by, *abl. case; w. abl. of agent,* ab.

C

Caesar, Caesar, -is, *m.*
call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1.
Camillus, Camillus, -ī, *m.*
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*
Campania, Campānia, -ae, *f.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.
candidacy, petītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
carry, portō, 1; **carry off,** rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus; **carry away,** tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, *m.*; Poenī, -ōrum, *m.*
Casca, Casca, -ae, *m.*
cast away, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
Casticus, Casticus, -ī, *m.*
Catullus, Catullus, -ī, *m.*
cavalry, equitēs, -um, *m.*; equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cease, dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situs.
celebrate a triumph, triumphō, 1.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
change, commūtō, 1.
charge, (attack), concurrō, -ere, -cucurrī *or* -currī, -cursus.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m.*
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
Cincinnatus, Cincinnātus, -ī, *m.*
Cineas, Cīneās, -ae, *m.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *c.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
civic, cīvicus, -a, -um.
civil, cīvīlis, -e.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.
Cocles, Cocles, -itis, *m.*
colleague, collēga, -ae, *m.*
collect, colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus; contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus.
colonnade, porticus, -ūs, *m.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus; **come together,** conveniō.
command, imperātum, -ī, *n.*
command, imperō, 1, *w. dat., and* ut *or* nē *and subj.*; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *w. acc. and infin.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*
conceal, cēlō, 1.
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
confusion, perturbātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
consecrate, dēdicō, 1.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspirators, coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m.*
conspire, coniūrō, 1.
consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
Coriolanus, Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*

Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
could, see **can.**
country, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*
cousin, patruēlis, -is, *m.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī *or* -īvī, -itus.
crown, corōna, -ae, *f.*
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cry, exclāmō, 1.
curia, cūria, -ae, *f.*
Curiatius, Cūriātius, -ī, *m.*
cut down, rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus.
cut to pieces, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus.
Cyrus, Cȳrus, -ī, *m.*

D

dagger, pūgiō, -ōnis, *m.*
daily, (*adj.*), cotīdiānus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), cotīdiē.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
dawn, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m.* and *f.*
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
decemvir, decemvir, -ī, *m.*
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
declare, cōnfīrmō, 1.
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, superō, 1; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
delay, moror, 1.
deliver, (a speech), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; excēdō.
depth, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertus.
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
detain, dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
determine, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus.
devastate, vāstō, 1.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
dignity, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*
direction, in (to) **all directions,** in omnēs partēs.
disaster, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*; calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
disavow, improbō, 1.
disgraceful, flāgitiōsus, -a, -um.
dishearten, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus.
dishonorable, īnfāmis, -e.
dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
dismount, equō dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus.
distinguished, praestāns, -antis.
district, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
divide, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus.
divorce, repudiō, 1.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
doctor, medicus, -ī, *m.*
draw (a sword), stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus.
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus.
dry ground, siccum, -ī, *n.*
due, be due, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*

E

each one, quisque, quidque.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
Egeria, Ēgeria, -ae, *f.*

eighty, octōgintā.
elect, creō, 1.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
encamp, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus.
encourage, cōnfīrmō, 1.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
end, fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; hostēs, -ium, *m.*
energetic, strēnuus, -a, -um.
engage in battle, proelium *or* pugnam committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
enough, satis.
enrol, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī -scrīptus.
entreaty, prex, precis, *f.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equal, aequus, -a, -um.
escape, effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —.
especially, praecipuē; maximē.
establish, cōnfīrmō, 1.
Etruscans, Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m.*
even if, etiam sī.
every, omnis, -e; (one by one), singulī, -ae, -a.
evil, (*noun*), malum, -ī, *n.*
excel, antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, —.
except, (*conj.*), nisi.
exercise, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
expel, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.
experienced, perītus, -a, -um.
extricate, expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

F

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, *m.*
Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, *m.*
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
fair, aequus, -a, -um.
fairness, aequitās, -ātis, *f.*
faithful, fīdus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus; **fall into,** incidō, -ere, -cidī, —; **fall back,** recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
family, gēns, gentis, *f.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, (*adv.*), longē; **farther,** longius.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.*
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī, —.
feast, epulae, -ārum, *f.*
few, only a few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; atrōx, -ōcis.
fiercely, ācriter.
fight, pugnō, 1.
finally, postrēmō.
find, (*come upon*), inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
find out, comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus.
finish, fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
first, (*adj.*), prīmus, -a, -um.
first, (*adv.*) prīmum; **at first,** prīmō.
fitting, commodus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque.
flashing, micāns, -antis.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —.
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
flog, verberō, 1.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
foolish, stultus, -a, -um.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
force, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
forced march, magnum iter, magnī itineris, *n.*
ford, vadum, -ī, *n.*
foremost, prīmus, -a, -um.
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forewarn, praemoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

for fear that, nē, *with subj.*
forget, oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus.
for the purpose, causā, *with preceding gen.;* ad, *with gerundive phrase.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
found, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, līberō, 1.
freedman, lībertus, -ī, *m.*
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum.
frequently, saepe.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
from, ab, dē, ex, *preps. w. abl.*
fugitive, fugiēns, -entis, *m.*
furnish, ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditus.

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, Genava, -ae, *f.*
German, (*adj.*), Germānus, -a, -um.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*
Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*
get possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus, *w. abl.*
gift, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
give up, dēdō -ere, -didī, -ditus.
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, īvī *or* iī, itum; **go across,** trānseō, -īre, -iī *or* -īvī -itus; **go out,** exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus.
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grateful, grātus, -a, -um.
great, magnus, -a, -um; **greater,** maior, maius; **greatest,** maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
Greek, (*adj.*), Graecus, -a, -um.
Greeks, Graecī, -ōrum, *m.*
guard, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
guard, cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
guest, convīva, -ae, *c.*
guide, dux, ducis, *m.*

H

halfway, medius, -a, -um.
halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
hampered, impedītus, -a, -um.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
Hannibal, Hannibal, -is, *m.*
Hanno, Hannō, -ōnis, *m.*
hard, difficilis, -e.
harsh, asper, -era, -erum.
Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal, -is, *m.*
hasten, properō, 1; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
hateful, invīsus, -a, -um.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *or Dative of Possessor* (67).
he, is, hic, ille.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m.*
here, hīc, ibi.
hide, abdō, -ere, -didī, ditus.
hiding place, latebra, -ae, *f.*
high, altus, -a, -um; **highest,** summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*; mōns, montis, *m.*
himself, (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um; (*reflexive*), suī.
hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
his, eius; **his** (own), suus, -a, -um; **his men,** suī, -ōrum, *m.*

hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
honor, honor, -ōris, *m.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
hope, spērō, 1.
Horace, Horātius, -ī, *m.*
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, *m.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *c.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how, quō modo.
huge, ingēns, -entis.
hundred, centum.
hurl, praecipitō, 1.
hurry, properō, 1.
hurt, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *w. dat.* (**61**)

I

I, ego; *pl.*, nōs.
Ides, Īdūs, -uum, *f.*
if, sī.
ill, aeger, -gra, -grum.
immense, ingēns, -entis.
import, importō, 1.
in, (*place where*), in, *w. abl.*
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
indication, indicium, -ī, *n.*
inexperienced, imperītus, -a, -um.
infantry, peditēs, -um, *m.*; peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
inform, certior faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
in order that, ut (*negative* nē), *w. subj.*
inquire, quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus.
instead of, prō, *w. abl.*
into *or* **in,** (*place whither*), in, *w. acc.*
invade, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus in, *w. acc.*
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*

J

join battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
journey, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
judge, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
judgment, arbitrium, -ī, *n.*
Jugurtha, Iugurtha, -ae, *m.*
just, aequus, -a, -um.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*

K

keep away, abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
keep out, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
kill, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
kindly, benignē.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus; intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, lēctus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labōrō, 1.
Laevinus, Laevīnus, -ī, *m.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
large, magnus; **larger,** maior, maius.
late, (*adj.*), tardus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), tardē; **too late,** (*comp.*), tardius; **late in the day,** multō diē.
Latinus, Latīnus, -ī, *m.*
Lavinia, Lāvīnia, -ae, *f.*
Lavinium, Lāvīnium, -ī, *n.*
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; addūcō; **lead across,** trādūcō;

lead back, redūcō; **lead out,** ēdūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leading citizen, prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
leap down, dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -ultus.
learn, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
leave, (*behind*), relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus.
leave, (*depart*), excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, (*adj.*), minor, minus; (*adv.*), minus.
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
lieutenant (**general**), lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
limb, membrum, -ī, *n.*
line (**of battle**), aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
little, (*adj.*), parvus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), (*by*) **a little,** paulō; **little by little,** paulātim.
live, incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultus; vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long (time), diū; **longer,** diūtius.
loud, magnus, -a, -um.
love, amō, 1.
Lucretia, Lucrētia, -ae, *f.*

M

Macedonia, Macedonia, -ae, *f.*
magnificent, magnificus, -a, -um.
maiden, virgō, -inis, *f.*
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; **make war upon,** bellum īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, *w. dat.*
man, homō, -inis, *m.*; vir, virī, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a.
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
march, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
March, Mārtius, -a, -um.
marching column, agmen, -inis, *n.*
Marius, Marius, -ī, *m.*
marry, in mātrimōnium dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
meanwhile, interim; intereā.
Memmius, Memmius, -ī, *m.*
mention, mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
Metellus, Metellus, -ī, *m.*
middle *or* **midst of,** medius, -a, -um.
miles, mīlia passuum; **one mile,** mīlle passūs.
Mithridates, Mithridātēs, -is, *m.*
more, (*adj.*), plūs, *w. gen.; pl.*, plūrēs, plūra.
more, (*adv.*), magis.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um.
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much, multus, -a, -um.
Mucius, Mūcius, -ī, *m.*
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
murder, interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
near, ad, *w. acc.*
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um; vīcīnus, -a, -um.
neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, *m.*
never, numquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllīus.
nobility, nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*
noble, nōbilis, -e.
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
Numa, Numa, -ae, *m.*
Numantia, Numantia, -ae, *f.*

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
Numidia, Numidia, -ae, *f.*
Numitor, Numitor, -ōris, *m.*

O

observe, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.
obtain, obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; **obtain money,** pecūniam expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
obtain one's request, impetrō, 1.
occupy, occupō, 1.
often, saepe.
old, (*with expressions of time*), nātus, -a, -um.
on, (*place where*), in, *w. abl.*
on account of, ob *or* propter, *w. acc.*
once, at once, statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ūnīus; **the one** (*of two*) . . . **the other,** alter . . . alter, *gen.*, alterius; **one . . . another,** alius . . . alius, *gen.*, alīus.
only a few, paucī, -ae, -a.
oppose, obsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *w. dat.* (62)
Orbilius, Orbilius, -ī, *m.*
order, imperātum, -ī, *n.*
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus.
order, in order that, ut (*negative* nē), *w. subj.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
other, *see* one; **the other,** cēterī, -ae, -a.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; oportet, *impers., foll. by acc. and infin.*
our, noster- -tra, -trum; **our men,** nostrī, -ōrum, *m.*
out of, ex *or* ē.
outside (of), extrā, *w. acc.*
overcome, superō, 1.
overtake, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus.
overthrow, ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.

P

palaestra, palaestra, -ae, *f.*
Palatine, Palātīnus, -a, -um.
panic-stricken, perterritus, -a, -um.
Papirius, Papīrius, -ī, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass (*a law*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
pass by, praetereō, -īre, -īvī *or* -iī, -itus.
Paulus, Paulus, -ī, *m.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*; **common people,** plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
Persia, Persia, -ae, *f.*
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *w. dat., foll. by* ut *or* nē *w. subj.* (107)
Philip, Philippus, -ī, *m.*
pike, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
pile, sublicius, -a, -um.
pile up, cōnflō, 1.
pirate, pīrāta, -ae, *m.*
pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
place, locus, -ī, *m.*
place, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
pluck, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
plunder, praeda, -ae, *f.*
plow, arō, 1.
point out, dēmōnstrō, 1.
poison, venēnum, -ī, *n.*
Pompey, Pompeius, -ī, *m.*
Pontius, Pontius, -ī, *m.*
Pontus, Pontus, -ī, *m.*
poor, pauper, *gen.*, -is.
Porsena, Porsena, -ae, *m.*

power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*
praise, laudō, 1.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.
prepare, parō, 1.
present, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
present, dōnō, 1.
press, premō, -ere, pressī, pressus; **press hard,** vehementer premō.
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
price, pretium, -ī, *n.*
prince, prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
Proca, Proca, -ae, *m.*
proceed, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus; prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, -itus.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
Punic, Pūnicus, -a, -um.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*
purpose, for the purpose, causā *or* grātiā, *w. preceding gen.;* ad, *w. gerundive phrase.*
put in command, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *w. acc. and dat.*
put to death, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*

Q

Questions: (1) *for information,* -ne; (2) *expecting "Yes,"* Nōnne; (3) *expecting "No,"* Num.
quickly, as quickly as possible, quam celerrimē.
quickness, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*

R

ravage, vāstō, 1; dēpopulor, 1.
reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *w.* ad *or* in, *w. acc.*
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
rear guard, novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis, *n.*
rebellion, sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
recall, revocō, 1.
receive, accipiō, *or* recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
redeem, redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus.
reduce, redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus.
refrain, abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, *m.*
release, līberō, 1; dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remarkable, ēgregius, -a, -um.
remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus.
remove, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *or* removeō.
Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*
renew, renovō, 1.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, 1; ēnūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *w. dat.* (61)
respect, (*matter*), rēs, reī, *f.*; (*regard*), reverentia, -ae, *f.*, honor, -ōris, *m.*
rest, requiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus.
restore, restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
restrain, coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
retainer, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
retreat, recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; sē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
return, (*go back*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus; (*give back*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
reverse, convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.

reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
ridge, iugum, -ī, *n.*
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
right (*hand*), dexter, -tra, -trum.
riot, sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
robber, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
rod, ferula, -ae, *f.*
Roman, (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*; (*adj.*), Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*; **at Rome** (*locative*), Rōmae.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
room, locus, -ī, *m.*
rouse, incitō, 1; commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
rout, fugō, 1; fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus.
route, iter, itineris, *n.*
Rubicon, Rubicō, -ōnis, *m.*
rumor, rūmor, -ōris, *m.*

S

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m.*
sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Saguntum, Saguntum, -ī, *n.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
Samnites, Samnītēs, -ium, *m.*
Sardinia, Sardinia, -ae, *f.*
save, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um.
second time, iterum.
secretary, scrība, -ae, *m.*
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
seize, (*hold*), occupō, 1; (*carry off*), rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus; (*arrest*), comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus.
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
self-controlled, moderātus, -a, -um.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senate house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus; **send ahead,** praemittō.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus.
Sequani, Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m.*
serious, gravis, -e.
serve as = **be for.**
sesterce, sēstertius, -ī, (*gen. pl.*, sēstertium), *m.*
set in order, ōrdinō, 1.
set out, proficīscor, -ī, profectus.
seven, septem.
seventeen, septendecim.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, complūrēs, complūra, *gen.*, -ium.
severe, sevērus, -a, -um.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, *m.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shout, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show (*teach*), doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus; (*point out*), ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
Silvius, Silvius, -ī, *m.*
since, cum, *w. subj.*
sink, mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus.
six, sex.
sixty, sexāgintā.
size, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f*
slaughter, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus.
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
slay, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.

slow, tardus, -a, -um.
smaller, minor, minus.
so, (*with adjs. and advs.*), tam; (*with verbs*), sīc, ita.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
so many, tot, (indecl.).
some (one), aliquis, aliquid; **some . . . others,** aliī . . . aliī.
sometimes, aliquandō.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
soothsayer, haruspex, -icis, *m.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
Spurinna, Spūrinna, -ae, *m.*
stand, stō, -āre, stetī, stātus; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
standard bearer, aquilifer, -ī, *m.*
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
station at intervals, dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.
stop, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
stranger, aliēnus, -ī, *m.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f.*
strike, percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus.
struggle, certāmen, -inis, *n.*; dīmicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
successfully, fēlīcissimē; bene.
such, tālis, -e; (*so great*), tantus, -a, -um.
sudden, subitus, -a, -um; repentīnus, -a, -um.
Suebi, Suēbī, -ōrum, *m.*
sue for, petō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
suffer punishment, poenam persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus.
suicide, commit suicide, interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *w. reflexive.*
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
Sulla, Sulla, -ae, *m.*
sum of money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
surrender, dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *w. reflexive.*
survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, —.
sustain, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swim across, trānō, -āre, -āvī, —.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f.*

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; **take away,** tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus.
Tanaquil, Tanaquil, -is, *f.*
Tarpeia, Tarpeia, -ae, *f.*
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō, 1; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem.
terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*
than, quam.
that, ille; is.
that, (*conj*), ut; **that . . . not,** nē, *w. subj.*
their, eōrum; **their (own),** suus, -a, -um.
them, see **he.**
then (*at that time*), tum *or* tunc; (*thereupon*), deinde.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, 1; exīstimō, 1.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hic; is.
though, quamquam.
thousand, (*indecl. adj.*), mīlle; **thousands** (*noun w. gen.*), mīlia, -ium, *n.*
three, trēs, tria.

throne, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
through, per, *w. acc.*
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; **throw aside,** reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
thus, sīc, ita.
Tiber, Tiber, -is, *m.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; **at this time,** tum *or* tunc; **at one time,** ōlim.
timid, timidus, -a, -um.
to, ad *or* in, *w. acc.*
togaed, togātus, -a, -um.
torture, supplicium, -ī, *n.*
toward, ad, *w. acc.*
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
track, vēstīgium, -ī, *n.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
traitor, prōditor, -ōris, *m.*
treat, tractō, 1.
trial, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*; populus, -ī, *m.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*
Trojans, Trōiānī, -ōrum, *m.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
trouble, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
Troy, Trōia, -ae, *f.*
try, cōnor, 1.
Tullus, Tullus, -ī, *m.*
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versus; convertō; **turn from,** āvertō.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

U

unable, be unable, nōn possum, posse, potuī.
under, (*w. motion*), sub, *w. acc.*; (*place where*), sub, *w. abl.*
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
undertaking, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
unfairly, inīquē.
unfinished, imperfectus, -a, -um.
unite, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, (*often w. reflexive*).
unless, nisi.
until, dum.
unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
upon, (*place where*), in, *w. abl.*; (*place whither*), in, *w. acc.*
urge (on), concitō, 1.
use, ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *w. abl.*
utmost, summus, -a, -um.

V

vain, in vain, frūstrā.
Valerius, Valerius, -ī, *m.*
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Varro, Varrō, -ōnis, *m.*
Verginius, Verginius, -ī, *m.*
verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
very, (intensive), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
very large, maximus, -a, -um.
very many, plūrimī, -ae, -a.
Vesontio, Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.*
victorious, victor, -ōris.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
Viriathus, Viriāthus, -ī, *m.*

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
wait, exspectō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; (*city*) **walls,** moenia, -ium, *n.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
watch (*of the night*), vigilia, -ae, *f.*

weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
what, (*pron.*), quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod.
when, ubi, *w. indic.;* cum, *in narrative generally w. subj.* (**113**)
where, ubi; (*whither*), quō.
which, quī, quae, quod.
while, dum, *w. pres. indic.;* **a little while,** paulum.
white, albus, -a, -um.
who, (rel.), quī, quae, quod; (inter), quis, quid.
whole (**of**), tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.*, -īus.
why, cūr; quam ob rem.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, coniux, -ugis, *f.*; uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, *n.*
winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n.*
wish, volō, velle, voluī; **not wish,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
with, cum, *w. abl.*
withdraw, recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
without, sine, *w. abl.*
woman, mulier, -is, *f.*
wonder, mīror, 1.
wooden, ligneus, -a, -um.
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
world, orbis terrārum.
worst, pessimus, -a, -um.
wound, vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wound, vulnerō, 1.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
writer, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yet, not yet, nōndum.
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus.
yoke, iugum, -ī, *n.*
you, tū; *pl.*, vōs.
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*; iuvenis, -is, *m.*
your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.
yourself, tū; **yourselves,** vōs.

Z

Zama, Zama, -ae, *f.*

INDEX

References to pages are in Roman type (as 243).
References to the Grammar sections (pages 439–489) are in heavy type (as **14**).

Ablative:
Absolute, 31–32; **89.**
of Accompaniment, **83.**
of Agent, **78.**
of Cause, **81.**
of Comparison, **86.**
of Degree of Difference, **87.**
with Deponents, **80.**
of Description (Quality), **84.**
with **dignus** and **indignus, 85,** N.
in Accordance with, **82,** N.
of Manner, **82.**
of Means, **79.**
of Place From Which, **76.**
of Place Where, **91.**
with Prepositions, **90.**
of Separation, **75.**
of Source, **77.**
of Specification (Respect), 39; **85.**
of Time, **88.**
Accompaniment, Abl. of, **83.**
Accusative:
Direct Object, **69.**
of Duration or Extent, **72.**
of Place To Which, **74.**
with Prepositions, **73.**
Subject of Infinitive, **71.**
Two Accusatives, **70,** *a–c.*
ad, in Gerundive Phrases, **130,** 2, N.
Adjectives:
1st and 2nd decl., **9**; 3rd decl., **10**; decl. of comp., **13**; Nine Irreg. Adjs., 14; **11**; Irreg. numerals, 14–15; Comp. of Adjs., **12.** *Syntax:* Agreement of, **39**; Dat. with, **68**; Gen. with, **59**; Partitive, **41**; as Substantives, **40.**
Aduatuci, 312.
Adverbs, Comp. of, **14.**
Adversative Clauses: w. Indic., **102**; w. Subj. **115.**
Aedile, 218.
Aedui, 289–290; join rebellion, 379–380.
Aeneas, 105.
Agent: Abl. of, **78**; Dat. of, **66.**
agger, 256.
agmen, 254; 300–302.
Alesia, 380–396.
Alexander the Great, 217–218.
aliquis, decl., **22.**
alius, decl., 14.
Allia (river), 148–149.
Allobroges, 267; 275.
Alps, 174; 183.
Ambiorix, 348–353; 375–376.
Amulius, 107–111.
Anchises, 105; decl., **8.**
Ancus Marcius, 123; 125.
Anticipatory Subjunctive, **116.**
Antiochus the Great, 188.
Antony, Mark, 235; 391; 404.
Appius Claudius, 144–145.
Apollonius Molo, 28; 213.
Apposition, **38.**
Aquae Sextiae, 204.
aquila, 253.

aquiliferī, bravery of, 327; 353.
Aquitania, 260; 318.
Ariovistus, 289–296.
Arms, defensive and offensive, 253.
Army (Caesar's): artillery, 254; musical instruments, 254; organization, 250–254; on the march, 254–255; in battle, 255–256; besieging walled towns, 256.
Arverni, 289; 378.
Ascanius, 105–106.
Asculum, 161.
Asia (Minor), 188, 206.
Assimilation, 197.
Atrium, 9–10.
Augurs, 89–91; 112.
Auspices, 34; 90–91.

Ball playing, 69–70.
Basilica, 4–5.
Baths, 68–73.
Battering Ram, 256.
Bedrooms, 12.
Beds, 16.
Beneventum, 161.
Bibulus, 220–222.
Boii, 266; 283–284; 287.
Britain: 1st. expedition to, 321–335; 2nd. expedition, 336–347; geography of, 340–341.
Britons, 224; 342. See Chariots.
Brutus (nephew of Tarquin), 131–134.
Brutus (Caesar's assassin), 235–238.

Caesar: See dates in Life of, xxvi–xxvii; joins democratic party, 211; adventure with pirates, 213–214; drives Germans back, 224; invades Britain, 224; triumphal procession, 51–56; reforms calendar, 233; projects for beautifying Rome, 234; personal appearance and characteristics, 244–246; characterization of, 247–250; as a general, 248; as author, 249; faults and virtues, 249; greatness, 249–250; self-control, 242–243.
Calendar (Julian), 233.
Calpurnia, 236.
Camillus, 147–149.
Camp (Roman), 255.
Cannae, 177.
Carthage, 163–164. See Punic Wars. Destruction of, 191–193.
Casca, 238.
Cases, uses of, **52–92.** See names of cases.
Cassius, 235.
Cassivellaunus, 344–346.
Castor, Temple of, 52–53.
Cato Maior, 191.
Cato Minor, 245.
Caudine Forks, 153.
causā, in Gerundive Phrases, **130, 2, N.**
Causal Clauses, see **cum** and **quod.**
Cause, Abl. of, **81.**
Cavalry (Carthaginian), 167; 175–177; 185. See Germans and Numidia.
cēna, 61–65.
Centurions, 252; bravery of, 308; 357–358.
Chairs, 18.
Characteristic Clauses, see Descriptive Relative Clauses.
Chariot races, 98–100. British war chariots, 333; 342–343.
Children (Roman), 23–28.
Cicero, Marcus Tullius, 5.
Cicero, Quintus, 347–363.
Cimbri, 203–204.
Cincinnatus, 143–144.
Cineas, 159.
Cinna, 208; 211.
Circus Maximus, 98–100.

Cloaca maxima, 126.
Clothing (Roman), 39–43; of soldiers, 252.
Colchis, decl., **8.**
Collatinus, 130–133.
Commands in Indirect Disc., **118,** N. 2.
Commius, 323; 328–329; 334; 346; 387.
Comparison, Abl. of, **86.**
Comparison: of Adjs., Regular, **12,** *a*; Irregular, 38; **12,** *b*; of Advs., **14.**
Complementary Infin., 21; **123.**
Compound Verbs, Dat. with, **62.**
Concessive Clauses, see Adversative Clauses.
Conditional Sentences, **120.**
Connecting Relative, **43.**
Considius, 278–279.
Consuls, 132; 177; 203; 222.
Contracted Verb Forms, **37.**
Coriolanus, 141–142.
Corinth, 195.
Corvinus, 151.
Cotta, 325; 347–353.
Couches (dining), 16; 61–62.
Crassus, the triumvir, 221; 223; 226.
Crassus, Caesar's lieut., 294; 318; 359.
crātēs, 256.
Croesus, 95.
Crown, civic, 213; golden, 55.
cum (enclitic), **90,** N. 1.
Cum Causal Clauses, **114.**
Cum Circumstantial Clauses, 88; **113.**
Curiatii, 120–121.
Curule chair, 18.
Cynoscephalae, 187.
Cyrus the Great, 95.
Cyrus the Younger, 239–240.

Dative:
with Adjectives, **68.**
of Agent, **66.**
with Compounds, **62.**
Indirect Object, **60.**
of Possessor, **67.**
of Purpose, **64.**
of Reference, **65.**
of Separation, **63.**
with Special Verbs, **61.**
Decius Mus, 160.
Defective Verbs, **36.**
Degree of Difference, Abl. of, **87.**
Delos, decl., **8.**
Demonstrative Pronouns, **18.**
Deponent Verbs, conj., **28.**
Deponents, Abl. with, **80.**
Description: Abl. of, **84;** Gen. of, **57.**
Descriptive Relative Clauses, **112.**
deus, decl., **7.**
Dictator, 143; 152; Sulla, 209–212.
dignus and **indignus,** w. Abl., **85,** N.
Dinner (Roman), see **cēna.**
Direct Object, Acc. of, **69.**
Direct Reflexive, **46.**
Diviciacus, 264; 277.
Dress (Roman), 39–42.
Druids, 258; 365–367.
dum: with Hist. Pres., **94,** 2; with Antic. Subj., **116.**
Duilius, 164–166.
Dumnorix, 264; 272; 277; 336.
duo, decl., 15; **11.**
Duration, Acc. of, **72.**

Egypt, 230; 234.
Elephants, 156–157; 159; 161; 174; 186; 201.
eō, conj., **33.**
Equites (Roman), 39; 98; 209; (Gallic), 367.
Euripides, 217.
ēvocātī, 252; bravery of, 405, 411.
Extent, Acc. of, **72.**

Fabius Maximus, 177.
Fabius Rullianus, 152.

Fasces, 221–222.
Faustulus, 110.
Fearing, Verbs of, **108.**
ferō, conj., **32.**
Fifth Declension, 8–9; **6.**
First Conjugation, **23.**
First Declension, **1.**
Flamen, 91.
Flamininus, 187.
Flaminius, 175–176.
Forum Romanum, 4–5.
Fourth Conjugation, **26.**
Fourth Declension, 1–2; **5.**
Freedmen, 47.
Furniture, 15–18.
Future Passive Participle, **130.**

Galba, 313.
Games, of the Circus, 98–100; (Sports), 36; 69–70.
Gaul (country), 256–257.
Gauls: *History:* sack Rome, 148–149; conflicts with, 171–172; aid Hannibal, 174; outcome of Caesar's war with, 259.
Descriptive: appearance, 257; civilization, 257–258; government, 258; language, 257; population, 257; religion, 258; territory, 256–257; as warriors, 258.
Caesar's account of: classes, 364–365; Druids, 365–367; gods, 368; human sacrifices, 367; Knights, 367; strange customs, 368–370.
Genitive:
with Adjectives, **59.**
of Description (Quality), **57.**
Limiting, **55.**
of Measure, **57,** N.
of Possession, **56.**
of the Whole (Partitive), **58.**
Gergovia, 378–380.
Germans: cavalry, 380; 382; 390–391; 395; freebooting, 371–372; frontiers, 371; guests, 372; Hercynian Forest, 373–375; land assignments, 370–371; religion, 370; rulers, 371; superior to Gauls in war, 373; superstition, 292.
Gerund, 33; **131.**
Gerundive: with **sum, 130,** 1; in Phrases, **130,** 2, and N.
Gods (Roman), 80–84; (Gallic), 368; (German), 370.
grātiā, in Gerundive Phrases, **130,** 2. N.
Greek Nouns, decl., **8.**

Hair, arrangement of, 42–43.
Hamilcar, 169; 172–173.
Hannibal, 173–186; 188–189.
Hasdrubal, 173; 178; 183.
Haruspices, 34; 91.
Helmet, 253; 304.
Helvetian campaign, 261–288.
Heraclea, 157.
Hercynian Forest, 373–374.
hic, decl., **18.**
Hills of Rome, 2; 128–129.
Hindering, Verbs of, **109.**
Historical Present, **94,** N. 1 and 2.
Horatii, 120–121.
Horatius Cocles, 2; 135.
House (Roman), 9–12.

īdem, decl., **18.**
Ides, 235; 237.
ille, decl., **18.**
Imperative, use of, 49; **121.**
Impersonal verbs, **51.**
Implied Indirect Discourse, **118,** N. 1.
In Accordance with, Abl. of, **82,** N.
Indefinite Pronouns, **22.**
Independent Volitive Subjunctive, 50–51; **103.**
Indicative: use of, 49; **100.**
in Adversative Clauses, **102.**
in Temporal Clauses, **101; 113,** N.

Indirect Discourse:
Simple, 22; **125.**
Subordinate Clauses, **118.**
Indirect Object, Dat. of, **60.**
Indirect Question, 76–77; **117.**
Indirect Reflexive, **47; 48,** N.
Infinitive:
Complementary, 21; **123.**
Endings of, 20–21.
in Indirect Discourse, 22; **125.**
as Object, **123.**
as Subject, **122.**
as Subject or Object, **124.**
Tenses of, 22.
īnsulae, (Apartment houses), 3.
Intensive Pronoun, decl., **19**; use of, **48.**
-iō Verbs, **27.**
ipse, decl., **19;** use of, **48.**
Irregular Adjectives, 14; **11.**
Irregular Nouns, decl., **7.**
Irregular Verbs, conj., **30–35.**
is, decl., **18.**
Italian Allies, war with, 205–206.
iubeō, with Infin., **107,** N.

Jugurtha, 201–202.

Labienus, 273; 379–380; 402.
Lamps, 18.
Lares, 36; 84.
Latinus, 105.
Lavinia, 105.
lectus, 16; 62.
lēgātī, 251–252; 294.
lībertī, 47.
Libraries, 70; 72; 234.
Lictors, 54.
Limiting Genitive, **55.**
Locative, **92.**
lōrīca, 253.
Lucretia, 130–131.

Macedonia, 180–181; 187; 190; 194.
Magister equitum, 152.
Magistracies (Roman), 215.
Magnesia, 188.
mālō, conj., **35.**
Mamertine Prison, 123; 125.
Manner, Abl. of, **82.**
Marcellus, 172; 180.
Marius, 202–204; 206; 208–209.
Masinissa, 186; 192.
Meals (Roman), 61–65.
Means, Abl. of, **79.**
Measure, Gen. of, **57,** N.
Menenius Agrippa, 139.
Metaurus, 183.
Metellus, 201–202.
Mettius Fufetius, 121.
mīlle, mīlia, decl., **11;** use, 15.
Mithridates, 206–207; 209.
Moods, 49–50. See names of moods.
Mummius, 195.
Munda, 231.
Musical Instruments in Army, 254.
Mylae, 165–166.

Navy: of Carthage, 163–166; 169; 186.
of Rome, 164–166; 169.
Nervii, 299–311; 353; 364.
nōlō, **35.**
Nominative, **52–53.**
Numa, 118.
Numantia, 198–199.
Numerals, **15.**
Numidia, 201–202; 230; cavalry of, 185.
Numitor, 107–111.

Optimates, 212.
Oracles, 94–95.
Orgetorix, 261–265.
Ostia, 2; 123.

paedagōgus, 23.
palla, 42.
Papirius, 152–153.
Parthians, 226; 234.

Participles:
Formation of, 30–31.
Present, 32–33; **127.**
Perfect, **128.**
Future Active, **129.**
Future Passive, **130.**
Partitive Adjectives, **41.**
Partitive, see Gen. of the Whole.
Paulus (who fell at Cannae), 177.
Paulus (conqueror of Perseus), 190.
Penates, 36; 84.
Periphrastic Conjugations, **29.**
Peristyle, 10–12.
Perseus, 190.
Pharnaces, 54; 230.
Pharsalia, 229–230; 399–412.
Philip V, 179–180.
Phoenicia, 163.
Pike (Roman), 253; 283; 294.
Place From Which, Abl. of, **76.**
Place to Which, Acc. of, **74.**
Place Where, Abl. of, **91.**
Plebs (Roman): *curiae* of, 117; secessions, 138–139; 145; conflict with patricians, 139.
plūs, decl., **13;** use of, 38–39.
pluteī, 256.
Pompey, 220–221; 223, 226–227; 228–230; 399–412.
Pontifices, 89.
Porsena, 135–136.
Porticoes, 3.
Possession, Gen. of, **56.**
Possessor, Dat. of, **67.**
possum, conj., **31.**
Predicate Nominative, **53.**
Prefixes, see Word Formation.
Prepositions: with Acc., **73;** with Abl., **90;** with Acc. or Abl., **73,** N.
Priests (Roman), 89–91.
prohibeō, with Infin., **109,** N.
Pronouns: decl., **16–22;** syntax, **42–48.**
Proscriptions, 208–209; 211–212.
Pseudo-Philip, 194.
Ptolemy, 230.
Punic Wars: First, 163–170; Second, 172–186; Third, 191–193.
Purpose:
Dat. of, **64.**
with **ut** or **nē,** 59–60; **104.**
Relative Purpose Clauses, **105.**
quō Purpose Clauses, **106.**
in Gerundive Phrases, **130,** 2, N.
Pyrrhus, 154–161.

Quaestor, 215; 252; 294.
Quality, Abl. or Gen. of, see Description.
quī: decl., **20;** syntax, **42–45.**
quidam, decl., **22.**
quīn with Subjunctive, **111,** N.
Quinqueremes, 165–166.
quis, decl., **21.**
quisquam, decl., **22.**
quisque, decl., **22.**
quō Purpose Clauses, **106.**
quod Causal Clauses, **119.**

Reference, Dat. of, **65.**
Reflexive Pronoun; decl., **17;** Direct Reflexive, **46;** Indirect Reflexive, **47; 48,** N.
Regulus, 167–169.
Relative Clauses of Description, **112.**
Relative Clause Preceding, **45.**
Relative Purpose Clauses, **105.**
Religion (Roman), 79–86. See Gauls and Germans.
Remi, 298; 364.
Remus, 109–112.
Republic (Roman): establishment of, 132–133; later, 200; failure of, 210; change to Imperial government, 248–249.
Respect (Specification), Abl. of, 39; **85.**
Result clauses, 67; **110;** Substantive, **111.**

Romans: early character, 103; change in the later Republic, 200; 210.
Rome: description of city, 2–3; founding, 111–112; population under kings, 129; territory under kings, 154–155; conquest of Italy, 155; compared with Carthage, 163–164; expansion outside Italy, 196; under Marius and Sulla, 206–209; becomes an Empire, 210.
Romulus, 109–118.
Rubicon, 227–228.

Sabines, 113–116.
Sabinus, 317–318; 347–352.
Sacred Mount, 138; 145.
Sacrifices (Roman), 85–86. See Gauls.
Saguntum, 174.
Salt-cellar, 62.
Samnite Wars, 152–153.
sarcinae, 255.
Saturn, 104.
Scaevola, 135–136.
Schools, 23–28.
Scipio Aemilianus, 193; 199.
Scipio Africanus, 182; 184–186.
Secessions of the plebs, 138–139; 145.
Second Conjugation, **24.**
Second Declension, **2.**
Semi-deponents, **28,** N.
Senate: meeting place, 5; under kings, 117; increased, 125; conflicts with plebs, 138–139; becomes corrupt, 200; 210; conflict with Caesar, 227; subservient to Caesar, 249.
Senators: dress, 41; seats, 98.
Separation: Abl. of, **75;** Dat. of, **63.**
Sequani: 272–273; 289–290.
Sequence of Tenses, 77–79.
Servius Tullius, 2; 127–129.
Shield (Roman), 253.
Ships: Triremes and Quinqueremes, 165–166; sixteen banks of oars, 190; Gallic ships, 313–317; Caesar's ships for expedition to Britain, 336.
Shoes (Roman), 43.
Sicily, 163–164; 170; 180–181.
Slaves, 46–48.
Source, Abl. of, **77.**
Spain, 172–174; 182; 197; 231.
Special Verbs, Dat. with, **61.**
Specification, Abl. of, 39; **85.**
spolia opima, 172.
Spurinna, 237.
Standards (army), 253.
stola, 42.
Streets of Rome, 2.
Subject of Infin., **71.**
Subjunctive:
Forms: Active, 58–59; Passive, 75–76; of **sum,** 50.
Force, 49. *Translation of,* 50.
Principal Uses of, 50.
Adversative Clauses, **115.**
Anticipatory Clauses, **116.**
Commands in Ind. Disc., **118,** N. 2.
Conditional Sentences, **120,** 4–6.
Cum Causal, **114.**
Cum Circumstantial, 88; **113.**
Descriptive Relative Clauses, **112.**
with Verbs of Fearing, **108.**
with Verbs of Hindering, **109.**
Implied Indirect Disc., **118,** N. 1.
Independent Volitive, 50–51; **103.**
Indirect Questions, 76–77; **117.**
Purpose Clauses, 59–60; **104.**
quīn Clauses, **111,** N.
quō Purpose Clauses, **106.**
quod Causal Clauses, **119.**
Relative Purpose Clauses, **105.**
Result Clauses, 67; **110.**

Subjunctive:
Sequence of Tenses, 77–79.
Subord. Clauses in Ind. Disc., **118.**
Substantive Result Clauses, **111.**
Substantive Volitive Clauses, **107.**
Suffixes, See Word Formation.
Sulla, 202; 206–209; 210–213.
sum: conj., **30;** Subjunctive, 50.
Sumptuary Laws, 233–234.
Supine, **132.**
Swords, 253; 283.
Syphax, 185.
Syracuse, 164–165; 180.
Syria, 188.

Tables, 15–16.
Tablets (writing), 26.
Tablinum, 10.
Tanaquil, 125–128.
Tarentum, 156.
Tarpeia, 114–115.
Tarquinius Priscus, 124–126.
Tarquinius Superbus, 129–131; 134–136.
Temporal Clauses with Indic., **101.**
Tenses:
of Indicative, **93–99.**
Historical Present, **94.**
Sequence of Tenses, 77–79.
testūdō, 256.
Teutones, 203–204.
Thames, 344.
Third Conjugation, **25.**
Third Declension, **4.**
Ticinus, 175.
Time, Abl. of, **88;** Acc. of, **72.**
Toga: 39–42; **praetexta,** 41–42; 144; **virīlis,** 42; **picta,** 55.
Torquatus, 150–151.
Trasumenus, 175.
Trebia, 175.
Tribunes: military, 252.
of the plebs, 139; 145; 206; 227.
Triumph (Roman), 51–56; 196.
trēs, 15; **11.**
Triremes, 165–166; 170.
Tullia, 129.
Tullus Hostilius, 120–122.
Tunic, 39; **tunica palmāta,** 55.
turrēs ambulātōriae, 256.
Twelve Tables of the Law, 26.
Two Accusatives, **70,** *a–c.*

ubi, with Indicative, **101.**
ūnus, decl., 14.
ut: with Indicative, **101.**
in Purpose Clauses, **104.**
in Result Clauses, **110.**
with Verbs of Fearing, **108.**
ūtor, with Abl., **80.**

Varro, 177–178.
Veii, 147.
Verbs: *conj. of;* Regular, **23–26;** *-iō* Verb, **27;** Irregular, **30–35;** Deponents, **28;** Defective, **36;** Contracted Forms, **37;** Impersonals, **51.** *Agreement of,* **49–50.**
Vercellae, 204.
Vercingetorix, 53; 377–397.
Verginius, 145.
Vestal Virgins, 93–94.
vestibulum, 9.
vestis Rōmāna, 39–43.
vexillum, 253.
Via Sacra, 6; 52.
vineae, 256.
vīs, decl., **7.**
Vocative: ending, **3;** use, **54.**
Volitive Subjunctive: Independent, 50–51; **103;** Substantive Volitive Clauses, **107.**
volō, conj., **35.**
Volusenus, 322–325.

Walls of Rome, 129.
Water clock, 341.
Wedding (Roman), 34–36.

Wine: 64–65; Caesar's use of, 245.
Wolf, Capitoline, 111.
Word Formation:
Assimilation, 197.
Compound Verbs, 223.
Compound Words, 19.
Denominatives, 189–190.
Frequentatives, 184.
Inceptives, 186–187.
Intensives, 184.
Unchanged Borrowed Words, 7; 13.
Vowel Changes, 197.
Prefixes: 196–197.
ad-, 200; *con-*, 203; *dē-*, 205; *in-*, 207; *ob-*, 213; *per-*, 215; *sub-*, 220; *ab-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *prae-*, *praeter-*, *prō-*, *super-*, *trāns-*, 223.
Inseparable: dis-, 228; *in-*, 236; *re-*, 226; *sē-*, 232.
Review of Prefixes, 239.
Suffixes: 28.
-āris, *-ārius*, 158; *-ārium*, *-ōrium*, 73–74; *-ātus*, 112–113; *-āx*, 143; *-brum*, *-crum*, *-trum*, 106; *-cus*, *-ticus*, 162; *-dus*, 146; *-eus*, 176–177; *-ia*, 123; *-īna*, 119; *-iō*, 44; *-ium*, 87; *-ius*, *-ēnsis*, *-cus*, *-nus*, 179; *-ius*, *-īvus*, 168; *-lis* (*-ālis*, *-īlis*), 154; *-lis*, *-bilis*, 150; *-lus* (*-ulus*, *-olus*, *-ellus*, *-culus*), 108–109; *-men*, 87; *-mentum*, 96; *-nus* (*-ānus*, *-ēnus*, *-īnus*), 160; *-or*, 28–29; 37; *-ōsus*, 177; *-sus*, 6–7; *-tās*, 135; *-tia*, 132; *-tūdō*, 137; *-tus*, 6–7; 171; *-ulum*, *-bulum*, *-culum*, 66; *-ūra*, 57.
Review of Adj. Formation, 181–182.
Review of Noun Formation, 140.
Review of Verb Formation, 194.
Writing Material, 25–26.

Xanthippus, 167.
Xenophon, 239–240.

Zama, 185.